

The Kauṭīliya Arthaśāstra - SARIT transcript

Compilation, data entry, proof correction by
Muneo Tokunaga et al., Kyoto University

Editing and conversion to Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) markup by
Richard Mahoney, Indica et Buddhica

Financial support by
The British Association for South Asian Studies

SARIT: Search and Retrieval of Indic Texts
London

2009

The Kauṭīlīya Arthaśāstra, A critical edition with a
glossary, R.P. Kangle - SARIT: Search and Retrieval of
Indic Texts transcript

Kauṭalya

September 5, 2009

1 Book 1: Concerning the Topic of Training

1

1.1 Chapter 1: Enumeration of Sections and Books

2

om.namah.sukra.brhaspatibhyām |

KAZ01.1.01/ prthivyā lābhe pālāne ca yāvanty artha.śāstrāṇi pūrva.ācāryaiḥ prasthāpitāni
prāyaśas tāni saṁhṛtya-ekam idam artha.śāstraṁ kṛtam | 1 |

KAZ01.1.02/ tasya-ayam prakaraṇa.adhikaraṇa.samuddeśaḥ | 2 |

KAZ01.1.03a/ vidyā.samuddeśaḥ, vṛddha.samuddeśaḥ, indriya.jayaḥ, amātya.utpattiḥ,
mantri.purohita.utpattiḥ, upadhābhiḥ śauca.aśauca.jñānam amātyānām, -

KAZ01.1.03b/ gūḍha.puruṣa.praṇidhiḥ, sva.viśaye kṛtya.akṛtya.pakṣa.rakṣaṇam, para.viśaye
kṛtya.akṛtya.pakṣa.upagrahaḥ, -

KAZ01.1.03c/ mantra.adhikāraḥ, dūta.praṇidhiḥ, rāja.putra.rakṣaṇam, aparuddha.vṛttam,
aparuddhe vṛttiḥ, rāja.praṇidhiḥ, niśānta.praṇidhiḥ, ātma.rakṣitakam - iti
vinaya.adhikārikam prathamam adhikaraṇam | 3 |

KAZ01.1.04a/ janapada.niveśaḥ, bhūmic.chidra.apidhānam, durga.vidhānam, durga.niveśaḥ,
samnidhātṛ.nicaya.karma, samāharṭṛ.samudaya.prasthāpanam, akṣa.paṭale
gāṇanikya.adhikāraḥ, -

KAZ01.1.04b/ samudayasya yukta.apahr̥tasya pratyānayanam, upayukta.parīkṣā,
śāsana.adhikāraḥ, kośa.praveśya.ratna.parīkṣā, ākara.karma.anta.pravartanam, akṣa.śālāyām
suvarṇa.adhyakṣaḥ -

KAZ01.1.04c/ viśikhāyām sauvarṇika.pracāraḥ, koṣṭha.āgāra.adhyakṣaḥ, paṇya.adhyakṣaḥ,
kupya.adhyakṣaḥ, āyudha.adhyakṣaḥ, tulā.māna.pautavam, -

KAZ01.1.04d/ deśa.kāla.mānam, śulka.adhyakṣaḥ, sūtra.adhyakṣaḥ, sīta.adhyakṣaḥ,
surā.adhyakṣaḥ, sūna.adhyakṣaḥ, gaṇikā.adhyakṣaḥ, -

KAZ01.1.04e/ nāv.adhyakṣaḥ, go.adhyakṣaḥ, aśva.adhyakṣaḥ, hasty.adhyakṣaḥ,
ratha.adhyakṣaḥ, patty.adhyakṣaḥ, senā.pati.pracāraḥ, mudrā.adhyakṣaḥ, vivīta.adhyakṣaḥ,
samāharṭṛ.pracāraḥ, -

KAZ01.1.04f/ gr̥ha.patika.vaidehaka.tāpasa.vyañjanāḥ praṇidhayaḥ, nāgarika.praṇidhiḥ - ity
adhyakṣa.pracāro dvitīyam adhikaraṇam | 4 |

KAZ01.1.05a/ vyavahāra.sthāpanā, vivāda.pada.nibandhaḥ, vivāha.samyuktam,
dāya.vibhāgaḥ, vāstukam, samayasya anapākarma, ṛṇa.adānam, aupanidhikam,
dāsa.karma.kara.kalpaḥ, -

KAZ01.1.05b/ sambhūya samutthānam, vikṛita.krīta.anuśayaḥ, dattasya anapākarma,
asvāmi.vikrayaḥ, sva.svāmi.sambandhaḥ, sāhasam, vāk.pāruṣyam, daṇḍa.pāruṣyam,
dyūta.samāhvayam, prakīrṇakam - iti, dharma.sthīyam tṛtīyam adhikaraṇam | 5 |

KAZ01.1.06a/ kāru.kara.kṣaṇam, vaidehaka.rakṣaṇam, upanipāta.pratīkāraḥ, gūḍha.ājīvinām
rakṣā, siddha.vyañjanair māṇava.prakāśanam, śaṅkā.rūpa.karma.abhigrahaḥ, -

KAZ01.1.06b/ āśu.mṛtaka.parīkṣā, vākya.karma.anuyogaḥ, sarva.adhikaraṇa.rakṣaṇam -

KAZ01.1.06c/ eka.aṅga.vadha.niṣkrayaḥ, śuddhaś citraś ca daṇḍa kalpaḥ, kanyā.prakarma,
aticāra.daṇḍāḥ - iti kaṇṭaka.śodhanam caturtham adhikaraṇam | 6 |

KAZ01.1.07/ dāṇḍakarmikam, kośa.abhisamharaṇam, bhṛtya.bharaṇīyam, anujīvi.vṛttam,
samaya.ācārikam, rāja.pratisandhānam, eka.aiśvāryam - iti yoga.vṛttam pañcamam
adhikaraṇam | 7 |

¹[K tr. 1–61 :: K2 tr. 1–54

²[K tr. 1 :: K2 tr. 1

KAZ01.1.08/ prakṛti.sampadaḥ, śama.vyāyāmikam - iti maṇḍala.yoniḥ śaṣṭham adhikaraṇam | 8 |

KAZ01.1.09a/ śāḍguṇya.samuddeśaḥ, kṣaya.sthāna.vṛddhi.niścayaḥ, samśraya.vṛttiḥ, samahīna.jyāyasāṁ guṇa.abhiniveśaḥ, hīna.sandhayaḥ, vigrhya āsanam, sandhāya āsanam, vigrhya yānam, sandhāya yānam, -

KAZ01.1.09b/ sambhūya prayāṇam, yātavya.amitrāyor abhigraha.cintā, kṣaya.lobha.virāga.hetavaḥ prakṛtīnām, sāmavāyika.viparimarśaḥ, -

KAZ01.1.09c/ saṁhita prayāṇikam, paripaṇita.aparipaṇita.apasṛtāḥ sandhayaḥ, dvaidhī.bhāvikāḥ sandhi.vikramāḥ, yātavya.vṛttiḥ, anugrāhya.mitra.viśeṣāḥ, -

KAZ01.1.09d/ mitra.hiraṇya.bhūmi.karma.sandhayaḥ, pārṣṇi.grāha.cintā, hīna.śakti.pūraṇam, balavatā vigrhya uparodha.hetavaḥ, daṇḍa.upanata.vṛttam, -

KAZ01.1.09e/ daṇḍa.upanāyi.vṛttam, sandhi.karma, samādhi.mokṣaḥ, madhyama.caritam, udāsīna.caritam, maṇḍala.caritam - iti śāḍguṇyaṁ saptamam adhikaraṇam | 9 |

KAZ01.1.10/ prakṛti.vyasana.vargaḥ, rāja.rājyayor vyasana.cintā, puruṣa.vyasana.vargaḥ, pīḍana.vargaḥ, stambha.vargaḥ, kośa.saṅga.vargaḥ, mitra.vyasana.vargaḥ - iti vyasana.ādhikārikam aṣṭamam adhikaraṇam | 10 |

KAZ01.1.11a/ śakti.deśa.kāla.bala.abala.jñānam, yātrā.kālāḥ, bala.upādāna.kālāḥ, samnāha.guṇāḥ, pratibala.karma, paścāt kopa.cintā,

bāhya.ābhyaantara.prakṛti.kopa.pratīkāraḥ -

KAZ01.1.11b/ kṣaya.vyaya.lābha.- viparimarśaḥ, bāhya.ābhyaantarāś ca-āpadaḥ, duṣya.śatru.samyuktāḥ, artha.anartha.samśaya.yuktāḥ, tāsām upāya.vikalpajāḥ siddhayaḥ - ity abhiyāsyat karma navamam adhikaraṇam | 11 |

KAZ01.1.12/ skandha.āvāra.niveśaḥ, skandha.āvāra.prayāṇam,

bala.vyasana.avaskanda.kāla.rakṣaṇam, kūṭa.yuddha.vikalpāḥ, sva.sainya.utsāhanam,

sva.bala.anya.bala.vyāyogaḥ, yuddha.bhūmayāḥ, patty.aśva.ratha.hasti.karmāṇi,

pakṣa.kakṣa.urasyanām bala.agrato vyūha.vibhāgaḥ, sāra.phalgu.bala.vibhāgaḥ,

patty.aśva.ratha.hasti.yuddhāni, daṇḍa.bhoga.maṇḍala.asaṁhata.vyūha.vyūhanam, tasya prativyūha.sthāpanam - iti sāṅgrāmikaṁ daśamam adhikaraṇam | 12 |

KAZ01.1.13/ bheda.upādānāni, upāṁśu.daṇḍāḥ - iti saṅgha.vṛttam ekādaśam adhikaraṇam | 13 |

KAZ01.1.14/ dūta.karma, mantra.yuddham, senā.mukhya.vadhaḥ, maṇḍala.protsāhanam,

śāstra.agni.rasa.praṇidhayaḥ, vīvadha.āsāra.prasāra.vadhaḥ, yoga.atīsandhānam,

daṇḍa.atīsandhānam, eka.vijayaḥ - ity ābaliyasāṁ dvādaśam adhikaraṇam | 14 |

KAZ01.1.15/ upajāpaḥ, yoga.vāmanam, apasarpa.praṇidhiḥ, paryupāsana.karma,

avamardaḥ, labdha.praśamanam - iti durga.lambha.upāyas trayodaśam adhikaraṇam | 15 |

KAZ01.1.16/ para.bala.ghāta.prayogaḥ, pralambhanam, sva.bala.upaghāta.pratīkāraḥ - ity aupaniṣadikaṁ caturdaśam adhikaraṇam | 16 |

KAZ01.1.17/ tantra.yuktayaḥ - iti tantra.yuktiḥ pañcadaśam adhikaraṇam | 17 |

KAZ01.1.18/ śāstra.samuddeśaḥ pañcadaśa.adhikaraṇāni sa-aśīti.prakaraṇa.śataṁ

sa-pañcāśad.adhyāya.śataṁ ṣaṭ.śloka.sahasrāṇi-iti | 18 |

KAZ01.1.19ab/ sukha.grahaṇa.vijñeyam tattva.artha.pada.niścitam |

KAZ01.1.19cd/ kauṭilyena kṛtaṁ śāstraṁ vimukta.grantha.vistaram || 19 ||

1.2 Chapter 2 (Section 1): Enumeration of the Sciences

3

KAZ01.2.01/ ānvīkṣikī trayī vārttā daṇḍa.nītiś ca-iti vidyāḥ | 1 |

KAZ01.2.02/ trayī vārttā daṇḍa nītiś ca-iti mānavāḥ | 2 |

³[K tr. 6 :: K2 tr. 5

- KAZ01.2.03/ trayī viśeṣo hy ānvīkṣikī-iti | 3 |
 KAZ01.2.04/ vārttā daṇḍa.nītiś ca-iti bārhaspatyāḥ | 4 |
 KAZ01.2.05/ saṁvaraṇa.mātram hi trayī loka.yātrā.vida iti | 5 |
 KAZ01.2.06/ daṇḍa.nītir ekā vidyā-ity auśanasāḥ | 6 |
 KAZ01.2.07/ tasyām hi sarva.vidyā.ārambhāḥ pratibaddhā iti | 7 |
 KAZ01.2.08/ catasra eva vidyā iti kauṭilyaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ01.2.09/ tābhir dharma.arthau yad vidyāt tad vidyānām vidyātvam | 9 |
 KAZ01.2.10/ sāṅkhyam yogo lokāyataṁ ca-ity ānvīkṣikī | 10 |
 KAZ01.2.11/ dharma.adharmau trayyām artha.anarthau vārttāyām naya.anayau
 daṇḍa.nītyām bala.abale ca etāsām hetubhir anvikṣamāṇā lokasya upakaroti vyasane
 'bhyudaye ca buddhim avasthāpayati prajñā.vākya.kriyā.vaiśāradyam ca karoti | 11 |
 KAZ01.2.12ab/ pradīpaḥ sarva.vidyānām upāyaḥ sarva.karmaṇām |
 KAZ01.2.12cd/ āśrayaḥ sarva.dharmāṇām śaśvad ānvīkṣikī matā || 12 ||

1.3 Chapter 3 (Section 1): Enumeration of the Sciences (cont.)

4

- KAZ01.3.01/ sāma.ṛg.yajur.vedās trayas trayī | 1 |
 KAZ01.3.02/ atharva.veda.itihāsa.vedau ca vedāḥ | 2 |
 KAZ01.3.03/ śikṣā kalpo vyākaraṇam niruktaṁ chando.vicitir jyotiṣam iti ca-aṅgāni | 3 |
 KAZ01.3.04/ eṣa trayī.dharmaś caturṇām varṇānām āśramāṇām ca sva.dharma.sthāpanād
 aupakārikāḥ | 4 |
 KAZ01.3.05/ svadharma brāhmaṇasya adhyayanam adhyāpanam yajanam yājanam dānam
 pratigrahaś ca | 5 |
 KAZ01.3.06/ kṣatriyasya-adhyayanam yajanam dānam śastra.ājīvo bhūta.rakṣaṇam ca | 6 |
 KAZ01.3.07/ vaiśyasya-adhyayanam yajanam dānam kṛṣi.pāśupālye vaṇijyā ca | 7 |
 KAZ01.3.08/ śūdrasya dvijāti.śuśrūṣā vārttā kāru.kuśīlava.karma ca | 8 |
 KAZ01.3.09/ gr̥hasthasya svadharma.ājīvas tulyair asamāna.ṛṣibhir vaivāhyam ṛtu.gāmitvam
 deva.pitr.atithi.pūjā bhr̥tyeṣu tyāgaḥ śeṣa.bhojanam ca | 9 |
 KAZ01.3.10/ brahma.cāriṇaḥ svādhyāyo agni.kārya.abhiṣekau bhaikṣa.vratitvam ācārye
 prāṇa.antikī vṛttis tad.abhāve guru.putre sa-brahma.cāriṇi vā | 10 |
 KAZ01.3.11/ vānaprasthasya brahmacaryam bhūmau śayyā jaṭā.ajina.dhāraṇam
 agni.hotra.abhiṣekau devatā.pitr.atithi.pūjā vanyaś ca-āhāraḥ | 11 |
 KAZ01.3.12/ parivrājakasya jita.indriyatvam anārambho niṣkiñcanatvam saṅga.tyāgo
 bhaikṣavratam anekatra-araṇye ca vāso bāhya.ābhyantaram ca śaucam | 12 |
 KAZ01.3.13/ sarveṣām ahimsā satyam śaucam anasūya ānṛśamsyam kṣamā ca | 13 |
 KAZ01.3.14/ svadharmaḥ svargāya-ānantyāya ca | 14 |
 KAZ01.3.15/ tasya-atikrame lokaḥ saṅkarād ucchidyeta | 15 |
 KAZ01.3.16ab/ tasmāt svadharmaṁ bhūtānām rājā na vyabhicārayet |
 KAZ01.3.16cd/ svadharmaṁ sandadhāno hi pretya ca-iha ca nandati || 16 ||
 KAZ01.3.17ab/ vyavasthita.ārya.maryādaḥ kṛta.varṇa.āśrama.sthitiḥ |
 KAZ01.3.17cd/ trayyā-abhirakṣito lokaḥ prasīdati na sīdati || 17 ||

1.4 Chapter 4 (Section 1): Enumeration of the Sciences (cont.)

5

- KAZ01.4.01/ kṛṣi.pāśupālye vaṇijyā ca vārtā, dhānya.paśu.hiraṇya.kupya.viṣṭi.pradānād
 aupakārikī | 1 |

⁴[K tr. 8 :: K2 tr. 7

⁵[K tr. 10 :: K2 tr. 9

- KAZ01.4.02/ tayā sva.pakṣaṁ para.pakṣaṁ ca vaśī.karoti kośa.daṇḍābhyām | 2 |
 KAZ01.4.03/ ānvīkṣikī trayī vārttānām yoga.kṣema.sādhano daṇḍaḥ, tasya nītir daṇḍa nītiḥ,
 alabdha.lābha.arthā labdha.parirakṣaṇī rakṣita.vivardhanī vṛddhasya tīrthe pratipādanī ca | 3 |
 KAZ01.4.04/ tasyām āyattā loka.yātrā | 4 |
 KAZ01.4.05/ "tasmāl loka.yātrā.arthī nityam udyata.daṇḍaḥ syāt | 5 |
 KAZ01.4.06/ na hy evaṁvidhaṁ vaśa.upanayanam asti bhūtānām yathā daṇḍaḥ |" ity
 ācāryāḥ | 6 |
 KAZ01.4.07/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ01.4.08/ tīkṣṇa.daṇḍo hi bhūtānām udvejanīyo bhavati | 8 |
 KAZ01.4.09/ mṛdu.daṇḍaḥ paribhūyate | 9 |
 KAZ01.4.10/ yathā.arha.daṇḍaḥ pūjyate | 10 |
 KAZ01.4.11/ suvijñāta.prañīto hi daṇḍaḥ prajā dharma.artha.kāmair yojayati | 11 |
 KAZ01.4.12/ duṣprañītaḥ kāma.krodhābhyām avajñānād vā vānaprastha.parivrājakān api
 kopayati, kiṁ.aṅga punar gr̥hasthān | 12 |
 KAZ01.4.13/ apraṇītas tu mātṣya.nyāyam udbhāvayati | 13 |
 KAZ01.4.14/ baliyān abalaṁ hi grasate daṇḍa.dhara.abhāve | 14 |
 KAZ01.4.15/ sa tena guptaḥ prabhavati iti | 15 |
 KAZ01.4.16ab/ catur.varṇa.āśramo loko rājñā daṇḍena pālitaḥ |
 KAZ01.4.16cd/ svadharma.karma.abhirato vartate sveṣu vartmasu || 16 ||

1.5 Chapter 5 (Section 2): Association with Elders

6

- KAZ01.5.01/ tasmād daṇḍa.mūlās tisro vidyāḥ | 1 |
 KAZ01.5.02/ vinaya.mūlo daṇḍaḥ prāṇabhṛtām yoga.kṣema.āvahaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ01.5.03/ kṛtakaḥ svābhāvikaś ca vinayaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ01.5.04/ kriyā hi dravyaṁ vinayati na-adravyam | 4 |
 KAZ01.5.05/ śuśrūṣā śravaṇa.grahaṇa.dhāraṇa.vijñāna.ūha.apoha.tattva.abhiniviṣṭa.buddhiṁ
 vidyā vinayati na-itaram | 5 |
 KAZ01.5.06/ vidyānām tu yathāsvam ācārya.prāmāṇyād vinayo niyamaś ca | 6 |
 KAZ01.5.07/ vṛtta.caula.karmā lipiṁ saṅkhyānaṁ ca-upayujñāta | 7 |
 KAZ01.5.08/ vṛtta.upanayanā trayīm ānvīkṣikīm ca śiṣṭebhyo vārttām adhyakṣebhyo
 daṇḍa.nītiṁ vakṛ.prayokṛtṛbhyāḥ | 8 |
 KAZ01.5.09/ brahmacaryaṁ ca ṣoḍaśād varṣāt | 9 |
 KAZ01.5.10/ ato go.dānaṁ dāra.karma ca-asya | 10 |
 KAZ01.5.11/ nityaś ca vidyā.vṛddha.samyogo vinaya.vṛddhy.artham, tan.mūlatvād vinayasya
 | 11 |
 KAZ01.5.12/ pūrvam ahar.bhāgaṁ hasty.aśva.ratha.praharaṇa.vidyāsu vinayaṁ gacchet | 12 |
 KAZ01.5.13/ paścimam itihāsa.śravaṇe | 13 |
 KAZ01.5.14/ purāṇam itivṛttam ākhyāyika.udāharaṇaṁ dharma.śāstram artha.śāstram
 ca-iti-itihāsaḥ | 14 |
 KAZ01.5.15/ śeṣam ahorātra.bhāgam apūrva.grahaṇaṁ gr̥hīta.paricayaṁ ca kuryāt,
 agr̥hitānām ābhīkṣṇya.śravaṇaṁ ca | 15 |
 KAZ01.5.16/ śrutādd hi prajñā-upajāyate prajñāyā yogo yogād ātmavattā-iti vidyānām
 sāmartyam | 16 |
 KAZ01.5.17ab/ vidyā.vinīto rājā hi prajānām vinaye rataḥ |

⁶[K tr. 11 :: K2 tr. 10

KAZ01.5.17cd/ ananyām prthivīm bhuṅkte sarva.bhūta.hite rataḥ || 17 ||

1.6 Chapter 6 (Section 3): Control over the Senses

7

KAZ01.6.01/ vidyā vinaya.hetur indriya.jayaḥ kāma.krodha.lobha.māna.mada.harṣa.tyāgāt kāryaḥ | 1 |

KAZ01.6.02/ karṇa.tvag.akṣi.jihvā.ghrāṇa.indriyāṇām śabda.sparśa.rūpa.rasa.gandheṣv avipratipattir indriya.jayaḥ, śāstra.anuṣṭhānam vā | 2 |

KAZ01.6.03/ kṛtsnam hi śāstram idam indriya.jayaḥ | 3 |

KAZ01.6.04/ tad viruddha.vṛttir avaśya.indriyaś cāturato api rājā sadyo vinaśyati | 4 |

KAZ01.6.05/ yathā dāṇḍakyo nāma bhojaḥ kāmād brāhmaṇa.kanyām abhimanyamānaḥ sa-bandhu.rāṣṭro vinanāśa, karālaś ca vaidehaḥ | 5 |

KAZ01.6.06/ kopāj janamejaya brāhmaṇeṣu vikrāntaḥ, tāla.jaṅghaś ca bhṛguṣu | 6 |

KAZ01.6.07/ lobhād ailaś cāturvarṇyam atyāhārayamānaḥ, sauvīraś ca-ajabinduḥ | 7 |

KAZ01.6.08/ mādād rāvaṇaḥ para.dārān aprayacchan, duryodhano rājyād aṁśam ca | 8 |

KAZ01.6.09/ madād dambhodbhavo bhūta.avamānī, haihayaś ca-arjunaḥ | 9 |

KAZ01.6.10/ harṣād vātāpir agastyam atyāsādayan, vṛṣṇi.saṅghaś ca dvaipāyanam iti | 10 |

KAZ01.6.11ab/ ete ca-anye ca bahavaḥ śatru.śaḍ.vargam āśritāḥ |

KAZ01.6.11cd/ sa-bandhu.rāṣṭrā rājāno vineśur ajita.indriyāḥ || 11 ||

KAZ01.6.12ab/ śatru.śaḍ.vargam utsṛjya jāmādagno jita.indriyaḥ |

KAZ01.6.12cd/ ambarīṣaś ca nābhāgo bubhujāte ciraṁ mahīm || 12 ||

1.7 Chapter 7 (Section 3): Control over the Senses (cont.)

8

KAZ01.7.01/ tasmād ari.śaḍ.varga.tyāgena-indriya.jayam kurvīta, vṛddha.samyogena prajñām, cāreṇa cakṣuḥ, utthānena yoga.kṣema.sādhanaṁ, kārya.anuśāsanena svadharma.sthāpanam, vinayam vidyā.upadeśena, loka.priyatvam artha.samyogena vṛttim | 1 |

KAZ01.7.02/ evam vaśya.indriyaḥ para.strī.dravya.himsāś ca varjayet, svapnam laulyam anṛtam uddhata.veśatvam anartha.samyogam adharma.samyuktam anartha.samyuktam ca vyavahāram | 2 |

KAZ01.7.03/ dharma.artha.avirodhena kāmam seveta, na nihsukhaḥ syāt | 3 |

KAZ01.7.04/ samam vā trivargam anyonya.anubaddham | 4 |

KAZ01.7.05/ eko hy atyāsevito dharma.artha.kāmānam ātmānam itarau ca pīḍayati | 5 |

KAZ01.7.06/ artha-eva pradhāna-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 6 |

KAZ01.7.07/ artha.mūlau hi dharma.kāmāv iti | 7 |

KAZ01.7.08/ maryādām sthāpayed ācāryān amātyān vā, ya-enam apāya sthānebhyo vārayeyuḥ, chāyā.nālikā.pratodena vā rahasi pramādyantam abhitudeyuḥ | 8 |

KAZ01.7.09ab/ sahāya.sādhyaṁ rājatvaṁ cakram ekaṁ na vartate |

KAZ01.7.09cd/ kurvīta sacivāms tasmāt teṣāṁ ca śṛṇuyān matam || 9 ||

1.8 Chapter 8 (Section 5): Appointment of Ministers

9

KAZ01.8.01/ "saha.adhyāyino amātyān kurvīta, drṣṭa.śauca.sāmarthyatvāt" iti bhāradvājaḥ | 1 |

⁷[K tr. 13 :: K2 tr. 12

⁸[K tr. 14 :: K2 tr. 13

⁹[K tr. 16 :: K2 tr. 15

- KAZ01.8.02/ "te hy asya viśvāsyā bhavanti" iti | 2 |
 KAZ01.8.03/ na-iti viśāla.akṣaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ01.8.04/ "saha.krīḍitatvāt paribhavanti enam | 4 |
 KAZ01.8.05/ ye hy asya guhya.sadharmāṇas tām amātyān kurvīta, samāna.śīla.vyasanatvāt | 5 |
 KAZ01.8.06/ te hy asya marmajña.bhayān na-aparādhyanti" iti | 6 |
 KAZ01.8.07/ "sādhāraṇa-eṣa doṣaḥ" iti pārāśarāḥ | 7 |
 KAZ01.8.08/ "teṣām api marmajña.bhayāt kṛta.akṛtāny anuvarteta | 8 |
 KAZ01.8.09ab/ yāvadbhyo guhyam ācaṣṭe janebhyaḥ puruṣa.adhipaḥ |
 KAZ01.8.09cd/ avaśaḥ karmaṇā tena vāśyo bhavati tāvatām || 9 ||
 KAZ01.8.10/ ya-enam āpatsu prāṇa.ābādha.yuktāsv anugṛhṇīyus tām amātyān kurvīta, dṛṣṭa.anurāgatvāt" iti | 10 |
 KAZ01.8.11/ na-iti piśunaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ01.8.12/ "bhaktir eṣā na buddhi.guṇaḥ | 12 |
 KAZ01.8.13/ saṅkhyāta.artheṣu karmasu niyuktā ye yathā.ādiṣṭam artham saviśeṣam vā kuryus tām amātyān kurvīta, dṛṣṭa.guṇatvāt" iti | 13 |
 KAZ01.8.14/ na-iti kauṇapadantaḥ | 14 |
 KAZ01.8.15/ "anyair amātya.guṇair ayuktā hy ete | 15 |
 KAZ01.8.16/ pitṛ.paitāmahān amātyān kurvīta, dṛṣṭa.avadānatvāt | 16 |
 KAZ01.8.17/ te hy enam apacarantam api na tyajanti, sagandhatvāt | 17 |
 KAZ01.8.18/ amānuṣeṣv api ca-etad dṛśyate | 18 |
 KAZ01.8.19/ gāvo hy asagandham go.gaṇam atikramya sagandheṣv eva-avatiṣṭhante" iti | 19 |
 KAZ01.8.20/ na-iti vātavyādhiḥ | 20 |
 KAZ01.8.21/ "te hy asya sarvam avagṛhya svāmivat pracaranti | 21 |
 KAZ01.8.22/ tasmān nītivido navān amātyān kurvīta | 22 |
 KAZ01.8.23/ navās tu yama.sthāne daṇḍa.dharam manyamānā na-aparādhyanti" iti | 23 |
 KAZ01.8.24/ na-iti bāhu.dantī putraḥ | 24 |
 KAZ01.8.25/ "śāstravid adṛṣṭa.karmā karmasu viśādam gacchet | 25 |
 KAZ01.8.26/ tasmād abhijana.prajñā.śauca.śaurya.anurāga.yuktān amātyān kurvīta, guṇa.prādhānyāt" iti | 26 |
 KAZ01.8.27/ sarvam upapannam iti kauṭilyaḥ | 27 |
 KAZ01.8.28/ kārya.sāmarthyādd hi puruṣa.sāmarthyam kalpyate | 28 | sāmarthyas ca –
 KAZ01.8.29ab/ vibhajya-amātya.vibhavam deśa.kālau ca karma ca |
 KAZ01.8.29cd/ amātyāḥ sarva eva-ete kāryāḥ syur na tu mantriṇaḥ || 29 ||

1.9 Chapter 9 (Section 5): Appointment of Counsellors and Chaplain

10

- KAZ01.9.01/ jānapado abhijātaḥ svavagrahaḥ kṛta.śilpaś cakṣuṣmān prājño dhārayiṣṇur dakṣo vāgmī pragalbhaḥ pratipattimān utsāha.prabhāva.yuktaḥ kleśa.sahaḥ śucir maitro dṛḍha.bhaktiḥ śīla.bala.ārogya.sattva.yuktaḥ stambha.cāpala.hīnaḥ sampriyo vairāṇam akartā-ity amātya.sampat | 1 |
 KAZ01.9.02/ ataḥ pāda.argha.guṇa.hīnau madhyama.avarau | 2 |
 KAZ01.9.03/ teṣām janapad.abhijanam avagraham ca-āptataḥ parīkṣeta, samāna.vidyebhyaḥ śilpaṁ śāstra.cakṣuṣmattām ca, karma.ārambheṣu prajñām dhārayiṣṇutām dākṣyam ca, kathā.yogeṣu vāgmitvaṁ prāgalbhyam pratibhānavattvaṁ ca, samvāsibhyaḥ

¹⁰[K tr. 18 :: K2 tr. 17

śīla.bala.ārogya.sattva.yogam astambham acāpalaṁ ca, pratyakṣataḥ sampriyatvam
avairatvaṁ ca | 3 |
KAZ01.9.04/ pratyakṣa.parokṣa.anumeyā hi rāja.vṛttiḥ | 4 |
KAZ01.9.05/ svayaṁ drṣṭaṁ pratyakṣam | 5 |
KAZ01.9.06/ para.upadiṣṭaṁ parokṣam | 6 |
KAZ01.9.07/ karmasu kṛtena-akṛta.avekṣaṇam anumeyam | 7 |
KAZ01.9.08/ yaugapadyāt tu karmaṇām anekatvād anekasthatvāc ca deśa.kāla.atyayo mā
bhūd iti parokṣam amātyaiḥ kārayet | 8 | ity amātya.karma |
KAZ01.9.09/ purohitam udiva.uditakula.śīlaṁ sa-aṅge vede daive nimitte daṇḍa.nītyāṁ
ca-abhivinītam āpadāṁ daiva.mānuṣiṇām atharvabhir upāyais ca pratikartāraṁ kurvīta | 9 |
KAZ01.9.10/ tam ācāryaṁ śiṣyaḥ pitaraṁ putro bhṛtyaḥ svāminam iva ca-anuvarteta | 10 |
KAZ01.9.11ab/ brāhmaṇena-edhitaṁ kṣatraṁ mantri.mantra.abhimantritaṁ |
KAZ01.9.11cd/ jayaty ajitam atyantam śāstra.anugama.śāstritaṁ || 11 ||

1.10 Chapter 10 (Section 6): Ascertainment of the Integrity of Ministers by Means of Secret Tests

11

KAZ01.10.01/ mantri.purohita.sakhaḥ sāmānyeṣv adhikaraṇeṣu sthāpayitvā-amātyān
upadhābhīḥ śodhayet | 1 |
KAZ01.10.02/ purohitam ayājya.yājana.adhyāpane niyuktam amṛṣyamāṇaṁ rājā-avakṣipet |
2 |
KAZ01.10.03/ sa sattribhiḥ śapatha.pūrvam ekaikam amātyam upajāpayet - "adhārmiko
ayaṁ rājā, sādhu dhārmikam anyam asya tat.kulīnam aparuddhaṁ kulyam eka.pragrahaṁ
sāmantam ātavikam aupapādikam vā pratipādayāmaḥ, sarveṣāṁ etad rocate, kathaṁ vā tava"
iti | 3 |
KAZ01.10.04/ pratyākhyāne śuciḥ | iti dharma.upadhā | 4 |
KAZ01.10.05/ senā.patir asat.pragraheṇa-avakṣiptaḥ sattribhir ekaikam amātyam upajāpayet
lobhanīyena-arthena rāja.vināśāya, "sarveṣāṁ etad rocate, kathaṁ vā tava" iti | 5 |
KAZ01.10.06/ pratyākhyāne śuciḥ | ity artha.upadhā | 6 |
KAZ01.10.07/ parivrājikā labdha.viśvāsā-antaḥpure kṛta.satkārā mahā.mātram ekaikam
upajapet - "rāja.mahiṣī tvāṁ kāmāyate kṛta.samāgama.upāyā, mahān arthaś ca te bhaviṣyati"
iti | 7 |
KAZ01.10.08/ pratyākhyāne śuciḥ | iti kāmā.upadhā | 8 |
KAZ01.10.09/ prahavaṇa.nimittam eko amātyaḥ sarvān amātyān āvāhayet | 9 |
KAZ01.10.10/ tena-udvegena rājā tān avarundhyāt | 10 |
KAZ01.10.11/ kapaṭikaś ca-atra pūrva.avaruddhas teṣāṁ artha.māna.avakṣiptam ekaikam
amātyam upajapet - "asat pravṛtto ayaṁ rājā, sādhu enaṁ hatvā-anyam pratipādayāmaḥ,
sarveṣāṁ etad rocate, kathaṁ vā tava" iti | 11 |
KAZ01.10.12/ pratyākhyāne śuciḥ | iti bhaya.upadhā | 12 |
KAZ01.10.13/ tatra dharma.upadhā.śuddhān dharma.sthīya.kanṭaka.śodhaneṣu karmasu
sthāpayet, artha.upadhā.śuddhān samāharṭṛ.samnidhātṛ.nicaya.karmasu, kāmā.upadhā
śuddhān bhaya.ābhyantera.vihāra.rakṣāsu, bhaya.upadhā.śuddhān āsanna.kāryeṣu rājāḥ |
13 |
KAZ01.10.14/ sarva.upadhā.śuddhān mantriṇaḥ kuryāt | 14 |
KAZ01.10.15/ sarvatra-aśucīn khani.dravya.hasti.vana.karma.anteṣu upayojayet | 15 |
KAZ01.10.16ab/ trivarga.bhaya.samśuddhān amātyān sveṣu karmasu |
KAZ01.10.16cd/ adhikuryād yathā śaucam ity ācāryā vyavasthitāḥ || 16 ||

¹¹[K tr. 20 :: K2 tr. 18

KAZ01.10.17ab/ na tv eva kuryād ātmānaṁ devīm vā lakṣyam īśvaraḥ |
 KAZ01.10.17cd/ śauca.hetor amātyānām etat kauṭilya.darśanam || 17 ||
 KAZ01.10.18ab/ na dūṣaṇam aduṣṭasya viṣeṇa-iva-ambhasaś caret |
 KAZ01.10.18cd/ kadācidd hi praduṣṭasya na-adhigamyeta bheṣajam || 18 ||
 KAZ01.10.19ab/ kṛtā ca kaluṣā.buddhir upadhābhiś caturvidhā |
 KAZ01.10.19cd/ na-agatvā-antaṁ nivarteta sthitā sattvavatām dhṛtau || 19 ||
 KAZ01.10.20ab/ tasmād bāhyam adhiṣṭhānaṁ kṛtvā kārye caturvidhe |
 KAZ01.10.20cd/ śauca.aśaucam amātyānām rājā mārgeta sattribhiḥ || 20 ||

1.11 Chapter 11 (Section 7): Appointment of Persons in Secret Service

12

KAZ01.11.01/ upadhābhiḥ śuddha.amātya.vargo gūḍha.puruṣān utpādayet
 kāpaṭika.udāsthita.grha.patika.vaidehaka.tāpasa.vyañjanān sattri.tiṣkṇa.rasada.bhikṣukīś ca |
 1 |
 KAZ01.11.02/ para.marmajñāḥ pragalbhaś chātraḥ kāpaṭikaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ01.11.03/ tam artha.mānābhyām protsāhya mantrī brūyāt - "rājānaṁ mām ca pramāṇaṁ
 kṛtvā yasya yad akuśalaṁ paśyasi tat tadānīm eva pratyādiśa" iti | 3 |
 KAZ01.11.04/ pravrajyā pratyavasitaḥ prajñā.śauca.yukta udāsthitaḥ | 4 |
 KAZ01.11.05/ sa vārttā.karma.pradiṣṭāyām bhūmau prabhūta.hiraṇya.antevāsī karma
 kārayet | 5 |
 KAZ01.11.06/ karma.phalāc ca sarva.pravrajitānām grāsa.ācchādana.āvasathān
 pratividadyāt | 6 |
 KAZ01.11.07/ vṛtti.kāmānś ca-upajapet - "etena-eva veṣeṇa rāja.arthaś caritavyo
 bhakta.vetana.kāle ca-upasthātavyam" iti | 7 |
 KAZ01.11.08/ sarva.pravrajitāś ca svaṁ svaṁ vargam evam upajapeyuh | 8 |
 KAZ01.11.09/ karṣako vṛtti.kṣīṇaḥ prajñā.śauca.yukto grha.patika.vyañjanaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ01.11.10/ sa kṣī.karma.pradiṣṭāyām bhūmau - iti samānaṁ pūrveṇa | 10 |
 KAZ01.11.11/ vāñijako vṛtti.kṣīṇaḥ prajñā.śauca.yukto vaidehaka.vyañjanaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ01.11.12/ sa vañik.karma.pradiṣṭāyām bhūmau - iti samānaṁ pūrveṇa | 12 |
 KAZ01.11.13/ muṇḍo jaṭilo vā vṛtti.kāmas tāpasa.vyañjanaḥ | 13 |
 KAZ01.11.14/ sa nagara.abhyāśe prabhūta.muṇḍa.jaṭila.antevāsī śākaṁ yava.muṣṭim vā
 māsa.dvimāsa.antaraṁ prakāśam aśnīyāt, gūḍham iṣṭam āhāram | 14 |
 KAZ01.11.15/ vaidehaka.antevāsinaś ca-enam samiddha.yogair arcayeyuh | 15 |
 KAZ01.11.16/ śiṣyāś ca-asya-āvedayeyuh - "asau siddhaś samedhikaḥ" iti | 16 |
 KAZ01.11.17/ samedha.āśāstibhiś ca-abhigatānām aṅga.vidyayā śiṣya.sañjñābhiś ca karmāṇy
 abhijane avasitāny ādiśet - alpa.lābham agni.dāhaṁ cora.bhayaṁ dūṣya.vadhaṁ tuṣṭi.dānaṁ
 videśa.pravṛtti.jñānam, "idam adya śvo vā bhaviṣyati, idam vā rājā kariṣyati" iti | 17 |
 KAZ01.11.18/ tad asya gūḍhāḥ sattribhaś ca sampādayeyuh | 18 |
 KAZ01.11.19/ sattva.prajñā.vākya.śakti.sampannānām rāja.bhāgyam anuvyāharet,
 mantri.samyogaṁ ca brūyāt | 19 |
 KAZ01.11.20/ mantrī ca-eṣām vṛtti.karmabhyām viyateta | 20 |
 KAZ01.11.21/ ye ca kāraṇād abhikruddhāś tān artha.mānābhyām śamayet,
 akāraṇa.kruddhāś tūṣṇīm daṇḍena, rāja.dviṣṭa.kāriṇaś ca | 21 |
 KAZ01.11.22ab/ pūjitāś ca-artha.mānābhyām rājñā rāja.upajivinām |
 KAZ01.11.22cd/ jānīyuh śaucam ity etāḥ pañca.samsthāḥ prakīrtitāḥ || 22 ||

¹²[K tr. 23 :: K2 tr. 21

1.12 Chapter 12 (Sections 7; 8): Appointment of Persons in Secret Service (cont.); Rules for Secret Servants

13

KAZ01.12.01/ ye ca-apy asmabandhino avaśya.bhartavyās te lakṣaṇam aṅga.vidyām jambhaka.vidyām mājā.gatam āśrama.dharmaṁ nimittam antara.cakram ity adhīyānāḥ sattriṇaḥ, saṁsarga.vidyām ca | 1 |

KAZ01.12.02/ ye janapade sūrās tyakta.ātmāno hastinaṁ vyālam vā dravya.hetoḥ pratiyodhayeyus te tīkṣṇāḥ | 2 |

KAZ01.12.03/ ye bandhuṣu nihsnehāḥ krūrā alasās ca te rasadāḥ | 3 |

KAZ01.12.04/ parivrājikā vṛtti.kāmā daridrā vidhavā pragalbhā brāhmaṇy antaḥpure kṛta.satkārā mahā.mātra.kulāny abhigacchet | 4 |

KAZ01.12.05/ etayā muṇḍā vṛṣalyo vyākhyātāḥ | 5 | iti sañcārāḥ |

KAZ01.12.06/ tān rājā sva.viṣaye

mantri.purohita.senā.pati.yuva.rāja.dauvārika.antarvaṁśika.praśāstr.-
samāhartr.samnidhātr.pradeṣṭṛ.nāyaka.paura.vyāvahārika.kārmāntika.-
mantri.pariṣad.adhyakṣa.daṇḍa.durga.antapāla.ātavikeṣu
śraddheya.deśa.veṣa.śilpa.bhāṣā.abhijana.apadeśān bhaktitaḥ sāmārthya.yogāc ca-apasarpayet | 6 |

KAZ01.12.07/ teṣāṁ bāhyaṁ cāram

chatra.bhrṅgāra.vyajana.pāduka.āsana.yāna.vāhana.upagrāhiṇas tīkṣṇā vidyuh | 7 |

KAZ01.12.08/ taṁ sattriṇaḥ saṁsthāsv arpayeyuh | 8 |

KAZ01.12.09/ sūda.ārālika.snāpaka.samvāhaka.āstaraka.kalpaka.prasādhaka.udaka.-
paricārakā rasadāḥ kubja.vāmana.kirāta.mūka.badhira.jaḍa.andhac.chadmāno

naṭa.nartaka.gāyana.vādaka.vāg.jīvana.kuśilavāḥ striyaś ca-ābhyantaram cāram vidyuh | 9 |

KAZ01.12.10/ taṁ bhikṣyaḥ saṁsthāsv aprayeyuh | 10 |

KAZ01.12.11/ saṁsthānām antevāsiṇaḥ sañjñā.lipibhiś cāra.sañcāram kuryuh | 11 |

KAZ01.12.12/ na ca-anyonyaṁ saṁsthāsv te vā vidyuh | 12 |

KAZ01.12.13/ bhikṣukī.pratiṣedhe dvāsthā.paramparā mātā.pitr.vyañjanāḥ śilpa.kārikāḥ
kuśilavā dāsyo vā gīta.pāṭhya.vādyā.bhāṇḍa.gūḍha.lekhyā.sañjñābhir vā cāram nirhareyuh. | 13 |

KAZ01.12.14/ dīrgha.roga.unmāda.agni.rasa.visargeṇa vā gūḍha.nirgamanam | 14 |

KAZ01.12.15/ trayāṇām eka.vākye sampratyayaḥ | 15 |

KAZ01.12.16/ teṣāṁ abhikṣṇa.vinipāte tūṣṇīm.daṇḍaḥ pratiṣedhaḥ | 16 |

KAZ01.12.17/ kaṇṭaka.śodhana.uktās ca-apasarpāḥ pareṣu kṛta.vetanā vaseyur asampātinaś
cāra.artham | 17 |

KAZ01.12.18/ ta ubhaya.vetanāḥ | 18 |

KAZ01.12.19ab/ grhīta.putra.dārāmś ca kuryād ubhaya.vetanān |

KAZ01.12.19cd/ tāṁś ca-ari.prahitān vidyāt teṣāṁ śaucam ca tadvidhaiḥ || 19 ||

KAZ01.12.20ab/ evaṁ śatrau ca mitre ca madhyame ca-āvapeca carān |

KAZ01.12.20cd/ udāsīne ca teṣāṁ ca tīrtheṣv aṣṭādaśasv api || 20 ||

KAZ01.12.21ab/ antar.grha.carās teṣāṁ kubja.vāmana.paṇḍakāḥ |

KAZ01.12.21cd/ śilpavatyāḥ striyo mūkāś citrās ca mleccha.jātayaḥ || 21 ||

KAZ01.12.22ab/ durgeṣu vañijaḥ saṁsthā durga.ante siddha.tāpasāḥ |

KAZ01.12.22cd/ karṣaka.udāsthitā rāṣṭre rāṣṭra.ante vraja.vāsiṇaḥ || 22 ||

KAZ01.12.23ab/ vane vana.carāḥ kāryāḥ śramaṇa.ātavika.ādayaḥ |

KAZ01.12.23cd/ para.pravṛtti.jñāna.arthāḥ śīghrās.cāra.paramparāḥ || 23 ||

KAZ01.12.24ab/ parasya ca-ete boddhavyās tādrśair eva tādrśāḥ |

¹³[K tr. 26 :: K2 tr. 23

KAZ01.12.24cd/ cāra.sañcāriṇaḥ saṁsthā gūḍhās ca-agūḍha.sañjñitāḥ || 24 ||

KAZ01.12.25ab/ akr̥tyān kr̥tya.pakṣīyair darśitān kārya.hetubhiḥ |

KAZ01.12.25cd/ para.apasarpa.jñāna.arthaṁ mukhyān anteṣu vāsayet || 25 ||

1.13 Chapter 13 (Section 9): Keeping a Watch over One's Seducible and Non-seducible Parties

14

KAZ01.13.01/ kr̥ta.mahā.mātra.apasarpaḥ paura.jānapadān apasarpayet | 1 |

KAZ01.13.02/ sattriṇo dvandvīnaḥ tīrtha.sabhā.pūga.jana.samavāyeṣu vivādān kuryuḥ | 2 |

KAZ01.13.03/ "sarva.guṇa.sampannaś ca-ayam rājā śrūyate, na ca-asya kaścid guṇo dr̥ṣyate yaḥ paura.jānapadān daṇḍa.karābhyām pīḍayati" iti | 3 |

KAZ01.13.04/ tatra ye 'nupraśamseyus tān itaras taṁ ca pratiśedhayet | 4 |

KAZ01.13.05/ "mātsya.nyāya.abhibhūtāḥ prajā manum vaivasvataṁ rājānaṁ cakrire | 5 |

KAZ01.13.06/ dhānya.ṣaḍ.bhāgaṁ paṇya.daśa.bhāgaṁ hiraṇyam ca-asya bhāga.dheyam prakalpayām-āsuḥ | 6 |

KAZ01.13.07/ tena bhṛtā rājānaḥ prajānām yoga.kṣema.āvahāḥ | 7 |

KAZ01.13.08/ teṣāṁ kilbiṣam adaṇḍa.karā haranty ayoga.kṣema.āvahāś ca prajānām | 8 |

KAZ01.13.09/ tasmād uñcha.ṣaḍ.bhāgaṁ āraṇyakā-api nirvapanti - "tasya-etad bhāga.dheyam yo 'smān gopāyati" iti | 9 |

KAZ01.13.10/ indra.yama.sthānam etad rājānaḥ pratyakṣa.heḍa.prasādāḥ | 10 |

KAZ01.13.11/ tān avamanyamānān daivo 'pi daṇḍaḥ spr̥ṣati | 11 |

KAZ01.13.12/ tasmād rājāno na-avamantavyāḥ | 12 |

KAZ01.13.13/ ity evam kṣudrakān pratiśedhayet | 13 |

KAZ01.13.14/ kiṁ.vadantīm ca vidyuh | 14 |

KAZ01.13.15/ ye ca-asya dhānya.paśu.hiraṇyāny ājīvanti, tair upakurvanti vyasane 'bhyudaye vā, kupitaṁ bandhum rāṣṭraṁ vā vyāvartayanti, amitram āṭavikaṁ vā pratiśedhayanti, teṣāṁ muṇḍa.jaṭila.vyañjanās tuṣṭa.atuṣṭatvaṁ vidyuh | 15 |

KAZ01.13.16/ tuṣṭān bhūyo 'rtha.mānābhyām pūjayet | 16 |

KAZ01.13.17/ atuṣṭāms tuṣṭi.hetos tyāgena sāmāna ca prasādayet | 17 |

KAZ01.13.18/ parasparād vā bhedayed enān, sāmanta.āṭavika.tat.kulīna.aparuddhebhyaś ca | 18 |

KAZ01.13.19/ tathā-apy atuṣyato daṇḍa.kara.sādhana.adhikāreṇa janapada.vidveṣam grāhayet | 19 |

KAZ01.13.20/ viviṣṭān upāmsu.daṇḍena janapada.kopena vā sādhayet | 20 |

KAZ01.13.21/ gupta.putra.dārān ākara.karma.anteṣu vā vāsayet pareṣām āspada.bhayāt | 21 |

KAZ01.13.22/ kruddha.lubdha.bhīta.māninas tu pareṣām kr̥tyāḥ | 22 |

KAZ01.13.23/ teṣāṁ kārtāntika.naimittika.mauhūrtika.vyañjanāḥ paraspara.abhisambandham amitra.āṭavika.sambandham vā vidyuh | 23 |

KAZ01.13.24/ tuṣṭān artha.mānābhyām pūjayet | 24 |

KAZ01.13.25/ atuṣṭān sāmā.dāna.bheda.daṇḍaiḥ sādhayet | 25 |

KAZ01.13.26ab/ evam sva.viṣaye kr̥tyān akr̥tyāms ca vicakṣaṇaḥ |

KAZ01.13.26cd/ para.upajāpāt samrakṣet pradhānān kṣudrakān api || 26 ||

¹⁴[K tr. 31 :: K2 tr. 28

1.14 Chapter 14 (Section 10): Winning over the Enemy's Seducible and Non-seducible Parties

15

KAZ01.14.01/ kṛtya.akṛtya.pakṣa.upagrahaḥ sva.viṣaye vyākhyātaḥ, para.viṣaye vācyaḥ | 1 |
KAZ01.14.02/ saṁśrutya-arthān vipralabdhaḥ, tulya.kāriṇoḥ śilpe vā-upakāre vā vimānitaḥ, vallabha.avaruddhaḥ, samāhūya parājitaḥ, pravāsa.upataptaḥ, kṛtvā vyayam alabdha.kāryaḥ, svadharmād dāyādyād vā-uparuddhaḥ, māna.adhikārābhyām bhraṣṭaḥ, kulyair antarhitaḥ, prasabha.abhimṛṣṭa.strikaḥ, kāra.abhinyastaḥ, para.ukta.daṇḍitaḥ, mithyā.ācāra.vāritaḥ, sarva.svam āhāritaḥ, bandhana.parikliṣṭaḥ, pravāsita.bandhuḥ - iti kruddha.vargaḥ | 2 |
KAZ01.14.03/ svayam upahataḥ, viprakṛtaḥ, pāpa.karma.abhikhyātaḥ, tulya.doṣa.daṇḍena-udvignaḥ, paryāta.bhūmiḥ, daṇḍena-upanataḥ, sarva.adhikaraṇasthaḥ, sahasā.upacita.arthaḥ, tat.kulīna.upāśamsuḥ, pradviṣṭo rājñā, rāja.dveṣi ca - iti bhīta.vargaḥ | 3 |
KAZ01.14.04/ parikṣiṇaḥ, anya.ātta.svaḥ, kadaryaḥ, vyasanī, atyāhita.vyavahāraś ca - iti lubdha.vargaḥ | 4 |
KAZ01.14.05/ ātma.sambhāvitaḥ, māna.kāmaḥ, śatru.pūjā.amarṣitaḥ, nīcāir upahitaḥ, tikṣṇaḥ, sāhasikaḥ, bhogena-asantuṣṭaḥ - iti māni.vargaḥ | 5 |
KAZ01.14.06/ teṣāṁ muṇḍa.jaṭila.vyañjanair yo yad.bhaktiḥ kṛtya.pakṣīyas taṁ tena-upajāpayet | 6 |
KAZ01.14.07/ "yathā mada.andho hastī mattena-adhiṣṭhito yad yad āsādayati tat sarvaṁ pramṛdnāti, evaṁ ayam aśāstra.cakṣur andho rājā paura.jānapada.vadhāya-abhyutthitaḥ, śakyam asya pratiḥasti.protsāhanena-apakartum, amarṣaḥ kriyatām" iti kruddha.vargam upajāpayet | 7 |
KAZ01.14.08/ "yathā līnaḥ sarpo yasmād bhayaṁ paśyati tatra viṣam utsrjati, evaṁ ayaṁ rājā jāta.doṣa.āśaṅkas tvayi purā krodha.viṣam utsrjati, anyatra gamyatām" iti bhīta.vargam.upajāpayet | 8 |
KAZ01.14.09/ "yathā śva.gaṇinām dhenuḥ śvabhyo duhyate na brāhmaṇebhyaḥ, evaṁ ayaṁ rājā sattva.prajñā.vākya.śakti.hīnebhyo duhyate na-ātma.guṇa.sampannebhyaḥ, asau rājā puruṣa.viśeṣajñaḥ, tatra gamyatām" iti lubdha.vargam.upajāpayet | 9 |
KAZ01.14.10/ "yathā caṇḍāla.uda.pānaś caṇḍālānām eva-upabhogyo na-anyeṣāṁ, evaṁ ayaṁ rājā nīco nīcānām eva-upabhogyo na tvadvidhānām āryāṇāṁ, asau rājā puruṣa.viśeṣajñaḥ, tatra gamyatām" iti māni.vargam upajāpayet | 10 |
KAZ01.14.11ab/ tathā-iti pratipannāṁs tān saṁhitān paṇa.karmaṇā |
KAZ01.14.11cd/ yojayeta yathā.śakti sa-apasarpān sva.karmasu || 11 ||
KAZ01.14.12ab/ labheta sāma.dānābhyām kṛtyāṁs ca para.bhūmiṣu |
KAZ01.14.12cd/ akṛtyān bheda.daṇḍābhyām para.doṣāṁs ca darśayan || 12 ||

1.15 Chapter 15 (Section 11): The Topic of Counsel

16

KAZ01.15.01/ kṛta.sva.pakṣa.para.pakṣa.upagrahaḥ kārya.ārambhāṁs cintayet | 1 |
KAZ01.15.02/ mantra.pūrvāḥ sarva.ārambhāḥ | 2 |
KAZ01.15.03/ tad.uddeśaḥ saṁvṛtaḥ kathānām anihśrāvī pakṣibhir apy anālokyāḥ syāt | 3 |
KAZ01.15.04/ śrūyate hi śuka.sārikābhir mantro bhinnāḥ, śvabhir apy anyaiś ca tiryag.yonibhir iti | 4 |
KAZ01.15.05/ tasmān mantra.uddeśam anāyukto na-upagacchet | 5 |
KAZ01.15.06/ ucchidyeta mantra.bhedī | 6 |

¹⁵[K tr. 33 :: K2 tr. 30

¹⁶[K tr. 36 :: K2 tr. 32

- KAZ01.15.07/ mantra.bhedo hi dūta.amātya.svāminām iṅgita.ākārābhyām | 7 |
- KAZ01.15.08/ iṅgitam anyathā.vṛttiḥ | 8 |
- KAZ01.15.09/ ākṛti.grahaṇam ākāraḥ | 9 |
- KAZ01.15.10/ tasya saṁvaraṇam āyukta.puruṣa.rakṣaṇam ā.kārya.kālād iti | 10 |
- KAZ01.15.11/ teṣāṁ hi pramāda.mada.supta.pralāpāḥ, kāma.ādir utsekaḥ, pracchanno
'vamato vā mantraṁ bhinatti | 11 |
- KAZ01.15.12/ tasmād ādrakṣen mantraṁ | 12 |
- KAZ01.15.13/ "mantra.bhedo hy ayoga.kṣema.karo rājñas tad.āyukta.puruṣāṇām ca | 13 |
- KAZ01.15.14/ tasmād guhyam eko mantrayeta" iti bhāradvājaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ01.15.15/ "mantriṇām api hi mantriṇo bhavanti, teṣāṁ apy anye | 15 |
- KAZ01.15.16/ sã-ẽṣã mantri.paramparã mantraṁ bhinatti | 16 |
- KAZ01.15.17ab/ "tasmān na-asya pare vidyuh karma kiñcic cikīrṣitam |
- KAZ01.15.17cd/ ārabdhāras tu jānīyur ārabdham kṛtam eva vā || 17 ||
- KAZ01.15.18/ "na-ekasya mantra.siddhir asti" iti viśāla.akṣaḥ | 18 |
- KAZ01.15.19/ "pratyakṣa.parokṣa.anumeyā hi rāja.vṛttiḥ | 19 |
- KAZ01.15.20/ anupalabdhasya jñānam upalabdhasya niścita.bala.ādhānam artha.dvaidhasya
saṁśayac.chedanam eka.deśa.dṛṣṭasya śeṣa.upalabdhir iti mantri.sādhyaṁ etat | 20 |
- KAZ01.15.21/ tasmād buddhi.vṛddhaiḥ sārdham adhyāsita mantraṁ | 21 |
- KAZ01.15.22ab/ "na kañcid avamanyeta sarvasya śṛṇuyān matam |
- KAZ01.15.22cd/ bālasya-apy arthavad.vākyaṁ upayujīta paṇḍitaḥ || 22 ||"
- KAZ01.15.23/ "etan mantra.jñānam, na-etan mantra.rakṣaṇam" iti pārāśaraḥ | 23 |
- KAZ01.15.24/ "yad asya kāryam abhipretam tat.pratirūpakaṁ mantriṇaḥ pṛcchet - "kāryam
idam evam āsit, evam vā yadi bhavet, tat katham kartavyam" iti | 24 |
- KAZ01.15.25/ te yathā brūyus tat kuryāt | 25 |
- KAZ01.15.26/ evaṁ mantra.upalabdhīḥ saṁvṛtiś ca bhavati" iti | 26 |
- KAZ01.15.27/ na-iti piśunaḥ | 27 |
- KAZ01.15.28/ "mantriṇo hi vyavahitam artham vṛttam avṛttam vā pṛṣṭā anādareṇa bruvanti
prakāśayanti vā | 28 |
- KAZ01.15.29/ sa doṣaḥ | 29 |
- KAZ01.15.30/ tasmāt karmasu ye yeṣv abhipretās taiḥ saha mantrayeta | 30 |
- KAZ01.15.31/ tair mantrayamāṇo hi mantra.siddhiṁ guptiṁ ca labhate" iti | 31 |
- KAZ01.15.32/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ01.15.33/ anavasthā hy eṣā | 33 |
- KAZ01.15.34/ mantribhis tribhiś caturbhir vā saha mantrayeta | 34 |
- KAZ01.15.35/ mantrayamāṇo hy ekena-artha.kṛcchreṣu niścayaṁ na-adhigacchet | 35 |
- KAZ01.15.36/ ekaś ca mantri yathā.iṣṭam anavagrahaś carati | 36 |
- KAZ01.15.37/ dvābhyām mantrayamāṇo dvābhyām saṁhatābhyām avagrhyate,
vigrhītābhyām vināśyate | 37 |
- KAZ01.15.38/ tat triṣu catuṣu vā kṛcchreṇa-upapadyate | 38 |
- KAZ01.15.39/ mahā.doṣam upapannaṁ tu bhavati | 39 |
- KAZ01.15.40/ tataḥ pareṣu kṛcchreṇa-artha.niścayo gamyate, mantro vā rakṣyate | 40 |
- KAZ01.15.41/ deśa.kāla.kārya.vaśena tv ekena saha dvābhyām eko vā yathā.sāmarthyam
mantrayeta | 41 |
- KAZ01.15.42/ karmaṇām ārambha.upāyaḥ puruṣa.dravya.sampad deśa.kāla.vibhāgo
vinipāta.pratīkāraḥ kārya.siddhir iti pañca.aṅgo mantraḥ | 42 |
- KAZ01.15.43/ tān ekaikaśaḥ pṛcchet samastānś ca | 43 |
- KAZ01.15.44/ hetubhiś ca-eṣāṁ mati.pravivekān vidyāt | 44 |
- KAZ01.15.45/ avāpta.arthaḥ kālām na-atikrāmayet | 45 |
- KAZ01.15.46/ na dīrgha.kālām mantrayeta, na teṣāṁ pakṣīyair yeṣāṁ apakuryāt | 46 |

KAZ01.15.47/ "mantri.pariṣadaṁ dvādaśa.amātyān kurvīta" iti mānavāḥ | 47 |
 KAZ01.15.48/ "ṣoḍaśa" iti bārhaspatyāḥ | 48 |
 KAZ01.15.49/ "vimśatim" ity auśanasāḥ | 49 |
 KAZ01.15.50/ yathā.sāmarthyam iti kauṭilyaḥ | 50 |
 KAZ01.15.51/ te hy asya sva.pakṣaṁ para.pakṣaṁ ca cintayeyuḥ | 51 |
 KAZ01.15.52/ akr̥ta.ārambham ārabdha.anuṣṭhānam anuṣṭhita.viśeṣaṁ niyoga.sampadaṁ ca karmanāṁ kuryuḥ | 52 |
 KAZ01.15.53/ āsannaiḥ saha karmāṇi paśyet | 53 |
 KAZ01.15.54/ anāsannaiḥ saha pattra.sampreṣaṇena mantrayeta | 54 |
 KAZ01.15.55/ indrasya hi mantri.pariṣad.r̥ṣiṇāṁ sahasram | 55 |
 KAZ01.15.56/ sa tac cakṣuḥ | 56 |
 KAZ01.15.57/ tasmād imaṁ dvya.akṣaṁ sahasra.akṣaṁ āhuḥ | 57 |
 KAZ01.15.58/ ātyayike kārye mantriṇo mantri.pariṣadaṁ ca-āhūya brūyāt | 58 |
 KAZ01.15.59/ tatra yad.bhūyiṣṭhā brūyuḥ kārya.siddhi.karaṁ vā tat kuryāt | 59 | kurvataś ca –
 KAZ01.15.60ab/ na-asya guhyaṁ pare vidyuś chidraṁ vidyāt parasya ca |
 KAZ01.15.60cd/ gūhet kūrma-iva-aṅgāni yat syād vivṛtam ātmanaḥ || 60 ||
 KAZ01.15.61ab/ yathā hy aśrotriyaḥ śrāddhaṁ na satāṁ bhoktum arhati |
 KAZ01.15.61cd/ evam aśruta.śāstra.artho na mantraṁ śrotum arhati || 61 ||

1.16 Chapter 16 (Section 12): Rules for the Envoy

17

KAZ01.16.01/ udvṛtta.mantro dūta.praṇidhiḥ | 1 |
 KAZ01.16.02/ amātya.sampadā-upeto niṣṛṣṭa.arthaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ01.16.03/ pāda.guṇa.hīnaḥ parimita.arthaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ01.16.04/ ardha.guṇa.hīnaḥ śāsana.haraḥ | 4 |
 KAZ01.16.05/ suprativihita.yāna.vāhana.puruṣa.pariavāpaḥ pratiṣṭheta | 5 |
 KAZ01.16.06/ śāsanam evaṁ vācyaḥ paraḥ, sa vakṣyaty evam, tasya-idaṁ prativākyaṁ, evam atisandhātavyam, ity adhīyāno gacchet | 6 |
 KAZ01.16.07/ aṭavy.anta.pāla.pura.rāṣṭra.mukhyaś ca pratisamsargaṁ gacchet | 7 |
 KAZ01.16.08/ anika.sthāna.yuddha.pratigraha.apasāra.bhūmīr ātmanaḥ parasya ca-avekṣeta | 8 |
 KAZ01.16.09/ durga.rāṣṭra.pramāṇaṁ sāra.vṛtti.guptic.chidrāṇi ca-upalabheta | 9 |
 KAZ01.16.10/ para.adhiṣṭhānam anujñātaḥ pravīset | 10 |
 KAZ01.16.11/ śāsanam ca yathā.uktaṁ brūyāt, prāṇa.ābādhe 'pi dṛṣṭe | 11 |
 KAZ01.16.12/ parasya vāci vaktre dṛṣṭyāṁ ca prasādaṁ vākya.pūjanam iṣṭa.paripraśnaṁ guṇa.kathā.saṅgam āsannam āsanaṁ satkāram iṣṭeṣu smaraṇaṁ viśvāsa.gamanaṁ ca lakṣayet tuṣṭasya, viparītam atuṣṭasya | 12 |
 KAZ01.16.13/ taṁ brūyāt - "dūta.mukhā hi rājānaḥ, tvaṁ ca-anye ca | 13 |
 KAZ01.16.14/ tasmād udyateṣv api śastreṣu yathā.uktaṁ vaktāro dūtāḥ | 14 |
 KAZ01.16.15/ teṣāṁ anta.avasāyino 'py avadhyāḥ, kim aṅga punar brāhmaṇāḥ | 15 |
 KAZ01.16.16/ parasya-etaḥ vākyaṁ | 16 |
 KAZ01.16.17/ eṣa dūta.dharmaḥ" iti | 17 |
 KAZ01.16.18/ vased avisṛṣṭaḥ pūjayā na-utsiktaḥ | 18 |
 KAZ01.16.19/ pareṣu balitvaṁ na manyeta | 19 |
 KAZ01.16.20/ vākyaṁ aniṣṭaṁ saheta | 20 |
 KAZ01.16.21/ striyaḥ pānaṁ ca varjayet | 21 |

¹⁷[K tr. 41 :: K2 tr. 36

- KAZ01.16.22/ ekaḥ śayīta | 22 |
 KAZ01.16.23/ supta.mattayor hi bhāva.jñānaṁ dṛṣṭam | 23 |
 KAZ01.16.24/ kṛtya.pakṣa.upajāpam akr̥tya.pakṣe gūḍha.praṇidhānaṁ rāga.aparāgau
 bhartari randhraṁ ca prakṛtīnāṁ tāpasa.vaidehaka.vyañjanābhyām upalabheta, taylor
 antevāsibhiś cikitsaka.pāṣaṇḍa.vyañjana.ubhaya.vetanair vā | 24 |
 KAZ01.16.25/ teṣāṁ asambhāṣāyām yācaka.matta.unmatta.supta.pralāpaiḥ
 puṇya.sthāna.deva.gr̥ha.citra.lekhyā.sañjñābhīr vā cāram upalabheta | 25 |
 KAZ01.16.26/ upalabdhasya-upajāpam upeyāt | 26 |
 KAZ01.16.27/ pareṇa ca-uktaḥ svāsāṁ prakṛtīnāṁ pramāṇaṁ na-ācakṣīta | 27 |
 KAZ01.16.28/ "sarvaṁ veda bhavān" iti brūyāt, kārya.siddhi.karaṁ vā | 28 |
 KAZ01.16.29/ kāryasya-asiddhāv uparudhyamānas tarkayet - "kiṁ bhartur me vyasanam
 āsannaṁ paśyan, svām vā vyasanaṁ pratikartu.kāmaḥ, pārṣṇi.grāham āsāram antaḥ.kopam
 āṭavikaṁ vā samutthāpayitu.kāmaḥ, mitram ākrandaṁ vā vyāghātayitu.kāmaḥ, svām vā
 parato vigrahaṁ antaḥ.kopam āṭavikaṁ vā pratikartu.kāmaḥ, saṁsiddhaṁ vā me bhartur
 yātrā.kālam abhihantu.kāmaḥ, sasya.paṇya.kupya.saṅgrahaṁ durga.karma.bala.samuddānaṁ
 vā kartu.kāmaḥ, sva.sainyānāṁ vā vyāyāmasya deśa.kālāv ākāṅkṣamāṇaḥ,
 paribhava.pramādābhyām vā, saṁsarga.anubandha.arthī vā, mām uparuṇaddhi" iti | 29 |
 KAZ01.16.30/ jñātvā vased apasared vā | 30 |
 KAZ01.16.31/ prayojanam iṣṭam avekṣeta vā | 31 |
 KAZ01.16.32/ śāsanam aniṣṭam uktvā bandha.vadha.bhayād avisṛṣṭo 'py apagacchet, anyathā
 niyamyeta | 32 |
 KAZ01.16.33ab/ preṣaṇaṁ sandhi.pālatvaṁ pratāpo mitra.saṅgrahaḥ |
 KAZ01.16.33cd/ upajāpaḥ suhr̥d.bhedo gūḍha.daṇḍa.atiśāraṇam || 33 ||
 KAZ01.16.34ab/ bandhu.ratna.apaharaṇaṁ cāra.jñānaṁ parākramaḥ |
 KAZ01.16.34cd/ samādhi.mokṣo dūtasya karma yogasya ca-āśrayaḥ || 34 ||
 KAZ01.16.35ab/ sva.dūtaiḥ kārayed etat para.dūtāmś ca rakṣayet |
 KAZ01.16.35cd/ pratidūta.apasarpābhyām dṛśya.adṛśyaiś ca rakṣibhiḥ || 35 ||

1.17 Chapter 17 (Section 13): Guarding against Princes

18

- KAZ01.17.01/ rakṣito rājā rājyaṁ rakṣaty āsannebhyāḥ parebhyāś ca, pūrvaṁ dārebhyāḥ
 putrebhyāś ca | 1 |
 KAZ01.17.02/ dāra.rakṣaṇaṁ niśānta.praṇidhau vakṣyāmaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ01.17.03/ "putra.rakṣaṇaṁ tu | 3 |
 KAZ01.17.04/ "janma.prabhṛti rāja.putrān rakṣet | 4 |
 KAZ01.17.05/ karkaṭaka.sadharmāṇo hi janaka.bhakṣā rāja.putrāḥ | 5 |
 KAZ01.17.06/ teṣāṁ ajāta.snehe pitary upāṁśu.daṇḍaḥ śreyān" iti bhāradvājaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ01.17.07/ "nṛśaṁsam aduṣṭa.vadhaḥ kṣatra.bīja.vināśaś ca" iti viśāla.akṣaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ01.17.08/ "tasmād eka.sthāna.avarodhaḥ śreyān" iti | 8 |
 KAZ01.17.09/ ahi.bhayam etad" iti pārāśarāḥ | 9 |
 KAZ01.17.10/ "kumāro hi "vikrama.bhayān mām pitā-avaruṇaddhi" iti jñātvā tam eva-anke
 kuryāt | 10 |
 KAZ01.17.11/ tasmād anta.pāla.durge vāsaḥ śreyān" iti | 11 |
 KAZ01.17.12/ "aurabhraṁ bhayam etad" iti piśunaḥ | 12 |
 KAZ01.17.13/ "pratyāpatter hi tad eva kāraṇaṁ jñātvā-anta.pāla.sakhaḥ syāt | 13 |
 KAZ01.17.14/ tasmāt sva.viśayād apakṛṣṭe sāmanta.durge vāsaḥ śreyān" iti | 14 |
 KAZ01.17.15/ "vatsa.sthānam etad" iti kauṇapadantaḥ | 15 |

¹⁸[K tr. 44 :: K2 tr. 39

- KAZ01.17.16/ "vatsena-iva hi dhenum pitaram asya sāmanto duhyāt | 16 |
- KAZ01.17.17/ tasmān mātṛ.bandhuṣu vāsaḥ śreyān" iti | 17 |
- KAZ01.17.18/ "dhvaja.sthānam etad" iti vāta.vyādhiḥ | 18 |
- KAZ01.17.19/ "tena hi dhvajena-aditi.kauśikavad asya mātṛ.bāndhavā bhikṣeran | 19 |
- KAZ01.17.20/ tasmād grāmya sukheṣv enam avasṛjet | 20 |
- KAZ01.17.21/ sukha.uparuddhā hi putrāḥ pitaram na-abhidruhyanti" iti | 21 |
- KAZ01.17.22/ jīvan.maraṇam etad iti kauṭilyaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ01.17.23/ kāṣṭham iva ghuṇa.jagdham rāja.kulam avinīta.putram abhiyukta.mātram bhajyeta | 23 |
- KAZ01.17.24/ tasmād ṛtumatyām mahiṣyām ṛtvijaś carum aindrābārhaspatyam nirvapeyuh | 24 |
- KAZ01.17.25/ āpanna.sattvāyāḥ kaumāra.bhr̥tyo garbha.bharmani prasave ca viyateta | 25 |
- KAZ01.17.26/ prajātāyāḥ putra.samskāram purohitaḥ kuryāt | 26 |
- KAZ01.17.27/ samartham tadvido vinayeyuh | 27 |
- KAZ01.17.28/ "sattriṇam ekaś ca-enam mṛgayā.dyūta.madya.strībhiḥ pralobhayet "pitari vikramya rājyam gṛhṇa" iti | 28 |
- KAZ01.17.29/ tam anyaḥ sattriḥ pratiśedhayet" ity āmbhīyāḥ | 29 |
- KAZ01.17.30/ mahā.doṣam abuddha.bodhanam it kauṭilyaḥ | 30 |
- KAZ01.17.31/ navam hi dravyam yena yena-artha.jātena-upadihyate tat tad ācūṣati | 31 |
- KAZ01.17.32/ evam ayaṁ nava.buddhir yad yad ucyate tat tat.śāstra.upadeśam iva-abhijānāti | 32 |
- KAZ01.17.33/ tasmād dharmyam arthyaṁ ca-asya-upadiśen na-adharmyam anarthyam ca | 33 |
- KAZ01.17.34/ sattriṇas tv enam "tava smaḥ" iti vadantaḥ pālayeyuh | 34 |
- KAZ01.17.35/ yauvana.utsekāt para.strīṣu manaḥ kurvāṇam āryā.vyañjanābhiḥ strībhir amedhyābhiḥ śūnya.āgāreṣu rātrāv udvejeyeyuh | 35 |
- KAZ01.17.36/ madya.kāmaṁ yoga.pānena-udvejeyeyuh | 36 |
- KAZ01.17.37/ dyūta.kāmaṁ kāpaṭikair udvejeyeyuh | 37 |
- KAZ01.17.38/ mṛgayā.kāmaṁ pratirodhaka.vyañjanais trāsayeyuh | 38 |
- KAZ01.17.39/ pitari vikrama.buddhiṁ "tathā" ity anupraviśya bhedayeyuh - "aprārthanīyo rājā, vipanne ghātaḥ, sampanne naraka.pātaḥ, saṅkrośaḥ, prajābhir eka.loṣṭa.vadhaś ca" iti | 39 |
- KAZ01.17.40/ virāgaṁ vedayeyuh | 40 |
- KAZ01.17.41/ priyam eka.putram badhnīyāt | 41 |
- KAZ01.17.42/ bahu.putraḥ pratyantam anya.viśayam vā preṣayed yatra garbhaḥ paṇyam ḍimbo vā na bhavet | 42 |
- KAZ01.17.43/ ātma.sampannaṁ saināpatye yauvarāje vā sthāpayet | 43 |
- KAZ01.17.44/ buddhimān.āhārya.buddhir durbuddhir iti putra.viśeṣaḥ | 44 |
- KAZ01.17.45/ śiṣyamāṇo dharma.arthāv upalabhate ca-anuṭiṣṭhati ca buddhimān | 45 |
- KAZ01.17.46/ upalabhamāno na-anuṭiṣṭhaty āhārya.buddhiḥ | 46 |
- KAZ01.17.47/ apāya.nityo dharma.artha.dveṣi ca-iti durbuddhiḥ | 47 |
- KAZ01.17.48/ sa yady eka.putraḥ putra.utpattāv asya prayateta | 48 |
- KAZ01.17.49/ putrikā.putrān utpādayed vā | 49 |
- KAZ01.17.50/ vṛddhas tu vyādrito vā rājā mātṛ.bandhu.kulya.guṇavat.sāmāntānām anyatamena kṣetre bījam utpādayet | 50 |
- KAZ01.17.51/ na ca-eka.putram avinītaṁ rāje sthāpayet | 51 |
- KAZ01.17.52ab/ bahūnām eka.samrodhaḥ pitā putra.hito bhavet |
- KAZ01.17.52cd/ anyatra-āpada aiśvaryaṁ jyeṣṭha.bhāgi tu pūjyate || 52 ||
- KAZ01.17.53ab/ kulasya vā bhaved rājyam kula.saṅgho hi durjayah |

KAZ01.17.53cd/ arāja.vyasana.ābādhaḥ śaśvad āvasati kṣitim || 53 ||

1.18 Chapter 18 (Sections 14; 15): Conduct of the Prince in Disfavour; Behaviour towards a Prince in Disfavour

19

KAZ01.18.01/ vinīto rāja.putraḥ kṛcchra.vṛttir asadrīṣe karmaṇi niyuktaḥ pitaram anuvarteta, anyatra prāṇa.ābādhaka.prakṛti.kopaka.pātakebhyaḥ | 1 |

KAZ01.18.02/ puṇye karmaṇi niyuktaḥ puruṣam adhiṣṭhātāraṁ yācet | 2 |

KAZ01.18.03/ puruṣa.adhiṣṭhitaś ca saviśeṣam ādeśam anuṣiṣṭhet | 3 |

KAZ01.18.04/ abhirūpaṁ ca karma.phalam aupāyanikaṁ ca lābhaṁ pitur upanāyayet | 4 |

KAZ01.18.05/ tathā-apy atusyantam anyasmin putre dāreṣu vā snihyantam

araṇyāya-āpṛccheta | 5 |

KAZ01.18.06/ bandha.vadha.bhayād vā yaḥ sāmanto nyāya.vṛttir dhārmikaḥ

satya.vāg.avisamvādakaḥ pratigrahītā mānayitā ca-abhipannānām tam āśrayeta | 6 |

KAZ01.18.07/ tatrasthaḥ kośa.daṇḍa.sampannaḥ pravīra.puruṣa.kanyā.sambandham

aṭavī.sambandhaṁ kṛtya.pakṣa.upagrahaṁ ca kuryāt | 7 |

KAZ01.18.08/ eka.carāḥ suvarṇa.pāka.maṇi.rāga.hema.rūpya.paṇya.ākara.karma.antān ājīvet | 8 |

KAZ01.18.09/ pāṣaṇḍa.saṅgha.dravyam aśrotriya.upabhogyam vā deva.dravyam

ādhyā.vidhavā.dravyam vā gūḍham anupraviśya sārtha.yāna.pātrāṇi ca

madana.rasa.yogena-atisandhāya-apaharet | 9 |

KAZ01.18.10/ pāragrāmikaṁ vā yogam ātiṣṭhet | 10 |

KAZ01.18.11/ mātuh parijana.upagraheṇa vā ceṣṭeta | 11 |

KAZ01.18.12/ kāru.śilpi.kuśīlava.cikitsaka.vāg.jīvana.pāṣaṇḍac.chadmabhir vā naṣṭa.rūpas

tad.vyañjana.sakhaś.chidreṣu praviśya rājñāḥ śāstra.rasābhyām prahr̥tya brūyāt - "aham asau

kumāraḥ, saha.bhogyam idam rājyam, eko na-arhati bhoktum, ye kāmāyante mām bhartum

tān ahaṁ dviguṇena bhakta.vetanena-upasthāsyāmi" iti | 12 | ity aparuddha.vṛttam |

KAZ01.18.13/ aparuddhaṁ tu mukhya.putra.apasarpāḥ pratipādyā-ānayeyuḥ, mātā vā pratigrahītā | 13 |

KAZ01.18.14/ tyaktaṁ gūḍha.puruṣāḥ śāstra.rasābhyām hanyuḥ | 14 |

KAZ01.18.15/ atyaktaṁ tulya.śīlābhiḥ strībhiḥ pānena mṛgayayā vā prasañjayitvā rātrāv

upagṛhya-ānayeyuḥ | 15 |

KAZ01.18.16ab/ upasthitaṁ ca rājyena mad.ūrdhvam iti sāntvayet |

KAZ01.18.16cd/ ekastham atha samrundhyāt putravāms tu pravāsayet || 16 ||

1.19 Chapter 19 (Section 16): Rules for the King

20

KAZ01.19.01/ rājānam utthitam anūttiṣṭhante bhṛtyāḥ | 1 |

KAZ01.19.02/ pramādyantam anupramādyanti | 2 |

KAZ01.19.03/ karmāṇi ca-asya bhakṣayanti | 3 |

KAZ01.19.04/ dviṣadbhiś ca-atisandhīyate | 4 |

KAZ01.19.05/ tasmād utthānam ātmanaḥ kurvīta | 5 |

KAZ01.19.06/ nālikābhir ahar aṣṭadhā rātriṁ ca vibhajet, chāyā.pramāṇena vā | 6 |

KAZ01.19.07/ tripauruṣī pauraṣī catur.aṅgulā naṣṭac.chāyo madhya.ahna-iti catvāraḥ pūrve

divasasya-aṣṭa.bhāgāḥ | 7 |

KAZ01.19.08/ taiḥ paścimā vyākhyātāḥ | 8 |

¹⁹[K tr. 49 :: K2 tr. 43

²⁰[K tr. 51 :: K2 tr. 45

- KAZ01.19.09/ tatra pūrve divasasya-aṣṭa.bhāge rakṣā.vidhānam āya.vyayau ca śṛṇuyāt | 9 |
 KAZ01.19.10/ dvitīye paura.jānapadānām kāryāṇi paśyet | 10 |
 KAZ01.19.11/ tṛtīye snāna.bhojanam seveta, svādhyāyam ca kurvīta | 11 |
 KAZ01.19.12/ caturthe hiraṇya.pratigrahaṁ adhyakṣāṁś ca kurvīta | 12 |
 KAZ01.19.13/ pañcame mantri.pariṣadā pattra.sampreṣaṇena mantrayeta,
 cāra.guhya.bodhanīyāni ca budhyeta | 13 |
 KAZ01.19.14/ ṣaṣṭhe svaira.vihāraṁ mantraṁ vā seveta | 14 |
 KAZ01.19.15/ saptame hasty.aśva.ratha.āyudhīyān paśyet | 15 |
 KAZ01.19.16/ aṣṭame senā.pati.sakho vikramaṁ cintayet | 16 |
 KAZ01.19.17/ pratiṣṭhite 'hani sandhyām upāsīta | 17 |
 KAZ01.19.18/ prathame rātri.bhāge gūḍha.puruṣān paśyet | 18 |
 KAZ01.19.19/ dvitīye snāna.bhojanam kurvīta, svādhyāyam ca | 19 |
 KAZ01.19.20/ tṛtīye tūrya.ghoṣeṇa saṁviṣṭaś caturtha.pañcamau śayīta | 20 |
 KAZ01.19.21/ ṣaṣṭhe tūrya.ghoṣeṇa pratibuddhaḥ śāstram itikartavyatām ca cintayet | 21 |
 KAZ01.19.22/ saptame mantraṁ adhyāsīta, gūḍha.puruṣāṁś ca preṣayet | 22 |
 KAZ01.19.23/ aṣṭame ṛtviḡ.ācārya.purohita.svastyayanāni pratigṛhṇīyāt,
 cikitsaka.māhānasika.mauhūrtikāṁś ca paśyet | 23 |
 KAZ01.19.24/ savastām dhenum vṛṣabhaṁ ca pradakṣiṇī.kṛtya-upasthānam gacchet | 24 |
 KAZ01.19.25/ ātma.bala.ānukūlyena vā niśā.ahar.bhāgān pravibhajya kāryāṇi seveta | 25 |
 KAZ01.19.26/ upasthāna.gataḥ kārya.arthinām advāra.āsaṅgaṁ kārayet | 26 |
 KAZ01.19.27/ durdarśo hi rājā kārya.akārya.viparyāsam āsannaḥ kāryate | 27 |
 KAZ01.19.28/ tena prakṛti.kopam ari.vaśam vā gacchet | 28 |
 KAZ01.19.29/ tasmād devatā.āśrama.pāṣaṇḍa.śrotriya.paśu.puṇya.sthānānām
 bāla.vṛddha.vyādhita.vyasany.anāthānām strīṇām ca krameṇa kāryāṇi paśyet, kārya.gauravād
 ātyayika.vaśena vā | 29 |
 KAZ01.19.30ab/ sarvam ātyayikaṁ kāryam śṛṇuyān na-atipātayet | ²¹
 KAZ01.19.30cd/ kṛcchra.sādhyam atikrāntam asādhyam vā-api jāyate || 30 || ²²
 KAZ01.19.31ab/ agny.agāra.gataḥ kāryam paśyed vaidya.tapasvinām | ²³
 KAZ01.19.31cd/ purohita.ācārya.sakhaḥ pratyutthāya-abhivādyā ca || 31 || ²⁴
 KAZ01.19.32ab/ tapasvinām tu kāryāṇi traividyaiḥ saha kārayet | ²⁵
 KAZ01.19.32cd/ mājā.yogavidām caiva na svayam kopa.kāraṇāt || 32 || ²⁶
 KAZ01.19.33ab/ rājño hi vratam utthānam yajñāḥ kārya.anuśāsanam | ²⁷
 KAZ01.19.33cd/ dakṣiṇā vṛtti.sāmyam tu dīkṣā tasya-abhiṣecanam || 33 || ²⁸
 KAZ01.19.34ab/ prajā.sukhe sukhaṁ rājñāḥ prajānām ca hite hitam | ²⁹
 KAZ01.19.34cd/ na-ātma.priyam hitam rājñāḥ prajānām tu priyam hitam || 34 || ³⁰
 KAZ01.19.35ab/ tasmān nitya.utthito rājā kuryād artha.anuśāsanam |
 KAZ01.19.35cd/ arthasya mūlam utthānam anarthasya viparyayaḥ || 35 || ³¹
 KAZ01.19.36ab/ anutthāne dhruvo nāśaḥ prāptasya-anāgatasya ca | ³²

²¹KAZ01.19.30ab/ ś²²KAZ01.19.30cd/ ś²³KAZ01.19.31ab/ ś²⁴KAZ01.19.31cd/ ś²⁵KAZ01.19.32ab/ ś²⁶KAZ01.19.32cd/ ś²⁷KAZ01.19.33ab/ ś²⁸KAZ01.19.33cd/ ś²⁹KAZ01.19.34ab/ ś³⁰KAZ01.19.34cd/ ś³¹KAZ01.19.35cd/ ś³²KAZ01.19.36ab/ ś

KAZ01.19.36cd/ prāpyate phalam utthānāl labhate ca-arthasampadam || 36 || ³³

1.20 Chapter 20 (Section 17): Regulations for the Royal Residence

34

KAZ01.20.01/ vāstuka.praśaste deśe saprākāra.parikhā.dvāram aneka.kakṣyā.parigatam antaḥpuram kārayet | 1 |

KA01.20.02/ kośagrha.vidhānena madhye vāsa.grham, gūḍha.bhitti.sañcāram mohana.grham tan.madhye vā vāsa.grham, bhūmi.grham vā-āsanna.caitya.kāṣṭha.devatā.apidhāna.dvāram aneka.suruṅgā.sañcāram tasya-upari prāsādam gūḍha.bhitti.sopānam suṣira.stambha.praveśa.apasāram vā vāsa.grham yantra.baddha.tala.avapātam kārayet, āpat.pratīkāra.artham āpadi vā | 2 |

KAZ01.20.03/ ato 'nyathā vā vikalpayet, saha.adhyāyi.bhayāt | 3 |

KAZ01.20.04/ mānuṣeṇa-agninā trir apasavyam parigatam antaḥpuram agnir anyo na dahati, na ca-atra-anyo 'gnir jvalati, vaidyutena bhasmanā mṛt.samyuktena karaka.vāriṇā-avaliptam ca | 4 |

KAZ01.20.05/ jīvantī.śvetā.muṣkaka.puṣpa.vandākābhīr akṣīve jātasya-aśvatthasya pratānena guptam sarpā viṣāṇi vā na prabhavanti | 5 |

KAZ01.20.06/ mayūra.nakula.pṛṣata.utsargaḥ sarpān bhakṣayati | 6 |

KAZ01.20.07/ śukaḥ sārīkā bhr̥ṅga.rājo vā sarpa.viṣa.śaṅkāyām krośati | 7 |

KAZ01.20.08/ krauñco viṣa.abhyāśe mādyati, glāyati jīvam.jīvakaḥ, mriyate matta.kokilaḥ, cakorasya-akṣiṇī virajyete | 8 |

KAZ01.20.09/ ity evam agni.viṣa.sarpebhyaḥ pratikurvīta | 9 |

KAZ01.20.10/ pṛṣṭhataḥ kakṣyā.vibhāge strī.niveśo garbha.vyādhi.samsthā vṛkṣa.udaka.sthānam ca | 10 |

KAZ01.20.11/ bahiḥ kanyā.kumāra.puram | 11 |

KAZ01.20.12/ purastād alaṅkāra.bhūmir mantra.bhūmir upasthānam kumāra.adhyakṣa.sthānam ca | 12 |

KAZ01.20.13/ kakṣya.antareṣv antarvaṁśika.sainyam tiṣṭhet | 13 |

KAZ01.20.14/ antar.grha.gataḥ sthavira.strī.pariśuddhām devīm paśyet | 14 |

KAZ01.20.15/ devī.grhe līno hi bhrātā bhadrasenam jaghāna, mātuh śayyā.antargataś ca putraḥ kārūṣam | 15 |

KAZ01.20.16/ lājān madhunā-iti viṣeṇa paryasya devī kāśī.rājam, viṣa.digdheṇa nūpreṇa vairantyam, mekhalā.maṇinā sauviram, jālūtham ādarśena, veṇyām gūḍham śastraṁ kṛtvā devī vidūratham jaghāna | 16 |

KAZ01.20.17/ tasmād etāny āspadāni pariharet | 17 |

KAZ01.20.18/ muṇḍa.jaṭila.kuhaka.pratisamsargam bāhyābhiś ca dāsībhiḥ pratiśedhayet | 18 |

KAZ01.20.19/ na ca-enāḥ kulyāḥ paśyeyuḥ, anyatra garbha.vyādhi.samsthābhyaḥ | 19 |

KAZ01.20.20/ rūpa.ājīvāḥ snāna.pragharṣa.śuddha.śarīrāḥ parivartita.vastra.alaṅkārah paśyeyuḥ | 20 |

KAZ01.20.21/ aśītikāḥ puruṣāḥ pañcāśatkāḥ striyo vā mātā.pitr.vyañjanāḥ sthavira.varṣadhara.abhyāgārikāś ca-avarodhānām śauca.āśaucam vidyuh, sthāpayeyuś ca svāmi.hite, | 21 |

KAZ01.20.22ab/ sva.bhūmau ca vaset sarvaḥ para.bhūmau na sañcāret | ³⁵

KAZ01.20.22cd/ na ca bāhyena samsargam kaścid ābhyantaro vrajet || 22 || ³⁶

³³KAZ01.19.36cd/ ś

³⁴[K tr. 54 :: K2 tr. 48

³⁵KAZ01.20.22ab/ ś

³⁶KAZ01.20.22cd/ ś

KAZ01.20.23ab/ sarvaṁ ca-avekṣitaṁ dravyaṁ nibaddha.āgama.nirgamam | ³⁷

KAZ01.20.23cd/ nirgacched abhigacched vā mudrā.saṅkrānta.bhūmikam || 23 || ³⁸

1.21 Chapter 21 (Section 18): Protection of the King's Person

³⁹

KAZ01.21.01/ śayanād utthitāḥ strī.gaṇair dhanvibhiḥ parigrhyate, dvitīyasyām kakṣyāyām kaṇcuka.uṣṇiṣibhir varṣa.dhara.abhyāgārikaiḥ, tṛtīyasyām kubja.vāmana.kirātaiḥ, caturthyām mantribhiḥ sambandhibhir dauvārikaiś ca prāsa.pāṇibhiḥ | 1 |

KAZ01.21.02/ pitṛ.paitāmahaṁ sambandha.anubaddhaṁ śikṣitam anuraktaṁ kṛta.karmāṇaṁ ca janam āsannaṁ kurvīta, na-anyato.deśīyam akṛta.artha.mānaṁ sva.deśīyaṁ vā-apy apakṛtya-upagṛhītaṁ | 2 |

KAZ01.21.03/ antar.vamśika.sainyaṁ rājānam antaḥpuraṁ ca rakṣet | 3 |

KAZ01.21.04/ gupte deśe mātānasikaḥ sarvaṁ āsvāda.bāhulyena karma kārayet | 4 |

KAZ01.21.05/ tad rājā tathaiva pratibhuñjīta pūrvam agnaye vayobhyaś ca balim kṛtvā | 5 |

KAZ01.21.06/ agner jvālā.dhūma.nīlatā śabda.sphoṭanaṁ ca viṣa.yuktasya, vayasāṁ vipattīś ca | 6 |

KAZ01.21.07a/ annasya ūṣmā mayūra.grīva.ābhāḥ śaityaṁ āśu kliṣṭasya-iva vaivarṇyaṁ sa-udakatvam aklinnatvaṁ ca -

KAZ01.21.07b/ vyañjanānām āśu śuṣkatvaṁ ca

kvātha.dhyāma.phena.paṭala.vicchinnā.bhāvo gandha.sparśa.rasa.vadhaś ca -

KAZ01.21.07c/ draveṣu hīna.atiriktac.chāyā.darśanaṁ

phena.paṭala.sīmanta.ūrdhva.rājī.darśanaṁ ca -

KAZ01.21.07d/ rasasya madhye nīlā rājī, payasas tāmṛā, madya.toyayoḥ kālī, dadhnaḥ śyāmā, madhunaḥ śvetā, dravyāṇām ādrāṇām āśu pramlānatvam utpakva.bhāvaḥ

kvātha.nīla.śyāvātā ca -

KAZ01.21.07e/ śuṣkāṇām āśu śātanaṁ vaivarṇyaṁ ca, -

KAZ01.21.07f/ kaṭhinānām mṛdutvaṁ mṛdūnām ca kaṭhinatvam, tad.abhyāse

kṣudra.sattva.vadhaś ca, -

KAZ01.21.07g/ āstaraṇa.pravaraṇānām dhyāma.maṇḍalatā tanturoma.pakṣma.śātanaṁ ca, -

KAZ01.21.07h/ loha.maṇimayānām paṅkama.lopadehatā

sneha.rāga.gaurava.prabhāva.varṇa.sparśavadhaś ca - iti viṣayuktasya līṅgāni | 7 |

KAZ01.21.08/ viṣa.pradasya tu śuṣka.śyāva.vaktratā vāk.saṅgaḥ svedo vijṛmbhaṇaṁ

ca-atimātraṁ vepathuḥ praskhalanaṁ vākya.viprekṣaṇam āvegaḥ karmaṇi sva.bhūmau

ca-anavasthānam iti | 8 |

KAZ01.21.09/ tasmād asya jāṅgulivido bhiṣajaś ca-āsannāḥ syuḥ | 9 |

KAZ01.21.10/ bhiṣag.bhaiṣajya.agārād āsvāda.viśuddham auṣadham gṛhītvā

pācaka.peṣakābhyām ātmanā ca pratisvādyā rājñe prayacchet | 10 |

KAZ01.21.11/ pānaṁ pānīyaṁ ca-auṣadhena vyākhyātam | 11 |

KAZ01.21.12/ kalpaka.prasādhakāḥ snāna.śuddha.vastra.hastāḥ samudram upakaraṇam

antarvamśika.hastād ādāya paricareyuḥ | 12 |

KAZ01.21.13/ snāpaka.saṁvāhaka.āstaraka.rajaka.mālā.kāra.karma dāsyāḥ prasiddha.śaucāḥ kuryuḥ, tābhir adhiṣṭhitā vā śilpinaḥ | 13 |

KAZ01.21.14/ ātma.cakṣuṣi niveśya vastra.mālyam dadyuḥ,

snāna.anulepana.pragharṣa.cūrṇa.vāsa.snānīyāni ca sva.vakṣo.bāhuṣu ca | 14 |

KAZ01.21.15/ etena parasmād āgatakaṁ vyākhyātam | 15 |

³⁷KAZ01.20.23ab/ ś

³⁸KAZ01.20.23cd/ ś

³⁹[K tr. 58 :: K2 tr. 51

KAZ01.21.16/ kuṣīlavāḥ śastra.agni.rasa.krīḍā.varjaṁ narmayeyuḥ | 16 |
 KAZ01.21.17/ ātodyāni ca-eṣāṁ antas tiṣṭheyuḥ, aśva.ratha.dvipa.alaṅkāraś ca | 17 |
 KAZ01.21.18/ āpta.puruṣa.adhiṣṭhitam yāna.vāhanam ārohet, nāvaṁ
 ca-āpta.nāvika.adhiṣṭhitam | 18 |
 KAZ01.21.19/ anya.nau.pratibaddhām vāta.vega.vaśāṁ ca na-upeyāt | 19 |
 KAZ01.21.20/ udaka.ante sainyam āsīta | 20 |
 KAZ01.21.21/ matsya.grāha.viśuddham udakam avagāheta | 21 |
 KAZ01.21.22/ vyāla.grāha.viśuddham udyānam gacchet | 22 |
 KAZ01.21.23/ lubdhaka.śva.gaṇibhir apāsta.stena.vyāla.para.ābādha.bhayaṁ
 cala.lakṣya.paricaya.artham mṛga.aranyaṁ gacchet | 23 |
 KAZ01.21.24/ āpta.śastra.grāha.adhiṣṭhitaḥ siddha.tāpasam paśyet, mantri.pariṣadā saha
 sāmanta.dūtam | 24 |
 KAZ01.21.25/ samnaddho 'śvaṁ hastinaṁ vā-ārūḍhaḥ samnaddham anīkaṁ paśyet | 25 |
 KAZ01.21.26/ niryāṇe 'bhiyāne ca rāja.mārgam ubhayataḥ kṛta.āraḥsaṁ śastribhir daṇḍibhiḥ
 ca-apāsta.śastra.hasta.pravrajita.vyaṅgam gacchet | 26 |
 KAZ01.21.27/ na puruṣa.sambādham avagāheta | 27 |
 KAZ01.21.28/ yātrā.samāja.utsava.prahavaṇāni ca daśa.vargika.adhiṣṭhitāni gacchet | 28 |
 KAZ01.21.29ab/ yathā ca yoga.puruṣair anyān rājā-adhitiṣṭhati | ⁴⁰
 KAZ01.21.29cd/ tathā-ayam anya.ābādhebhya rakṣed ātmānam ātmavān || 29 || ⁴¹

2 Book 2: The Activity of the Heads of Departments

⁴²

2.1 Chapter 1 (Section 19): Settlement of the Countryside

⁴³

KAZ02.01.01/ bhūta.pūrvam abhūta.pūrvam vā jana.padam para.deśa.apavāhanena
 sva.deśa.abhiṣyanda.vamanena vā niveśayet | 1 |
 KAZ02.01.02/ śūdra.karṣaka.prāyam kula.śata.avaram pañca.kula.śata.param grāmaṁ
 krośad.vikrośa.sīmānam anyonya.āraḥsaṁ niveśayet | 2 |
 KAZ02.01.03/ nalī.śaila.vana.bhr̥ṣṭi.darī.setu.bandha.śamī.śālmālī.kṣīra.vṛkṣān anteṣu
 sīmnam sthāpayet | 3 |
 KAZ02.01.04/ aṣṭaśata.grāmyā madhye sthānīyam, catuḥśata.grāmyā droṇa.mukham,
 dviśata.grāmyāḥ kārvaṭikam, daśa.grāmī.saṅgrahaṇa saṅgraham sthāpayet | 4 |
 KAZ02.01.05/ anteṣv anta.pāla.durgāni jana.pada.dvārāny anta.pāla.adhiṣṭhitāni sthāpayet |
 5 |
 KAZ02.01.06/ teṣāṁ antarāṇi vāgurika.śabara.pulinda.caṇḍāla.aranya.carā rakṣeyuḥ | 6 |
 KAZ02.01.07a/ ṛtvig.ācārya.purohita.śrotriyebyo brahma.deyāny adaṇḍa.karāny
 abhirūpa.dāyādakāni prayacchet -
 KAZ02.01.07b/ adhyakṣa.saṅkhyāyaka.ādibhyo
 gopa.sthānika.anīkastha.cikitsaka.aśva.damaka.jaṅghākārikebhyaś ca vikraya.ādhanā.varjāni
 | 7 |
 KAZ02.01.08/ karadebhyaḥ kṛta.kṣetrāny aikapuruṣikāni prayacchet | 8 |
 KAZ02.01.09/ akṛtāni kartṛbhyo na-ādeyāni | 9 |
 KAZ02.01.10/ akṣatām āchidya-anyebhyaḥ prayacchet | 10 |

⁴⁰KAZ01.21.29ab/ ś

⁴¹KAZ01.21.29cd/ ś

⁴²[K tr. 62–218 :: K2 tr. 55–189

⁴³[K tr. 62 :: K2 tr. 55

- KAZ02.01.11/ grāma.bhṛta.vaidehakā vā kṛṣeyuḥ | 11 |
- KAZ02.01.12/ akrṣanto vā-avahīnaṁ dadyuḥ | 12 |
- KAZ02.01.13/ dhānya.paśu.hiraṇyais ca-etān anugṛhṇīyāt | 13 |
- KAZ02.01.14/ tāny anu sukkena dadyuḥ | 14 |
- KAZ02.01.15/ anugraha.parihārau ca-etebbhyaḥ kośa.vṛddhi.karau dadyāt,
kośa.upaghātakau varjayet | 15 |
- KAZ02.01.16/ alpa.kośo hi rājā paura.jānapadān eva grasate | 16 |
- KAZ02.01.17/ niveśa.sama.kālāṁ yathā.āgatakaṁ vā parihāraṁ dadyāt | 17 |
- KAZ02.01.18/ nivṛtta.parihārān pitā-iva-anugṛhṇīyāt | 18 |
- KAZ02.01.19/ ākara.karma.anta.dravya.hasti.vana.vraja.vaṇik.patha.pracārān
vāri.sthala.patha.paṇya.pattanāni ca niveśayet | 19 |
- KAZ02.01.20/ saha.udakam āhārya-udakaṁ vā setuṁ bandhayet | 20 |
- KAZ02.01.21/ anyeśāṁ vā badhnatām bhūmi.mārga.vṛkṣa.upakaraṇa.anugrahaṁ kuryāt,
puṇya.sthāna.ārāmāṇāṁ ca | 21 |
- KAZ02.01.22/ sambhūya.setu.bandhād apakrāmataḥ karmakara.balīvardaḥ karma kuryuḥ |
22 |
- KAZ02.01.23/ vyayakarmaṇi ca bhāgī syāt, na ca-amśaṁ labheta | 23 |
- KAZ02.01.24/ matsya.plava.hari.tapaṇyānāṁ setuṣu rājā svāmyaṁ gacchet | 24 |
- KAZ02.01.25/ dāsa.āhitaka.bandhūn aśṛṇvato rājā vinayaṁ grāhayet | 25 |
- KAZ02.01.26/ bāla.vṛddha.vyasany.anāthāṁś ca rājā bibhṛyāt, striyam aprajātām prajātāyaś
ca putrān | 26 |
- KAZ02.01.27/ bāla.dravyaṁ grāma.vṛddhā vardhayeyur ā vyavahāra.prāpaṇāt,
deva.dravyaṁ ca | 27 |
- KAZ02.01.28/ apatya.dāraṁ mātā.pitarau bhrātṛn aprāpta.vyavahārān bhaginīḥ kanyā
vidhavāś ca-abibhrataḥ śaktimato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, anyatra patitebhyaḥ, anyatra mātuh
| 28 |
- KAZ02.01.29/ putra.dāram apratividhāya pravrajataḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, striyam ca
pravrajayataḥ | 29 |
- KAZ02.01.30/ lupta.vyāyāmaḥ pravrajed āpṛcchya dharmasthān | 30 |
- KAZ02.01.31/ anyathā niyamyeta | 31 |
- KAZ02.01.32/ vānaprasthād anyāḥ pravrajita.bhāvaḥ, sajātād anyāḥ saṅghaḥ, sāmuthāyikād
anyāḥ samaya.anubandho vā na-asya jana.padam upaniviśeta | 32 |
- KAZ02.01.33/ na ca tatra-ārāmā vihāra.arthā vā śālāḥ syuḥ | 33 |
- KAZ02.01.34/ naṭa.nartaka.gāyana.vādaka.vāg.jīvana.kuśīlavā na karma.vighnaṁ kuryuḥ |
34 |
- KAZ02.01.35/ nirāśrayatvād grāmāṇāṁ kṣetra.abhīratatvāc ca puruṣāṇāṁ
kośa.viṣṭi.dravya.dhānya.rasa.vṛddhir bhavati | 35 |
- KAZ02.01.36ab/ para.cakra.aṭavī.grastaṁ vyādhi.durbhikṣa.pīḍitam | ⁴⁴
- KAZ02.01.36cd/ deśaṁ parihared rājā vyaya.krīḍāś ca vārayet || 36 || ⁴⁵
- KAZ02.01.37ab/ daṇḍa.viṣṭi.kara.ābādhai rakṣed upahatām kṛṣim | ⁴⁶
- KAZ02.01.37cd/ stena.vyāla.viṣa.grāhair vyādhibhiś ca paśu.vrajān || 37 || ⁴⁷
- KAZ02.01.38ab/ vallabhaiḥ karmikaiḥ stenair anta.pālaiś ca pīḍitam | ⁴⁸
- KAZ02.01.38cd/ śodhayet paśu.saṅghaiś ca kṣīyamāṇaṁ vaṇik.patham || 38 || ⁴⁹

⁴⁴KAZ02.01.36ab/ ś⁴⁵KAZ02.01.36cd/ ś⁴⁶KAZ02.01.37ab/ ś⁴⁷KAZ02.01.37cd/ ś⁴⁸KAZ02.01.38ab/ ś⁴⁹KAZ02.01.38cd/ ś

KAZ02.01.39ab/ evaṁ dravya.dvi.pavanam setu.bandham atha-ākarāṇ | ⁵⁰

KAZ02.01.39cd/ rakṣet pūrva.kṛtāṇ rājā navāṁś ca-abhipravartayet || 39 || ⁵¹

2.2 Chapter 2 (Section 20): Disposal of Non-agricultural Land

⁵²

KAZ02.2.01/ akṣyāyām bhūmau paśubhyo vivītāni prayacchet | 1 |

KAZ02.2.02/ pradiṣṭa.abhaya.sthāvara.jaṅgamāni ca brahma.soma.araṇyāni tapasvibhyo go.ruta.parāṇi prayacchet | 2 |

KAZ02.2.03/ tāvan.mātram eka.dvāraṁ khāta.guptaṁ svādu.phala.gulma.guccham akaṇṭaki.drumam uttāna.toya.āśayaṁ dānta.mṛga.catuṣpadaṁ bhagna.nakha.damṣṭra.vyālaṁ mārḡayuka.hasti.hastinika.labhaṁ mṛga.vanaṁ vihāra.arthaṁ rājñāḥ kārayet | 3 |

KAZ02.2.04/ sarva.atithi.mṛgaṁ pratyante ca-anyan.mṛga.vanaṁ bhūmi.vaśena vā niveśayet | 4 |

KAZ02.2.05/ kupya.pradiṣṭānām ca dravyāṇām eka.ekaśo vanāni niveśayet, dravya.vana.karma.antān aṭavīś ca dravya.vana.apāśrayāḥ | 5 |

KAZ02.2.06/ pratyante hasti.vanam aṭavy.ārakṣaṁ niveśayet | 6 |

KAZ02.2.07/ nāga.vana.adhyakṣaḥ pārvataṁ na-ādeyaṁ sāra.sama.anūpaṁ ca nāga.vanaṁ vidita.paryanta.praveśa.niṣkāsaṁ nāga.vana.pālaiḥ pālayet | 7 |

KAZ02.2.08/ hasti.ghātināṁ hanyuḥ | 8 |

KAZ02.2.09/ danta.yugaṁ svayaṁ.mṛtasya-āharataḥ sapāda.catuṣpaṇo lābhaḥ | 9 |

KAZ02.2.10/ nāga.vana.pālā hastipaka.pāda.pāśika.saimika.vana.caraka.pārikarmika.sakhā hasti.mūtra.purīṣac.channa.gandhā bhallātākī.śākhā.pracchannāḥ pañcabhiḥ saptabhir vā hasti.bandhakībhiḥ saha carantaḥ śayyā.sthāna.padyā.leṇḍa.kūla.ghāta.uddeśena hasti.kula.paryagraṁ vidyuḥ | 10 |

KAZ02.2.11/ yūtha.caram eka.caraṁ niryūthaṁ yūtha.patim hastinaṁ vyālaṁ mattaṁ potaṁ bandha.muktaṁ ca nibandhena vidyuḥ | 11 |

KAZ02.2.12/ anikastha.pramāṇaiḥ praśasta.vyañjana.ācārāṇ hastino gṛhṇīyuḥ | 12 |

KAZ02.2.13/ hasti.pradhānaṁ vijayo rājñāḥ | 13 |

KAZ02.2.14/ para.anika.vyūha.durga.skandha.āvāra.pramardanā hy atipramāṇa.śarīrāḥ prāṇa.hara.karmāṇo hastinaḥ | 14 |

KAZ02.2.15ab/ kāliṅga.aṅgarajāḥ śreṣṭhāḥ prācyāś cedi.karūṣajāḥ | ⁵³

KAZ02.2.15cd/ dāśārṇāś ca-apara.antāś ca dvipānām madhyamā matāḥ || 15 || ⁵⁴

KAZ02.2.16ab/ saurāṣṭrikāḥ pāñcanadās teṣāṁ pratyavarāḥ smṛtāḥ | ⁵⁵

KAZ02.2.16cd/ sarveṣāṁ karmaṇā vīryaṁ javaś tejaś ca vardhate || 16 || ⁵⁶

2.3 Chapter 3 (Section 21): Construction of Forts

⁵⁷

KAZ02.3.01/ caturdiśaṁ jana.pada.ante sāmparāyikaṁ daiva.kṛtaṁ durgaṁ kārayet, antar.dvīpaṁ sthalaṁ vā nimna.avaruddham audakam, prāstaraṁ guhāṁ vā pārvataṁ, nirudaka.stambam iriṇaṁ vā dhānvanam, khañjana.udakaṁ stamba.gahanaṁ vā vana.durgam | 1 |

⁵⁰KAZ02.01.39ab/ ś

⁵¹KAZ02.01.39cd/ ś

⁵²[K tr. 67 :: K2 tr. 59

⁵³KAZ02.2.15ab/ ś

⁵⁴KAZ02.2.15cd/ ś

⁵⁵KAZ02.2.16ab/ ś

⁵⁶KAZ02.2.16cd/ ś

⁵⁷[K tr. 69 :: K2 tr. 61

- KAZ02.3.02/ teṣāṁ nadī.parvata.durgam jana.pada.ārakṣa.sthānam, dhānvana.vana.durgam aṭavī.sthānam āpady apasāro vā | 2 |
- KAZ02.3.03/ jana.pada.madhye samudaya.sthānam sthānīyam niveśayet, vāstuka.praśaste deśe nadī.saṅgame hradasya-aviśoṣasya-aṅke sarasas taṭākasya vā, vṛttam dīrgham catur.aśram vā vāstu.vaśena vā pradakṣiṇa.udakam paṇya.puṭa.bhedanam aṁsapatha.vāri.pathābhyām upetam | 3 |
- KAZ02.3.04/ tasya parikhās tisro daṇḍa.antarāḥ kārayet caturdaśa dvādaśa daśa-iti daṇḍān vistīrṇāḥ, vistārād avagāḍhāḥ pāda.ūnam ardham vā, tribhāga.mūlāḥ, mūla.catur.aśrā vā, pāśāṇa.upahitāḥ pāśāṇa.iṣṭakā.baddha.pārśvā vā, toya.antikīr āgantu.toya.pūrṇā vā saparivāhāḥ padma.grāhavatīś ca | 4 |
- KAZ02.3.05/ caturdaṇḍa.apakṛṣṭam parikhāyāḥ ṣaḍdaṇḍa.ucchritam avaruddham tad.dviguṇa.viṣkambham khātād vapram kāraved ūrdhva.cayam mañca.prṣṭham kumbha.kukṣikam vā hastibhir gobhiś ca kṣuṇṇam kaṇṭaki.gulma.viṣa.vallī.pratānavantam | 5 |
- KAZ02.3.06/ pāṁsu.śeṣeṇa vāstuc.chidram rāja.bhavanam vā pūrayet | 6 |
- KAZ02.3.07a/ vaprasya-upari prākāram viṣkambha.dviguṇa.utsedham aiṣṭakam dvādaśa.hastād ūrdhvam ojam yugmam vā ā caturviṁśati.hastād iti kārayet -
- KAZ02.3.07b/ ratha.caryā.saṁcāram tāla.mūlam murajakaiḥ kapi.śīrṣakaiś ca-ācita.agram | 7 |
- KAZ02.3.08/ prthu.śilā.samhataṁ vā śailam kārayet, na tv eva kāṣṭamayam | 8 |
- KAZ02.3.09/ agnir avahito hi tasmin vasati | 9 |
- KAZ02.3.10/ viṣkambha.catur.aśram aṭṭālakam utsedha.sama.avakṣepa.sopānam kārayet trimśad.daṇḍa.antaram ca | 10 |
- KAZ02.3.11/ dvayor aṭṭālakayor madhye saharmya.dvi.talām adhyardhāya.āyāmam pratolīm kārayet | 11 |
- KAZ02.3.12/ aṭṭālaka.pratolī.madhye tri.dhānuṣka.adhiṣṭhānam sa-apidhānac.chidra.phalaka.samhataṁ indra.kośam kārayet | 12 |
- KAZ02.3.13/ antareṣu dvihasta.viṣkambham pārśve catur.guṇa.āyāmam deva.patham kārayet | 13 |
- KAZ02.3.14/ daṇḍa.antarā dvi.daṇḍa.antarā vā caryāḥ kārayet, agrāhye deśe pradhāvanikām niṣkira.dvāram ca | 14 |
- KAZ02.3.15/ bahir.jānu.bhañjanī.śūla.prakara.kūpa.kūṭa.avapāta.kaṇṭaka.pratisara.ahi.-prṣṭha.tāla.pattra.śrīṅga.aṭaka.śva.daṁṣṭra.argala.upaskandana.pāduka.-ambariṣa.uda.pānakaiḥ praticchannam channa.patham kārayet | 15 |
- KAZ02.3.16/ prākāram ubhayato meṇḍhakam adhyardha.daṇḍam kṛtvā pratolī.ṣaṭ.tulā.antaram dvāram niveśayet pañca.daṇḍād eka.uttaram ā.aṣṭa.daṇḍād iti catur.aśram ṣaḍ.bhāgam āyāmād.adhikam aṣṭa.bhāgam vā | 16 |
- KAZ02.3.17/ pañca.daśa.hastād eka.uttaram ā.aṣṭādaśa.hastād iti tala.utsedhaḥ | 17 |
- KAZ02.3.18/ stambhasya parikṣepaḥ ṣaḍ.āyāmo, dviguṇo nikhātaḥ, cūlikāyāś catur.bhāgaḥ | 18 |
- KAZ02.3.19/ ādi.talasya pañca.bhāgāḥ śālā vāpī sīmā.gṛham ca | 19 |
- KAZ02.3.20/ daśa.bhāgikau dvau pratimañcau, antaram āṇī.harmyam ca | 20 |
- KAZ02.3.21/ samucchrayād ardha.tale sthūṇā.bandhaś ca | 21 |
- KAZ02.3.22/ ardha.vāstukam uttama.agāram, tribhāga.antaram vā, iṣṭakā.avabaddha.pārśvam, vāmataḥ pradakṣiṇa.sopānam gūḍha.bhitti.sopānam itarataḥ | 22 |
- KAZ02.3.23/ dvi.hastam toraṇa.śīraḥ | 23 |
- KAZ02.3.24/ tri.pañca.bhāgikau dvau kapāṭa.yogau | 24 |
- KAZ02.3.25/ dvau parighau | 25 |

KAZ02.3.26/ aratnir indra.kīlaḥ | 26 |
 KAZ02.3.27/ pañca.hastam āṇi.dvāram | 27 |
 KAZ02.3.28/ catvāro hasti.parighāḥ | 28 |
 KAZ02.3.29/ niveśa.ardham hasti.nakham | 29 |
 KAZ02.3.30/ mukha.samaḥ saṅkramaḥ saṁhāryo bhūmimayo vā nirudake | 30 |
 KAZ02.3.31/ prākāra.samaṁ mukham avasthāpya tri.bhāga.godhā.mukham gopuraṁ
 kārayet | 31 |
 KAZ02.3.32/ prākāra.madhye vāpīm kṛtvā puṣkarīṇi.dvāram, catuḥ.śālam
 adhyardha.antaraṁ sāṇikaṁ kumārī.puram, muṇḍa.harmya.dvi.talaṁ muṇḍaka.dvāram,
 bhūmi.dravya.vaśena vā niveśayet | 32 |
 KAZ02.3.33/ tri.bhāga.adhika.āyāmā bhāṇḍa.vāhinīḥ kulyāḥ kārayet | 33 |
 KAZ02.3.34ab/ tāsu pāṣāṇa.kuddālāḥ kuṭhārī.kāṇḍa.kalpanāḥ | ⁵⁸
 KAZ02.3.34cd/ muṣuṇḍhī.mudgarā daṇḍās cakra.yantra.śataghnayaḥ || 34 || ⁵⁹
 KAZ02.3.35ab/ kāryāḥ karmārikāḥ śulā vedhana.agrās ca veṇavaḥ | ⁶⁰
 KAZ02.3.35cd/ uṣṭra.grīvyo 'gni.samyogāḥ kupya.kalpe ca yo vidhiḥ || 35 || ⁶¹

2.4 Chapter 4 (Section 22): Lay-out of the Fortified City

⁶²

KAZ02.4.01/ trayaḥ prācīnā rāja.mārgās traya udicīnā iti vāstu.vibhāgaḥ | 1 |
 KAZ02.4.02/ sa dvādaśa.dvāro yukta.udaka.bhramac.channa.pathaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ02.4.03/ catur.daṇḍa.antarā rathyāḥ | 3 |
 KAZ02.4.04/ rāja.mārga.droṇa.mukha.sthānīya.rāṣṭra.vivīta.pathāḥ
 samyānīya.vyūha.śmaśāna.grāma.pathās ca-aṣṭa.daṇḍāḥ | 4 |
 KAZ02.4.05/ catur.daṇḍaḥ setu.vana.pathaḥ, dvi.daṇḍo hasti.kṣetra.pathaḥ, pañca.aratnayo
 ratha.pathaḥ, catvāraḥ paśu.pathaḥ, dvau kṣudra.paśu.manuṣya.pathaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ02.4.06/ pravīre vāstuni rāja.niveśās caturvarṇya.samājīve | 6 |
 KAZ02.4.07/ vāstu.hṛdayād uttare nava.bhāge yathā.ukta.vidhānam antaḥpuram
 prān.mukham udan.mukham vā kārayet | 7 |
 KAZ02.4.08/ tasya pūrva.uttaraṁ bhāgam ācārya.purohita.ijyā.toya.sthānam mantriṇas
 ca-āvaseyuḥ, pūrva.dakṣiṇaṁ bhāgm mahānasaṁ hasti.śālā koṣṭha.agāraṁ ca | 8 |
 KAZ02.4.09/ tataḥ paraṁ gandha.mālya.rasa.paṇyāḥ prasādhana.kāraḥ kṣatriyās ca
 pūrvām diśam adhivaseyuḥ | 9 |
 KAZ02.4.10/ dakṣiṇa.pūrvam bhāgam bhāṇḍa.agāram akṣa.paṭalaṁ karma.niṣadyās ca,
 dakṣiṇa.paścimaṁ bhāgam kupya.grāham āyudha.agāram ca | 10 |
 KAZ02.4.11/ tataḥ paraṁ nagara.dhānya.vyāvahārika.kārmāntika.bala.adhyakṣāḥ
 pakva.anna.surā.māmsa.paṇyā rūpājīvās tālāvacarā vaiśyās ca dakṣiṇām diśam adhivaseyuḥ |
 11 |
 KAZ02.4.12/ paścima.dakṣiṇam bhāgam khara.uṣṭra.gupti.sthānam karma.grāham ca,
 paścima.uttaraṁ bhāgam yāna.ratha.śālāḥ | 12 |
 KAZ02.4.13/ tataḥ param ūrṇā.sūtra.veṇu.carma.varma.śastra.āvaraṇa.kāraḥ sūdrās ca
 paścimām diśam adhivaseyuḥ | 13 |
 KAZ02.4.14/ uttara.paścimaṁ bhāgam paṇya.bhaiṣajya.grāham, uttara.pūrvam bhāgam kośo
 gava.aśvaṁ ca | 14 |

⁵⁸KAZ02.3.34ab/ ś

⁵⁹KAZ02.3.34cd/ ś

⁶⁰KAZ02.3.35ab/ ś

⁶¹KAZ02.3.35cd/ ś

⁶²[K tr. 77 :: K2 tr. 67

- KAZ02.4.15/ tataḥ param nagara.rāja.devatā.loha.maṇi.kāraḥ brāhmaṇāś ca-uttarām diśam adhivaseyuḥ | 15 |
- KAZ02.4.16/ vāstuc.chidra.anuśāleṣu śreṇī.prapaṇi.nikāyā āvaseyuḥ | 16 |
- KAZ02.4.17/ apara.ajita.apratihata.jayanta.vaijayanta.koṣṭhān śiva.vaiśravaṇa.aśvi.śrī.madīrā.grhāṇi ca pura.madhye kārayet | 17 |
- KAZ02.4.18/ yathā.uddeśam vāstu.devatāḥ sthāpayet | 18 |
- KAZ02.4.19/ brāhma.aindra.yāmya.saināpatyāni dvārāṇi | 19 |
- KAZ02.4.20/ bahiḥ parikhāyā dhanuḥ.śata.apakṛṣṭāś caitya.puṇya.sthāna.vana.setu.bandhāḥ kāryāḥ, yathā.diśam ca dig.devatāḥ | 20 |
- KAZ02.4.21/ uttarāḥ pūrvo vā śmaśāna.bhāgo varṇa.uttamānām, dakṣiṇena śmaśānam varṇa.avarāṇām | 21 |
- KAZ02.4.22/ tasya-atikrame pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ02.4.23/ pāṣaṇḍa.caṇḍālānām śmaśāna.ante vāsaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ02.4.24/ karma.anta.kṣetra.vāśena kuṭumbinām sīmānam sthāpayet | 24 |
- KAZ02.4.25/ teṣu puṣpa.phala.vātān dhānya.paṇya.nicayāś ca-anujñātāḥ kuryuḥ | 25 |
- KAZ02.4.26/ daśa.kulī.vātāṇi kūpa.sthānam | 26 |
- KAZ02.4.27/ sarva.sneha.dhānya.kṣāra.lavaṇa.gandha.bhaiṣajya.śuṣka.śāka.yavaśa.-vallūra.trṇa.kāṣṭha.loha.carma.aṅgāra.snāyu.viṣa.viṣāṇa.veṇu.valkala.-sāra.dāru.praharaṇa.āvaraṇa.aśma.nicayān aneka.varṣa.upabhoga.sahān kārayet | 27 |
- KAZ02.4.28/ navena-anavaṇi śodhayet | 28 |
- KAZ02.4.29/ hasti.aśva.ratha.pādātān aneka.mukhyam avasthāpayet | 29 |
- KAZ02.4.30/ aneka.mukhyāṇi hi paraspāra.bhayāt para.upajāpāni na-upaiti | 30 |
- KAZ02.4.31/ etena-anta.pāla.durga.samskāra vyākhyātāḥ | 31 |
- KAZ02.4.32ab/ na ca bāhirikān kuryāt pure rāṣṭra.upaghātakān | ⁶³
- KAZ02.4.32cd/ kṣipej jana.pade ca-etān sarvān vā dāpayet karān || 32 || ⁶⁴

2.5 Chapter 5 (Section 23): Duties of the Director of Stores

⁶⁵

- KAZ02.5.01/ samnidhātā kośa.grhāṇi paṇya.grhāṇi koṣṭha.agāraṇi kupya.grhāṇi āyudha.agāraṇi bandhana.agāraṇi ca kārayet | 1 |
- KAZ02.5.02/ catur.aśrām vāpīm an-udaka.upasnehaṇi khānayitvā pṛthu.śilābhīr ubhayataḥ pārśvaṇi mūlāni ca pracitya sāra.dāru.pañjaraṇi bhūmi.samaṇi tri.talam aneka.vidhānaṇi kuṭṭima.deśa.sthāna.talam eka.dvāraṇi yantra.yukta.sopānaṇi bhūmi.grhāṇi kārayet | 2 |
- KAZ02.5.03/ tasya-upari-ubhayato.niṣedhaṇi sa-pragrīvaṇi aiṣṭakaṇi bhāṇḍa.vāhinī.parikṣiptaṇi kośa.grhāṇi kārayet, prāsādaṇi vā | 3 |
- KAZ02.5.04/ jana.pada.ante dhruva.nidhim āpad.artham abhityaktaiḥ kārayet | 4 |
- KAZ02.5.05a/ pakva.iṣṭakā.stambhaṇi catuḥ.śālam eka.dvāraṇi aneka.sthāna.talam vivṛta.stambha.apasāraṇi ubhayataḥ paṇya.grhāṇi koṣṭha.agāraṇi ca -
- KAZ02.5.05b/ dīrgha.bahu.śālam kakṣya.āvṛta.kuḍyam antaḥ kupya.grhāṇi, tad eva bhūmi.grhā.yuktam āyudha.agāraṇi -
- KAZ02.5.05c/ pṛthag.dharma.sthīyaṇi mahā.mātrīyaṇi vibhakta.strī.puruṣa.sthānam apasārataḥ sugupta.kakṣyaṇi bandhana.agāraṇi kārayet | 5 |
- KAZ02.5.06/ sarveṣāṇi śālāḥ khāta.uda.pāna.varca.snāna.grhā.agni.viṣa.trāṇa.mārjāra.nakula.-āraḥkṣa.sva.daivata.pūjana.yuktāḥ kārayet | 6 |

⁶³KAZ02.4.32ab/ ś

⁶⁴KAZ02.4.32cd/ ś

⁶⁵[K tr. 82 :: K2 tr. 72

- KAZ02.5.07/ koṣṭha.agāre varṣamānam aratni.mukhaṁ kuṇḍaṁ sthāpayet | 7 |
 KAZ02.5.08/ tat.jāta.karaṇa.adhiṣṭhitaḥ purāṇaṁ navaṁ ca ratnaṁ sārāṁ phalgu kupyāṁ vā pratigṛhṇīyāt | 8 |
 KAZ02.5.09/ tatra ratna.upadhāv uttamo daṇḍaḥ kartuḥ kārāyituś ca sāra.upadhau madhyamaḥ, phalgu.kupya.upadhau tat-ca tāvat-ca daṇḍaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ02.5.10/ rūpa.darśaka.viśuddhaṁ hiraṇyaṁ pratigṛhṇīyāt | 10 |
 KAZ02.5.11/ aśuddhaṁ chedayet | 11 |
 KAZ02.5.12/ āhartuḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 12 |
 KAZ02.5.13/ śuddhaṁ pūrṇaṁ abhinavaṁ ca dhānyaṁ pratigṛhṇīyāt | 13 |
 KAZ02.5.14/ viparyaye mūlya.dviguṇo daṇḍaḥ | 14 |
 KAZ02.5.15/ tena paṇyaṁ kupyam āyudhaṁ ca vyākhyātam | 15 |
 KAZ02.5.16/ sarva.adhikaraṇeṣu yukta.upayukta.tatpuruṣāṇāṁ paṇa.ādi.catuṣ.paṇa.parama.apahāreṣu pūrva.madhyama.uttama.vadhā daṇḍāḥ | 16 |
 KAZ02.5.17/ kośa.adhiṣṭhitasya kośa.avacchede ghātaḥ | 17 |
 KAZ02.5.18/ tad.vaiyāvṛtya.karāṇām ardha.daṇḍāḥ | 18 |
 KAZ02.5.19/ paribhāṣaṇam avijñāte | 19 |
 KAZ02.5.20/ corāṇām abhipradharṣaṇe citro ghātaḥ | 20 |
 KAZ02.5.21/ tasmād āpta.puruṣa.adhiṣṭhitaḥ samnidhātā nicayān anuṭiṣṭhet | 21 |
 KAZ02.5.22a/ bāhyam abhyantaraṁ cāyaṁ vidyād varṣa.śatād api | ⁶⁶
 KAZ02.5.22b/ yathā pṛṣṭo na sajjeta vyaye śeṣe ca sañcaye || 22 || ⁶⁷

2.6 Chapter 6 (Section 24): The Setting up of Revenue by the Administrator

⁶⁸

- KAZ02.6.01/ samāhartā durgam rāṣṭraṁ khaṇiṁ setuṁ vanaṁ vrajaṁ vaṇik.pathaṁ ca-avekṣeta | 1 |
 KAZ02.6.02/ śulkaṁ daṇḍaḥ pautavaṁ nāgariko lakṣaṇa.adhyakṣo mudrā.adhyakṣaḥ surā sūnā sūtraṁ tailaṁ ghr̥taṁ kṣāraḥ sauvarṇikaḥ paṇya.samsthā veśyā dyūtaṁ vāstukaṁ kāru.śilpi.gaṇo devatā.adhyakṣo dvāra.bahirikā.ādeyaṁ ca durgam | 2 |
 KAZ02.6.03/ sītā bhāgo baliḥ karo vaṇik nadī.pālas taro nāvaḥ pattanaṁ vivicitam vartanī rajjuś cora.rajjuś ca rāṣṭram | 3 |
 KAZ02.6.04/ suvarṇa.rajata.vajra.maṇi.muktā.pravāla.śaṅkha.loha.lavaṇa.bhūmi.-prastara.rasa.dhātavaḥ khaṇiḥ | 4 |
 KAZ02.6.05/ puṣpa.phala.vāta.ṣaṇḍa.kedāra.mūla.vāpāḥ setuḥ | 5 |
 KAZ02.6.06/ paśu.mṛga.dravya.hasti.vana.parigraho vanam | 6 |
 KAZ02.6.07/ go.mahiṣam aja.avikaṁ khara.uṣtram aśva.aśvataraṁ ca vrajaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ02.6.08/ sthala.patho vāri.pathaś ca vaṇik.pathaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ02.6.09/ ity āya.śarīram | 9 |
 KAZ02.6.10/ mūlyaṁ bhāgo vyājī parighaḥ klṛptaṁ rūpikam atyayaś ca-āya.mukham | 10 |
 KAZ02.6.11/ deva.pitr̥.pūjā.dāna.artham, svasti.vācanaṁ, antaḥpuram, mahānasam, dūta.prāvartimam, koṣṭha.agāram, āyudha.agāram, paṇya.gṛham, kupya.gṛham, karma.anto, viṣṭiḥ, patti.aśva.ratha.dvipa.parigraho, go.maṇḍalam, paśu.mṛga.pakṣi.vyāla.vāṭāḥ, kāṣṭha.tr̥ṇa.vāṭāś ca-iti vyaya.śarīram | 11 |
 KAZ02.6.12/ rāja.varṣaṁ māsaḥ pakṣo divasaś ca vyuṣṭam, varṣa.hemanta.grīṣmāṇāṁ tr̥tīya.saptamā divasa.ūnāḥ pakṣāḥ śeṣāḥ pūrṇāḥ, pṛthag.adhimāsakaḥ, iti kālāḥ | 12 |

⁶⁶KAZ02.5.22a/ ś

⁶⁷KAZ02.5.22b/ ś

⁶⁸[K tr. 86 :: K2 tr. 75

- KAZ02.6.13/ karaṇīyaṁ siddhaṁ śeṣaṁ āya.vyayau nīvī ca | 13 |
- KAZ02.6.14/ saṁsthānaṁ pracāraḥ śarīra.avasthāpanam ādānaṁ sarva.samudaya.piṇḍaḥ sañjātaṁ - etat karaṇīyam | 14 |
- KAZ02.6.15/ kośa.arпитаṁ rāja.hāraḥ pura.vyayaś ca praviṣṭaṁ parama.sāmvatsara.anuvṛttaṁ śāsana.muktaṁ mukha.ājñaptaṁ ca-apātaṇīyaṁ - etat siddham | 15 |
- KAZ02.6.16/ siddhi.karma.yogaḥ daṇḍa.śeṣaṁ āharaṇīyaṁ balāt.kṛta.pratiṣṭabdhām avamṛṣṭaṁ ca praśodhyaṁ - etat-śeṣaṁ, asāram alpa.sāraṁ ca | 16 |
- KAZ02.6.17/ vartamānaḥ paryuṣito 'nya.jātaś ca-āyaḥ | 17 |
- KAZ02.6.18/ divasa.anuvṛtto vartamānaḥ | 18 |
- KAZ02.6.19/ parama.sāmvatsarikaḥ para.pracāra.saṅkrānto vā paryuṣitaḥ | 19 |
- KAZ02.6.20/ naṣṭa.prasmr̥tam āyukta.daṇḍaḥ pārśvaṁ pārihīnikam aupāyanikaṁ ḍamara.gataka.svam aputrakaṁ nidhiś ca-anya.jātaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ02.6.21/ vikṣepa.vyādhita.antara.ārambha.śeṣaṁ ca vyaya.pratyāyaḥ | 21 |
- KAZ02.6.22/ vikriye paṇyānām argha.vṛddhir upajā, māna.unmāna.viśeṣo vyājī, kraya.saṅgharṣe vārdha.vṛddhiḥ - ity āyaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ02.6.23/ nityo nitya.utpādiko lābho lābha.utpādika iti vyayaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ02.6.24/ divasa.anuvṛtto nityaḥ | 24 |
- KAZ02.6.25/ pakṣa.māsa.sāmvatsara.lābho lābhaḥ | 25 |
- KAZ02.6.26/ taylor utpanno nitya.utpādiko lābha.utpādika iti vyayaḥ | 26 |
- KAZ02.6.27/ sañjātād āya.vyaya.viśuddhā nīvī, prāptā ca-anuvṛttā ca | 27 |
- KAZ02.6.28ab/ evaṁ kuryāt samudayaṁ vṛddhiṁ ca-āyasya darśayet | ⁶⁹
- KAZ02.6.28cd/ hrāsaṁ vyayasya ca prājñāḥ sādhaṣec ca viparyayam || 28 || ⁷⁰

2.7 Chapter 7 (Section 25): Records and Accounts and Audit Office

71

- KAZ02.7.01/ akṣa.paṭalam adhyakṣaḥ prān.mukham udan.mukhaṁ vā vibhakta.upasthānaṁ nibandha.pustaka.sthānaṁ kārayet | 1 |
- KAZ02.7.02/ tatra-adhikaraṇānām saṅkhyā.pracāra.sañjāta.agram, karma.antānām dravya.prayoga.vṛddhi.kṣaya.vyaya.prayāma.vyājī.yoga.sthāna.vetana.- viṣṭi.pramāṇam, ratna.sāra.phalgu.kupyānām argha.prativarṇaka.māna.pratimāna.unmāna.avamāna.bhāṇḍam, deśa.grāma.jāti.kula.saṅghānām dharma.vyavahāra.caritra.saṁsthānam, rāja.upajīvinām pragraha.pradeśa.bhoga.parihāra.bhakta.vetana.lābham, rājñāś ca patnī.putrāṇām ratna.bhūmi.lābhaṁ nirdeśa.utpātika.pratikāra.lābham, mitra.amitrāṇām ca sandhi.vigraha.pradāna.ādānaṁ nibandha.pustakasthaṁ kārayet | 2 |
- KAZ02.7.03/ tataḥ sarva.adhikaraṇānām karaṇīyaṁ siddhaṁ śeṣaṁ āya.vyayau nīvīm upasthānaṁ pracāraṁ caritraṁ saṁsthānaṁ ca nibandhena prayacchet | 3 |
- KAZ02.7.04/ uttama.madhyama.avareṣu ca karmasu taj.jātikam adhyakṣaṁ kuryāt, sāmudayikeṣv avaklṛptikaṁ yam upahatya rājā na-anutapyeta | 4 |
- KAZ02.7.05/ saḥagrāhiṇaḥ pratibhavaḥ karma.upajīvinaḥ putrā bhrātaro bhāryā duhitaro bhr̥tyāś ca-asya karmac.chedaṁ vaheyuḥ | 5 |
- KAZ02.7.06/ tri.śataṁ catuḥ.pañcāśat-ca-ahorātrāṇām karma.sāmvatsaraḥ | 6 |
- KAZ02.7.07/ tam āśādhī.paryavasānam ūnaṁ pūrṇaṁ vā dadyāt | 7 |
- KAZ02.7.08/ karaṇa.adhiṣṭhitam adhimāsakaṁ kuryāt | 8 |

⁶⁹KAZ02.6.28ab/ ś

⁷⁰KAZ02.6.28cd/ ś

⁷¹[K tr. 92 :: K2 tr. 80

- KAZ02.7.09/ apasarpa.adhiṣṭhitañca pracāram | 9 |
- KAZ02.7.10/ pracāra.caritra.samsthānāny anupalabhamāno hi prakṛtaḥ samudayam
ajñānena parihāpayati, utthāna.kleśa.asahatvād ālasyena, śabdādiṣv indriya.artheṣu prasaktaḥ
pramādena, saṅkrośa.adharma.anartha.bhīru.bhāyena, kārya.arthiṣv anugraha.buddhiḥ
kāmena, himsā.buddhiḥ kopena, vidyā.dravya.vallabha.apāśrayād darpeṇa,
tulā.māna.tarka.gaṇita.antara.upadhānāt-lobhena | 10 |
- KAZ02.7.11/ "teṣāṃ ānupūrvyā yāvān artha.upaghātas tāvān eka.uttaro daṇḍaḥ" iti mānavāḥ
| 11 |
- KAZ02.7.12/ "sarvatra-aṣṭa.guṇaḥ" iti pārāśarāḥ | 12 |
- KAZ02.7.13/ "daśa.guṇaḥ" iti bārhaspatyāḥ | 13 |
- KAZ02.7.14/ "vimśati.guṇaḥ" ity auśanasāḥ | 14 |
- KAZ02.7.15/ yathā.aparādham iti kauṭilyaḥ | 15 |
- KAZ02.7.16/ gāṇanikyāni āśādhīm āgaccheyuḥ | 16 |
- KAZ02.7.17/ āgatānām samudra.pustaka.bhāṇḍa.nīvikānām ekaṭra.asambhāṣā.avarodham
kārayet | 17 |
- KAZ02.7.18/ āya.vyaya.nīvīnām agrāṇi śrutvā nīvīm avahārayet | 18 |
- KAZ02.7.19/ yac ca-agrād āyasya-antara.parṇe nīvyām vardheta vyayasya vā yat parihāpayet,
tad aṣṭa.guṇam adhyakṣam dāpayet | 19 |
- KAZ02.7.20/ viparyaye tam eva prati syāt | 20 |
- KAZ02.7.21/ yathā.kālam anāgatānām apustaka.bhāṇḍa.nīvikānām vā deya.daśa.bandho
daṇḍaḥ | 21 |
- KAZ02.7.22/ karmike ca-upasthite kāraṇikasya-apratibadhnataḥ pūrvāḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 22
|
- KAZ02.7.23/ viparyaye karmikasya dvi.guṇaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ02.7.24/ pracāra.samañ mahā.mātrāḥ samagrāḥ śrāvayeyur aviśama.mantrāḥ | 24 |
- KAZ02.7.25/ pṛthag.bhūto mithyā.vādī ca-eṣāṃ uttamañ daṇḍam dadyāt | 25 |
- KAZ02.7.26/ akṛta.aho.rūpa.harañ māsam ākāṅkṣeta | 26 |
- KAZ02.7.27/ māsād ūrdhvañ māsa.dviśata.uttarañ daṇḍam dadyāt | 27 |
- KAZ02.7.28/ alpa.śeṣa.lekhya.nīvikāñ pañca.rātram ākāṅkṣeta | 28 |
- KAZ02.7.29/ tataḥ parañ kośa.pūrvam aho.rūpa.harañ
dharma.vyavahāra.caritra.samsthāna.saṅkalana.nirvartana.anumāna.- cāra.prayogair avekṣeta
| 29 |
- KAZ02.7.30/ divasa.pañca.rātra.pakṣa.māsa.cāturmāsya.samvatsaraiś ca pratisamānayet | 30
|
- KAZ02.7.31/ vyuṣṭa.deśa.kāla.mukha.utpatti.anuvṛtti.pramāṇa.dāyaka.dāpaka.-
nibandhaka.pratigrāhakaiś ca-ayañ samānayet | 31 |
- KAZ02.7.32/ vyuṣṭa.deśa.kāla.mukha.lābha.kāraṇa.deya.yoga.pramāṇa.ājñāpaka.-
uddhāraka.vidhātṛka.pratigrāhakaiś ca vyayañ samānayet | 32 |
- KAZ02.7.33/ vyuṣṭa.deśa.kāla.mukha.anuvartana.rūpa.lakṣaṇa.pramāṇa.nikṣepa.-
bhājana.gopāyakaiś ca nīvīm samānayet | 33 |
- KAZ02.7.34/ rāja.arthe kāraṇikasya-apratibadhnataḥ pratiśedhayato vā-ājñāñ nibandhād
āya.vyayam anyathā nīvīm avalikhato dvi.guṇaḥ | 34 |
- KAZ02.7.35/ krama.avahīnam utkramam avijñātañ punar.uktañ vā vastukam avalikhato
dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 35 |
- KAZ02.7.36/ nīvīm avalikhato dvi.guṇaḥ | 36 |
- KAZ02.7.37/ bhakṣayato 'ṣṭa.guṇaḥ | 37 |
- KAZ02.7.38/ nāśayataḥ pañca.bandhaḥ pratidānañ ca | 38 |
- KAZ02.7.39/ mithyā.vāde steya.daṇḍaḥ | 39 |
- KAZ02.7.40/ paścāt.pratijñāte dvi.guṇaḥ, prasmṛta.utpanne ca | 40 |

KAZ02.7.41ab/ aparādhāṁ saheta-alpaṁ tuṣyed alpe 'pi ca-udaye | ⁷²

KAZ02.7.41cd/ mahā.upakāraṁ ca-adhyakṣaṁ pragraheṇa-abhipūjayet || 41 || ⁷³

2.8 Chapter 8 (Section 26): Misappropriation of Revenue by Officers and Its Recovery

⁷⁴

KAZ02.8.01/ kośa.pūrvāḥ sarva.ārambhāḥ | 1 |

KAZ02.8.02/ tasmāt pūrvāṁ kośam avekṣeta | 2 |

KAZ02.8.03/ pracāra.samṛddhiś caritra.anugrahaś cora.nigraho yukta.pratiṣedhaḥ
sasya.sampat paṇya.bāhulyam upasarga.pramokṣaḥ parihāra.kṣayo hiraṇya.upāyanam iti
kośa.vṛddhiḥ | 3 |

KAZ02.8.04/ pratibandhaḥ prayogo vyavahāro 'vastāraḥ parihāṇaṁ upabhogaḥ
parivartanam apahāraś ca-iti kośa.kṣayaḥ | 4 |

KAZ02.8.05/ siddhīnām asādhnam anavatāraṇam apraveśanam vā pratibandhaḥ | 5 |

KAZ02.8.06/ tatra daśa.bandho daṇḍaḥ | 6 |

KAZ02.8.07/ kośa.dravyāṇām vṛddhi.prayogaḥ prayogaḥ | 7 |

KAZ02.8.08/ paṇya.vyavahāro vyavahāraḥ | 8 |

KAZ02.8.09/ tatra phala.dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 9 |

KAZ02.8.10/ siddham kālam aprāptaṁ karoti-aprāptaṁ prāptaṁ vā-ity avastāraḥ | 10 |

KAZ02.8.11/ tatra pañca.bandho daṇḍaḥ | 11 |

KAZ02.8.12/ klṛptam āyaṁ parihāpayati vyayaṁ vā vivardhayati-iti parihāṇaṁ | 12 |

KAZ02.8.13/ tatra hīna.catur.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 13 |

KAZ02.8.14/ svayam anyair vā rāja.dravyāṇām upabhojanam upabhogaḥ | 14 |

KAZ02.8.15/ tatra ratna.upabhoge ghātaḥ, sāra.upabhoge madhyamaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ,
phalgu.kupya.upabhoge tac ca tāvat-ca daṇḍaḥ | 15 |

KAZ02.8.16/ rāja.dravyāṇām anya.dravyena-ādānam parivartanam | 16 |

KAZ02.8.17/ tad upabhogena vyākhyātam | 17 |

KAZ02.8.18/ siddham āyaṁ na praveśayati, nibaddham vyayaṁ na prayacchati, prāptaṁ
nīvīm vipratijānīta ity apahāraḥ | 18 |

KAZ02.8.19/ tatra dvādaśa.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 19 |

KAZ02.8.20/ teṣāṁ haraṇa.upāyāś catvāriṁśat | 20 |

KAZ02.8.21a/ pūrvāṁ siddham paścād avatāritam, paścāt siddham pūrvam avatāritam,
sādhyaṁ na siddham, asādhyaṁ siddham, siddham asiddham kṛtam, asiddham siddham
kṛtam, alpa.siddham bahu kṛtam, bahu.siddham alpaṁ kṛtam, anyat siddham anyat kṛtam,
anyataḥ siddham anyataḥ kṛtam,-

KAZ02.8.21b/ deyaṁ na dattam, adeyaṁ dattam, kāle na dattam, akāle dattam, alpaṁ
dattaṁ bahu kṛtam, bahu dattam alpaṁ kṛtam, anyad dattam anyat kṛtam, anyato dattam
anyataḥ kṛtam,-

KAZ02.8.21c/ praviṣṭam apraviṣṭam kṛtam, apraviṣṭam praviṣṭam kṛtam, kupyam
adatta.mūlyaṁ praviṣṭam, datta.mūlyaṁ na praviṣṭam -

KAZ02.8.21d/ saṅkṣepo vikṣepaḥ kṛtaḥ, vikṣepaḥ saṅkṣepo vā, mahā.argham alpa.argheṇa
parivartitam, alpa.argham mahā.argheṇa vā -

KAZ02.8.21e/ samāropito 'rghaḥ, pratyavaropito vā, samvatsaro māsa.viṣamaḥ kṛtaḥ, māso
divasa.viṣamo vā, samāgama.viṣamaḥ, mukha.viṣamaḥ, kārmika.viṣamaḥ -

⁷²KAZ02.7.41ab/ ś

⁷³KAZ02.7.41cd/ ś

⁷⁴[K tr. 98 :: K2 tr. 85

KAZ02.8.21f/ nirvartana.viṣamaḥ, piṇḍa.viṣamaḥ, varṇa.viṣamaḥ, argha.viṣamaḥ, māna.viṣamaḥ, māpana.viṣamaḥ, bhājana.viṣamaḥ - iti haraṇa.upāyāḥ | 21 |
 KAZ02.8.22/ tatra-upayukta.nidhāyaka.nibandhaka.pratigrāhaka.dāyaka.dāpaka.-mantri.vaiyāvṛtya.karāṇ eka.ekaśo 'nuyuñjita | 22 |
 KAZ02.8.23/ mithyā.vāde ca-eṣāṃ yukta.samo daṇḍaḥ | 23 |
 KAZ02.8.24/ pracāre ca-avaghoṣayet "amunā prakṛtena-upahatāḥ prajñāpayantu" iti | 24 |
 KAZ02.8.25/ prajñāpayato yathā.upaghātāṃ dāpayet | 25 |
 KAZ02.8.26/ anekeṣu ca-abhiyogeṣv apavyayamānaḥ sakṛd eva para.uktaḥ sarvaṃ bhajeta | 26 |
 KAZ02.8.27/ vaiśamye sarvatra-anuyogaṃ dadyāt | 27 |
 KAZ02.8.28/ mahaty artha.apahāre ca-alpena-apī siddhaḥ sarvaṃ bhajeta | 28 |
 KAZ02.8.29/ kṛta.pratighāta.avasthaḥ sūcako niṣpanna.arthaḥ ṣaṣṭham aṃśaṃ labheta, dvādaśaṃ aṃśaṃ bhṛtaḥ | 29 |
 KAZ02.8.30/ prabhūta.abhiyogād alpa.niṣpattau niṣpannasya-aṃśaṃ labheta | 30 |
 KAZ02.8.31/ anīṣpanne śārīraṃ hairaṇyaṃ vā daṇḍaṃ labheta, na ca-anugrāhyaḥ | 31 |
 KAZ02.8.32ab/ niṣpattau nikṣīped vādaṃ ātmānaṃ vā-apavāhayet | ⁷⁵
 KAZ02.8.32cd/ abhiyukta.upajāpāt tu sūcako vadham āpnuyāt || 32 || ⁷⁶

2.9 Chapter 9 (Section 27): Inspection of Officers' Work

⁷⁷

KAZ02.9.01/ amātya.sampadā-upetāḥ sarva.adhyakṣāḥ śaktiḥ karmasu niyojyāḥ | 1 |
 KAZ02.9.02/ karmasu ca-eṣāṃ nityaṃ parīkṣāṃ kārayet, citta.anityatvāt-manuṣyānāṃ | 2 |
 KAZ02.9.03/ aśva.sadharmāṇo hi manuṣyā niyuktāḥ karmasu vikurvate | 3 |
 KAZ02.9.04/ tasmāt kartāraṃ karaṇaṃ deśaṃ kālāṃ kāryaṃ prakṣepam udayaṃ ca-eṣu vidyāt | 4 |
 KAZ02.9.05/ te yathā.sandeśaṃ asaṃhatā avighṛhītāḥ karmāṇi kuryuḥ | 5 |
 KAZ02.9.06/ saṃhatā bhakṣayeyuḥ, vighṛhītā vināśayeyuḥ | 6 |
 KAZ02.9.07/ na ca-anivedya bhartuḥ kañcid ārambhaṃ kuryuḥ, anyatra-āpat.pratīkārebhyaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ02.9.08/ pramāda.sthāneṣu ca-eṣāṃ atyayaṃ sthāpayed divasa.vetana.vyaya.dvi.guṇam | 8 |
 KAZ02.9.09/ yaś ca-eṣāṃ yathā.ādiṣṭam arthaṃ saviśeṣaṃ vā karoti sa sthāna.mānau labheta | 9 |
 KAZ02.9.10/ "alpa.āyatiś cet-mahā.vyayo bhakṣayati | 10 |
 KAZ02.9.11/ viparyaye yathā.āyati.vyayaś ca na bhakṣayati" ity ācāryāḥ | 11 |
 KAZ02.9.12/ apasarpeṇa-eva-upalabhyeta-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 12 |
 KAZ02.9.13/ yaḥ samudayaṃ parihāpayati sa rāja.arthaṃ bhakṣayati | 13 |
 KAZ02.9.14/ sa ced ajñāna.ādibhiḥ parihāpayati tad enaṃ yathā.guṇaṃ dāpayet | 14 |
 KAZ02.9.15/ yaḥ samudayaṃ dvi.guṇam udbhāvayati sa jana.padaṃ bhakṣayati | 15 |
 KAZ02.9.16/ sa ced rāja.arthaṃ upanayaty alpa.aparādhe vārayitavyaḥ, mahati yathā.aparādhaṃ daṇḍayitavyaḥ | 16 |
 KAZ02.9.17/ yaḥ samudayaṃ vyayam upanayati sa puruṣa.karmāṇi bhakṣayati | 17 |
 KAZ02.9.18/ sa karma.divasa.dravya.mūlya.puruṣa.vetana.apahāreṣu yathā.aparādhaṃ daṇḍayitavyaḥ | 18 |

⁷⁵KAZ02.8.32ab/ ś

⁷⁶KAZ02.8.32cd/ ś

⁷⁷[K tr. 102 :: K2 tr. 89

- KAZ02.9.19/ tasmād asya yo yasminn adhikaraṇe śāsanasthaḥ sa tasya karmaṇo
yāthātathyam āya.vyayau ca vyāsa.samāsābhyām ācakṣīta | 19 |
- KAZ02.9.20/ mūla.hara.tādātvika.kadaryāmś ca pratiṣedhayet | 20 |
- KAZ02.9.21/ yaḥ piṭṛ.paitāmaham artham anyāyena bhakṣayati sa mūla.haraḥ | 21 |
- KAZ02.9.22/ yo yad yad utpadyate tat tad bhakṣayati sa tādātvikaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ02.9.23/ yo bhr̥tya.ātma.pīḍābhyām upacinoty artham sa kadaryaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ02.9.24/ sa pakṣavāmś ced anādeyaḥ, viparyaye paryādātavyaḥ | 24 |
- KAZ02.9.25/ yo mahaty artha.samudaye sthitaḥ kadaryaḥ samnidhatte 'vanidhatte
'vasrāvayati vā - samnidhatte sva.veśmani, avanidhatte paura.jānapadeṣu, avasrāvayati
para.viṣaye - tasya sattrī mantri.mitra.bhr̥tya.bandhu.pakṣam āgatiṁ gatiṁ ca dravyāṇām
upalabheta | 25 |
- KAZ02.9.26/ yaś ca-asya para.viṣaye sañcāraṁ kuryāt tam anupraviśya mantraṁ vidyāt | 26
|
- KAZ02.9.27/ suvidite śatru.śāsana.apadeśena-enam ghātayet | 27 |
- KAZ02.9.28/ tasmād asya-adhyakṣāḥ
sañkhyāyaka.lekhaka.rūpa.darśaka.nīvī.grāhaka.uttara.adhyakṣa.sakhāḥ karmaṇi kuryuḥ |
28 |
- KAZ02.9.29/ uttara.adhyakṣā hasti.aśva.ratha.ārohaḥ | 29 |
- KAZ02.9.30/ teṣām antevāśinaḥ śilpa.śauca.yuktāḥ sañkhyāyaka.ādīnām apasarpāḥ | 30 |
- KAZ02.9.31/ bahu.mukhyam anityaṁ ca-adhikaraṇaṁ sthāpayet | 31 |
- KAZ02.9.32ab/ yathā hy anāsvādayituṁ na śakyaṁ jihvā.talasthaṁ madhu⁷ vā viṣaṁ vā | ⁷⁸
- KAZ02.9.32cd/ arthas tathā hy artha.careṇa rājñaḥ svalpo 'py anāsvādayituṁ na śakyaḥ ||
32 || ⁷⁹
- KAZ02.9.33ab/ matsyā yathā-antaḥ salile caranto jñātuṁ na śakyāḥ salilaṁ pibantaḥ | ⁸⁰
- KAZ02.9.33cd/ yuktās tathā kārya.vidhau niyuktā jñātuṁ na śakyā dhanam ādadānāḥ || 33
|| ⁸¹
- KAZ02.9.34ab/ api śakyā gatiṁ jñātuṁ patatām khe patatṛiṇām | ⁸²
- KAZ02.9.34cd/ na tu pracchanna.bhāvānām yuktānām caratām gatiḥ || 34 || ⁸³
- KAZ02.9.35ab/ āsrāvayec ca-upacitān viparyasyec ca karmasu | ⁸⁴
- KAZ02.9.35cd/ yathā na bhakṣayanty artham bhakṣitaṁ nirvamanti vā || 35 || ⁸⁵
- KAZ02.9.36ab/ na bhakṣayanti ye tv arthān nyāyato vardhayanti ca | ⁸⁶
- KAZ02.9.36cd/ nitya.adhikārāḥ kāryās te rājñaḥ priya.hite ratāḥ || 36 || ⁸⁷

2.10 Chapter 10 (Section 28): The Topic of Edicts

⁸⁸

- KAZ02.10.01/ śāsane śāsanam ity ācakṣate | 1 |
- KAZ02.10.02/ śāsana.pradhānā hi rājānaḥ, tan.mūlatvāt sandhi.vigrahayoḥ | 2 |
- KAZ02.10.03/ tasmād amātya.sampadā-upetaḥ sarva.samayaivid āśu.granthaś cāru.akṣaro
lekhana.vācana.samartho lekhakaḥ syāt | 3 |

⁷⁸KAZ02.9.32ab/ ś

⁷⁹KAZ02.9.32cd/ ś

⁸⁰KAZ02.9.33ab/ ś

⁸¹KAZ02.9.33cd/ ś

⁸²KAZ02.9.34ab/ ś

⁸³KAZ02.9.34cd/ ś

⁸⁴KAZ02.9.35ab/ ś

⁸⁵KAZ02.9.35cd/ ś

⁸⁶KAZ02.9.36ab/ ś

⁸⁷KAZ02.9.36cd/ ś

⁸⁸[K tr. 105 :: K2 tr. 92

- KAZ02.10.04/ so 'vyagra.manā rājñāḥ sandeśam śrutvā niścita.artham lekham vidadhyāt deśa.aiśvarya.vamśa.nāmadheya.upacāram iśvarasya, deśa.nāmadheya.upacāram anīśvarasya | 4 |
- KAZ02.10.05ab/ jātim kulaṁ sthāna.vayaḥ.śrutāni karma.ṛddhi.śīlāny atha deśa.kālau | ⁸⁹
- KAZ02.10.05cd/ yauna.anubandham ca samikṣya kārye lekham vidadhyāt puruṣa.anurūpam || 5 || ⁹⁰
- KAZ02.10.06/ artha.kramāḥ sambandhaḥ paripūrṇatā mādhyam audāryam spaṣṭatvam iti lekha.sampat | 6 |
- KAZ02.10.07/ tatra yathāvad anupūrva.kriyā pradhānasya-arthasya pūrvam abhiniveśa ity artha.kramāḥ | 7 |
- KAZ02.10.08/ prastutasya-arthasya-anuparodhād uttarasya vidhānam ā.samāpter iti sambandhaḥ | 8 |
- KAZ02.10.09/ artha.pada.akṣarāṇām anyūna.atiriktatā hetu.udāharaṇa.drṣṭāntair artha.upavarṇanā-aśrānta.padatā-iti paripūrṇatā | 9 |
- KAZ02.10.10/ sukha.upanīta.cāru.artha.śabda.abhidhānam mādhyam | 10 |
- KAZ02.10.11/ agrāmya.śabda.abhidhānam audāryam | 11 |
- KAZ02.10.12/ pratīta.śabda.prayogaḥ spaṣṭatvam iti | 12 |
- KAZ02.10.13/ a.kāra.ādayo varṇas triṣaṣṭiḥ | 13 |
- KAZ02.10.14/ varṇa.saṅghātaḥ padam | 14 |
- KAZ02.10.15/ tac caturvidham nāma.ākhyāta.upasarga.nipātāś ca-iti | 15 |
- KAZ02.10.16/ tatra nāma sattva.abhidhāyī | 16 |
- KAZ02.10.17/ aviśiṣṭa.līngam ākhyātam kriyā.vāci | 17 |
- KAZ02.10.18/ kriyā.viśeṣakāḥ pra.ādaya upasargāḥ | 18 |
- KAZ02.10.19/ avyayāś ca.ādayo nipātāḥ | 19 |
- KAZ02.10.20/ pada.samūho vākyam artha.parisamāptau | 20 |
- KAZ02.10.21/ eka.pada.avaras tri.pada.paraḥ para.pada.artha.anuparodhena vargaḥ kāryaḥ | 21 |
- KAZ02.10.22/ lekha.parisamharaṇa.artha iti.śabdo vācikaṁ asya-iti ca | 22 |
- KAZ02.10.23ab/ nindā praśamsā ṛcchā ca tathā-ākhyānam atha-arthanā | ⁹¹
- KAZ02.10.23cd/ pratyākhyānam upālambhaḥ pratiśedho 'tha codanā || 23 || ⁹²
- KAZ02.10.24ab/ sāntvam abhyupapattiś ca bhartsana.anunayau tathā | ⁹³
- KAZ02.10.24cd/ eteṣv arthāḥ pravartante trayodaśasu lekhaḥ || 24 || ⁹⁴
- KAZ02.10.25/ tatra-abhijana.śarīra.karmaṇām doṣa.vacanam nindā | 25 |
- KAZ02.10.26/ guṇa.vacanam eteṣāṁ eva praśamsā | 26 |
- KAZ02.10.27/ "katham etad" iti ṛcchā | 27 |
- KAZ02.10.28/ "evam" ity ākhyānam | 28 |
- KAZ02.10.29/ "dehi" ity arthanā | 29 |
- KAZ02.10.30/ "na prayacchāmi" iti pratyākhyānam | 30 |
- KAZ02.10.31/ "ananurūpam bhavataḥ" ity upālambhaḥ | 31 |
- KAZ02.10.32/ "mā kāṛṣiḥ" iti pratiśedhaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ02.10.33/ "idaṁ kriyatām" iti codanā | 33 |
- KAZ02.10.34/ "yo 'ham sa bhavān, yan mama dravyam tad bhavataḥ" ity upagrahaḥ sāntvam | 34 |

⁸⁹KAZ02.10.05ab/ ś⁹⁰KAZ02.10.05cd/ ś⁹¹KAZ02.10.23ab/ ś⁹²KAZ02.10.23cd/ ś⁹³KAZ02.10.24ab/ ś⁹⁴KAZ02.10.24cd/ ś

- KAZ02.10.35/ vyasana.sāhāyyam abhyupapattiḥ | 35 |
- KAZ02.10.36/ sadoṣam āyati.pradarśanam abhibhartsanam | 36 |
- KAZ02.10.37/ anumayas trividho 'rtha.kṛtāv atikrame puruṣa.ādi.vyasane ca-iti | 37 |
- KAZ02.10.38ab/ prajñāpana.ājñā.paridāna.lekhās tathā parihāra.nisṛṣṭi.lekhau | ⁹⁵
- KAZ02.10.38cd/ prāvṛttikaś ca pratilekha eva sarvatragaś ca-iti hi śāsanāni || 38 || ⁹⁶
- KAZ02.10.39ab/ anena vijñāpitam evam āha tad dīyatām ced yadi tattvam asti | ⁹⁷
- KAZ02.10.39cd/ rājñah samīpe vara.kāram āha prajñāpanā-eṣā vividhā-upadiṣṭā || 39 || ⁹⁸
- KAZ02.10.40ab/ bhartur ājñā bhaved yatra nigrāha.anugrahau prati | ⁹⁹
- KAZ02.10.40cd/ viśeṣeṇa tu bhrtyeṣu tad.ājñā.lekha.lakṣaṇam || 40 || ¹⁰⁰
- KAZ02.10.41ab/ yathā.arha.guṇa.samyuktā pūjā yatra-upalakṣyate | ¹⁰¹
- KAZ02.10.41cd/ apy ādhau paridāne vā bhavatas tāv upagrahau || 41 || ¹⁰²
- KAZ02.10.42ab/ jāter viśeṣeṣu pareṣu caiva grāmeṣu deṣeṣu ca teṣu teṣu | ¹⁰³
- KAZ02.10.42cd/ anugraho yo nṛpter nideśāt taj.jñāḥ parihāra iti vyavasyet || 42 || ¹⁰⁴
- KAZ02.10.43ab/ nisṛṣṭisthā-āpanā kārya.karaṇe vacane tathā | ¹⁰⁵
- KAZ02.10.43cd/ eṣa vācika.lekhaḥ syād bhaven naisṛṣṭiko 'pi vā || 43 || ¹⁰⁶
- KAZ02.10.44ab/ vividhām daiva.samyuktām tattvajām caiva mānuṣīm | ¹⁰⁷
- KAZ02.10.44cd/ dvi.vidhām tām vyavasyanti pravṛttiṃ śāsanam prati || 44 || ¹⁰⁸
- KAZ02.10.45ab/ drṣṭvā lekham yathā.tattvaṃ tataḥ pratyanubhāṣya ca | ¹⁰⁹
- KAZ02.10.45cd/ pratilekho bhavet kāryo yathā rāja.vacas tathā || 45 || ¹¹⁰
- KAZ02.10.46ab/ yatra-iśvarāmś ca-adhikṛtāmś ca rājā rakṣā.upakārau pathika.artham āha | ¹¹¹
- KAZ02.10.46cd/ sarvatrago nāma bhavet sa mārge deṣe ca sarvatra ca veditavyaḥ || 46 ||
- KAZ02.10.47/ upāyāḥ sāma.upapradāna.bheda.daṇḍāḥ | 47 |
- KAZ02.10.48/ tatra sāma pañcavidhaṃ - guṇa.saṅkīrtanam, sambandha.upākhyānam, paraspara.upakāra.sandarśanam, āyati.pradarśanam, ātma.upanidhānam iti | 48 |
- KAZ02.10.49/ tatra-abhijana.śarīra.karma.prakṛti.śruta.dravya.ādīnām guṇa.grahaṇam praśamsā stutir guṇa.saṅkīrtanam | 49 |
- KAZ02.10.50/ jñāti.yauna.maukha.srauva.kula.hṛdaya.mitra.saṅkīrtanam sambandha.upākhyānam | 50 |
- KAZ02.10.51/ sva.pakṣa.para.pakṣayor anyonya.upakāra.saṅkīrtanam paraspara.upakāra.sandarśanam | 51 |
- KAZ02.10.52/ "asminn evaṃ kṛta idam āvayor bhavati" ity āśā.jananam āyati.pradarśa- nam | 52 |

⁹⁵KAZ02.10.38ab/ ś⁹⁶KAZ02.10.38cd/ ś⁹⁷KAZ02.10.39ab/ ś⁹⁸KAZ02.10.39cd/ ś⁹⁹KAZ02.10.40ab/ ś¹⁰⁰KAZ02.10.40cd/ ś¹⁰¹KAZ02.10.41ab/ ś¹⁰²KAZ02.10.41cd/ ś¹⁰³KAZ02.10.42ab/ ś¹⁰⁴KAZ02.10.42cd/ ś¹⁰⁵KAZ02.10.43ab/ ś¹⁰⁶KAZ02.10.43cd/ ś¹⁰⁷KAZ02.10.44ab/ ś¹⁰⁸KAZ02.10.44cd/ ś¹⁰⁹KAZ02.10.45ab/ ś¹¹⁰KAZ02.10.45cd/ ś¹¹¹KAZ02.10.46ab/ ś

KAZ02.10.53/ "yo 'haṁ sa bhavān, yan mama dravyaṁ tad bhavatā sva.kṛtyeṣu prayojyatām"
ity ātma.upanidhānam | iti | 53 |

KAZ02.10.54/ upapradānam artha.upakāraḥ | 54 |

KAZ02.10.55/ śaṅkā.jānanam nirbhartsanam ca bhedaḥ | 55 |

KAZ02.10.56/ vādhaḥ parikleśo 'rtha.haraṇam daṇḍaḥ | iti | 56 |

KAZ02.10.57/ akāntir vyāghātaḥ punar.uktam apaśabdaḥ samplavaḥ iti lekha.doṣaḥ | 57 |

KAZ02.10.58/ tatra kāla.pattrakam acāru.viṣam avirāga.akṣaratvam akāntiḥ | 58 |

KAZ02.10.59/ pūrveṇa paścimasya-anupapattir vyāghātaḥ | 59 |

KAZ02.10.60/ uktasya-aviśeṣeṇa dvitīyam uccāraṇam punar.uktam | 60 |

KAZ02.10.61/ liṅga.vacana.kāla.kāraṇāṁ anyathā.prayogo 'paśabdaḥ | 61 |

KAZ02.10.62/ avarge varga.karaṇam ca-avarga.kriyā guṇa.viparyāsaḥ samplavaḥ | iti | 62 |

KAZ02.10.63ab/ sarva.śāstrāṇy anukramya prayogam upalabhya ca | ¹¹²

KAZ02.10.63cd/ kauṭilyena nara.indra.arthe śāsanasya vidhiḥ kṛtaḥ || 63 || ¹¹³

2.11 Chapter 11 (Section 29): Examination of Precious Articles Received in the Treasury

114

KAZ02.11.01/ kośa.adhyakṣaḥ kośa.praveśyam ratnam sārām phalgum kupyam vā
taj.jāta.karaṇa.adhiṣṭhitaḥ pratigrhṇīyāt | 1 |

KAZ02.11.02/ tāmra.parṇikam pāṇḍyaka.vāṭakam pāśikyam kauleyam caurṇeyam
māhendram kārdamikam srautasīyam hrādīyam haimavataṁ ca mauktikam | 2 |

KAZ02.11.03/ śuktiḥ śaṅkhaḥ prakīrṇakam ca yonayaḥ | 3 |

KAZ02.11.04/ masūrakam tri.puṭakam kūrmaḥ candrakam kañcukitam yamakam
kartakam kharakam siktakam kāmāṇḍalukam śyāvam nīlam durviddham ca-apraśastam | 4 |

KAZ02.11.05/ sthūlam vṛttam nistalam bhrājīṣṇu śvetam guru snigdham deśa.viddham ca
praśastam | 5 |

KAZ02.11.06/ śīrṣakam upaśīrṣakam prakāṇḍakam avaghāṭakam tarala.pratibaddham ca-iti
yaṣṭi.prabhedāḥ | 6 |

KAZ02.11.07/ yaṣṭīnām aṣṭa.sahasram indrac.chandaḥ | 7 |

KAZ02.11.08/ tato 'rdham vijayac.chandaḥ | 8 |

KAZ02.11.09/ catuṣṣaṣṭir ardha.hāraḥ | 9 |

KAZ02.11.10/ catuṣ.pañcāśad raśmi.kalāpaḥ | 10 |

KAZ02.11.11/ dvātriṁśad gucchaḥ | 11 |

KAZ02.11.12/ sapta.vimśatir nakṣatra.mālā | 12 |

KAZ02.11.13/ caturvimśatir ardha.gucchaḥ | 13 |

KAZ02.11.14/ vimśatir māṇavakaḥ | 14 |

KAZ02.11.15/ tato 'rdham ardha.māṇavakaḥ | 15 |

KAZ02.11.16/ eta eva maṇi.madhyāś tan.māṇavakā bhavanti | 16 |

KAZ02.11.17/ eka.śīrṣakaḥ śuddho hāraḥ | 17 |

KAZ02.11.18/ tadvat.śeṣāḥ | 18 |

KAZ02.11.19/ maṇi.madhyo 'rdha.māṇavakaḥ | 19 |

KAZ02.11.20/ tri.phalakaḥ phalaka.hāraḥ, pañca.phalako vā | 20 |

KAZ02.11.21/ sūtram ekāvalī śuddhā | 21 |

KAZ02.11.22/ sā-eva maṇi.madhyā yaṣṭiḥ | 22 |

KAZ02.11.23/ hema.maṇi.citrā ratnāvalī | 23 |

¹¹²KAZ02.10.63ab/ ś

¹¹³KAZ02.10.63cd/ ś

¹¹⁴[K tr. 111 :: K2 tr. 97

- KAZ02.11.24/ hema.maṇi.muktā.antaro 'pavartakaḥ | 24 |
- KAZ02.11.25/ suvarṇa.sūtra.antaraṁ sopānakam | 25 |
- KAZ02.11.26/ maṇi.madhyam vā maṇi.sopānakam | 26 |
- KAZ02.11.27/ tena śiro.hasta.pāda.kaṭi.kalāpa.jālaka.vikalpā vyākhyātāḥ | 27 |
- KAZ02.11.28/ maṇiḥ kauṭo.māleyakaḥ pāra.samudrakaś ca | 28 |
- KAZ02.11.29/ saugandhikaḥ padma.rāgo 'navadya.rāgaḥ pārijāta.puṣpako bāla.sūryakaḥ | 29 |
- KAZ02.11.30/ vaidūryam utpala.varṇaḥ śirīṣa.puṣpaka udaka.varṇo vaṁśa.rāgaḥ śuka.pattra.varṇaḥ puṣya.rāgo go.mūtrako go.medakaḥ | 30 |
- KAZ02.11.31/ indra.nīlo nīla.avalīyaḥ kalāya.puṣpako mahā.nīlo jambv.ābho jīmūta.prabho nandakaḥ sravan.madhyah | 31 |
- KAZ02.11.32/ śuddha.sphaṭiko mūlāṭa.varṇaḥ śita.vrṣṭiḥ sūrya.kāntaś ca | iti maṇayaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ02.11.33/ ṣaḍ.āśraś catur.āśro vṛtto vā tīvra.rāgaḥ saṁsthānavān achāḥ snigdho gurur arcīṣmān antar.gata.prabhaḥ prabhā.anulepī ca-iti maṇi.guṇāḥ | 33 |
- KAZ02.11.34/ manda.rāga.prabhaḥ sa-śarkaraḥ puṣpac.chidraḥ khaṇḍo durviddho lekha.ākīrṇa iti doṣāḥ | 34 |
- KAZ02.11.35/ vimalakaḥ sasyako 'ñjana.mūlakaḥ pittakaḥ sulabhako lohita.akṣo mṛga.āsmako jyotī.rasako māleyako 'hic.chatrakaḥ kūrpaḥ pratikūrpaḥ sugandhi.kūrpaḥ kṣīravakaḥ śśukti.cūrṇakaḥ śilā.pravālakāḥ pulakaḥ śukla.pulaka ity antara.jātayaḥ | 35 |
- KAZ02.11.36/ śeṣāḥ kāca.maṇayaḥ | 36 |
- KAZ02.11.37/ sabhā.rāṣṭrakaṁ tajjamā.rāṣṭrakaṁ kāstīra.rāṣṭrakaṁ śrī.kaṭānakam maṇimantakam indra.vānakam ca vajram | 37 |
- KAZ02.11.38/ khaniḥ srotaḥ prakīrṇakaṁ ca yonayaḥ | 38 |
- KAZ02.11.39/ mārjāra.akṣakaṁ śirīṣa.puṣpakaṁ go.mūtrakaṁ go.medakaṁ śuddha.sphaṭikaṁ mūlāṭi.varṇam maṇi.varṇānām anyatama.varṇam iti vajra.varṇāḥ | 39 |
- KAZ02.11.40/ sthūlam guru prahāra.saham samakoṭikaṁ bhājana.lekhi tarku.bhrāmi bhrājīṣṇu ca praśastam | 40 |
- KAZ02.11.41/ naṣṭa.koṇam nirāśri pārśva.apavṛttam ca-apraśastam | 41 |
- KAZ02.11.42/ pravālakam āla.kandakam vaivarṇikam ca, raktaṁ padma.rāgam ca karaṭa.garbhinikā.varjam iti | 42 |
- KAZ02.11.43/ candanam sātanam raktaṁ bhūmi.gandhi | 43 |
- KAZ02.11.44/ go.śīrṣakaṁ kāla.tāmrām matsya.gandhi | 44 |
- KAZ02.11.45/ hari.candanam śuka.pattra.varṇam āmra.gandhi, tārṇasam ca | 45 |
- KAZ02.11.46/ grāmerukaṁ raktaṁ rakta.kālam vā basta.mūtra.gandhi | 46 |
- KAZ02.11.47/ daivasabheyam raktaṁ padma.gandhi, jāpakaṁ ca | 47 |
- KAZ02.11.48/ joṅgakaṁ raktaṁ rakta.kālam vā snigdham, taurūpam ca | 48 |
- KAZ02.11.49/ māleyakaṁ pāṇḍu.raktaṁ | 49 |
- KAZ02.11.50/ kucandanam rūkṣam aguru.kālam raktaṁ rakta.kālam vā | 50 |
- KAZ02.11.51/ kāla.parvatakaṁ rakta.kālam anavadya.varṇam vā | 51 |
- KAZ02.11.52/ kośa.agāra.parvatakaṁ kālam kāla.citraṁ vā | 52 |
- KAZ02.11.53/ śita.udakīyam padma.ābham kāla.snigdham vā | 53 |
- KAZ02.11.54/ nāga.parvatakaṁ rūkṣam śaivala.varṇam vā | 54 |
- KAZ02.11.55/ śākalam kapilam | iti | 55 |
- KAZ02.11.56/ laghu snigdham aśyānam sarpiḥ.sneha.lepi gandha.sukham tvag.anusāry anulbaṇam avirāgy uṣṇa.saham dāha.grāhi sukha.sparśanam iti candana.guṇāḥ | 56 |
- KAZ02.11.57/ aguru joṅgakaṁ kālam kāla.citraṁ maṇḍala.citraṁ vā | 57 |
- KAZ02.11.58/ śyāmam doṅgakam | 58 |
- KAZ02.11.59/ pāra.samudrakaṁ citra.rūpam uśīra.gandhi nava.mālikā.gandhi vā | iti | 59 |

- KAZ02.11.60/ guru snigdham peśala.gandhi nirhāry agni.saham asampluta.dhūmaṁ vimarda.saham ity aguru.guṇāḥ | 60 |
- KAZ02.11.61/ taila.parṇikam aśoka.grāmikam māmśa.varṇam padma.gandhi | 61 |
- KAZ02.11.62/ joṅgakaṁ rakta.pītakam utpala.gandhi go.mūtra.gandhi vā | 62 |
- KAZ02.11.63/ grāmerukaṁ snigdham go.mūtra.gandhi | 63 |
- KAZ02.11.64/ sauvarṇa.kuḍyakaṁ rakta.pītaṁ mātuluṅga.gandhi | 64 |
- KAZ02.11.65/ pūrṇaka.dvīpakam padma.gandhi nava.nīta.gandhi vā | 65 |
- KAZ02.11.66/ bhadra.śriyaṁ pārāluhityakaṁ jātī.varṇam | 66 |
- KAZ02.11.67/ āntaravatyam uśīra.varṇam | 67 |
- KAZ02.11.68/ ubhayaṁ kuṣṭha.gandhi ca | iti | 68 |
- KAZ02.11.69/ kāleyakaḥ svarṇa.bhūmijaḥ snigdha.pītaḥ | 69 |
- KAZ02.11.70/ auttara.parvatako rakta.pītaḥ | | iti sārāḥ |
- KAZ02.11.71/ piṇḍa.kvātha.dhūma.saham avirāgi yoga.anuvidhāyī ca | 71 |
- KAZ02.11.72/ candana.aguruvac ca teṣāṁ guṇāḥ | 72 |
- KAZ02.11.73/ kāntanāvakaṁ praiyakaṁ ca-uttara.parvatakaṁ carma | 73 |
- KAZ02.11.74/ kāntanāvakaṁ mayūra.grīva.ābham | 74 |
- KAZ02.11.75/ praiyakaṁ nīla.pīta.śveta.lekhā.bindu.citram | 75 |
- KAZ02.11.76/ tad.ubhayam aṣṭa.aṅgula.āyāmam | 76 |
- KAZ02.11.77/ bisī mahā.bisī ca dvādaśa.grāmīye | 77 |
- KAZ02.11.78/ avyakta.rūpā duhilitikā citrā vā bisī | 78 |
- KAZ02.11.79/ paruṣā śveta.prāyā mahābisī | 79 |
- KAZ02.11.80/ dvādaśa.aṅgula.āyāmam ubhayam | 80 |
- KAZ02.11.81/ śyāmikā kālīkā kadālī candra.uttarā śākulā ca-ārohaḥ | 81 |
- KAZ02.11.82/ kapilā bindu.citrā vā śyāmikā | 82 |
- KAZ02.11.83/ kālīkā kapilā kapota.varṇā vā | 83 |
- KAZ02.11.84/ tad ubhayam aṣṭa.aṅgula.āyāmam | 84 |
- KAZ02.11.85/ paruṣā kadālī hasta.āyatā | 85 |
- KAZ02.11.86/ sā-eva candra.citrā candra.uttarā | 86 |
- KAZ02.11.87/ kadālī.tri.bhāgā śākulā koṭha.maṇḍala.citrā kṛta.karṇikā-ajina.citrā vā | iti | 87 |
- KAZ02.11.88/ sāmūram cīnasī sāmūlī ca bāhlaveyāḥ | 88 |
- KAZ02.11.89/ ṣaṭ.triṁśad.aṅgulam añjana.varṇam sāmūram | 89 |
- KAZ02.11.90/ cīnasī rakta.kālī pāṇḍu.kālī vā | 90 |
- KAZ02.11.91/ sāmūlī go.dhūma.varṇā | iti | 91 |
- KAZ02.11.92/ sāntinā nala.tūlā vṛtta.pṛcchā caudrāḥ | 92 |
- KAZ02.11.93/ sātinā kṛṣṇā | 93 |
- KAZ02.11.94/ nala.tūlā nala.tūla.varṇā | 94 |
- KAZ02.11.95/ kapilā vṛtta.pucchā ca | 95 | iti carma.jātayaḥ |
- KAZ02.11.96/ carmaṇām mṛdu snigdham bahula.roma ca śreṣṭham | 96 |
- KAZ02.11.97/ śuddham śuddha.raktaṁ pakṣa.raktaṁ ca-āvikam, khacitaṁ vāna.citraṁ khaṇḍa.saṅghātyaṁ tantu.vicchinnaṁ ca | 97 |
- KAZ02.11.98/ kambalaḥ kaucapakaḥ kulamitikā saumitikā turaga.āstaraṇam varṇakaṁ talicchakaṁ vāra.vāṇaḥ paristomaḥ samanta.bhadrakaṁ ca-āvikam | 98 |
- KAZ02.11.99/ picchilam ārdram iva ca sūkṣmaṁ mṛdu ca śreṣṭham | 99 |
- KAZ02.11.100/ aṣṭa.proti.saṅghātyā kṛṣṇā bhiṅgiśī varṣa.vāraṇam apasāraka iti naipālakam | 100 |
- KAZ02.11.101/ samputikā catur.aśrikā lambarā kaṭavānakaṁ prāvarakaḥ sattalikā-iti mṛga.roma | 101 |
- KAZ02.11.102/ vāṅgakaṁ śvetaṁ snigdham dukūlam | 102 |

- KAZ02.11.103/ paṇḍrakam śyāmaṁ maṇi.snigdham | 103 |
 KAZ02.11.104/ sauvarṇa.kuḍyakam sūrya.varṇam maṇi.snigdha.udaka.vānam
 catur.śra.vānam vyāmiśra.vānam ca | 104 |
 KAZ02.11.105/ eteṣāṁ eka.amśukam adhyardha.dvi.tri.catur.amśukam iti | 105 |
 KAZ02.11.106/ tena kāsikam paṇḍrakam ca kṣaumaṁ vyākhyātam | 106 |
 KAZ02.11.107/ māgadhikā paṇḍrikā sauvarṇa.kuḍyakā ca pattra.ūrṇā | 107 |
 KAZ02.11.108/ nāga.vṛkṣo likuco bakulo vaṭaś ca yonayaḥ | 108 |
 KAZ02.11.109/ pītikā nāga.vṛkṣikā | 109 |
 KAZ02.11.110/ go.dhūma.varṇā laikucī | 110 |
 KAZ02.11.111/ śvetā bākulī | 111 |
 KAZ02.11.112/ śeṣā nava.nīta.varṇā | 112 |
 KAZ02.11.113/ tāsāṁ sauvarṇa.kuḍyakā śreṣṭhā | 113 |
 KAZ02.11.114/ tayā kauśeyam cīna.paṭṭāś ca cīna.bhūmijā vyākhyātāḥ | 114 |
 KAZ02.11.115/ mādhumam āparāntakam kāliṅgam kāsikam vāṅgkam vātsakam māhiṣakam
 ca kārpaśikam śreṣṭham | iti | 115 |
 KAZ02.11.116/ ataḥ pareṣāṁ ratnānām pramāṇam mūlya.lakṣaṇam |
 KAZ02.11.117/ jātiṁ rūpaṁ ca jānīyān nīdhānam nava.karma ca | 117 |
 KAZ02.11.118/ purāṇa.pratisaṁskāram karma guhyam upaskarān |
 KAZ02.11.119/ deśa.kāla.parībhogaṁ himśrāṇām ca pratikriyām | 119 |

2.12 Chapter 12 (Section 30): Starting of Mines and Factories

115

- KAZ02.12.01/ ākara.adhyakṣaḥ śulba.dhātu.śāstra.rasa.pāka.maṇi.rāgañjas tajjña.sakho vā
 taj.jāta.karma.kara.upakaraṇa.sampannaḥ kiṭṭa.mūṣa.aṅgāra.bhasma.liṅgam vā-ākaraṁ
 bhūta.pūrvam abhuta.pūrvam vā bhūmi.prastara.rasa.dhātum atyartha.varṇa.gauravam
 ugra.gandha.rasaṁ parīkṣeta | 1 |
 KAZ02.12.02/ parvatānām abhijñāta.uddeśānām bila.guha.upatyaka.ālayana.gūḍha.khāteṣv
 antaḥ prasyandino jambū.cūta.tāla.phala.pakva.haridrā.bheda.guḍa(gūḍa?).hari.tāla.-
 manāḥ.śilā.kṣaudra.hiṅguluka.puṇḍarīka.śuka.mayūra.pattra.varṇāḥ
 savarṇa.udaka.oṣadhi.paryantāś cikkaṇā viśadā bhārikāś ca rasāḥ kāñcanikāḥ | 2 |
 KAZ02.12.03/ apsu niṣṭhyūtās tailavad.visarpiṇaḥ ṣaṅka.mala.grāhiṇaś ca tāmra.rūpyayoḥ
 śatād upari veddhāraḥ | 3 |
 KAZ02.12.04/ tat.pratirūpakam ugra.gandha.rasaṁ śilā.jatu vidyāt | 4 |
 KAZ02.12.05/ pītākās.tāmrakās tāmra.pītākā vā bhūmi.prastara.dhātavo bhinnā
 nīla.rājīvanto mudga.māṣa.kṣsara.varṇā vā dadhi.bindu.piṇḍa.citrā
 haridrā.harītakī.padma.pattra.śaivala.yakṛt.plīha.anavadya.varṇā bhinnāś
 cuñcu.vāluka.ālekhā.bindu.svastikavantaḥ sugulikā arciṣmantas tāpyamānā na bhidyante
 bahu.phena.dhūmāś ca suvarṇa.dhātavaḥ pratīvāpa.arthās tāmra.rūpya.vedhanāḥ | 5 |
 KAZ02.12.06/ śaṅkha.karpūra.sphaṭika.nava.nīta.kapota.pārāvata.vimalaka.mayūra.-
 grīvā.varṇāḥ sasyaka.gomedaka.guḍa.matsyaṇḍikā.varṇāḥ
 kovidāra.padma.pāṭalika.lāya.kṣauma.ataśi.puṣpa.varṇāḥ sa-sīsāḥ sa.añjanā visrā bhinnāḥ
 śveta.ābhāḥ kṛṣṇāḥ kṛṣṇa.ābhāḥ śvetāḥ sarve vā lekhā.bindu.citrā mṛdavo dharmāyamānā na
 sphuṭanti bahu.phena.dhūmāś ca rūpya.dhātavaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ02.12.07/ sarva.dhātūnām gaurava.vṛddhau sattva.vṛddhiḥ | 7 |
 KAZ02.12.08/ teṣāṁ asuddhā mūḍha.garbhā vā tikṣṇa.mūtra.kṣsara.bhāvitā
 rāja.vṛkṣa.vaṭa.pīlu.go.pitta.rocanā.mahiṣa.khara.karabha.mūtra.leṇḍa.- piṇḍa.baddhās
 tat.pratīvāpās tad.avalepā vā viśuddhāḥ sravanti | 8 |

¹¹⁵[K tr. 121 :: K2 tr. 105

- KAZ02.12.09/ yava.māṣa.tila.palāśa.pīlu.kṣārair.go.kṣīra.aja.kṣīrair vā
kadalī.vajra.kanda.pratīvapo mārḍava.karaḥ | 9 |
- KAZ02.12.10ab/ madhu.madhukam ajā.payaḥ sa-tailaṁ ghr̥ta.guḍa.kiṇva.yutaṁ
sa-kandalīkam |
- KAZ02.12.10cd/ yad api śata.sahasradhā vibhinnaṁ bhavati mṛḍu tribhir eva tan.niṣekaiḥ ||
10 ||
- KAZ02.12.11/ go.danta.śṛṅga.pratīvāpo mṛḍu.stambhanaḥ | 11 |
- KAZ02.12.12/ bhārikāḥ snigdho mṛḍuś ca prastara.dhātur bhūmi.bhāgo vā piṅgalo haritaḥ
pāṭalo lohito vā tāmra.dhātuḥ | 12 |
- KAZ02.12.13/ kāka.mocakaḥ kapota.rocanā.varṇaḥ śveta.rāji.naddho vā visraḥ sīsa.dhātuḥ |
13 |
- KAZ02.12.14/ ūśara.karburāḥ pakva.loṣṭha.varṇo vā trapu.dhātuḥ | 14 |
- KAZ02.12.15/ kharumbaḥ pāṇḍu.rohitaḥ sindu.vāra.puṣpa.varṇo vā tikṣṇa.dhātuḥ | 15 |
- KAZ02.12.16/ kāka.aṇḍa.bhuja.pattra.varṇo vā vaikṛntaka.dhātuḥ | 16 |
- KAZ02.12.17/ acchaḥ snigdhaḥ sa-prabho ghoṣavān śītas tīvras tanu.rāgaś ca maṇi.dhātuḥ |
17 |
- KAZ02.12.18/ dhātu.samutthaṁ taj.jāta.karma.anteṣu prayojayet | 18 |
- KAZ02.12.19/ kṛta.bhāṇḍa.vyavahāram eka.mukham, atyayaṁ ca-anyatra
karṭṛ.kreṭṛ.vikreṭṛñāṁ sthāpayet | 19 |
- KAZ02.12.20/ ākarikam apaharantam aṣṭa.guṇaṁ dāpayed anyatra ratnebhyaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ02.12.21/ stenam anisṛṣṭa.upajīvināṁ ca baddhaṁ karma kārayet, daṇḍa.upakāriṇaṁ ca
| 21 |
- KAZ02.12.22/ vyaya.kriyā.bhārikam ākaraṁ bhāgena prakrayeṇa vā dadyāt, lāghavikam
ātmanā kārayet | 22 |
- KAZ02.12.23/ loha.adhyakṣas
tāmra.sīsa.trapu.vaikṛnta.kāra.kūṭa.vṛtta.kāmsa.tāla.loha.karma.antān kārayet,
loha.bhāṇḍa.vyavahāram ca | 23 |
- KAZ02.12.24/ lakṣaṇa.adhyakṣaś catur.bhāga.tāmraṁ rūpya.rūpaṁ
tikṣṇa.trapu.sīsa.añjanānām anyatama.māṣa.bīja.yuktaṁ kārayet - paṇam ardha.paṇaṁ
pādam, aṣṭa.bhāgam iti, pāda.ājīvaṁ tāmra.rūpaṁ - māṣakam ardha.māṣakam kākāṇīm
ardha.kākāṇīm iti | 24 |
- KAZ02.12.25/ rūpa.darśakaḥ paṇa.yātrāṁ vyāvahārikīm kośa.praveśyām ca sthāpayet | 25 |
- KAZ02.12.26/ rūpikam aṣṭakaṁ śatam, pañcakaṁ śatam vyājīm, pārīkṣikam aṣṭa.bhāgikam,
śatam, pañca.vimśati.paṇam atyayaṁ ca anyatra.karṭṛ.kreṭṛ.vikreṭṛ.pārīkṣitṛbhyaḥ | 26 |
- KAZ02.12.27/ khany.adhyakṣaḥ śaṅkha.vajra.maṇi.muktā.pravāla.kṣāra.karma.antān
kārayet, paṇana.vyavahāram ca | 27 |
- KAZ02.12.28/ lavaṇa.adhyakṣaḥ pāka.muktaṁ lavaṇa.bhāgaṁ prakrayaṁ ca yathā.kālaṁ
saṅgrhñīyād, vikrayāc ca mūlyaṁ rūpaṁ vyājīm ca | 28 |
- KAZ02.12.29/ āgantu.lavaṇaṁ ṣaḍ.bhāgaṁ dadyāt | 29 |
- KAZ02.12.30/ datta.bhāga.vibhāgasya vikrayaḥ, pañcakaṁ śatam vyājīm rūpaṁ rūpikaṁ ca
| 30 |
- KAZ02.12.31/ kretā śulkaṁ rāja.paṇyac.cheda.anurūpaṁ ca vaidharaṇaṁ dadyāt, anyatra
kretā ṣaṭ.chatam atyayaṁ ca | 31 |
- KAZ02.12.32/ vilavaṇam uttamaṁ daṇḍam dadyād, anisṛṣṭa.upajīvi ca-anyatra
vānaprasthebhyaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ02.12.33/ śrotriyās tapasvino viṣṭayaś ca bhakta.lavaṇaṁ hareyuh | 33 |
- KAZ02.12.34/ ato 'nyo lavaṇa.kṣāra.vargaḥ śulkaṁ dadyāt | 34 |
- KAZ02.12.35ab/ evaṁ mūlyaṁ ca bhāgaṁ ca vyājīm parigham atyayaṁ |
- KAZ02.12.35cd/ śulkaṁ vaidharaṇaṁ daṇḍam rūpaṁ rūpikam eva ca || 35 ||

KAZ02.12.36ab/ khanibhyo dvādaśa.vidhaṁ dhātuṁ paṇyaṁ ca saṁharet |
 KAZ02.12.36cd/ evaṁ sarveṣu paṇyeṣu sthāpayen mukha.saṅgraham || 36 ||
 KAZ02.12.37ab/ ākara.prabhaḥ kośaḥ kośād daṇḍaḥ prajāyate |
 KAZ02.12.37cd/ prthivī kośa.daṇḍābhyāṁ prāpyate kośa.bhūṣaṇā || 37 ||

2.13 Chapter 13 (Section 31): The Superintendent of Gold in the Workshop

116

KAZ02.13.01/ suvarṇa.adhyakṣaḥ suvarṇa.rajata.karma.antānām
 asambandha.āveśana.catuḥ.śālām eka.dvārām akṣa.śālām kārayet | 1 |
 KAZ02.13.02/ viśikhā.madhye sauvarṇikāṁ śilpavantam abhijātāṁ prātyayikāṁ ca sthāpayet
 | 2 |
 KAZ02.13.03/ jāmbūnadaṁ śātakumbhaṁ hāṭakaṁ vaiṇavaṁ śṛṅga.suktijāṁ jāta.rūpaṁ
 rasa.viddham ākara.udgataṁ ca suvarṇam | 3 |
 KAZ02.13.04/ kiṇjalka.varṇaṁ mṛdu snigdham anādi bhrājiṣṇu ca śreṣṭham, rakta.pītakaṁ
 madhyamam, raktam avaram | 4 |
 KAZ02.13.05/ śreṣṭhānām pāṇḍu śvetaṁ ca-aprāptakam | 5 |
 KAZ02.13.06/ tad yena-aprāptakam tac catur.guṇena sīsenā śodhayet | 6 |
 KAZ02.13.07/ sīsa.anvayena bhidyamānaṁ śuṣka.paṭalair dhṁāpayet | 7 |
 KAZ02.13.08/ rūkṣatvād bhidyamānaṁ taila.gomaye niṣecayet | 8 |
 KAZ02.13.09/ ākara.udgataṁ sīsa.anvayena bhidyamānaṁ pāka.patṭrāṇi kṛtvā gaṇḍikāsu
 kuṭṭayet, kadālī.vajra.kanda.kalke vā niṣecayet | 9 |
 KAZ02.13.10/ tuttha.udgataṁ gauḍikaṁ kāmbukaṁ cākṛavālikaṁ ca rūpyam | 10 |
 KAZ02.13.11/ śvetaṁ snigdham mṛdu ca śreṣṭham | 11 |
 KAZ02.13.12/ viparyaye sphoṭanaṁ ca duṣṭam | 12 |
 KAZ02.13.13/ tat.sīsa.catur.bhāgena śodhayet | 13 |
 KAZ02.13.14/ udgata.cūlikam acchaṁ bhrājiṣṇu dadhi.varṇaṁ ca śuddham | 14 |
 KAZ02.13.15/ śuddhasya-eko hāridrasya suvarṇo varṇakaḥ | 15 |
 KAZ02.13.16/ tataḥ śulba.kākaṇy.uttara.apasāritā ā.catuḥ.sīma.antād iti ṣoḍaśa varṇakāḥ |
 16 |
 KAZ02.13.17/ suvarṇaṁ pūrvaṁ nikaṣya paścād varṇikāṁ nikaṣayet | 17 |
 KAZ02.13.18/ sama.rāga.lekham animna.unnate deśe nikaṣitam, parimṛditaṁ parilīḍham
 nakha.antarād vā gairikeṇa.avacūrṇitam upadhiṁ vidyāt | 18 |
 KAZ02.13.19/ jāti.hiṅgulukena puṣpakā.sīsenā vā go.mūtra.bhāvitena digdhena-agra.hastena
 saṁsprṣṭaṁ suvarṇaṁ śvetī.bhavati | 19 |
 KAZ02.13.20/ sa-kesaraḥ snigdho mṛdur bhājiṣṇuś ca nikaṣa.rāgaḥ śreṣṭhaḥ | 20 |
 KAZ02.13.21/ kāliṅgakaś tāpī.pāṣāṇo vā mudga.varṇo nikaṣaḥ śreṣṭhaḥ | 21 |
 KAZ02.13.22/ sama.rāgī vikraya.kraya.hitāḥ | 22 |
 KAZ02.13.23/ hastic.chavikaḥ saharitaḥ prati.rāgī vikraya.hitāḥ | 23 |
 KAZ02.13.24/ sthiraḥ paruṣo viṣama.varṇaś ca-apratirāgī kraya.hitāḥ | 24 |
 KAZ02.13.25/ chedaś cikkaṇaḥ sama.varṇaḥ ślakṣṇo mṛdur bhājiṣṇuś ca śreṣṭhaḥ | 25 |
 KAZ02.13.26/ tāpo bahir.antaś ca samaḥ kiṇjalka.varṇaḥ kuraṇḍaka.puṣpa.varṇo vā śreṣṭhaḥ
 | 26 |
 KAZ02.13.27/ śyāvo nīlaś ca-aprāptakaḥ | 27 |
 KAZ02.13.28/ tulā.pratimānaṁ pautava.adhyakṣe vakṣyāmaḥ | 28 |
 KAZ02.13.29/ tena-upadeśena rūpya.suvarṇaṁ dadyād ādadīta ca | 29 |
 KAZ02.13.30/ akṣa.śālām anāyukto na-upagacchet | 30 |

¹¹⁶[K tr. 126 :: K2 tr. 110

- KAZ02.13.31/ abhigacchann ucchedyaḥ | 31 |
- KAZ02.13.32/ āyukto vā sarūpya.suvarṇas tena-eva jīyeta | 32 |
- KAZ02.13.33/ vicita.vastra.hasta.guhyāḥ kāñcana.prṣata.tvaṣṭṛ.tapanīya.kāravo
dhmāyaka.caraka.pāmsu.dhāvākāḥ praviśeyur niṣkaseyuś ca | 33 |
- KAZ02.13.34/ sarvaṁ ca-eṣāṁ upakaraṇam aniṣṭhitās ca prayogās tatra-eva-avatiṣṭheran |
34 |
- KAZ02.13.35/ gr̥hītaṁ suvarṇaṁ dhṛtaṁ ca prayogaṁ karaṇa.madhye dadyāt | 35 |
- KAZ02.13.36/ sāyaṁ prātaś ca lakṣitaṁ kartṛ.kārayitr̥.mudrābhyāṁ nidadhyāt | 36 |
- KAZ02.13.37/ kṣepaṇo guṇaḥ kṣudrakam iti karmāṇi | 37 |
- KAZ02.13.38/ kṣepaṇaḥ kāca.arpaṇa.ādīni | 38 |
- KAZ02.13.39/ guṇaḥ sūtra.vāna.ādīni | 39 |
- KAZ02.13.40/ ghaṇaṁ suṣiraṁ prṣata.ādi.yuktaṁ kṣudrakam iti | 40 |
- KAZ02.13.41/ arpayet kāca.karmaṇaḥ pañca.bhāgaṁ kāñcanaṁ daśa.bhāgaṁ kaṭu.mānam |
41 |
- KAZ02.13.42/ tāmra.pāda.yuktaṁ rūpyaṁ rūpya.pāda.yuktaṁ vā suvarṇaṁ saṁskṛtakam,
tasmād rakṣet | 42 |
- KAZ02.13.43/ prṣata.kāca.karmaṇaḥ trayo hi bhāgāḥ paribhāṇḍaṁ dvau vāstukam, catvāro
vā vāstukaṁ trayāḥ paribhāṇḍam | 43 |
- KAZ02.13.44/ tvaṣṭṛ.karmaṇaḥ śulba.bhāṇḍaṁ sama.suvarṇena samyūhayet | 44 |
- KAZ02.13.45/ rūpya.bhāṇḍaṁ ghaṇaṁ suṣiraṁ vā suvarṇa.ardhena-avalepayet | 45 |
- KAZ02.13.46/ catur.bhāga.suvarṇaṁ vā vālukā.hiṅgulukasya rasena cūrṇena vā vāsayet | 46
|
- KAZ02.13.47/ tapanīyaṁ jyeṣṭhaṁ suvarṇaṁ surāgaṁ sama.sīsa.atikrāntaṁ
pāka.pattra.pakvaṁ saindhavikayā-ujjvālitaṁ nīla.pīta.śveta.harita.śuka.pattra.varṇānāṁ
prakṛtir bhavati | 47 |
- KAZ02.13.48/ tīkṣṇaṁ ca-asya mayūra.grīva.ābhaṁ śveta.bhaṅgaṁ cimiḥcimāyitaṁ
pīta.cūrṇitaṁ kākaṇikaḥ suvarṇa.rāgaḥ | 48 |
- KAZ02.13.49/ tāram upaśuddhaṁ vā - asthi.tutthe catuḥ sama.sīse catuḥ śuṣka.tutthe catuḥ
kapāle trir gomaye dvir evaṁ sapta.daśa.tuttha.atikrāntaṁ saindhavikayā-ujjvālitaṁ | 49 |
- KAZ02.13.50/ etasmāt kākaṇy.uttaramād vimāśād iti suvarṇe deyam, paścād rāga.yogaḥ,
śveta.tāraṁ bhavati | 50 |
- KAZ02.13.51/ trayo 'mśās tapanīyasya dvātrimśad.bhāga.śveta.tāram ūrcchitāḥ tat
śveta.lohitakaṁ bhavati | 51 |
- KAZ02.13.52/ tāmraṁ pītakaṁ karoti | 52 |
- KAZ02.13.53/ tapanīyam ujjvālya rāga.tri.bhāgaṁ dadyāt, pīta.rāgaṁ bhavati | 53 |
- KAZ02.13.54/ śveta.tāra.bhāgau dvāv ekas tapanīyasya mudga.varṇaṁ karoti | 54 |
- KAZ02.13.55/ kāla.āyasya-ardha.bhāga.abhyaktaṁ kṛṣṇaṁ bhavati | 55 |
- KAZ02.13.56/ pratilepinā rasena dvi.guṇa.abhyaktaṁ tapanīyaṁ śuka.pattra.varṇaṁ bhavati
| 56 |
- KAZ02.13.57/ tasya.ārambhe rāga.viśeṣeṣu prativarṇikāṁ gr̥hṇīyāt | 57 |
- KAZ02.13.58/ tīkṣṇa.tāmra.saṁskāraṁ ca budhyeta | 58 |
- KAZ02.13.59/ tasmād vajra.maṇi.muktā.pravāla.rūpāṇāṁ apaneyi.mānaṁ ca
rūpya.suvarṇa.bhāṇḍa.bandha.pramāṇāni ca | 59 |
- KAZ02.13.60ab/ sama.rāgaṁ sama.dvandvam asakta.prṣataṁ sthiraṁ |
- KAZ02.13.60cd/ supramṛṣṭam asampītaṁ vibhaktaṁ dhāraṇe sukham || 60 ||
- KAZ02.13.61ab/ abhinītaṁ prabhā.yuktaṁ saṁsthānam adhuraṁ samam |
- KAZ02.13.61cd/ mano.netra.abhirāmaṁ ca tapanīya.guṇaḥ smṛtāḥ || 61 ||

2.14 Chapter 14 (Section 32): The Royal Goldsmith in the Market Highway

117

- KAZ02.14.01/ sauvarṇikaḥ paura.jāna.padānām rūpya.suvarṇam āveśanibhiḥ kārayet | 1 |
 KAZ02.14.02/ nirdiṣṭa.kāla.kāryam ca karma kuryuḥ, anirdiṣṭa.kālam kārya.apadeśam | 2 |
 KAZ02.14.03/ kāryasya.anyathā.karaṇe vetana.nāśaḥ, tad.dvi.guṇaś ca daṇḍaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ02.14.04/ kāla.atipātane pāda.hīnam vetanam tad.dvi.guṇaś ca daṇḍaḥ | 4 |
 KAZ02.14.05/ yathā.varṇa.pramāṇam nikṣepam gr̥hṇīyus tathā.vidham eva-arpayeyuḥ | 5 |
 KAZ02.14.06/ kāla.antarād api ca tathā.vidham eva pratigr̥hṇīyuh, anyatra kṣṇa.pariśīrṇābhyām | 6 |
 KAZ02.14.07/ āveśanibhiḥ suvarṇa.pudgala.lakṣaṇa.prayogeṣu tat.taj jānīyāt | 7 |
 KAZ02.14.08/ tapta.kala.dhautakayoḥ kākaṇikaḥ suvarṇe kṣayo deyaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ02.14.09/ tīkṣṇa.kākaṇī - rūpya.dvi.guṇaḥ - rāga.prakṣepaḥ, tasya ṣaḍ.bhāgaḥ kṣayaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ02.14.10/ varṇa.hīne māśa.avare pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, pramāṇa.hīne madhyamaḥ, tulā.pratimāna.upadhāv uttamaḥ, kṛta.bhāṇḍa.upadhau ca | 10 |
 KAZ02.14.11/ sauvarṇikena-adṛṣṭam anyatra vā prayogaṁ kārayat dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ02.14.12/ kartur dvi.guṇaḥ sa-apasāraś cet | 12 |
 KAZ02.14.13/ anapasāraḥ kaṇṭaka.śodhanāya niyeta | 13 |
 KAZ02.14.14/ kartuś ca dvi.śato daṇḍaḥ paṇac.chedanam vā | 14 |
 KAZ02.14.15/ tulā.pratimāna.bhāṇḍam pautava.hastāt kr̥ṇīyuh | 15 |
 KAZ02.14.16/ anyathā dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 16 |
 KAZ02.14.17/ ghanam suṣīram samyūhyam avalepyam saṅghātyam vāsitaḥ ca kārū.karma | 17 |
 KAZ02.14.18/ tulā.viṣamam apasāraṇam visrāvaṇam peṭakaḥ piṅkaś ca-iti haraṇa.upāyāḥ | 18 |
 KAZ02.14.19/ samnāminy utkīrṇikā bhinna.mastaka.upakaṇṭhī kuśikyā sakaṭu.kakṣyā parivēyā-ayas.kāntā ca duṣṭa.tulāḥ | 19 |
 KAZ02.14.20/ rūpyasya dvau bhāgāv ekaḥ śulbasya tripuṭakam | 20 |
 KAZ02.14.21/ tena-akaroḍ gatam apasāryate tat.tripuṭaka.apasāritam | 21 |
 KAZ02.14.22/ śulbena śulba.apasāritam, vellakena vellaka.apasāritam, śulba.ardha.sāreṇa hemnā hema.apasāritam | 22 |
 KAZ02.14.23/ mūka.mūṣā pūti.kiṭṭhaḥ karaṭuka.mukham nālī sandamśo joṅganī suvarcikā.lavaṇam tad eva suvarṇam ity apasāraṇa.mārgaḥ | 23 |
 KAZ02.14.24/ pūrva.praṇihitā vā piṇḍa.vālukā mūṣā.bhedād agniṣṭhād uddhriyante | 24 |
 KAZ02.14.25/ paścād bandhane ācitaka.pattra.parīkṣāyām vā rūpya.rūpeṇa parivartanam visrāvaṇam, piṇḍa.vālukānām loha.piṇḍa.vālukābhir vā | 25 |
 KAZ02.14.26/ gāḍhaś ca-abhyuddhāryaś ca peṭakaḥ samyūhya-avalepya.saṅghātyeṣu kriyate | 26 |
 KAZ02.14.27/ sīsa.rūpam suvarṇa.pattreṇa-avaliptam abhyantaram aṣṭakena baddham gāḍha.peṭakaḥ | 27 |
 KAZ02.14.28/ sa eva paṭala.samputeṣv abhyuddhāryaḥ | 28 |
 KAZ02.14.29/ pattram āśliṣṭam yamakapattraṁ vā-avalepyeṣu kriyate | 29 |
 KAZ02.14.30/ śulbam tāram vā garbhāḥ pattraṇām saṅghātyeṣu kriyate | 30 |
 KAZ02.14.31/ śulba.rūpam suvarṇa.pattra.samhataṁ pramṛṣṭam supārśvam, tad eva yamaka.pattra.samhataṁ pramṛṣṭam tāmra.tāra.rupam ca-uttara.varṇakaḥ | 31 |

¹¹⁷[K tr. 133 :: K2 tr. 116

- KAZ02.14.32/ tad ubhayaṃ tāpani.kaṣābhyāṃ niḥśabda.ullekhanābhyāṃ vā vidyāt | 32 |
 KAZ02.14.33/ abhyuddhāryaṃ badara.āmle lavaṇa.udake vā sādayanti | iti peṭakaḥ | 33 |
 KAZ02.14.34/ ghane suṣire vā rūpe suvarṇa.mṛṇ.māluka.hiṅguluka.kalpo vā tapto 'vatiṣṭhate | 34 |
 KAZ02.14.35/ dṛḍha.vāstuke vā rūpe vālukā.miśraṃ jatu gāndhāra.paṅko vā tapto 'vatiṣṭhate | 35 |
 KAZ02.14.36/ tayos tāpanam avadhvaṃsanam vā śuddhiḥ | 36 |
 KAZ02.14.37/ sa-paribhāṇḍe vā rūpe lavaṇam ulkayā kaṭu.śarkarayā taptam avatiṣṭhate | 37 |
 KAZ02.14.38/ tasya kvāthanam śuddhiḥ | 38 |
 KAZ02.14.39/ abhra.paṭalam aṣṭakena dvi.guṇa.vāstuke vā rūpe badhyate | 39 |
 KAZ02.14.40/ tasya-apihita.kācakasya-udake nimajjata eka.deśaḥ sīdati, paṭala.antareṣu vā sūcyā bhidyate | 40 |
 KAZ02.14.41/ maṇayo rūpyaṃ suvarṇaṃ vā ghana.suṣirāṇāṃ piṅkaḥ | 41 |
 KAZ02.14.42/ tasya tāpanam avadhvaṃsanam vā śuddhiḥ | iti piṅkaḥ | 42 |
 KAZ02.14.43/ tasmād vajra.maṇi.muktā.pravāla.rūpāṇāṃ jāti.rūpa.varṇa.pramāṇa.pudgala.lakṣaṇāny upalabheta | 43 |
 KAZ02.14.44/ kṛta.bhāṇḍa.parīkṣāyāṃ purāṇa.bhāṇḍa.pratisaṃskāre vā catvāro haraṇa.upāyāḥ - parikuṭṭanam avacchedanam ullekhanam parimardanam vā | 44 |
 KAZ02.14.45/ peṭaka.apadeśena pṛṣṭam guṇam piṭakāṃ vā yat pariśāṭayanti tat.parikuṭṭanam | 45 |
 KAZ02.14.46/ yad.dvi.guṇa.vāstukāṇāṃ vā rūpe sīsa.rūpaṃ prakṣipyā-ābhyantaram avacchindanti tad avacchedanam | 46 |
 KAZ02.14.47/ yad ghanāṇāṃ tīkṣṇena-ullikhanti tad ullekhanam | 47 |
 KAZ02.14.48/ hari.tāla.manaḥ.śilā.hiṅguluka.cūrṇāṇāṃ anyatamena kuru.vinda.cūrṇena vā vastraṃ samyūhya yat parimṛdnanti tat parimardanam | 48 |
 KAZ02.14.49/ tena sauvarṇa.rājatāni bhāṇḍāni kṣīyante, na ca-eṣāṃ kiñcid avaruṇaṃ bhavati | 49 |
 KAZ02.14.50/ bhagna.khaṇḍa.ghṛṣṭāṇāṃ samyūhyāṇāṃ sadṛśena-anumānaṃ kuryāt | 50 |
 KAZ02.14.51/ avalepyāṇāṃ yāvad utpāṭitaṃ tāvad utpāṭya-anumānaṃ kuryāt | 51 |
 KAZ02.14.52/ virūpāṇāṃ vā tāpanam udaka.peṣaṇaṃ ca bahuśaḥ kuryāt | 52 |
 KAZ02.14.53/ avakṣepaḥ pratimānam agnir gaṇḍikā bhaṇḍika.adhikaraṇī piñchaḥ sūtraṃ cellaṃ bollaṇaṃ śira utsaṅgo makṣikā sva.kāya.īkṣā dṛtir udaka.śarāvam agniṣṭham iti kācam vidyāt | 53 |
 KAZ02.14.54/ rājatāṇāṃ visraṃ mala.grāhi paruṣaṃ prastīnaṃ vivarṇaṃ vā duṣṭam iti vidyāt | 54 |
 KAZ02.14.55ab/ evaṃ navaṃ ca jīrṇaṃ ca virūpaṃ ca-api bhāṇḍakam |
 KAZ02.14.55cd/ parīkṣeta-atyayaṃ ca-eṣāṃ yathā.uddiṣṭam prakalpayet || 55 ||

2.15 Chapter 15 (Section 33): The Superintendent of the Magazine

118

- KAZ02.15.01/ koṣṭha.agāra.adhyakṣaḥ
 sītā.rāṣṭra.krayima.parivartaka.prāmityaka.āpamityaka.samhanika.-
 anya.jāta.vyaya.pratyāya.upasthānāny upalabhet | 1 |
 KAZ02.15.02/ sītā.adhyakṣa.upanītaḥ sasya.varṇakaḥ sītā | 2 |
 KAZ02.15.03/ piṇḍa.karaḥ ṣaḍ.bhāgaḥ senā.bhaktaṃ baliḥ kara utsaṅgaḥ pārśvaṃ pārihīnikam aupāyanikaṃ kauṣṭheyakaṃ ca rāṣṭram | 3 |

¹¹⁸[K tr. 139 :: K2 tr. 122

- KAZ02.15.04/ dhānya.mūlyam kośa.nirhāraḥ prayoga.pratyādānam ca krayimam | 4 |
- KAZ02.15.05/ sasya.varṇānām argha.antareṇa vinimayaḥ parivartakaḥ | 5 |
- KAZ02.15.06/ sasya.yācanam anyataḥ prāmityakam | 6 |
- KAZ02.15.07/ tad eva pratidāna.artham āpamityakam | 7 |
- KAZ02.15.08/ kuṭṭaka.rocaka.saktu.śukta.piṣṭa.karma taj.jīvaneṣu
taila.pīḍana.maudra.cākrīkeṣv ikṣūṇām ca kṣāra.karma saṁhanikā | 8 |
- KAZ02.15.09/ naṣṭa.prasmṛta.ādir anya.jātaḥ | 9 |
- KAZ02.15.10/ vikṣepa.vyādhita.antara.ārambha.śeṣam ca vyaya.pratyāyaḥ | 10 |
- KAZ02.15.11/ tulā.māna.antaram hasta.pūraṇam utkaro vyājī paryuṣitam prārjitam
ca-upasthānam | iti | 11 |
- KAZ02.15.12/ dhānya.sneha.kṣāra.lavaṇānām dhānya.kalpaṁ sītā.adhyakṣe vakṣyāmaḥ | 12 |
- KAZ02.15.13/ sarpis.taila.vasā.majjānaḥ snehāḥ | 13 |
- KAZ02.15.14/ phāṇita.guḍa.matsyaṇḍika.akhaṇḍa.śarkarāḥ kṣāra.vargaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ02.15.15/ saindhava.sāmudra.biḍa.yava.kṣāra.sauvarcala.udbhedajā lavaṇa.vargaḥ | 15 |
- KAZ02.15.16/ kṣaudraṁ mārīvikaṁ ca madhu | 16 |
- KAZ02.15.17/ ikṣu.rasa.guḍa.madhu.phāṇita.jāmbava.panasānām anyatamo
meṣa.śṛṅgī.pippalī.kvātha.abhiṣuto māsikaḥ śāṇmāsikaḥ sāmvasariko vā cidbhiṭor
vāruka.ikṣu.kāṇḍa.āmra.phala.āmalaka.avasutaḥ śuddho vā śukta.vargaḥ | 17 |
- KAZ02.15.18/ vṛkṣa.āmla.kara.marda.āmra.vidala.āmalaka.mātuluṅga.kola.badara.-
sauvīraka.parūṣaka.ādiḥ phala.āmla.vargaḥ | 18 |
- KAZ02.15.19/ dadhi.dhānya.āmla.ādir drava.āmla.vargaḥ | 19 |
- KAZ02.15.20/ pippalī.marica.śṛṅgi.berā.ājāī.kirāta.tikta.gaura.sarṣapa.kustumburu.-
coraka.damanaka.maruvaka.śigru.kāṇḍa.ādiḥ kaṭuka.vargaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ02.15.21/ śuṣka.matsya.māṁsa.kanda.mūla.phala.śāka.ādi ca śāka.vargaḥ | 21 |
- KAZ02.15.22/ tato 'rdham āpad.artham jānapadānām sthāpayed, ardhham upayujīta | 22 |
- KAZ02.15.23/ navena ca-anavam śodhayet | 23 |
- KAZ02.15.24/ kṣuṇṇa.ghṛṣṭa.piṣṭa.bhr̥ṣṭānām ārdra.śuṣka.siddhānām ca dhānyānām
vṛddhi.kṣaya.pramāṇāni pratyakṣī.kurvīta | 24 |
- KAZ02.15.25/ kodrava.vr̥hīṇām ardham sārāḥ, śālīnām ardha.bhāga.ūnaḥ, tri.bhāga.ūno
varakāṇām | 25 |
- KAZ02.15.26/ priyaṅgūṇām ardham sāro nava.bhāga.vṛddhiś ca | 26 |
- KAZ02.15.27/ udārakas tulyaḥ, yavā go.dhūmās ca kṣuṇṇāḥ, tilā yavā mudga.māśās ca
ghṛṣṭāḥ | 27 |
- KAZ02.15.28/ pañca.bhāga.vṛddhir.go.dhūmaḥ, saktavaś ca | 28 |
- KAZ02.15.29/ pāda.ūnā kalāya.camasi | 29 |
- KAZ02.15.30/ mudga.māśānām ardha.pāda.ūnā | 30 |
- KAZ02.15.31/ śaumbaṇām ardham sārāḥ, tri.bhāga.ūno masūrāṇām | 31 |
- KAZ02.15.32/ piṣṭam āmam kulmāśās ca-adhyardha.guṇāḥ | 32 |
- KAZ02.15.33/ dvi.guṇo yāvakaḥ, pulākaḥ, piṣṭam ca siddham | 33 |
- KAZ02.15.34/ kodrava.varaka.udāraka.priyaṅgūṇām tri.guṇam annam, catur.guṇam
vr̥hīṇām, pañca.guṇam śālīnām | 34 |
- KAZ02.15.35/ timitam apara.annam dvi.guṇam, ardha.adhikaṁ virūḍhānām | 35 |
- KAZ02.15.36/ pañca.bhāga.vṛddhir bhr̥ṣṭānām | 36 |
- KAZ02.15.37/ kalāyo dvi.guṇaḥ, lājā bharujās ca | 37 |
- KAZ02.15.38/ ṣaṭkaṁ tailam atasīnām | 38 |
- KAZ02.15.39/ nimba.kuśa.āmra.pittha.ādīnām pañca.bhāgaḥ | 39 |
- KAZ02.15.40/ catur.bhāgikās tila.kusumbha.madhūka.iṅgudī.snehāḥ | 40 |
- KAZ02.15.41/ kārpaśa.kṣaumbaṇām pañca.pale palam sūtram | 41 |

KAZ02.15.42/ pañca.droṇe śālīnām dvādaśa.āḍhakam taṇḍulānām kalabha.bhojanam, ekādaśakam vyālānām, daśakam aupavāhyānām navakam sāmānāhyānām, aṣṭakam pattīnām, sapṭakam mukhyānām, ṣaṭkam devī.kumārāṇām, pañcakam rājñām, akhaṇḍa.pariśuddhānām vā taṇḍulānām prasthaḥ | 42 |

KAZ02.15.43/ taṇḍulānām prasthaḥ catur.bhāgaḥ sūpaḥ sūpa.ṣoḍaśo lavaṇasya-amśaḥ catur.bhāgaḥ sarpiṣas tailasya vā-ekam ārya.bhaktam puṁsaḥ | 43 |

KAZ02.15.44/ ṣaḍ.bhāgaḥ sūpaḥ ardha.sneham avarāṇām | 44 |

KAZ02.15.45/ pāda.ūnam strīṇām | 45 |

KAZ02.15.46/ ardham bālānām | 46 |

KAZ02.15.47/ māmśa.pala.vimśatyā sneha.ardha.kuḍubhaḥ paliko lavaṇasya-amśaḥ kṣāra.pala.yogo dvi.dharaṇikaḥ kaṭuka.yogo dadhnuś ca-ardha.prasthaḥ | 47 |

KAZ02.15.48/ tena-uttaram vyākhyātam | 48 |

KAZ02.15.49/ śākānām adhyardha.guṇaḥ, śuṣkāṇām dvi.guṇaḥ, sa caiva yogaḥ | 49 |

KAZ02.15.50/ hasty.aśvayos tad.adhyakṣe vidhā.pramāṇam vakṣyāmaḥ | 50 |

KAZ02.15.51/ balī.vardānām māśa.droṇam yavānām vā pulākaḥ, śeṣam aśva.vidhānam | 51 |

KAZ02.15.52/ viśeṣo ghāṇa.piṇyāka.tulā, kaṇa.kuṇḍakam daśa.āḍhakam vā | 52 |

KAZ02.15.53/ dvi.guṇam mahiṣa.uṣṭrāṇām | 53 |

KAZ02.15.54/ ardha.droṇam khara.pṛṣata.rohitānām | 54 |

KAZ02.15.55/ āḍhakam eṇa.kuraṅgāṇām | 55 |

KAZ02.15.56/ ardha.āḍhakam aja.eḍaka.varāhāṇām, dvi.guṇam vā kaṇa.kuṇḍakam | 56 |

KAZ02.15.57/ prastha.odanaḥ śunām | 57 |

KAZ02.15.58/ haṁśa.krauñca.mayūrāṇām ardha.prasthaḥ | 58 |

KAZ02.15.59/ śeṣāṇām ato mṛga.paśu.pakṣi.vyālānām eka.bhaktād anumānam grāhayet | 59 |

KAZ02.15.60/ aṅgārāms tuṣān loha.karma.anta.bhitti.lepyānām hārayet | 60 |

KAZ02.15.61/ kaṇikā dāsa.karma.kara.sūpa.kārāṇām, ato 'nyad audanika.apūpikabhyaḥ prayacchet | 61 |

KAZ02.15.62/ tulā.māna.bhāṇḍam

rocānī.drṣan.musala.ulūkhalā.kuṭṭaka.rocaka.yantra.pattraka.sūrpa.-

cālanika.akaṇḍolī.piṭaka.sammārjanyāś ca-upakaraṇāni | 62 |

KAZ02.15.63/ mārjaka.rakṣaka.dharaka.māyaka.māpaka.dāyaka.dāpaka.śālāka.- apratigrāhaka.dāsa.karma.kara.vargaś ca viṣṭiḥ | 63 |

KAZ02.15.64ab/ uccair dhānyasya nikṣepo mūtāḥ kṣārasya saṁhatāḥ |

KAZ02.15.64cd/ mṛt.kāṣṭha.koṣṭhāḥ snehasya pṛthivī lavaṇasya ca || 64 ||

2.16 Chapter 16 (Section 34): The Director of Trade

119

KAZ02.16.01/ paṇya.adhyakṣaḥ sthala.jalajānām nānā.vidhānām paṇyānām sthala.patha.vāri.patha.upayātānām sāra.phalgv.argha.antaram priya.apriyatām ca vidyāt, tathā vikṣepa.sāṅkṣepa.kraya.vikraya.prayoga.kālān | 1 |

KAZ02.16.02/ yac ca paṇyam pracuram syāt tad ekī.kṛtya-argham āropayet | 2 |

KAZ02.16.03/ prāpte 'rghe vā-argha.antaram kārayet | 3 |

KAZ02.16.04/ sva.bhūmijānām rāja.paṇyānām eka.mukham vyavahāram sthāpayet, para.bhūmijānām aneka.mukham | 4 |

KAZ02.16.05/ ubhayaṁ ca prajānām anugraheṇa vikrāpayet | 5 |

KAZ02.16.06/ sthūlam api ca lābham prajānām aupaghātikam vārayet | 6 |

¹¹⁹[K tr. 145 :: K2 tr. 127

- KAZ02.16.07/ ajsra.paṇyānām kāla.uparodham saṅkula.doṣam vā na-utpādayet | 7 |
 KAZ02.16.08/ bahu.mukham vā rāja.paṇyam vaidehakāḥ kṛta.argham vikrīṇīran | 8 |
 KAZ02.16.09/ cheda.anurūpaṁ ca vaidharaṇam dadyuḥ | 9 |
 KAZ02.16.10/ ṣoḍaśa.bhāgo māna.vyājī, viṁśati.bhāgas tulā.mānam, gaṇya.paṇyānām
 ekādaśa.bhāgaḥ | 10 |
 KAZ02.16.11/ para.bhūmijaṁ paṇyam anugraheṇa-āvāhayet | 11 |
 KAZ02.16.12/ na-avikasa.artha.vāhebhyaś ca parihāram āyati.kṣamaṁ dadyāt | 12 |
 KAZ02.16.13/ anabhiyogaś ca-artheṣv āgantūnām, anyatra sabhyā.upakāribhyaḥ | 13 |
 KAZ02.16.14/ paṇya.adhiṣṭhātāraḥ paṇya.mūlyam eka.mukham kāṣṭha.droṇyām
 ekac.chidra.apidhānāyām nidadhyuḥ | 14 |
 KAZ02.16.15/ ahnaś ca-aṣṭame bhāge paṇya.adhyakṣasya-arpayeyuḥ - "idaṁ vikrītam, idaṁ
 śeṣam" iti | 15 |
 KAZ02.16.16/ tulā.māna.bhāṇḍam ca-arpayeyuḥ | 16 |
 KAZ02.16.17/ iti sva.viśaye vyākhyātam | 17 |
 KAZ02.16.18/ para.viśaye tu - paṇya.pratipaṇyayor argham mūlyam ca-āgamayya
 śulka.vartanyā-ātivāhika.gulmatara.deya.bhakta.bhāga.vyaya.śuddham udayam paśyet | 18 |
 KAZ02.16.19/ asaty udaye bhāṇḍa.nirvahaṇena paṇya.pratipaṇya.ānayanena vā lābham
 paśyet | 19 |
 KAZ02.16.20/ tataḥ sāra.pādena sthala.vyavahāram adhvanā kṣemeṇa prayojayet | 20 |
 KAZ02.16.21/ aṭavy.anta.pāla.pura.rāṣṭra.mukhyaś ca pratisaṁsargaṁ gacched
 anugraha.artham | 21 |
 KAZ02.16.22/ āpadi sāram ātmānam vā mokṣayet | 22 |
 KAZ02.16.23/ ātmano vā bhūmiṁ prāptaḥ sarva.deya.viśuddham vyavahareta | 23 |
 KAZ02.16.24/ vāri.pathe vā
 yāna.bhāgaka.pathy.adana.paṇya.pratipaṇya.argha.pramāṇa.yātrā.-
 kāla.bhaya.pratīkāra.paṇya.pattana.cāritrāṇy upalabheta | 24 |
 KAZ02.16.25ab/ nadī.pathe ca vijñāya vyavahāram caritrataḥ |
 KAZ02.16.25cd/ yato lābhas tato gacched alābham parivarjayet || 25 ||

2.17 Chapter 17 (Section 35): The Director of Forests

120

- KAZ02.17.01/ kupya.adhyakṣo dravya.vana.pālaiḥ kupyam ānāyayet | 1 |
 KAZ02.17.02/ dravya.vana.karma.antāmś ca prayojayet | 2 |
 KAZ02.17.03/ dravya.vanac.chidrām ca deyam atyayam ca sthāpayed anyatra-āpadbhyaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ02.17.04/ kupya.vargaḥ -
 śāka.tiniśa.dhanvana.arjuna.madhūka.tilaka.sāla.śimśapā.arimeda.-
 rāja.adana.śirīṣa.khadira.sarala.tāla.sarja.aśva.karṇa.soma.valka.kuśa.-
 āmra.priyaka.dhava.ādiḥ sāra.dāru.vargaḥ | 4 |
 KAZ02.17.05/ uṭaja.cimiya.cāpa.veṇu.vamśa.sātina.kaṇṭaka.bhāllūka.ādir veṇu.vargaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ02.17.06/ vetra.śīka.vallī.vāśī.śyāma.latā.nāga.latā.ādir vallī.vargaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ02.17.07/ mālatī.mūrvā.arka.śaṇa.gavedhukā.atasy.ādir valka.vargaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ02.17.08/ muñja.balbaja.ādi rajju.bhāṇḍam | 8 |
 KAZ02.17.09/ tālī.tāla.bhūrjānām pattram | 9 |
 KAZ02.17.10/ kiṁśuka.kusumbha.kuṅkumānām puṣpam | 10 |
 KAZ02.17.11/ kanda.mūla.phala.ādir auśadha.vargaḥ | 11 |

¹²⁰[K tr. 148 :: K2 tr. 129

KAZ02.17.12/ kāla.kūṭa.vatsa.nābha.hālāhala.meṣa.śṛṅga.mustā.kuṣṭha.mahā.-
 viṣa.vellitaka.gaura.ardra.bālaka.mārkaṭa.haimavata.kāliṅgaka.-
 dāradaka.aṅkola.sāraka.uṣṭraka.ādīni viṣāṇi, sarpāḥ kiṭās ca ta eva kumbha.gatāḥ viṣa.vargaḥ
 | 12 |
 KAZ02.17.13/ godhā.seraka.dvīpy.ṛkṣa.śimśumāra.simha.vyāghra.hasti.mahiṣa.-
 camara.sṛmāra.khaḍga.go.mṛga.gavayānām
 carma.asthi.pitta.snāyva.akṣi.danta.śṛṅga.khura.pucchāni, anyeṣām vā-api
 mṛga.paśu.pakṣi.vyālānām | 13 |
 KAZ02.17.14/ kāla.ayasa.tāmra.vṛtta.karṁsa.sīsa.trapu.vaikṛntaka.āra.kūṭāni lohāni | 14 |
 KAZ02.17.15/ vidala.mṛttikāmayam bhāṇḍam | 15 |
 KAZ02.17.16/ aṅgāra.tuṣa.bhasmāni, mṛga.paśu.pakṣi.vyāla.vāṭāḥ kāṣṭha.trṇa.vāṭās ca | iti |
 16 |
 KAZ02.17.17ab/ bahir antaś ca karma.antā vibhaktāḥ sārvaabhāṇḍikāḥ |
 KAZ02.17.17cd/ ājīva.pura.rakṣā.arthāḥ kāryāḥ kupya.upajīvinā || 17 ||

2.18 Chapter 18 (Section 36): The Superintendent of the Armoury

121

KAZ02.18.01/ āyudha.agāra.adhyakṣaḥ sāṅgrāmikam daurgakarmikam
 para.pura.abhighātikam ca yantram āyudham āvaraṇam upakaraṇam ca taj.jāta.kāru.śilpibhiḥ
 kṛta.karma.pramāṇa.kāla.vetana.phala.niṣpattibhiḥ kārayet, sva.bhūmiṣu ca sthāpayet | 1 |
 KAZ02.18.02/ sthāna.parivartanam ātapa.pravāta.pradānam ca bahuśaḥ kuryāt | 2 |
 KAZ02.18.03/ ūṣma.upasneha.krimibhir upahanyamānam anyathā sthāpayet | 3 |
 KAZ02.18.04/ jāti.rūpa.lakṣaṇa.pramāṇa.āgama.mūlya.nikṣepaiś ca-upalabheta | 4 |
 KAZ02.18.05/ sarvato.bhadra.jāmadagnya.bahu.mukha.viśvāsa.ghāti.saṅghāṭi.-
 yānaka.parjanya.bāhu.ūrdhva.bāhv.ardha.bāhūni sthita.yantrāṇi | 5 |
 KAZ02.18.06/ pāñcālīka.deva.daṇḍa.sūkarikā.musala.yaṣṭi.hasti.vāraka.tāla.-
 vṛnta.mudgara.gadā.spṛkṭalā.kuddāla.āsphāṭima.utpāṭima.-
 udghāṭima.śataghni.tri.sūla.cakrāṇi cala.yantrāṇi | 6 |
 KAZ02.18.07/ śakti.prāsa.kunta.hāṭaka.bhiṇḍi.pāla.sūla.tomara.varāha.karṇa.-
 kaṇaya.karpaṇa.trāsika.ādīni ca hula.mukhāni | 7 |
 KAZ02.18.08/ tāla.cāpa.dārava.śārṅgāṇi karmuka.kodaṇḍa.drūṇā dhanūṁṣi | 8 |
 KAZ02.18.09/ mūrvā.arka.śana.gavedhu.veṇu.snāyūni jyāḥ | 9 |
 KAZ02.18.10/ veṇu.sara.śalākā.daṇḍa.āsana.nārācās ca-iṣavaḥ | 10 |
 KAZ02.18.11/ teṣām mukhāni chedana.bhedana.tāḍanāny āyasa.asthi.dāravāṇi | 11 |
 KAZ02.18.12/ nistriṁśa.maṇḍala.agra.asi.yaṣṭayaḥ khaḍgāḥ | 12 |
 KAZ02.18.13/ khaḍga.mahiṣa.vāraṇa.viṣāṇa.dāru.veṇu.mūlāni tsaravaḥ | 13 |
 KAZ02.18.14/ paraśu.kuṭhāra.paṭṭasa.khanitra.kuddāla.krakaca.kāṇḍac.chedanāḥ
 kṣura.kalpāḥ | 14 |
 KAZ02.18.15/ yantra.goṣpaṇa.muṣṭi.pāṣāṇa.rocanī.dṛṣadaś ca-aśma.āyudhāni | 15 |
 KAZ02.18.16/ loha.jālikā.paṭṭa.kavaca.sūtra.kaṅkaṭa.śimśumāraka.khaḍgi.-
 dhenuka.hasti.go.carma.khura.śṛṅga.saṅghāṭam varmāṇi | 16 |
 KAZ02.18.17/ śiras.trāṇa.kaṇṭha.trāṇa.kūrpāsa.kañcuka.vāra.vāṇa.paṭṭa.- nāga.udarikāḥ
 peṭi.carma.hasti.karṇa.tāla.mūla.dhamani.kāka.pāṭa.kiṭikā.- apratihata.balāha.kāntās
 ca-āvaraṇāṇi | 17 |
 KAZ02.18.18/ hasti.ratha.vājinām yogyā.bhāṇḍam ālaṅkārikam samnāha.kalpanās
 ca-upakaraṇāni | 18 |

¹²¹[K tr. 150 :: K2 tr. 131

KAZ02.18.19/ aindrajalikam aupaniṣadikaṁ ca karma | 19 | karma.antānām ca
 -KAZ02.18.20ab/ icchām ārambha.niṣpattiṁ prayogaṁ vyājam uddayam |
 KAZ02.18.20cd/ kṣaya.vyayau ca jāniyāt kupyānām āyudha.īśvaraḥ || 20 ||

2.19 Chapter 19 (Section 37): Standardisation of Weights and Measures

122

KAZ02.19.01/ pautava.adhyakṣaḥ pautava.karma.antān kārayet | 1 |
 KAZ02.19.02/ dhānya.māśa daśa suvarṇa.māśakaḥ, pañca vā guñjāḥ | 2 |
 KAZ02.19.03/ te ṣoḍaśa suvarṇaḥ karṣo vā | 3 |
 KAZ02.19.04/ catuṣ.karṣaṁ palam | 4 |
 KAZ02.19.05/ aṣṭa.aśītir gaura.sarṣapā rūpya.māśakaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ02.19.06/ te ṣoḍaśa dharaṇam, śaumbhyāni vā viṁśatiḥ | 6 |
 KAZ02.19.07/ viṁśati.taṇḍulam vajra.dharaṇam | 7 |
 KAZ02.19.08/ ardha.māśakaḥ māśakaḥ dvau catvāraḥ aṣṭau māśakāḥ suvarṇo dvau catvāraḥ,
 aṣṭau suvarṇāḥ daśa viṁśatiḥ triṁśat catvāriṁśat śatam iti | 8 |
 KAZ02.19.09/ tena dharaṇāni vyākhyātāni | 9 |
 KAZ02.19.10/ pratimānāny ayomayāni māgadha.mekala.śailamayāni yāni vā
 na-udaka.pradehābhyāṁ vṛddhiṁ gaccheyur uṣṇena vā hrāsam | 10 |
 KAZ02.19.11/ ṣaḍaṅgulād ūrdhvam aṣṭa.aṅgula.uttarā daśa tulāḥ kārayet loha.palād
 ūrdhvam eka.pala.uttarāḥ, yantram ubhayataḥ.śikyāṁ vā | 11 |
 KAZ02.19.12/ pañca.triṁśat.palalohāṁ dvi.saptaty.aṅgula.āyāmām sama.vṛttām kārayet | 12 |
 KAZ02.19.13/ tasyāḥ pañca.palikaṁ maṇḍalaṁ baddhvā sama.karaṇaṁ kārayet | 13 |
 KAZ02.19.14/ tataḥ karṣa.uttaraṁ palam pala.uttaraṁ daśa.palam dvādaśa pañcadaśa
 viṁśatir iti padāni kārayet | 14 |
 KAZ02.19.15/ tata ā.śatād daśa.uttaraṁ kārayet | 15 |
 KAZ02.19.16/ akṣeṣu nāndī.pinaddhaṁ kārayet | 16 |
 KAZ02.19.17/ dvi.guṇa.lohāṁ tulām ataḥ ṣaṇṇavaty.aṅgula.āyāmām parimāṇīm kārayet | 17 |
 KAZ02.19.18/ tasyāḥ śata.padād ūrdhvaṁ viṁśatiḥ pañcāśat śatam iti padāni kārayet | 18 |
 KAZ02.19.19/ viṁśati.tauliko bhāraḥ | 19 |
 KAZ02.19.20/ daśa.dhāraṇikaṁ palam | 20 |
 KAZ02.19.21/ tat.pala.śatam āya.mānī | 21 |
 KAZ02.19.22/ pañca.pala.avarā vyāvahārikī bhājany antaḥ.pura.bhājanī ca | 22 |
 KAZ02.19.23/ tāsām ardha.dharaṇa.avarāṁ palam, dvi.pala.avaram uttara.loham,
 ṣaḍ.aṅgula.avarās ca-āyāmāḥ | 23 |
 KAZ02.19.24/ pūrvayoḥ pañca.palikaḥ prayāmo māṁsa.loha.lavaṇa.maṇi.varjam | 24 |
 KAZ02.19.25/ kāṣṭha.tulā aṣṭa.hastā padavatī pratimānavatī mayūra.pada.adhiṣṭhitā | 25 |
 KAZ02.19.26/ kāṣṭha.pañcaviṁśati.palaṁ taṇḍula.prastha.sāadhanam | 26 |
 KAZ02.19.27/ eṣa pradeśo bahv.alpayoḥ | 27 |
 KAZ02.19.28/ iti tulā.pratimānaṁ vyākhyātam | 28 |
 KAZ02.19.29/ atha dhānya.māśa.dvi.pala.śatam droṇam āya.mānam, sapta.aśīti.pala.śatam
 ardha.palaṁ ca vyāvahārikam, pañca.saptati.pala.śatam bhājanīyam, dvi.ṣaṣṭi.pala.śatam
 ardha.palaṁ ca-antaḥ.pura.bhājanīyam | 29 |
 KAZ02.19.30/ teṣām ādhaka.prastha.kuḍubās catur.bhāga.avarāḥ | 30 |
 KAZ02.19.31/ ṣoḍaśa.droṇā khārī | 31 |

¹²²[K tr. 153 :: K2 tr. 134

- KAZ02.19.32/ viṁśati.droṇikaḥ kumbhaḥ | 32 |
 KAZ02.19.33/ kumbhair daśabhir vahaḥ | 33 |
 KAZ02.19.34/ śuṣka.sāra.dāru.mayaṁ samaṁ catur.bhāga.śikhaṁ mānaṁ kārayet,
 antaḥ.śikhaṁ vā | 34 |
 KAZ02.19.35/ rasasya tu surāyāḥ puṣpa.phalayos tuṣa.aṅgārāṇāṁ sudhāyās ca śikhā.mānaṁ
 dvi.guṇa.uttarā vṛddhiḥ | 35 |
 KAZ02.19.36/ sa-pāda.paṇo droṇa.mūlyam āḍhakasya pāda.ūnaḥ, ṣaṇ.māṣakāḥ prasthasya,
 māṣakaḥ kuḍubasya | 36 |
 KAZ02.19.37/ dvi.guṇaṁ rasa.ādīnāṁ māna.mūlyam | 37 |
 KAZ02.19.38/ viṁśati.paṇāḥ pratimānasya | 38 |
 KAZ02.19.39/ tulā.mūlyam tri.bhāgaḥ | 39 |
 KAZ02.19.40/ catur.māsikaṁ prātivedhanikaṁ kārayet | 40 |
 KAZ02.19.41/ apratividdhasya-atyayaḥ sa-pādaḥ sapta.viṁśati.paṇaḥ | 41 |
 KAZ02.19.42/ prātivedhanikaṁ kākāṇīkam ahar ahaḥ pautava.adhyakṣāya dadyuḥ | 42 |
 KAZ02.19.43/ dvātriṁśad.bhāgas tapta.vyāji sarpiṣaḥ, catuḥ.ṣaṣṭi.bhāgas tailasya | 43 |
 KAZ02.19.44/ pañcāśad bhāgo māna.srāvo dravāṇām | 44 |
 KAZ02.19.45/ kuḍuba.ardha.catur.aṣṭa.bhāgāni mānāni kārayet | 45 |
 KAZ02.19.46/ kuḍubās catur.aśītir vārakaḥ sarpiṣo mataḥ | 46 |
 KAZ02.19.47/ catuḥ.ṣaṣṭis tu tailasya pādaś ca ghaṭikā-anayoḥ | 47 |

2.20 Chapter 20 (Section 38): Measures of Space and Time

123

- KAZ02.20.01/ māna.adhyakṣyo deśa.kāla.mānaṁ vidyāt | 1 |
 KAZ02.20.02/ aṣṭau parama.aṇavo ratha.cakra.vipruṭ | 2 |
 KAZ02.20.03/ tā aṣṭau likṣā | 3 |
 KAZ02.20.04/ tā aṣṭau yūkā | 4 |
 KAZ02.20.05/ tā aṣṭau yava.madhyah | 5 |
 KAZ02.20.06/ aṣṭau yava.madhyā aṅgulaṁ | 6 |
 KAZ02.20.07/ madhyamasya puruṣasya madhyamāyā anugulyā madhya.prakarṣo
 vā-aṅgulaṁ | 7 |
 KAZ02.20.08/ catur.aṅgulo dhanur.grahaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ02.20.09/ aṣṭa.aṅgulā dhanur.muṣṭiḥ | 9 |
 KAZ02.20.10/ dvādaśa.aṅgulā vitastiḥ, chāyā.pauruṣaṁ ca | 10 |
 KAZ02.20.11/ catur.daśa.aṅgulaṁ śamaḥ śalaḥ parīrayaḥ padaṁ ca | 11 |
 KAZ02.20.12/ dvi.vitastir aratniḥ prājāpatyo hastaḥ | 12 |
 KAZ02.20.13/ sa-dhanur.grahaḥ pautava.vivīta.mānam | 13 |
 KAZ02.20.14/ sa-dhanur.muṣṭiḥ kuṣkuḥ kaṁso vā | 14 |
 KAZ02.20.15/ dvi.catvāriṁśad.aṅgulas takṣṇaḥ krākacānika.kiṣkuḥ
 skandha.āvāra.durga.rāja.parigraha.mānam | 15 |
 KAZ02.20.16/ catuḥ.pañcāśad.aṅgulaḥ kūpya.vana.hastaḥ | 16 |
 KAZ02.20.17/ catur.aśīty.aṅgulo vyāmo rajju.mānaṁ khāta.pauruṣaṁ ca | 17 |
 KAZ02.20.18/ catur.aratnir daṇḍo dhanur.nālikā pauruṣaṁ ca gārhapatyam | 18 |
 KAZ02.20.19/ aṣṭa.śata.aṅgulaṁ dhanuḥ pathi.prākāra.mānaṁ pauruṣaṁ ca-agni.cityānām |
 19 |
 KAZ02.20.20/ ṣaṭ.kaṁso daṇḍo brahma.deya.ātithya.mānam | 20 |
 KAZ02.20.21/ daśa.daṇḍo rajjuḥ | 21 |
 KAZ02.20.22/ dvi.rajjukaḥ parideśaḥ | 22 |

¹²³[K tr. 158 :: K2 tr. 138

- KAZ02.20.23/ tri.rajjukam nivartanam ekataḥ | 23 |
 KAZ02.20.24/ dvi.daṇḍa.adhiko bāhuḥ | 24 |
 KAZ02.20.25/ dvi.dhanuḥ.sahasram go.rutam | 25 |
 KAZ02.20.26/ catur.go.rutam yojanam | 26 |
 KAZ02.20.27/ iti deśa.mānam | 27 |
 KAZ02.20.28/ kāla.mānam ata ūrdhvam | 28 |
 KAZ02.20.29/ tuṭo lavo nimeṣaḥ kāṣṭhā kallā nālikā muhūrtaḥ pūrva.apara.bhāgau divaso
 rātriḥ pakṣo māsa ṛtur ayanam saṁvatsaro yugam iti kālāḥ | 29 |
 KAZ02.20.30/ dvau tuṭau lavaḥ | 30 |
 KAZ02.20.31/ dvau lavau nimeṣaḥ | 31 |
 KAZ02.20.32/ pañca.nimeṣāḥ kāṣṭhāḥ | 32 |
 KAZ02.20.33/ trimśat.kāṣṭhāḥ kalāḥ | 33 |
 KAZ02.20.34/ catvāriṁśat.kalāḥ nālikā | 34 |
 KAZ02.20.35/ suvarṇa.māṣakāś catvāraś catur.aṅgula.āyāmāḥ kumbhac.chidram āḍhakam
 ambhaso vā nālikā | 35 |
 KAZ02.20.36/ dvi.nāliko muhūrtaḥ | 36 |
 KAZ02.20.37/ pañca.daśa.muhūrto divaso rātriś ca caitre ca āśvayuje ca māsi bhavataḥ | 37 |
 KAZ02.20.38/ tataḥ param tribhir muhūrtair anyatarāḥ ṣaṇ.māsam vardhate hrasate ca-iti | 38 |
 KAZ02.20.39/ chāyāyām aṣṭa.pauruṣyām aṣṭādaśa.bhāgaś chedaḥ, ṣaṭ.pauruṣyām
 catur.daśa.bhāgaḥ, tri.pauruṣyām aṣṭa.bhāgaḥ, dvi.pauruṣyām ṣaḍ.bhāgaḥ, pauruṣyām
 catur.bhāgaḥ, aṣṭa.aṅgulāyām trayo daśa.bhāgaḥ, catur.aṅgulāyām trayo 'ṣṭa.bhāgaḥ, acchāyo
 madhya.ahna iti | 39 |
 KAZ02.20.40/ parāvṛtte divase śeṣam evam vidyāt | 40 |
 KAZ02.20.41/ āṣāḍhe māsi naṣṭac.chāyo madhya.ahno bhavati | 41 |
 KAZ02.20.42/ ataḥ param śrāvaṇa.ādīnām ṣaṇ.māsānām dvy.aṅgula.uttarā māgha.ādīnām
 dvy.aṅgula.avarā chāyā iti | 42 |
 KAZ02.20.43/ pañcadaśa.aho.rātrāḥ pakṣaḥ | 43 |
 KAZ02.20.44/ soma.āpyāyanaḥ śuklaḥ | 44 |
 KAZ02.20.45/ soma.avacchedano bahulaḥ | 45 |
 KAZ02.20.46/ dvi.pakṣo māsaḥ | 46 |
 KAZ02.20.47/ trimśad.aho.rātraḥ karma.māsaḥ | 47 |
 KAZ02.20.48/ sa-ardhaḥ sauraḥ | 48 |
 KAZ02.20.49/ ardha.nyūnaś cāndra.māsaḥ | 49 |
 KAZ02.20.50/ sapta.vimśatir nākṣatra.māsaḥ | 50 |
 KAZ02.20.51/ dvātrimśad bala.māsaḥ | 51 |
 KAZ02.20.52/ pañcatrimśad aśva.vāhāyāḥ | 52 |
 KAZ02.20.53/ catvāriṁśadd.hasti.vāhāyāḥ | 53 |
 KAZ02.20.54/ dvau māsāv ṛtuḥ | 54 |
 KAZ02.20.55/ śrāvaṇaḥ prauṣṭhapadaś ca varṣāḥ | 55 |
 KAZ02.20.56/ āśvayujaḥ kārttikaś ca śarat | 56 |
 KAZ02.20.57/ mārga.śirṣaḥ pauṣaś ca hemantaḥ | 57 |
 KAZ02.20.58/ māghaḥ phālgunaś ca śīśiraḥ | 58 |
 KAZ02.20.59/ caitro vaiśākhaś ca vasantaḥ | 59 |
 KAZ02.20.60/ jyēṣṭhāmūliya āṣāḍhaś ca grīṣmaḥ | 60 |
 KAZ02.20.61/ śīśira.ādy uttara.ayaṇam | 61 |
 KAZ02.20.62/ varṣa.ādi dakṣiṇa.ayanam | 62 |
 KAZ02.20.63/ dvy.ayanaḥ saṁvatsaraḥ | 63 |

KAZ02.20.64/ pañca.saṁvatsaro yugam | iti | 64 |
 KAZ02.20.65ab/ divasasya haraty arkaḥ ṣaṣṭi.bhāgam ṛtau tataḥ |
 KAZ02.20.65cd/ karoty ekam ahaś.chedaṁ tathā-eva-ekaṁ ca candramāḥ || 65 ||
 KAZ02.20.66ab/ evam ardha.ṛṭṭiyanām abdānām adhimāsakam |
 KAZ02.20.66cd/ grīṣme janayataḥ pūrvam pañca.abda.ante ca paścimam || 66 ||

2.21 Chapter 21 (Section 39): The Collector of Customs

124

KAZ02.21.01/ śulka.adhyakṣaḥ śulka.śālām dhvajam ca prān.mukham udan.mukham vā mahā.dvāra.abhyāśe niveśayet | 1 |
 KAZ02.21.02/ śulka.ādāyinaś catvāraḥ pañca vā sārtha.upayātān vaṇijo likheyuḥ - ke kutastyāḥ kiyat.paṇyāḥ kva ca-abhijñānam mudrā vā kṛtā iti | 2 |
 KAZ02.21.03/ amudrāṇām atyayo deya.dvi.guṇaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ02.21.04/ kūṭa.mudrāṇām śulka.aṣṭa.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 4 |
 KAZ02.21.05/ bhinna.mudrāṇām atyayo ghaṭikā.sthāne sthānam | 5 |
 KAZ02.21.06/ rāja.mudrā.parivartane nāma.kṛte vā sa-pāda.paṇikam vahanam dāpayet | 6 |
 KAZ02.21.07/ dhvaja.mūla.upasthitasya pramāṇam argham ca vaidehikāḥ paṇyasya brūyuh "etat.pramāṇena-argheṇa paṇyam idam kaḥ kretā" iti | 7 |
 KAZ02.21.08/ tri.ruddha.uṣitam arthibhyo dadyāt | 8 |
 KAZ02.21.09/ kretṛ.saṅgharṣe mūlya.vṛddhiḥ sa-śulkā kośam gacchet | 9 |
 KAZ02.21.10/ śulka.bhayāt paṇya.pramāṇa mūlyam vā hīnam bruvatas tad atiriktam rājā haret | 10 |
 KAZ02.21.11/ śulkam aṣṭa.guṇam vā dadyāt | 11 |
 KAZ02.21.12/ tad eva nivīṣṭa.paṇyasya bhāṇḍasya hīna.prativarṇakena-argha.apakarṣaṇe sāra.bhāṇḍasya phalgu.bhāṇḍena praticchādane ca kuryāt | 12 |
 KAZ02.21.13/ pratikretṛ.bhayād vā paṇya.mūlyād upari mūlyam vardhayato mūlya.vṛddhim rājā haret, dvi.guṇam vā śulkam kuryāt | 13 |
 KAZ02.21.14/ tad eva-aṣṭa.guṇam adhyakṣasyac. chādayataḥ | 14 |
 KAZ02.21.15/ tasmād vikrayaḥ paṇyānām dhṛto mito gaṇito vā kāryaḥ, tarkaḥ phalgu.bhāṇḍānām ānugrāhikāṇām ca | 15 |
 KAZ02.21.16/ dhvaja.mūlam atikrāntānām ca-akṛta.śulkānām śulkād aṣṭa.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 16 |
 KAZ02.21.17/ pathika.utpathikās tad vidyuh | 17 |
 KAZ02.21.18/ vaivāhikam anvāyanam aupāyikam yajña.kṛtya.prasava.naimittikam deva-ijyā.caula.upanayana.go.dāna.vrata.dīkṣā.ādiṣu kriyā.viśeṣeṣu bhāṇḍam ucchulkaṁ gacchet | 18 |
 KAZ02.21.19/ anyathā.vādinah steya.daṇḍaḥ | 19 |
 KAZ02.21.20/ kṛta.śulkena-akṛta.śulkaṁ nirvāhayato dvitīyam eka.mudrayā bhittvā paṇya.puṭam apaharato vaidehakasya tac-ca tāvac ca daṇḍaḥ | 20 |
 KAZ02.21.21/ śulka.sthānād gomaya.pālānam pramāṇam kṛtvā-apaharata uttamaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 21 |
 KAZ02.21.22/ śastra.varma.kavaca.loha.ratha.ratna.dhānya.paśūnām anyatamam anirvāhyam nirvāhayato yathā-avaghuṣito daṇḍaḥ paṇya.nāśaś-ca | 22 |
 KAZ02.21.23/ teṣām anyatamasya-ānayane bahir eva-ucchulko vikrayaḥ | 23 |
 KAZ02.21.24/ anta.pālaḥ sa-pāda.paṇikām vartanām grhṇīyāt paṇya.vahanasya, paṇikām eka.khurasya, paśūnām ardha.paṇikām kṣudra.paśūnām pādikām, aṁsa.bhārasya māṣikām | 24 |

¹²⁴[K tr. 162 :: K2 tr. 141

KAZ02.21.25/ naṣṭa.apahr̥taṁ ca pratividadhyāt | 25 |
 KAZ02.21.26/ vaideśyaṁ sārthaṁ kṛta.sāra.phalgu.bhāṇḍa.vicayanam abhijñānaṁ mudrāṁ
 ca dattvā preṣayed adhyakṣasya | 26 |
 KAZ02.21.27/ vaidehaka.vyañjano vā sārtha.pramāṇaṁ rājñaḥ preṣayet | 27 |
 KAZ02.21.28/ tena pradeśena rājā śulka.adhyakṣasya sārtha.pramāṇam upadiśet
 sarvajña.khyāpana-arthaṁ | 28 |
 KAZ02.21.29/ tataḥ sārtham adhyakṣo 'bhigamya brūyāt "idam amuṣyāṁ uṣya ca
 sāra.bhāṇḍaṁ phalgu.bhāṇḍaṁ ca, na nihūhitavyam, eṣa rājñaḥ prabhāvaḥ" iti | 29 |
 KAZ02.21.30/ nihūhataḥ phalgu.bhāṇḍaṁ śulka.aṣṭa.guṇo daṇḍaḥ, sāra.bhāṇḍaṁ
 sarva.apahāraḥ | 30 |
 KAZ02.21.31ab/ rāṣṭra.pīḍā.karaṁ bhāṇḍam ucchindyād aphalaṁ ca yat |
 KAZ02.21.31cd/ mahā.upakāram ucchulkaṁ kuryād bījaṁ ca durlabham || 31 ||

2.22 Chapter 22 (Section 39): The Collector of Customs (cont.)

125

KAZ02.22.01/ bāhyam ābhyantaraṁ ca-ātithyam | 1 |
 KAZ02.22.02/ niṣkrāmyaṁ praveśyaṁ ca śulkaṁ | 2 |
 KAZ02.22.03/ praveśyānāṁ mūlya.pañca.bhāgaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ02.22.04/ puṣpa.phala.śāka.mūla.kanda.vāllikya.bīja.śuṣka.matsya.māmsānāṁ
 ṣaḍ.bhāgaṁ gr̥hṇīyāt | 4 |
 KAZ02.22.05/ śaṅkha.vajra.maṇi.muktā.pravāla.hārāṇāṁ taj.jāta.puruṣaiḥ kārayet
 kṛta.karma.pramāṇa.kāla.vetana.phala.niṣpattibhiḥ | 5 |
 KAZ02.22.06/ kṣauma.dukūla.krimi.tāna.kaṅkaṭa.hari.tāla.manah.śilā.añjana.-
 hiṅguluka.loha.varṇa.dhātūnāṁ candana.aguru.kaṭuka.kiṇva.avarāṇāṁ
 carma.danta.āstaraṇa.prāvaraṇa.krimi.jātānāṁ āja.eḍakasya ca daśa.bhāgaḥ
 pañca.daśa.bhāgo vā | 6 |
 KAZ02.22.07/ vastra.catuṣpada.dvipada.sūtra.kārpāsa.gandha.bhaiṣajya.-
 kāṣṭha.veṇu.valkala.carma.mṛdbha.aṇḍānāṁ dhānya.sneha.kṣāra.lavaṇa.madya.pakvān
 nādīnāṁ ca viṁśati.bhāgaḥ pañca.viṁśati.bhāgo vā | 7 |
 KAZ02.22.08/ dvārādeyaṁ śulkaṁ pañca.bhāgaḥ ānugrahikaṁ vā yathā.deśa.upakāram
 sthāpayet | 8 |
 KAZ02.22.09/ jāti.bhūmiṣu ca paṇyānāṁ vikrayaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ02.22.10/ khanibhyo dhātu.paṇyādāne ṣaṭ.chatam atyayaḥ | 10 |
 KAZ02.22.11/ puṣpa.phala.vāṭebhyaḥ puṣpa.phala.ādāne catuṣ.pañcāśat.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ02.22.12/ ṣaṇḍebhyaḥ śāka.mūla.kanda.ādāne pāda.ūnaṁ dvi.pañcāśat.paṇo daṇḍaḥ |
 12 |
 KAZ02.22.13/ kṣetrebhyaḥ sarva.sasya.ādāne tri.pañcāśat.paṇaḥ | 13 |
 KAZ02.22.14/ paṇo 'dhyardha.paṇas ca sītā.atyayaḥ | 14 |
 KAZ02.22.15ab/ ato nava.purāṇāṁ deśa.jāti.caritrataḥ |
 KAZ02.22.15cd/ paṇyānāṁ sthāpayec-śuklam atyayaṁ ca-apakārataḥ || 15 ||

2.23 Chapter 23 (Section 40): The Superintendent of Yarns

126

KAZ02.23.01/ sūtra.adhyakṣaḥ sūtra.varma.vastra.rajju.vyavahāraṁ taj.jāta.puruṣaiḥ kārayet
 | 1 |

¹²⁵[K tr. 166 :: K2 tr. 144

¹²⁶[K tr. 168 :: K2 tr. 146

KAZ02.23.02/ ūrṇā.valka.kārpāsa.tūla.śaṇa.kṣaumāṇi ca
vidhavā.nyaṅgā.kanyā.pravrajitā.daṇḍa.pratikāriṇībhī rūpa.ājīvā.mātrkābhīr
vṛddha.rāja.dāsībhīr vyuparata.upasthāna.deva.dāsībhīś ca kartayet | 2 |
KAZ02.23.03/ ślakṣṇa.sthūla.madhyatām ca sūtrasya viditvā vetanaṁ kalpayet, bahv.alpatām
ca | 3 |
KAZ02.23.04/ sūtra.pramāṇa jñātvā taila.āmalaka.udvartanair etā anugṛhṇīyāt | 4 |
KAZ02.23.05/ tithiṣu pratimāna.dānaiś ca karma kārayitavyāḥ | 5 |
KAZ02.23.06/ sūtra.hrāse vetana.hrāso dravya.sārāt | 6 |
KAZ02.23.07/ kṛta.karma.pramāṇa.kāla.vetana.phala.niṣpattibhiḥ kārubhiś ca karma
kārayet, pratisaṁsargaṁ ca gacchet | 7 |
KAZ02.23.08/ kṣauma.dukūla.krimi.tāna.rāṅkava.kārpāsa.sūtra.vāna.karma.antāmś ca
prayuñjāno gandha.mālya.dānair anyaiś ca-aupagrāhikair ārādhayet | 8 |
KAZ02.23.09/ vastra.āstarāṇa.prāvaraṇa.vikalpān utthāpayet | 9 |
KAZ02.23.10/ kaṅkaṭa.karma.antāmś ca taj.jāta.kāru.śilpibhiḥ kārayet | 10 |
KAZ02.23.11/ yāś ca-anīṣkāsinyaḥ proṣitā vidhavā nyaṅgāḥ kanyakā vā-ātmānaṁ bibhṛyuh
tāḥ sva.dāsībhīr anusārya sa-upagrahaṁ karma kārayitavyāḥ | 11 |
KAZ02.23.12/ svayam āgacchantīnām vā sūtra.śālām pratyūṣasi bhāṇḍa.vetana.vinimayaṁ
kārayet | 12 |
KAZ02.23.13/ sūtra.parīkṣā.artha.mātraḥ pradīpaḥ | 13 |
KAZ02.23.14/ striyā mukha.sandarśane 'nya.kārya.sambhāṣyām vā pūrvāḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ,
vetana.kāla.atipātane madhyamaḥ, akṛta.karma.vetana.pradāne ca | 14 |
KAZ02.23.15/ gṛhītvā vetanaṁ karma.akurvatyā aṅguṣṭha.sandaṁśaṁ dāpayet,
bhakṣita.apahrta.avaskanditānām ca | 15 |
KAZ02.23.16/ vetaneṣu ca karma.karāṇām aparādhato daṇḍaḥ | 16 |
KAZ02.23.17/ rajju.vartakair varma.kāraiś ca svayaṁ saṁsrīyeta | 17 |
KAZ02.23.18/ bhāṇḍāni ca varatra.ādīni vartayet | 18 |
KAZ02.23.19ab/ sūtra.valkamayī rajjur varatrā vaitra.vaiṇavīḥ |
KAZ02.23.19cd/ sāmnāhyā bandha.nīyāś ca yāna.yugyasya karayet | 19 |

2.24 Chapter 24 (Section 41): The Director of Agriculture

127

KAZ02.24.01/ sītā.adhyakṣaḥ kṛṣi.tantra.śulba.vṛkṣa.āyur.vedajñas taj.jña.sakho vā
sarva.dhānya.puṣpa.phala.śāka.kanda.mūla.vāllikya.kṣauma.kārpāsa.bījāni yathā.kālaṁ
gṛhṇīyāt | 1 |
KAZ02.24.02/ bahu.hala.parikṛṣṭāyām sva.bhūmau dāsa.karma.kara.daṇḍa.pratikartṛbhīr
vāpayet | 2 |
KAZ02.24.03/ karṣaṇa.yantra.upakaraṇa.balīvardaiś ca-eṣām asaṅgaṁ kārayet, kārubhiś ca
karmāra.kuṭṭāka.medaka.rajju.vartaka.sarpa.grāha.ādibhiś ca | 3 |
KAZ02.24.04/ teṣāṁ karma.phala.vinipāte tat.phala.hānaṁ daṇḍaḥ | 4 |
KAZ02.24.05/ ṣoḍaśa.droṇaṁ jāṅgalānām varṣa.pramāṇam, adhyardham ānūpānām
deśa.vāpānām, ardha.trayodaśa-aśmakānām, trayovimśatir avantīnām, amitam
apara.antānām haimanyānām ca, kulyā.āvāpānām ca kālataḥ | 5 |
KAZ02.24.06/ varṣa.tri.bhāgaḥ pūrva.paścima.māsayoḥ, dvau tri.bhāgau madhyamayoh -
suṣamā.rūpam | 6 |
KAZ02.24.07/ tasya-upaladhir br̥haspateḥ sthāna.gamana.garbha.ādhānebhyaḥ
śukra.udaya.astamaya.cārebhyaḥ sūryasya prakṛti.vaikṛtāc ca | 7 |

¹²⁷[K tr. 170 :: K2 tr. 148

- KAZ02.24.08/ sūryād bīja.siddhiḥ, bṛhaspateḥ sasyānām stamba.kāritā, śukrād vṛṣṭiḥ | iti | 8 |
- KAZ02.24.09ab/ trayāḥ sapta.ahikā meghā aśītiḥ kaṇa.śīkarāḥ |
- KAZ02.24.09cd/ ṣaṣṭir ātapa.meghānām eṣā vṛṣṭiḥ samā hitā || 9 ||
- KAZ02.24.10ab/ vātam ātapa.yogaṁ ca vibhajan yatra varṣati |
- KAZ02.24.10cd/ trīṇ kariṣāṁś ca janayaṁś tatra sasya.āgamo dhruvaḥ || 10 ||
- KAZ02.24.11/ tataḥ prabhūta.udakam alpa.udakam vā sasyaṁ vāpayet | 11 |
- KAZ02.24.12/ śāli.vṛhi.kodrava.tila.priyaṅgu.udāraka.varakāḥ pūrva.vāpāḥ | 12 |
- KAZ02.24.13/ mudga.māṣa.śaimbyā madhya.vāpāḥ | 13 |
- KAZ02.24.14/ kusumbha.masūra.kulattha.yava.go.dhūma.kalāya.atasī.sarṣapāḥ paścād.vāpāḥ | 14 |
- KAZ02.24.15/ yathā.rtu.vaśena vā bīja.vāpāḥ | 15 |
- KAZ02.24.16/ vāpa.atiriktam ardha.sītikāḥ kuryuḥ, sva.vīrya.upajīvino vā catur.tha.pañca.bhāgikāḥ | 16 |
- KAZ02.24.17/ yathā-iṣṭam anavasita.bhāgaṁ dadyuḥ, anyatra kṛcchrebhyaḥ | 17 |
- KAZ02.24.18/ sva.setubhyo hasta.prāvartimam udaka.bhāgaṁ pañcamam dadyuḥ, skandha.prāvartimam caturtham, srota.yantra.prāvartimam ca tṛtīyam, caturtham nadī.saras.taṭāka.kūpa.uddhātam | 18 |
- KAZ02.24.19/ karma.udaka.pramāṇena kaidāraṁ haimanaṁ graiṣmikaṁ vā sasyaṁ sthāpayet | 19 |
- KAZ02.24.20/ śāly.ādi jyeṣṭham, ṣaṇḍo madhyamaḥ, ikṣuḥ pratyavaraḥ | 20 |
- KAZ02.24.21/ ikṣavo hi bahv.ābādā vyaya.grāhiṇāś ca | 21 |
- KAZ02.24.22/ phena.āghāto vallī.phalānām, parivāha.antāḥ pippalī.mṛdvika.ikṣūṇām, kūpa.paryantāḥ śāka.mūlānām, haraṇī.paryantā haritakānām, pālyo lavānām gandha.bhaiṣajya.uśīra.hṛībera.piṇḍāluka.ādīnām | 22 |
- KAZ02.24.23/ yathā.svaṁ bhūmiṣu ca sthālyāś ca-ānūpyāś ca-oṣadhīḥ sthāpayet | 23 |
- KAZ02.24.24/ tuṣāra.pāyana.muṣṇa.śoṣaṇam ca-ā.sapta.rātrād iti dhānya.bījānām, tri.rātram vā pañca.rātram vā kośī.dhānyānām, madhu.ghṛta.sūkara.vasābhīḥ śakṛd.yuktābhīḥ kāṇḍa.bījānām cheda.lepo, madhu.ghṛtena kandānām, asthi.bījānām śakṛd.ālepaḥ, śākhinām garta.dāho go.asthi.śakṛdbhīḥ kāle dauhrdaṁ ca | 24 |
- KAZ02.24.25/ prarūḍhāṁś ca-aśuṣka.kaṭu.matsyāṁś ca snuhi.kṣīreṇa pāpayet | 25 |
- KAZ02.24.26ab/ kārpaśa.sāraṁ nirmokaṁ sarpasya ca samāharet |
- KAZ02.24.26cd/ na sarpās tatra tiṣṭhanti dhūmo yatra-eṣa tiṣṭhati || 26 ||
- KAZ02.24.27/ sarva.jījānām tu prathama.vāpe suvarṇa.udaka.samplutām pūrva.muṣṭim vāpayet, amuṁ ca mantraṁ brūyāt - "prajāpataye kāśyapāya devāya ca namaḥ sadā | sītā me ṛdhyatām devī bījeṣu ca dhaneṣu ca | 27 |
- KAZ02.24.28/ ṣaṇḍa.vāṭa.go.pālaka.dāsa.karma.karebhyo yathā.puruṣa.pariavāpaṁ bhaktaṁ kuryāt, sa-pāda.paṇikaṁ ca māsaṁ dadyāt | 28 |
- KAZ02.24.29/ karma.anurūpaṁ kārubhyo bhakta.vetanam | 29 |
- KAZ02.24.30/ praśīrṇam ca puṣpa.phalaṁ deva.kārya.arthaṁ vṛhi.yavam āgrayaṇa.arthaṁ śrotiyāś tapasvināś ca-āhareyuḥ, rāśi.mūlam uñcha.vṛttayaḥ | 30 |
- KAZ02.24.31ab/ yathā.kālam ca sasya.ādi jātaṁ jātaṁ praveṣayet |
- KAZ02.24.31cd/ na kṣetre sthāpayet kiñcit palālam api paṇḍitaḥ || 31 ||
- KAZ02.24.32ab/ prākārāṇām samucchrayān valabhīr vā tathā.vidhāḥ |
- KAZ02.24.32cd/ na samhatāni kurvīta na tucchāni śīrāṁsi ca || 32 ||
- KAZ02.24.33ab/ khalasya prakarān kuryān maṇḍala.ante samāśritān |
- KAZ02.24.33cd/ anagnikāḥ sa-udakāś ca khale syuḥ parikarmināḥ || 33 ||

2.25 Chapter 25 (Section 42): The Controller of Spirituous Liquors

128

- KAZ02.25.01/ surā.adhyakṣaḥ surā.kiṇva.vyavahārān durge jana.pade skandha.āvāre vā
taj.jāta.surā.kiṇva.vyavahāribhiḥ kārayed, eka.mukham aneka.mukham vā
vikraya.kraya.vaśena vā | 1 |
- KAZ02.25.02/ ṣaṭ.śatam atyayam anyatra karṭṛ.kreṭṛ.vikreṭṛñām sthāpayet | 2 |
- KAZ02.25.03/ grāmād anirṇayaṇam asampātām ca surāyāḥ, pramāda.bhayāt karmasu
ñjirdiṣṭānām, maryāda.atikrama.bhayād āryāñām, utsāha.bhayāc ca tiṣkṇānām | 3 |
- KAZ02.25.04/ lakṣitam alpam vā catur.bhāgam ardha.kuḍubam kuḍubam ardha.prastham
prastham vā-iti jñāta.śaucā nirhareyuh | 4 |
- KAZ02.25.05/ pāna.agāreṣu vā pibeyur asaṅcārīṇaḥ | 5 |
- KAZ02.25.06/ nikṣepa.upanidhi.prayoga.apahr̥tānām aniṣṭa.upagatānām ca dravyāñām
jñāna.artham asvāmikam kupyam hiraṇyam ca-upalabhya niṣkeptāram anyatra vyapadeśena
grāhayed, ativyaya.kartāram anāyati.vyayam ca | 6 |
- KAZ02.25.07/ na ca-anargheṇa kālīkām vā surām dadyād, anyatra duṣṭa.surāyāḥ | 7 |
- KAZ02.25.08/ tām anyatra vikrāpayet | 8 |
- KAZ02.25.09/ dāsa.karma.karebhyo vā vetanam dadyāt | 9 |
- KAZ02.25.10/ vāhana.pratipānam sūkara.poṣaṇam vā dadyāt | 10 |
- KAZ02.25.11/ pāna.agārāṇy.aneka.kakṣyāṇi vibhakta.śayana.āsanavanti pāna.uddeśāni
gandha.mālya.udakavanti ṛtu.sukhāni kārayet | 11 |
- KAZ02.25.12/ tatrasthāḥ prakṛty.autpattikau vyayau gūḍhā vidyuh, āgantūmś ca | 12 |
- KAZ02.25.13/ kreṭṛñām matta.suptānām alaṅkārāt-chādana.hiraṇyāni ca vidyuh | 13 |
- KAZ02.25.14/ tan.nāṣe vaṇijas tac ca tāvac ca daṇḍam dadyuh | 14 |
- KAZ02.25.15/ vaṇijaśś tu samvr̥teṣu kakṣyā.vibhāgeṣu sva.dāsibhiḥ peśala.rūpābhir
āgantūnām vāstavyānām ca-ārya.rūpāñām matta.suptānām bhāvam vidyuh | 15 |
- KAZ02.25.16/ medaka.prasanna.āsava.arīṣṭa.maireya.madhūnām | 16 |
- KAZ02.25.17/ udaka.droṇam taṇḍulānām ardha.āḍhakaṁ trayah prasthāḥ kiṇvasya-iti
medaka.yogaḥ | 17 |
- KAZ02.25.18/ dvādaśa.āḍhakaṁ piṣṭasya pañca prasthāḥ kiṇvasya kramuka.tvak.phala.yukto
vā jāti.sambhārah prasannā.yogaḥ | 18 |
- KAZ02.25.19/ kapittha.tulā phāṇitam pañca.taulikaṁ prastho madhuna ity āsava.yogaḥ | 19 |
- KAZ02.25.20/ pād.adhiko jyeṣṭhaḥ pāda.hīnaḥ kaniṣṭhaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ02.25.21/ cikitsaka.pramāṇāḥ pratyekaśo vikārāñām arīṣṭāḥ | 21 |
- KAZ02.25.22/ meṣa.śṛṅgī.tvak.kvātha.abhiṣuto guḍa.pratīvāpaḥ pippalī.marica.sambhāras
tri.phalā.yukto vā maireyaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ02.25.23/ guḍa.yuktānām vā sarveṣām tri.phalā.sambhārah | 23 |
- KAZ02.25.24/ mṛdvīkā.raso madhu | 24 |
- KAZ02.25.25/ tasya sva.deśo vyākhyānam kāpi.śāyanam hāra.hūrakam iti | 25 |
- KAZ02.25.26/ māṣakalanīdroṇamāmam siddham vā tri.bhāga.adhika.taṇḍulam
morāṭa.ādīnām kārṣika.bhāga.yuktaṁ kiṇva.bandhaḥ | 26 |
- KAZ02.25.27/ pāṭhā.loghra.tejovaty.elā.vāluka.madhuka.madhu.rasā.priyaṅgu.-
dāru.haridrā.marica.pippalīnām ca pañca.kārṣikaḥ sambhāra.yogo medakasya prasannāyāś ca
| 27 |
- KAZ02.25.28/ madhuka.niryūha.yuktā kaṭa.śarkarā varṇa.prasādanī ca | 28 |
- KAZ02.25.29/ coca.citraka.vilaṅga.gaja.pippalīnām ca kārṣikaḥ
kramuka.madhuka.mustā.lodhrāñām dvi.kārṣikaś ca-āsava.sambhārah | 29 |

¹²⁸[K tr. 176 :: K2 tr. 153

KAZ02.25.30/ daśa.bhāgaś ca-eṣām bīja.bandhaḥ | 30 |
 KAZ02.25.31/ prasannā.yogaḥ śveta.surāyāḥ | 31 |
 KAZ02.25.32/ sahakāra.surā rasa.uttarā bīja.uttarā vā mahā.surā sambhārikī vā | 32 |
 KAZ02.25.33/ tāsām moraṭā.palāśa.pattūra.meṣa.śṛṅgī.karañja.kṣīra.vṛkṣa.kaśāya.- bhāvitam
 dagdha.kaṭa.śarkarā.cūrṇam loghra.citraka.vilaṅga.pāṭhā.mustā.kaliṅga.yava.dāru.haridra.-
 indīvara.śata.puṣpa.apāmārga.sapta.paṇṇa.nimba.āsphota.kalka.- ardha.yuktam antar.nakho
 muṣṭiḥ kumbhīm rāja.peyām prasādayati | 33 |
 KAZ02.25.34/ phāṇitaḥ pañca.palikaś ca-atra rasa.vṛddhir deyaḥ | 34 |
 KAZ02.25.35/ kuṭumbinaḥ kṛtyeṣu śveta.surām, auśadha.artham vāriṣṭam, anyad vā kartum
 labheran | 35 |
 KAZ02.25.36/ utsava.samāja.yātrāsu catur.ahaḥ sauriko deyaḥ | 36 |
 KAZ02.25.37/ teṣv ananujñātānām prahavana.antam daivasikam atyayam grhṇīyāt | 37 |
 KAZ02.25.38/ surā.kiṇva.vicayam striyo bālāś ca kuryuḥ | 38 |
 KAZ02.25.39/ arāja.paṇyāḥ pañcakam śatam śulkaḥ dadyuḥ,
 surakā.medaka.arīṣṭa.madhu.phala.ām̐la.ām̐la.śīdhūnām ca | 39 |
 KAZ02.25.40ab/ ahnaś ca vikrayam jñātvā vyājīm māna.hiraṇyayoḥ |
 KAZ02.25.40cd/ tathā vaidharaṇam kuryād ucitam ca-anuvartayet || 40 ||

2.26 Chapter 26 (Section 43): The Supervisor of Animal Slaughter

129

KAZ02.26.01/ sūnā.adhyakṣaḥ pradiṣṭa.abhayānām abhaya.vana.vāsinām ca
 mṛga.paśu.pakṣi.matsyānām bandha.vadha.hiṁsāyām uttamam daṇḍam kārayet,
 kuṭumbinām abhaya.vana.parigraheṣu madhyamam | 1 |
 KAZ02.26.02/ apravṛtta.vadhānām matsya.pakṣiṇām bandha.vadha.hiṁsāyām
 pāda.ūna.sapta.vimśati.paṇam atyayam kuryāt, mṛga.paśūnām dvi.guṇam | 2 |
 KAZ02.26.03/ pravṛtta.hiṁsānām aparigṛhītānām ṣaḍ.bhāgam grhṇīyāt, matsya.pakṣiṇām
 daśa.bhāgam vā-adhikam, mṛga.paśūnām śulkaḥ vā-adhikam | 3 |
 KAZ02.26.04/ pakṣi.mṛgānām jīvat ṣaḍ.bhāgam abhaya.vaneṣu pramuñcet | 4 |
 KAZ02.26.05/ sāmudra.hasty.aśva.puruṣa.vṛṣa.gardabha.ākṛtayo matsyāḥ sārāsā na-ādeyās
 taṭāka.kulyā.udbhavā vā krauñca.utkrośaka.dātyūha.hamśa.cakravāka.jīvan.jīvaka.bhr̥ṅga.-
 rāja.cakora.matta.kokila.mayūra.śuka.madana.śārikā vihāra.pakṣiṇo maṅgalyāś ca-anye 'pi
 prāṇinaḥ pakṣi.mṛgā hiṁsā.bādhebhya rakṣyāḥ | 5 |
 KAZ02.26.06/ rakṣā.atikrame pūrvāḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ02.26.07/ mṛga.paśūnām anasthi.māmsam sadyo.hatam vikrīṇīran | 7 |
 KAZ02.26.08/ asthimataḥ pratipātam dadyuḥ | 8 |
 KAZ02.26.09/ tulā.hīne hīna.aṣṭa.guṇam | 9 |
 KAZ02.26.10/ vatso vṛṣo dhenuś ca-eṣām avadhyāḥ | 10 |
 KAZ02.26.11/ ghnataḥ pañcāśatko daṇḍaḥ, kliṣṭa.ghātam ghātayataś ca | 11 |
 KAZ02.26.12/ pariśūnam aśiraḥ.pāda.asthi vigandham svayam.mṛtam ca na vikrīṇīran | 12 |
 KAZ02.26.13/ anyathā dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 13 |
 KAZ02.26.14ab/ duṣṭāḥ paśu.mṛga.vyālā matsyaś ca-abhaya.cāriṇaḥ |
 KAZ02.26.14cd/ anyatra gupti.sthānebhya vadha.bandham avāpnuyuḥ || 14 ||

2.27 Chapter 27 (Section 44): The Superintendent of Courtesans

130

¹²⁹[K tr. 180 :: K2 tr. 157

¹³⁰[K tr. 182 :: K2 tr. 158

- KAZ02.27.01/ gaṇikā.adhyakṣo gaṇikā.anvayām agaṇikā.anvayām vā
rūpa.yauvana.śilpa.sampannām sahasreṇa gaṇikām kārayet, kuṭumba.ardhena pratigaṇikām
| 1 |
- KAZ02.27.02/ niṣpatitā.pretayor duhitā bhaginī vā kuṭumbam bhareta, mātā vā
pratigaṇikām sthāpayet | 2 |
- KAZ02.27.03/ tāsām abhāve rājā haret | 3 |
- KAZ02.27.04/ saubhāgya.alaṅkāra.vṛddhyā sahasreṇa vāram kaniṣṭham madhyamam
uttamam vā-āropayet chatra.bhṛṅgāra.vyajana.śibikā.pīṭhikā.ratheṣu ca viśeṣa.artham | 4 |
- KAZ02.27.05/ saubhāgya.bhaṅge mātṛkām kuryāt | 5 |
- KAZ02.27.06/ niṣkrayaś catur.vimśati.sāhasro gaṇikāyāḥ, dvādaśa.sāhasro gaṇikā.putrasya |
6 |
- KAZ02.27.07/ aṣṭa.varṣāt prabhṛti rājñāḥ kuśīlava.karma kuryāt | 7 |
- KAZ02.27.08/ gaṇikā.dāsī bhagna.bhogā koṣṭha.agāre mahānase vā karma kuryāt | 8 |
- KAZ02.27.09/ aviśantī sapāda.paṇam avaruddhā māsa.vetanam dadyāt | 9 |
- KAZ02.27.10/ bhogam dāyamāyam vyayam āyatim ca gaṇikāyā nibandhayet,
ati.vyaya.karma ca vārayet | 10 |
- KAZ02.27.11/ mātṛ.hastād anyatra abharaṇa.nyāse sa.pāda.catuṣ.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 11 |
- KAZ02.27.12/ svāpateyam vikrayam ādhānam vā nayantyāḥ sa.pāda.pañcāśat.paṇaḥ paṇo
'rdha.paṇa.cchedane | 12 |
- KAZ02.27.13/ akāmāyāḥ kumāryā vā sāhase uttamo daṇḍaḥ, sa.kāmāyāḥ pūrvāḥ
sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 13 |
- KAZ02.27.14/ gaṇikām akāmām rundhato niṣpātayato vā vraṇa.vidāraṇena vā
rūpam.upaghnataḥ sahasram daṇḍaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ02.27.15/ sthān.viśeṣeṇa vā daṇḍa.vṛddhiḥ ā.niṣkraya.dvi.guṇāt | 15 |
- KAZ02.27.16/ prāpta.adhikāram gaṇikām ghātay-ato niṣkraya.tri.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 16 |
- KAZ02.27.17/ mātṛkā.duhitṛkā.rūpa.dāsīnām ghāte uttamaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 17 |
- KAZ02.27.18/ sarvatra prathame 'parādhe prathamāḥ, dvitiye dvi.guṇaḥ, tṛtiye tri.guṇaḥ,
caturthe yathā.kāmī syāt | 18 |
- KAZ02.27.19/ rāja.ājñayā puruṣam anabhiḡacchantī gaṇikā śīphā.sahasram labheeta,
pañca.sahasram vā daṇḍaḥ | 19 |
- KAZ02.27.20/ bhogam gr̥hītvā dviṣatyā bhoga.dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ02.27.21/ vasati.bhoga.apahāre bhogam aṣṭa.guṇam dadyād anyatra
vyādhi.puruṣa.doṣebhyaḥ | 21 |
- KAZ02.27.22/ puruṣam ghnatyāś citā.pratāpe 'psu praveśanam vā | 22 |
- KAZ02.27.23/ gaṇikā.bharaṇam artham bhogam vā-apaharato 'ṣṭa.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ02.27.24/ gaṇikā bhogam āyatim puruṣam ca nivedayet | 24 |
- KAZ02.27.25/ etena naṭa.nartaka.gāyana.vādaka.vāg.jīvana.kuśīlava.plavaka.saubhika.-
cāraṇānām strī.vyavahāriṇām striyo gūḍha.ājīvāś ca vyākhyātāḥ | 25 |
- KAZ02.27.26/ teṣām tūryam āgantukam pañca.paṇam prekṣā.vetanam dadyāt | 26 |
- KAZ02.27.27/ rūpa.ājīvā bhoga.dvaya.guṇam māsam dadyuḥ | 27 |
- KAZ02.27.28/ gīta.vādyā.pāṭhya.nṛtya.nāṭya.akṣara.citra.vīṇā.veṇu.mṛdaṅga.para.-
citta.jñāna.gandha.mālya.samyūhana.samvādana.samvāhana.vaiśika.- kalā.jñānāni gaṇikā
dāsī raṅga.upajīvinīś ca grāhayato rāja.maṇḍalād ājīvam kuryāt | 28 |
- KAZ02.27.29/ gaṇikā.putrān raṅga.upajīvinām ca mukhyān niṣpādayeyuḥ,
sarva.tāla.avacarāṇām ca | 29 |
- KAZ02.27.30ab/ sañjñā.bhāṣā.antarajñāś ca striyas teṣām anātmasu |
- KAZ02.27.30cd/ cāra.ghāta.pramāda.artham prayojyā bandhu.vāhanāḥ || 30 ||

2.28 Chapter 28 (Section 45): The Controller of Shipping

131

- KAZ02.28.01/ nāv.adhyakṣaḥ samudra.samyāna.nadī.mukhatara.pracārān
deva.saro.visaro.nadī.tarāṁś ca sthānīya.ādiśv avekṣeta | 1 |
- KAZ02.28.02/ tad.velā.kūla.grāmāḥ klṛptaṁ dadyuḥ | 2 |
- KAZ02.28.03/ matsya.bandhakā naukā.bhāṭakam ṣaḍ.bhāgam dadyuḥ | 3 |
- KAZ02.28.04/ pattana.anuvṛttaṁ śulka.bhāgam vaṇijo dadyuḥ, yātrā.vetanaṁ rāja.naubhiḥ
sapatantaḥ | 4 |
- KAZ02.28.05/ śaṅkha.muktā.grāhiṇo nau.bhāṭakam dadyuḥ, sva.naubhir vā tareyuḥ | 5 |
- KAZ02.28.06/ adhyakṣaś ca-eṣāṁ khany.adhyakṣeṇa vyākhyātaḥ | 6 |
- KAZ02.28.07/ pattana.adhyakṣa.nibaddhaṁ paṇya.pattana.cāritraṁ nāv.adhyakṣaḥ pālayet |
7 |
- KAZ02.28.08/ mūdha.vāta.āhatā nāvaḥ pitā-iva-anugṛhṇīyāt | 8 |
- KAZ02.28.09/ udaka.prāptaṁ paṇyam aśulkam ardha.śulkam vā kuryāt | 9 |
- KAZ02.28.10/ yathā.nirdiṣṭāś ca-etāḥ paṇya.pattana.yātrā.kāleṣu preṣayet | 10 |
- KAZ02.28.11/ samyātīr nāvaḥ kṣetra.anugataḥ śulkam yācet | 11 |
- KAZ02.28.12/ hiṁsrikā nirghātayet, amitra.viṣaya.atigāḥ paṇya.pattana.cāritra.upaghātikāś
ca | 12 |
- KAZ02.28.13/ śāsaka.niryāmaka.dātra..raśmi.grāhaka.utsecaka.adhiṣṭhitāś ca mahā.nāvo
hemanta.grīṣma.tāryāsu mahā.nadīsu prayojayet, kṣudrikāḥ kṣudrikāsu varṣa.srāviṇīṣu | 13 |
- KAZ02.28.14/ bādha.tīrthāś ca-etāḥ kāryā rāja.dviṣṭa.kāriṇām taraṇa.bhayāt | 14 |
- KAZ02.28.15/ akāle 'tīrthe ca tarataḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 15 |
- KAZ02.28.16/ kāle tīrthe ca-anīṣṛṣṭa.tāriṇaḥ pāda.ūna.sapta.vimśati.paṇas tara.atyayaḥ | 16
|
- KAZ02.28.17/ kaivartaka.aṣṭa.trṇa.bhāra.puṣpa.phala.vāṭa.ṣaṇḍa.go.pālakānām anatyayaḥ,
sambhāvya.dūta.anupātinām ca senā.bhāṇḍa.prayogāṇām ca sva.taraṇais taratām,
bīja.bhakta.dravya.upaskarāṁś ca-ānūpa.grāmāṇām tārayatām | 17 |
- KAZ02.28.18/ brāhmaṇa.pravrajita.bāla.vṛddha.vyādhita.śāsana.hara.garbhiṇyo
nāv.adhyakṣa.mudrābhis tareyuḥ | 18 |
- KAZ02.28.19/ kṛta.praveśāḥ pāraviṣayikāḥ sārtha.pramāṇā vā praviṣeyuḥ | 19 |
- KAZ02.28.20/ parasya bhāryām kanyām vittam vā-apaharantaṁ śavittam vā-apaharantaṁ
śaṅkitam āvignam udbhāṇḍī.kṛtaṁ mahā.bhāṇḍena mūrdhni bhāreṇa-avacchādayantaṁ
sadyo.grhīta.liṅginam aliṅginam vā pravrajitam alakṣya.vyādhitaṁ bhaya.vikāriṇām
gūḍha.sāra.bhāṇḍa.śāsana.śāstra.agniyogaṁ viṣa.hastaṁ dīrgha.pathikam amudraṁ
ca-upagrāhayet | 20 |
- KAZ02.28.21/ kṣudra.paśur manuṣyaś ca sa.bhāro māśakam dadyāt, śiro.bhāraḥ kāya.bhāro
gava-aśvaṁ ca dvau, uṣṭra.mahiṣam caturāḥ, pañca labhuyānam, ṣaḍ goliṅgam, sapta
śakaṭam, paṇya.bhāraḥ pādām | 21 |
- KAZ02.28.22/ tena bhāṇḍa.bhāro vyākhyātaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ02.28.23/ dvi.guṇo mahā.nadīsu taraḥ | 23 |
- KAZ02.28.24/ klṛptaṁ ānūpa.grāmā bhakta.vetanaṁ dadyuḥ | 24 |
- KAZ02.28.25/ pratyanteṣu tarāḥ śulkam ātivāhikam vartanīm ca grhṇīyuḥ, nirgacchataś
ca-amudra.dravyasya bhāṇḍam hareyuḥ, atibhāreṇa-avelāyām atirthe tarataś ca | 25 |
- KAZ02.28.26/ puruṣa.upakaraṇa.hīnāyām asaṁskṛtāyām vā nāvi vipannāyām nāv.adhhyakṣo
naṣṭam vinaṣṭam vā-abhyāvahet | 26 |
- KAZ02.28.27ab/ sapta.aha.vṛttam āṣādhīm kārttikīm ca-antarā taraḥ |
- KAZ02.28.27cd/ kārmiḥ pratyayaṁ dadyān nityam ca-āhnikam āvahet || 27 ||

¹³¹[K tr. 186 :: K2 tr. 162

2.29 Chapter 29 (Section 46): The Superintendent of Cattle

132

KAZ02.29.01/ go.adhyakṣo vetana.upagrāhikaṁ kara.pratikaraṁ bhagna.utsṛṣṭakam
bhāga.anupraviṣṭakam vraja.paryagram naṣṭam vinaṣṭam kṣīra.ghṛta.sañjātam ca-upalabheta
| 1 |

KAZ02.29.02/ go.pālaka.piṇḍāraka.dohaka.manthaka.lubdhakāḥ śataṁ śataṁ dhenūnām
hiraṇya.bhṛtāḥ pālayeyuḥ | 2 |

KAZ02.29.03/ kṣīra.ghṛta.bhṛtā hi vatsān upahanyuḥ | iti vetana.upagrāhikam | 3 |

KAZ02.29.04/ jaradgu.dhenu.garbhiṇī.paṣṭhauhi.vatsatarīṇām sama.vibhāgam rūpa.śatam
ekaḥ pālayet | 4 |

KAZ02.29.05/ ghṛtasya-aṣṭau vārakān paṇikam puccham aṅka.carma ca vārṣikam dadyāt |
iti kara.pratikaraḥ | 5 |

KAZ02.29.06/ vyādhitā.nyaṅgā.ananya.dohī.durdohā.putraghnīnām ca sama.vibhāgam
rūpa.śatam pālayantas taj.jātikam bhāgam dadyuḥ | iti bhagna.utsṛṣṭakam | 6 |

KAZ02.29.07/ para.cakra.aṭavī.bhayād anupraviṣṭānām paśūnām pālana.dharmaṇa
daśa.bhagam dadyuḥ | iti bhāga.anupraviṣṭakam | 7 |

KAZ02.29.08/ vatsā vatsarā damyā vahino vṛṣā ukṣāṇaś ca puṅgavāḥ,
yuga.vāhana.śakaṭa.vahā vṛṣabhāḥ sūnā.mahiṣāḥ pṛṣṭa.skandha.vāhinaś ca mahiṣāḥ, vatsikā
vatsarī paṣṭhauhi garbhiṇī dhenuś ca-aprajātā vandhyāś ca gāvo mahiṣyaś ca,
māsa.dvi.māsa.jātās tāsām upajā vatsā vatsikāś ca | 8 |

KAZ02.29.09/ māsa.dvi.māsa.jātān aṅkayet | 9 |

KAZ02.29.10/ māsa.dvi.māsa.paryuṣitam aṅkayet | 10 |

KAZ02.29.11/ aṅkam cihnam varṇam śṛṅga.antaram ca lakṣaṇam evam upajā nibandhayet |
iti vraja.paryagram | 11 |

KAZ02.29.12/ cora.hṛtam anya.yūtha.praviṣṭam avalīnam vā naṣṭam | 12 |

KAZ02.29.13/ paṅka.viṣama.vyādhi.jarā.toya.āhāra.avasannam
vṛkṣa.taṭa.kāṣṭha.śilā.abhihatam īśāna.vyāla.sarpa.grāha.dāva.agni.vipannam vinaṣṭam | 13 |

KAZ02.29.14/ pramādād abhyāvaheyuḥ | 14 |

KAZ02.29.15/ evam rūpa.agram vidyāt | 15 |

KAZ02.29.16/ svayam hantā ghātayitā hartā hārayitā ca vadhyaḥ | 16 |

KAZ02.29.17/ para.paśūnām rāja.aṅkena parivartayitā rūpasya pūrvam sāhasa.daṇḍam
dadyāt | 17 |

KAZ02.29.18/ sva.deśīyānām cora.hṛtam pratyānīya paṇitam rūpam haret | 18 |

KAZ02.29.19/ para.deśīyānām mokṣayitā-ardham haret | 19 |

KAZ02.29.20/ bāla.vṛddha.vyādhitānām go.pālakāḥ pratikuryuḥ | 20 |

KAZ02.29.21/ lubdhaka.śva.gaṇibhir apāstas tena-avyāla.parābādha.bhayam ṛtu.vibhaktam
araṇyam cārayeyuḥ | 21 |

KAZ02.29.22/ sarpa.vyāla.trāsana.artham go.cara.anupāta.jñāna.artham ca trasnūnām
ghaṇṭā.tūryam ca badhnīyuḥ | 22 |

KAZ02.29.23/ sama.vyūḍha.tīrtham akardama.grāham udakam avatārayeyuḥ pālayeyuś ca |
23 |

KAZ02.29.24/ stena.vyāla.sarpa.grāha.grhītam vyādhi.jarā.avasannam ca-āvedayeyuḥ,
anyathā rūpa.mūlyam bhajeraṇ | 24 |

KAZ02.29.25/ kāraṇa.mṛtasya-aṅka.carma go.mahiṣasya, karṇa.lakṣaṇam aja.avikānām,
puccham aṅka.carma ca-aśva.khara.uṣṭrāṇām,

bāla.carma.basti.pitta.snāyu.danta.khura.śṛṅga.asthīni ca-āhareyuḥ | 25 |

KAZ02.29.26/ māmsam ārdram śuṣkam vā vikrīṇīyuḥ | 26 |

¹³²[K tr. 190 :: K2 tr. 165

- KAZ02.29.27/ udaśvit.śva.varāhebhya dadyuḥ | 27 |
 KAZ02.29.28/ kūrīkām senā.bhakta.artham āhareyuḥ | 28 |
 KAZ02.29.29/ kilāṭo ghāṇa.piṇyāka.kleda.arthaḥ | 29 |
 KAZ02.29.30/ paśu.vikretā pādikaṁ rūpaṁ dadyāt | 30 |
 KAZ02.29.31/ varṣā.śaradd.hemantān ubhayataḥ.kālaṁ duhyuḥ, śīśira.vasanta.grīṣmān
 eka.kālam | 31 |
 KAZ02.29.32/ dvitīya.kāla.dogdhur aṅguṣṭhac.chedo daṇḍaḥ | 32 |
 KAZ02.29.33/ dohana.kālam atikrāmatas tat.phala.hānaṁ daṇḍaḥ | 33 |
 KAZ02.29.34/ etena nasya.damya.yuga.piṅgana.vartana.kālā vyākhyātāḥ | 34 |
 KAZ02.29.35/ kṣīra.droṇe gavām ghr̥ta.prasthaḥ, pañca.bhāga.adhiko mahiṣiṇām,
 dvi.bhāga.adhiko 'ja.avīnām | 35 |
 KAZ02.29.36/ mantho vā sarveṣāṁ pramāṇam | 36 |
 KAZ02.29.37/ bhūmi.tr̥ṇa.udaka.viśeṣādd hi kṣīra.ghr̥ta.vṛddhir bhavati | 37 |
 KAZ02.29.38/ yūtha.vṛṣaṁ vṛṣeṇa-avapātayataḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, ghātayata uttamaḥ |
 38 |
 KAZ02.29.39/ varṇa.avarodhena daśatī rakṣā | 39 |
 KAZ02.29.40/ upaniveśa.dig.vibhāgo go.pracārād bala-anvayato vā gavām rakṣā.sāmarthyāc
 ca | 40 |
 KAZ02.29.41/ ajāvīnām ṣaṇ.māsikī.mūrṇām grāhayet | 41 |
 KAZ02.29.42/ tena-aśva.khara.uṣṭra.varāha.vrajā vyākhyātāḥ | 42 |
 KAZ02.29.43/ balīvardānām nasya.aśva.bhadra.gati.vāhinām yava.sasya.ardha.bhāras tr̥ṇasya
 dvi.guṇam, tulā ghāṇa.piṇyākasya, daśa.āḍhakaṁ kaṇa.kuṇḍakasya, pañca.palikaṁ
 mukha.lavanAm, taila.kuḍubo nasyaṁ prasthaḥ pānaṁ, māmsa.tulā, dadhnaś ca-āḍhakam,
 yava.droṇaṁ māśāṇām vā pulākaḥ, kṣīra.droṇam ardha.āḍhakaṁ vā surāyāḥ sneha.prasthaḥ
 kṣāra.daśa.palaṁ śṛṅgibera.palaṁ ca pratipānam | 43 |
 KAZ02.29.44/ pāda.ūnam aśvatara.go.kharāṇām, dvi.guṇam mahiṣa.uṣṭrāṇām | 44 |
 KAZ02.29.45/ karma.kara.balīvardānām pāyana.arthānām ca dhenūnām karma.kālataḥ
 phalataś ca vidhā.dānam | 45 |
 KAZ02.29.46/ sarveṣāṁ tr̥ṇa.udaka.prākāmyam | 46 |
 KAZ02.29.47/ iti go.maṇḍalaṁ vyākhyātam | 47 |
 KAZ02.29.48ab/ pañca.ṛṣabhaṁ khara.aśvānām aja.avīnām daśa.ṛṣabham |
 KAZ02.29.48cd/ śatyam go.mahiṣa.uṣṭrāṇām yūthaṁ kuryāc catur.vṛṣam || 48 ||

2.30 Chapter 30 (Section 47): The Superintendent of Horses

133

- KAZ02.30.01/ aśva.adhyakṣaḥ paṇya.āgārikaṁ kraya.upāgatam āhava.labdham ājātaṁ
 sāhāyya.āgatakaṁ paṇa.sthitaṁ yāvat.kālīkaṁ vā-aśva.paryagram
 kula.vayo.varṇa.cihna.varga.āgamair lekhayet | 1 |
 KAZ02.30.02/ apraśasta.nyaṅga.vyādhītāṁś ca-āvedayet | 2 |
 KAZ02.30.03/ kośa.koṣṭha.agārābhyām ca gṛhītvā māsa.lābham aśva.vāhaś cintayet | 3 |
 KAZ02.30.04/ aśva.vibhavana-āyatām aśvāyām advi.guṇa.vistārām
 catur.dvāra.upāvartana.madhyām sa-pragrīvām pradvāra.āsana.phalaka.yuktānām
 vānara.mayūra.pṛṣata.nakula.cakora.śuka.sārika.ākīrṇām śālām niveśayet | 4 |
 KAZ02.30.05/ aśvāyām acatur.aśra.ślakṣṇa.phalaka.āstāraṁ sa-khādana.koṣṭhakaṁ
 sa-mūtra.purīṣa.utsargam eka.ekaśaḥ prān.mukham udan.mukham vā sthānaṁ niveśayet | 5 |
 KAZ02.30.06/ śālā.vaśena vā dig.vibhāgaṁ kalpayet | 6 |

¹³³[K tr. 196 :: K2 tr. 170

- KAZ02.30.07/ vaḍavā.vṛṣa.kiśorāṇām eka.anteṣu | 7 |
- KAZ02.30.08/ vaḍavāyāḥ prajātāyās tri.rātram ghr̥ta.prasthaḥ pānam | 8 |
- KAZ02.30.09/ ata ūrdhvaṁ saktu.prasthaḥ sneha.bhaiṣajya.pratipānam daśa.rātram | 9 |
- KAZ02.30.10/ tataḥ pulāko yavasam ārtavaś ca-āhāraḥ | 10 |
- KAZ02.30.11/ daśa.rātrād ūrdhvaṁ kiśorasya ghr̥ta.catur.bhāgaḥ saktu.kuḍubaḥ
kṣīra.prasthaś ca-āhāra ā.ṣaṇ.māsāt | 11 |
- KAZ02.30.12/ tataḥ param māsa.uttaram ardha.vṛddhir yava.prastha ā.tri.varṣāt, droṇa
ā.catur.varṣāt | 12 |
- KAZ02.30.13/ ata ūrdhvaṁ catur.varṣaḥ pañca.varṣo vā karmaṇyaḥ pūrṇa.pramāṇaḥ | 13 |
- KAZ02.30.14/ dvātrimśad.āṅgulaṁ mukham uttama.aśvasya, pañca.mukhāny āyāmo,
vimśaty.āṅgulā jaṅghā, catur.jaṅgha utsedhaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ02.30.15/ try.āṅgula.avaram madhyama.avarayoḥ | 15 |
- KAZ02.30.16/ śata.āṅgulaḥ pariṇāhaḥ | 16 |
- KAZ02.30.17/ pañca.bhāga.avarō madhyama.avarayoḥ | 17 |
- KAZ02.30.18/ uttama.aśvasya dvi.droṇam śāli.vr̥hi.yava.priyaṅgūṇām ardha.śuṣkam
ardha.siddham vā mudga.māśāṇām vā pulākaḥ sneha.prasthaś ca, pañca.palaṁ lavaṇasya,
māmsam pañcāśat.palikaṁ rasasya-āḍhakaṁ dvi.guṇam vā dadhnaḥ piṇḍa.kledana.artham,
kṣāra.pañca.palikaḥ surāyāḥ prasthaḥ payaso vā dvi.guṇaḥ pratipānam | 18 |
- KAZ02.30.19/ dīrgha.patha.bhāra.klāntānām ca khādana.artham sneha.prastho 'nuvāsanam
kuḍubo nasya.karmaṇaḥ, yavasasya-ardha.bhāras tṛṇasya dvi.guṇaḥ ṣaḍ.aratni.parikṣepaḥ
puñjīla.graho vā | 19 |
- KAZ02.30.20/ pāda.avaram etan madhyama.avarayoḥ | 20 |
- KAZ02.30.21/ uttama.samo rathyo vṛṣaś ca madhyamaḥ | 21 |
- KAZ02.30.22/ madhyama.samaś ca-avaraḥ | 22 |
- KAZ02.30.23/ pāda.hīnam vaḍavānām pāraśamānām ca | 23 |
- KAZ02.30.24/ ato 'rdham kiśorāṇām ca | 24 |
- KAZ02.30.25/ iti vidhā.yogaḥ | 25 |
- KAZ02.30.26/ vidhā.pācaka.sūtra.grāhaka.cikitsakāḥ pratisvāda.bhājāḥ | 26 |
- KAZ02.30.27/ yuddha.vyādhi.jarā.karma.kṣīṇāḥ piṇḍa.gocarikāḥ syuḥ | 27 |
- KAZ02.30.28/ asamara.prayogyāḥ paura.jānapadānām arthena vṛṣā vaḍavāsv āyoyāḥ | 28 |
- KAZ02.30.29/ prayogyānām uttamāḥ kāmboja.saindhava.āratta.vanāyujāḥ, madhyamā
bāhlika.pāpeyaka.sauvīraka.taitalāḥ, śeṣāḥ pratyavarāḥ | 29 |
- KAZ02.30.30/ teṣām tiṣkṇa.bhadra.manda.vaśena sāmnāhyam aupavāhyakaṁ vā karma
prayojayet | 30 |
- KAZ02.30.31/ catur.aśram karma.aśvasya sāmnāhyam | 31 |
- KAZ02.30.32/ valgano nīcāir gato laṅghano ghorāṇo nāroṣṭraś ca-aupavāhyāḥ | 32 |
- KAZ02.30.33/ tatra.aupaveṇuko vardhamānako yamaka ālīḍha.plutaḥ pṛthug.astrika.cālī ca
valganaḥ | 33 |
- KAZ02.30.34/ sa eva śīraḥ.karṇa.viśuddho nīcāir gataḥ, ṣoḍaśa.mārgo vā | 34 |
- KAZ02.30.35/ prakīrṇakaḥ prakīrṇa.uttaro niṣaṇṇaḥ pārśva.anuvṛtta ūrmi.mārgaḥ
śarabha.krīḍitaḥ śarabha.plutaḥ tri.tālo bāhya.anuvṛttaḥ pañca.pāṇiḥ simha.āyataḥ svādhūtaḥ
kliṣṭaḥ ślingito bṛmhitāḥ puṣpa.abhikīrṇaś ca-iti nīcāir gata.mārgaḥ | 35 |
- KAZ02.30.36/ kapi.pluto bheka.plut-eṇa.pluta-eka.pāda.plutaḥ kokila.sañcāry.urasyo
baka.cārī ca laṅghanaḥ | 36 |
- KAZ02.30.37/ kāṅko vāri.kāṅko māyūro 'rdha.māyūro nākulo-rdha.nākulo vārāho
'rdha.vārāhaś ca-iti dhoraṇaḥ | 37 |
- KAZ02.30.38/ sañjñā.pratikāro nāra.uṣṭra-iti | 38 |
- KAZ02.30.39/ ṣaṇṇava dvādaśa-iti yojanāny dhvā rathyānām, pañca yojanāny
ardha.aṣṭamāni daśa-iti pṛṣṭha.vāhinām aśvānām adhvā | 39 |

KAZ02.30.40/ vikramo bhadra.aśvāso bhāra.vāhya iti mārgāḥ | 40 |
 KAZ02.30.41/ vikramo valgitam upakaṇṭham upajavo javaś ca dhārāḥ | 41 |
 KAZ02.30.42/ teṣāṃ bandhana.upakaraṇaṃ yogya.ācāryāḥ pratidiśeyuḥ, sāṅgrāmikaṃ
 ratha.aśva.alaṅkāraṃ ca sūtāḥ | 42 |
 KAZ02.30.43/ aśvānāṃ cikitsakāḥ śarīra.hrāsa.vṛddhi.pratīkāraṃ ṛtu.vibhaktaṃ ca-āhāraṃ |
 43 |
 KAZ02.30.44/ sūtra.grāhaka.aśva.bandhaka.yāvasika.vidhā.pācaka.sthāna.pāla.-
 keśa.kāra.jāṅgulividaś ca sva.karmabhir aśvān ārādhayeyuḥ | 44 |
 KAZ02.30.45/ karma.atikrame ca-eṣāṃ divasa.vetanac.chedanaṃ kuryāt | 45 |
 KAZ02.30.46/ nīrājana.uparuddhaṃ vāhayataś cikitsaka.uparuddhaṃ vā dvādaśa.paṇo
 daṇḍaḥ | 46 |
 KAZ02.30.47/ kriyā.bhaiṣajya.saṅgena vyādhi.vṛddhau pratīkāra.dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 47 |
 KAZ02.30.48/ tad.aparādhena vailomye pattra.mūlyaṃ daṇḍaḥ | 48 |
 KAZ02.30.49/ tena go.maṇḍalaṃ khara.uṣṭra.mahiṣaṃ aja.avikaṃ ca vyākhyātam | 49 |
 KAZ02.30.50ab/ dvir ahnaḥ snānaṃ aśvānāṃ gandha.mālyaṃ ca dāpayet |
 KAZ02.30.50cd/ kṛṣṇa.sandhiṣu bhūta.ijyāḥ śukleṣu svasti.vācanaṃ || 50 ||
 KAZ02.30.51ab/ nīrājanāṃ āsvayuje kārayen navame 'hani |
 KAZ02.30.51cd/ yātrā.ādāv avasāne vā vyādhou vā śāntike rataḥ || 51 ||

2.31 Chapter 31 (Section 48): The Superintendent of Elephants

134

KAZ02.31.01/ hasty.adhyakṣo hasti.vana.rakṣāṃ damya.karma.kṣāntānāṃ
 hasti.hastinī.kalabhānāṃ śālā.sthāna.śāyā.karma.vidhā.yavasa.pramāṇaṃ karmasv āyogaṃ
 bandhana.upakaraṇaṃ sāṅgrāmikaṃ alaṅkāraṃ cikitsaka.anīkastha.aupasthāyika.vargaṃ
 ca-anutiṣṭhet | 1 |
 KAZ02.31.02/ hasty.āyāma.dvi.guṇa.utsedha.viṣkambha.āyāmāṃ hastinī.sthāna.adhikāṃ
 sapragrīvāṃ kumārī.saṅgrahāṃ prān.mukhīm udan.mukhīm vā śālāṃ niveśayet | 2 |
 KAZ02.31.03/ hasty.āyāma.catur.aśra.ślakṣṇa.ālāna.stambha.phalaka.āstarakaṃ
 sa-mūtra.purīṣa.utsargaṃ sthānaṃ niveśayet | 3 |
 KAZ02.31.04/ sthāna.samāṃ śāyām ardha.apāśrayāṃ durge sāmānāhya.aupavāhyānāṃ bahir
 damya.vyālānāṃ | 4 |
 KAZ02.31.05/ prathama.saptama.aṣṭama.bhāgāv ahnaḥ snāna.kālau, tad.anantaraṃ
 vidhāyāḥ | 5 |
 KAZ02.31.06/ pūrva.ahne vyāyāma.kālaḥ, paśca.ahnaḥ pratipāna.kālaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ02.31.07/ rātri.bhāgau dvau svapna.kālā, tri.bhāgaḥ saṃveśana.utthānikaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ02.31.08/ grīṣme grahaṇa.kālaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ02.31.09/ viṃśati.varṣo grāhyaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ02.31.10/ vikko moḍho makkaṇo vyāthito garbhini dhenukā hastinī ca-agrāhyāḥ | 10 |
 KAZ02.31.11/ sapta.aratni utsedho nava.āyāmo daśa pariṇāhaḥ pramāṇataś
 catvāriṃśad.varṣo bhavaty uttamaḥ, triṃśad.varṣo madhyamaḥ, pañca.viṃśati.varṣo 'varaḥ |
 11 |
 KAZ02.31.12/ tayoḥ pāda.avarō vidhā.vidhiḥ | 12 |
 KAZ02.31.13/ aratnau taṇula.droṇaḥ, ardha.āḍhakaṃ tailasya, sarpiṣas trayāḥ prasthāḥ,
 daśa.palaṃ lavaṇasya, māmśaṃ pañcāśat.palikam, rasasya-āḍhakaṃ dvi.guṇaṃ vā dadhnaḥ
 piṇḍa.kledana.artham, kṣāra.daśa.palikam madyasya-āḍhakaṃ dvi.guṇaṃ vā payasaḥ
 pratipānam, gātra.avasekas taila.prasthaḥ, śirasō 'ṣṭa.bhāgaḥ prādīpikaś ca, yavasasya dvau
 bhārau sa-pāḍau, śaṣpasya śuṣkasya-ardha.trītyo bhāraḥ, kaḍaṅkarasya-anīyamaḥ | 13 |

¹³⁴[K tr. 201 :: K2 tr. 174

KAZ02.31.14/ sapta.aratninā tulya.bhojano 'ṣṭa.aratnir atyarālaḥ | 14 |
 KAZ02.31.15/ yathā.hastam avaśeṣaḥ ṣaḍ.aratniḥ pañca.aratniś ca | 15 |
 KAZ02.31.16/ kṣīra.yāvasiko vikkaḥ krīḍā.arthaṁ grāhyaḥ | 16 |
 KAZ02.31.17/ sañjāta.lohitā praticchannā samlipta.pakṣā sama.kakṣyā vyatikīrṇa.māmsā
 sama.talpa.talā jāta.droṇikā-iti śobhāḥ | 17 |
 KAZ02.31.18ab/ śobhā.vaśena vyāyāmaṁ bhadrma mandaṁ ca kārayet |
 KAZ02.31.18cd/ mṛgaṁ saṅkīrṇa.liṅgaṁ ca karmasv ṛtu.vaśena vā || 18 ||

2.32 Chapter 32 (Section 48): The Superintendent of Elephants (cont.)

135

KAZ02.32.01/ karma.skandhāś catvāro damyaḥ sāmānāhya aupavāhyo vyālaś ca | 1 |
 KAZ02.32.02/ tatra damyaḥ pañca.vidhaḥ skandha.gataḥ stambha.gato vāri.gato
 'vapāta.gato yūtha.gataś ca-iti | 2 |
 KAZ02.32.03/ tasya-upavicāro vikka.karma | 3 |
 KAZ02.32.04/ sāmānāhyaḥ sapta.kriyā.patha upasthānaṁ saṁvartanaṁ samyānaṁ
 vadha.āvadho hasti.yuddhaṁ nāga.rāyaṇaṁ sāṅgrāmikaṁ ca | 4 |
 KAZ02.32.05/ tasya-upavicāraḥ kakṣyā.karma graiveya.karma yūtha.karma ca | 5 |
 KAZ02.32.06/ aupavāhyo 'ṣṭa.vidha ācaraṇaḥ kuñjara.aupavāhyo dhoraṇa ādhāna.gatiko
 yaṣṭy.upavāhyas tota.upavāhyaḥ śuddha.upavāhyo mārgayukaś ca-iti | 6 |
 KAZ02.32.07/ tasya-upavicāraḥ śārada.karma hīna.karma nāra.uṣṭra.karma ca | 7 |
 KAZ02.32.08/ vyāla-eka.kriyā.pathaḥ śaṅkito 'varuddho viśamaḥ prabhinnāḥ
 prabhinna.viniścayo mada.hetu.viniścayaś ca | 8 |
 KAZ02.32.09/ tasya-upavicāra āyama-eka.rakṣā.karma | 9 |
 KAZ02.32.10/ kriyā.vipanno vyālaḥ śuddhaḥ su.vrato viśamaḥ sarva.doṣa.praduṣṭaś ca | 10 |
 KAZ02.32.11/ teṣāṁ bandhana.upakaraṇaṁ anīka.stha.pramāṇaṁ | 11 |
 KAZ02.32.12/ ālāna.graiveya.kakṣyā.pāra.ayaṇa.parikṣepa.uttara.ādikaṁ bandhanaṁ | 12 |
 KAZ02.32.13/ aṅkuśa.veṇu.yantra.ādikaṁ upakaraṇaṁ | 13 |
 KAZ02.32.14/ vaijayantī.kṣura.pramāla.āstarāṇa.kuthā.ādikaṁ bhūṣaṇaṁ | 14 |
 KAZ02.32.15/ varma.tomara.śara.āvāpa.yantra.ādikaḥ sāṅgrāmika.alaṅkāraḥ | 15 |
 KAZ02.32.16/ cikitsaka.anīkastha.āroha.ādihoraṇa.hastipa.kaupacārika.vidhā.-
 pācaka.yāvasika.pādapāśika.kuṭī.rakṣaka.aupaśayaika.ādir aupasthāyika.vargaḥ | 16 |
 KAZ02.32.17/ cikitsaka.kuṭī.rakṣa.vidhā.pācakāḥ prastha.odanaṁ sneha.prasṛtiṁ
 kṣāra.lavaṇayoś ca dvi.palikaṁ hareyuh, daśa.palaṁ māmsasya, anyatra cikitsakebhyaḥ | 17 |
 KAZ02.32.18/ pathi.vyādhi.karma.mada.jarā.abhitaptānāṁ cikitsakāḥ pratikuryuh | 18 |
 KAZ02.32.19/ sthānasya-aśuddhir yavasasya-agrahaṇaṁ sthale śāyanam abhāge ghātaḥ
 para.ārohaṇaṁ akāle yānam abhūmāv atīrthe 'vatāraṇaṁ taru.ṣaṇḍa ity atyaya.sthānāni | 19 |
 KAZ02.32.20/ tam eṣāṁ bhakta.vetanād ādadīta | 20 |
 KAZ02.32.21ab/ tisro nīrājanāḥ kāryāś cāturmāsya.ṛtu.sandhiṣu |
 KAZ02.32.21cd/ bhūtānāṁ kṛṣṇa.sandhī-ijyāḥ senānyaḥ śukla.sandhiṣu || 21 ||
 KAZ02.32.22ab/ danta.mūla.parīṇāha.dvi.guṇaṁ projjhya kalpayet |
 KAZ02.32.22cd/ abde dvy.ardhe nadī.jānāṁ pañca.abde parvata.okasām || 22 ||

¹³⁵[K tr. 204 :: K2 tr. 177

2.33 Chapter 33 (Sections 49; 50; 51): The Superintendent of Chariots; The Superintendent of Foot Soldiers; The Commandant of the Army

136

- KAZ02.33.01/ aśva.adhyakṣeṇa ratha.adhyakṣo vyākhyātaḥ | 1 |
KAZ02.33.02/ sa ratha.karma.antān kārayet | 2 |
KAZ02.33.03/ daśa.puruṣo dvādaśa.antaro rathaḥ | 3 |
KAZ02.33.04/ tasmād eka.antara.avarā ā.ṣaḍ.antarād iti sapta rathāḥ | 4 |
KAZ02.33.05/ deva.ratha.puṣya.ratha.sāṅgrāmika.pāriyānika.para.pura.abhiyānika.-
vainayikāms ca rathān kārayet | 5 |
KAZ02.33.06/ iṣv.astra.praharāṇa.āvaraṇa.upakaraṇa.kalpanāḥ sārathi.rathika.rathyānām ca
karmasv āyogaṁ vidyāt, ā.karmabhyās ca bhakta.vetanaṁ bhṛtānām abhṛtānām ca
yogyā.rakṣā.anuṣṭhānam artha.māna.karma ca | 6 |
KAZ02.33.07/ etena patty.adhyakṣo vyākhyātaḥ | 7 |
KAZ02.33.08/ sa maula.bhṛta.śreṇi.mitra.amitra.aṭavī.balānām sāra.phalgutām vidyāt,
nimna.sthala.prakāśa.kūṭa.khanaka.ākāśa.divā.rātri.yuddha.vyāyāmaṁ ca, āyogam ayogam
ca karmasu | 8 |
KAZ02.33.09/ ted eva senā.patiḥ sarva.yuddha.praharāṇa.vidyā.vinīto
hasty.aśva.ratha.caryā.saṅghuṣṭas catur.aṅgasya balasya.anuṣṭhāna.adhiṣṭhānam vidyāt | 9 |
KAZ02.33.10/ sva.bhūmiṁ yuddha.kālāṁ pratyānikam abhinna.bhedanaṁ
bhinna.sandhānaṁ saṁhata.bhedanaṁ bhinna.vadhaṁ durga.vadhaṁ yātrā.kālāṁ ca paśyet
| 10 |
KAZ02.33.11ab/ tūrya.dhvaja.patākābhīr vyūha.sāñjñāḥ prakalpayet |
KAZ02.33.11cd/ sthāne yāne praharaṇe sainyānām vinaye rataḥ || 11 ||

2.34 Chapter 34 (Sections 52; 53): The Superintendent of Passports; The Superintendent of Pastures

137

- KAZ02.34.01/ mudrā.adhyakṣo mudrām māśakeṇa dadyāt | 1 |
KAZ02.34.02/ sa-mudro jana.padaṁ praveṣṭum niṣkramitum vā labheta | 2 |
KAZ02.34.03/ dvādaśa.paṇam amudro jānapado dadyāt | 3 |
KAZ02.34.04/ kūṭa.mudrāyām pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ tiro.jana.padasya-uttamaḥ | 4 |
KAZ02.34.05/ vivīta.adhyakṣo mudrām paśyet | 5 |
KAZ02.34.06/ grāma.antareṣu ca vivītaṁ sthāpayet | 6 |
KAZ02.34.07/ cora.vyāla.bhayān.nimna.aranyāni śodhayet | 7 |
KAZ02.34.08/ anudake kūpa.setu.bandha.utsān sthāpayet, puṣpa.phala.vāṭāms ca | 8 |
KAZ02.34.09/ lubdhaka.śva.gaṇinaḥ parivrajeyur aranyāni | 9 |
KAZ02.34.10/ taskara.amitra.abhyāgame śaṅkha.dundubhi.śābdam agrāhyāḥ kuryuḥ
śaila.vṛkṣa.adhirūḍhā vā śīghra.vāhanā vā | 10 |
KAZ02.34.11/ amitra.aṭavī.sañcāraṁ ca rājño gr̥ha.kapotair mudrā.yuktair hārayet,
dhūma.agni.paramparayā vā | 11 |
KAZ02.34.12ab/ dravya.hasti.vana.ājīvaṁ vartanīm cora.rakṣaṇam |
KAZ02.34.12cd/ sārtha.ativāhyaṁ go.rakṣyaṁ vyavahāraṁ ca kārayet || 12 ||

¹³⁶[K tr. 207 :: K2 tr. 179

¹³⁷[K tr. 209 :: K2 tr. 181

2.35 Chapter 35 (Sections 54; 55): The Administrator's Activity; Activity of Secret Agents

138

- KAZ02.35.01/ samāhartā caturdhā jana.apdam vibhajya
jyeṣṭha.madhyama.kaniṣṭha.vibhāgena grāma.agram parihārakam āyudhīyam
dhānya.paśu.hiraṇya.kupya.viṣṭi.pratikaram idam etāvad iti nibandhayet | 1 |
- KAZ02.35.02/ tat.pradiṣṭaḥ pañca.grāmīm daśa.grāmīm vā gopaś cintayet | 2 |
- KAZ02.35.03/ sīma.avarodhena grāma.agram,
krṣṭa.akṣṭa.sthala.kedāra.ārāma.ṣaṇḍa.vāṭa.vana.vāstu.caitya.-
deva.gr̥ha.setu.bandha.śmaśāna.sattrā.prapā.puṇya.sthāna.vivīta.- pathi.saṅkhyānena
kṣetra.agram, tena sīmnam kṣetrānam ca karada.akarada.saṅkhyānena | 3 |
- KAZ02.35.04/ teṣu ca-etāvac-cātur.vārṇyam, etāvantaḥ
karṣaka.go.rakṣaka.vaidehaka.kāru.karma.kara.dāsās ca, etāvac ca dvi.pada.catuṣ.padam,
idam ca-eṣu hiraṇyalviṣṭi.śulka.daṇḍam samuttiṣṭhati-iti | 4 |
- KAZ02.35.05/ kulānam ca strī.puruṣānam bāla.vṛddha.karma.caritra.ājīva.vyaya.parimānam
vidyāt | 5 |
- KAZ02.35.06/ evam ca jana.pada.catur.bhāgam sthānikaś cintayet | 6 |
- KAZ02.35.07/ gopa.sthānika.sthāneṣu pradeṣṭāraḥ kārya.karaṇam bali.pragraham ca kuryuḥ
| 7 |
- KAZ02.35.08/ samāharṭṛ.pradiṣṭās ca gr̥ha.patika.vyañjanā yeṣu grāmeṣu praṇihitās teṣām
grāmānam kṣetra.gr̥ha.kula.agram vidyuh, māna.saṅjātābhyām kṣetrāṇi
bhoga.parihārābhyām gr̥hāṇi varṇa.karmabhyām kulāni ca | 8 |
- KAZ02.35.09/ teṣām jaṅgha.agram āya.vyayau ca vidyuh | 9 |
- KAZ02.35.10/ prasthita.āgatānam ca pravāsa.āvāsa.kāraṇam, anarthyanam ca strī.puruṣānam
cāra.pracāram ca vidyuh | 10 |
- KAZ02.35.11/ evam vaidehaka.vyañjanāḥ sva.bhūmijānam rāja.paṇyanam
khani.setu.vana.karma.anta.kṣetrajanam pramānam argham ca vidyuh | 11 |
- KAZ02.35.12/ para.bhūmi.jātānam vāri.sthala.patha.upayātānam sāra.phalgu.puṇyanam
karmasu ca śulka.vartany.ātivāhika.gulma.tara.deya.bhāga.bhakta.paṇya.agāra.- pramānam
vidyuh | 12 |
- KAZ02.35.13/ evam samāharṭṛ.pradiṣṭās tāpasa.vyañjanāḥ karṣaka.go.rakṣaka.vaidehakānam
adhyakṣānam ca śauca.āśaucam vidyuh | 13 |
- KAZ02.35.14/ purāṇa cora.vyañjanās ca-antevāsinaś
caitya.catuṣpatha.sūnya.pada.uda.pāna.nadī.nipāna.tīrtha.āyatana.-
āśrama.aranya.śaila.vana.gahaneṣu stena.amitra.pravīra.puruṣānam ca
praveśana.sthāna.gamana.prayanāny upalabheran | 14 |
- KAZ02.35.15ab/ samāhartā jana.padam cintayed evam utthitaḥ |
- KAZ02.35.15cd/ cintayeyuś ca samsthās tāḥ samsthās ca-anyāḥ sva.yonayaḥ || 15 ||

2.36 Chapter 36 (Section 56): The City Superintendent

139

- KAZ02.36.01/ samāharṭṛvan nāgariko nagaram cintayet | 1 |
- KAZ02.36.02/ daśa.kulīm gopo vimśati.kulīm catvārimśat.kulīm vā | 2 |
- KAZ02.36.03/ sa tasyām strī.puruṣānam jāti.gotra.nāma.karmabhiḥ jaṅgha.agram āya.vyayau
ca vidyāt | 3 |
- KAZ02.36.04/ evam durga.catur.bhāgam sthānikaś cintayet | 4 |

¹³⁸[K tr. 210 :: K2 tr. 182

¹³⁹[K tr. 213 :: K2 tr. 185

- KAZ02.36.05/ dharma.āvasathinaḥ pāṣaṇḍi.pathikān āvedya vāsayeyuḥ, sva.pratyayās ca tapasvinaḥ śrotriyaṁś ca | 5 |
- KAZ02.36.06/ kāru.śilpinaḥ sva.karma.sthāneṣu sva.janaṁ vāsayeyuḥ, vaidehakāś ca-anyonyaṁ sva.karma.sthāneṣu | 6 |
- KAZ02.36.07/ paṇyānām adeśa.kāla.vikretāram asvakaraṇaṁ ca nivedayeyuḥ | 7 |
- KAZ02.36.08/ śauṇḍika.pākva.māmsika.audanika.rūpa.ājīvāḥ parijñātam āvāsayeyuḥ | 8 |
- KAZ02.36.09/ ativyaya.kartāram atyāhita.karmāṇaṁ ca nivedayeyuḥ | 9 |
- KAZ02.36.10/ cikitsakaḥ pracchanna.vraṇa.pratikāra.kārayitāram apathya.kāriṇaṁ ca gr̥ha.svāmī ca nivedya gopa.sthānikayor mucyeta, anyathā tulya.doṣaḥ syāt | 10 |
- KAZ02.36.11/ prasthita.āgatau ca nivedayet, anyathā rātri.doṣaṁ bhajeta | 11 |
- KAZ02.36.12/ kṣema.rātriṣu tri.paṇaṁ dadyāt | 12 |
- KAZ02.36.13/ pathika.utpathikāś ca bahir.antaś ca nagarasya deva.gr̥ha.puṇya.sthāna.vana.śmaśāneṣu sa-vraṇaṁ aniṣṭa.upakaraṇaṁ udbhāṇḍī.kṛtam āvignaṁ atisvapnaṁ adhva.klāntaṁ apūrvam vā gr̥hṇīyuh | 13 |
- KAZ02.36.14/ evam abhyantare śūnya.niveśa.āveśana.śauṇḍika.audanika.pākva.māmsika.dyūta.- pāṣaṇḍa.āvāseṣu vicayaṁ kuryuh | 14 |
- KAZ02.36.15/ agni.pratikāraṁ ca gr̥ṣme | 15 |
- KAZ02.36.16/ madhyamayor ahnaś catur.bhāgayor aṣṭa.bhāgo 'gni.daṇḍaḥ | 16 |
- KAZ02.36.17/ bahir.adhiśrayaṇaṁ vā kuryuh | 17 |
- KAZ02.36.18/ pādaḥ pañca.ghaṭinām kumbha.droṇi.nihśreṇī.paraśu.śūrpa.aṅkuśa.kaca.grahaṇī.dṛṭinām ca-akaraṇe | 18 |
- KAZ02.36.19/ tṛṇa.kaṭac.channāny apanayet | 19 |
- KAZ02.36.20/ agni.jīvina ekasthān vāsayet | 20 |
- KAZ02.36.21/ sva.gr̥ha.pradvāreṣu gr̥ha.svāmīno vaseyuh asampātino rātrau | 21 |
- KAZ02.36.22/ rathyāsu kuṭa.vrajāḥ sahasraṁ tiṣṭheyuh, catuṣpatha.dvāra.rāja.parigraheṣu ca | 22 |
- KAZ02.36.23/ pradīptam anabhidhāvato gr̥ha.svāmīno dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, ṣaṭ.paṇo 'vakrayiṇaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ02.36.24/ pramādād dīpteṣu catuṣ.pañcāśat.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 24 |
- KAZ02.36.25/ pradīpiko 'gninā vadhyah | 25 |
- KAZ02.36.26/ pāmsu.nyāse rathyāyām aṣṭa.bhāgo daṇḍaḥ, pañka.udaka.samnirodhe pādaḥ | 26 |
- KAZ02.36.27/ rāja.mārge dvi.guṇaḥ | 27 |
- KAZ02.36.28/ paṇya.sthāna.udaka.sthāna.deva.gr̥ha.rāja.parigraheṣu paṇa.uttarā viṣṭā.daṇḍaḥ, mūtreṣv ardha.daṇḍaḥ | 28 |
- KAZ02.36.29/ bhaiṣajya.vyādhi.bhaya.nimittam adaṇḍyāḥ | 29 |
- KAZ02.36.30/ mārjāra.śva.nakula.sarpa.pretānām nagarasya.antar.utsarge tri.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, khara.uṣṭra.aśvatara.aśva.pretānām ṣaṭ.paṇaḥ, manuṣya.pretānām pañcāśat.paṇaḥ | 30 |
- KAZ02.36.31/ mārگا.viparyāse śva.dvārād anyataś ca śva.nirṇayane pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 31 |
- KAZ02.36.32/ dvāḥ.sthānām dviśatam | 32 |
- KAZ02.36.33/ śmaśānād anyatra nyāse dahane ca dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 33 |
- KAZ02.36.34/ viṣaṇṇa.alikam ubhayator ātraṁ yāma.tūryam | 34 |
- KAZ02.36.35/ tūrya.śabde rājño gr̥ha.abhyāse sa.pāda.paṇaṁ.akṣaṇa.tāḍanaṁ prathama.paścima.yāmikam, madhyama.yāmikaṁ dvi.guṇam, antaś.catur.guṇam | 35 |
- KAZ02.36.36/ śaṅkaniye deśe liṅge pūrva.apadāne ca gr̥hītam anuyuñjita | 36 |
- KAZ02.36.37/ rāja.parigraha.upagamane nagara.rakṣā.ārohaṇe ca madhyamaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 37 |

- KAZ02.36.38/ sūtikā.cikitsaka.preta.pradīpa.yāna.nāgarika.tūrya.prekṣā.agni.nimittam
mudrābhiś ca-agrāhyāḥ | 38 |
- KAZ02.36.39/ cāra.rātriṣu pracchanna.viparīta.veśāḥ pravrajitā daṇḍa.śāstra.hastās ca
manuṣyā doṣato daṇḍyāḥ | 39 |
- KAZ02.36.40/ rakṣiṇām avāryam vārayatām vāryam ca-āvārayatām kṣaṇa.dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ |
40 |
- KAZ02.36.41/ striyam dāsīm adhimehayatām pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, adāsīm madhyamaḥ,
kṛta.avarodhām uttamaḥ, kula.striyam vadhaḥ | 41 |
- KAZ02.36.42/ cetana.acetanikaṁ rātri.doṣam aśamsato nāgarikasya doṣa.anurūpo daṇḍaḥ,
pramāda.sthāne ca | 42 |
- KAZ02.36.43/ nityam
udaka.sthāna.mārga.bhramac.channa.patha.vapra.prākāra.rakṣā.avekṣaṇam
naṣṭa.prasmṛta.apasṛtānām ca rakṣaṇam | 43 |
- KAZ02.36.44/ bandhana.agāre ca bāla.vṛddha.vyādhita.anāthānām
jāta.nakṣatra.paurṇamāsīṣu visargaḥ | 44 |
- KAZ02.36.45/ paṇya.śilāḥ samaya.anubaddhā vā doṣa.niṣkrayam dadyuḥ | 45 |
- KAZ02.36.46ab/ divase pañca.rātre vā bandhanasthān viśodhayet |
- KAZ02.36.46cd/ karmaṇā kāya.daṇḍena hiraṇya.anugraheṇa vā || 46 ||
- KAZ02.36.47ab/ apūrva.deśa.adhigame yuva.rāja.abhiṣecane |
- KAZ02.36.47cd/ putra.janmani vā mokṣo bandhanasya vidhīyate || 47 ||

3 Book 3: Concerning Judges

140

3.1 Chapter 1 (Sections 57; 58): Valid and Invalid Transactions; Filing of Law-suits

141

- KAZ03.1.01/ dharmasthās trayas trayo 'mātyā
jana.pada.sandhi.saṅgrahaṇa.droṇa.mukha.sthānīyeṣu vyāvahārikān arthān kuryuḥ | 1 |
- KAZ03.1.02/ tirohita.antar.agāra.nakta.aranya.upadhy.upahvara.kṛtāmś ca vyavahārān
pratiśedhayeyuḥ | 2 |
- KAZ03.1.03/ kartuḥ kārayituḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 3 |
- KAZ03.1.04/ śrotṛṇām eka.ekam pratyardha.daṇḍaḥ | 4 |
- KAZ03.1.05/ śraddheyānām tu dravya.vyapanayaḥ | 5 |
- KAZ03.1.06/ parokṣeṇa-adhika.ṛṇa.grahaṇam avaktavya.karā vā tirohitāḥ sidhyeyuḥ | 6 |
- KAZ03.1.07/ dāya.nikṣepa.upanidhi.vivāha.yuktāḥ strīṇām aniṣkāsinīnām vyādhitānām
ca-amūḍha.sañjñānām antar.agāra.kṛtāḥ sidhyeyuḥ | 7 |
- KAZ03.1.08/ sāhasa.anupraveśa.kalaha.vivāha.rāja.niyoga.yuktāḥ pūrva.rātra.vyavahāriṇām
ca rātri.kṛtāḥ sidhyeyuḥ | 8 |
- KAZ03.1.09/ sārtha.vraja.āśrama.vyādha.cāraṇa.madhyeṣv aranya.carāṇām aranya.kṛtāḥ
sidhyeyuḥ | 9 |
- KAZ03.1.10/ gūḍha.ājīviṣu ca-upadhi.kṛtāḥ sidhyeyuḥ | 10 |
- KAZ03.1.11/ mithaḥ.samavāye ca-upahvara.kṛtāḥ sidhyeyuḥ | 11 |
- KAZ03.1.12/ ato 'nyathā na sidhyeyuḥ, apāśrayavadbhiś ca kṛtāḥ, pitṛmatā putreṇa, pitṛā
putravatā, niṣkulena bhrātrā, kaniṣṭhena-avibhakta.amśena, patimatyā putravatyā ca striyā,

¹⁴⁰[K tr. 219–293 :: K2 tr. 190–253

¹⁴¹[K tr. 219 :: K2 tr. 190

- dāsa.āhitakābhyām, aprāpta.atīta.vyavahārābhyām, abhiśasta.pravrajita.nyaṅga.vyasanibhiś ca, anyatra niṣṛṣṭa.vyavahārebhyaḥ | 12 |
- KAZ03.1.13/ tatra-apī kruddhena-ārtena mattena.unmattena-avagr̥hītena vā kṛtā vyavahāra na sidhyeyuḥ | 13 |
- KAZ03.1.14/ karṭṛ.kārayitr.śrotṛṇām prthag yathā.uktā daṇḍāḥ | 14 |
- KAZ03.1.15/ sve sve tu varge deśe kāle ca sva.karaṇa.kṛtāḥ sampūrṇa.ācārāḥ śuddha.deśā drṣṭa.rūpa.lakṣaṇa.pramāṇa.guṇāḥ sarva.vyavahārāḥ sidhyeyuḥ | 15 |
- KAZ03.1.16/ paścimaṁ ca-eṣāṁ karaṇam ādeśa.ādhivarjaṁ śraddheyam | 16 | iti vyavahāra.sthāpanā |
- KAZ03.1.17/ saṁvatsaram ṛtuṁ māsaṁ pakṣaṁ divasaṁ karaṇam adhikaraṇam ṛṇam vedaka.āvedakayoḥ kṛta.samartha.avasthayor deśa.grāma.jāti.gotra.nāma.karmāṇi ca-abhilikhya vādi.prativādi.praśnān artha.ānupūrvyā niveśayet | 17 |
- KAZ03.1.18/ nivīṣṭāṁś ca-avekṣeta | 18 |
- KAZ03.1.19/ nibaddhaṁ vādam utsṛjya-anyaṁ vādam saṅkrāmati, pūrva.uktaṁ paścimena-arthena na-abhisandhatte, para.vākyaṁ anabhigrāhyam abhigrāhya-avatiṣṭhate, pratijñāya deśaṁ nirdiśa-ity ukte na nirdiśati, hīna.deśaṁ adeśaṁ vā nirdiśati, nirdiṣṭād deśād anyaṁ deśam upasthāpayati, upasthite deśe 'rtha.vacanaṁ na-evam ity apavyayate, sāksibhir avadhṛtaṁ na-icchati, asambhāṣye deśe sāksibhir mithaḥ sambhāṣate, iti parā.ukta.hetavaḥ | 19 |
- KAZ03.1.20/ parā.ukta.daṇḍāḥ pañca.bandhaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ03.1.21/ svayaṁ.vādi.daṇḍo daśa.bandhaḥ | 21 |
- KAZ03.1.22/ puruṣa.bhṛtir aṣṭa.āmśaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ03.1.23/ pathi.bhaktam argha.viśeṣataḥ | 23 |
- KAZ03.1.24/ tad ubhayaṁ niyamyō dadyāt | 24 |
- KAZ03.1.25/ abhiyukto na pratyabhiyujīta, anyatra kalaha.sāhasa.sārtha.samavāyebhyaḥ | 25 |
- KAZ03.1.26/ na ca-abhiyukte 'bhiyoge 'sti | 26 |
- KAZ03.1.27/ abhiyoktā cet pratyuktas tad.ahar eva na pratibrūyāt parā.uktaḥ syāt | 27 |
- KAZ03.1.28/ kṛta.kārya.viniścayo hy abhiyoktā na-abhiyuktaḥ | 28 |
- KAZ03.1.29/ tasya-apratibruvatas tri.rātraṁ sapta.rātram iti | 29 |
- KAZ03.1.30/ ata ūrdhvaṁ tri.paṇa.avara.ardhyaṁ dvādaśa.paṇa.param daṇḍam kuryāt | 30 |
- KAZ03.1.31/ tri.pakṣād ūrdhvam apratibruvataḥ parā.ukta.daṇḍam kṛtvā yāny asya dravyāṇi syus tato 'bhiyoktāraṁ pratipādayed, anyatra vṛtty.upakaraṇebhyaḥ | 31 |
- KAZ03.1.32/ tad eva niṣpatato 'bhiyuktasya kuryāt | 32 |
- KAZ03.1.33/ abhiyoktur niṣpāta.sama.kālaḥ parā.ukta.bhāvaḥ | 33 |
- KAZ03.1.34/ pretasya vyasanino vā sāksi.vacanam asāram | 34 |
- KAZ03.1.35/ abhiyoktā daṇḍam dattvā karma kārayet | 35 |
- KAZ03.1.36/ ādhim vā sa kāmam praveśayet | 36 |
- KAZ03.1.37/ rakṣoghna.rakṣitaṁ vā karmaṇā pratipādayed, anyatra brāhmaṇāt | 37 |
- KAZ03.1.38ab/ catur.varṇa.āśramasya-ayaṁ lokasya-ācāra.rakṣaṇāt |
- KAZ03.1.38cd/ naśyatām sarva.dharmāṇām rājā dharma.pravartakaḥ || 38 ||
- KAZ03.1.39ab/ dharmaś ca vyavahāraś ca caritraṁ rāja.śāsanam |
- KAZ03.1.39cd/ vivāda.arthaś catuṣpādaḥ paścimaḥ pūrva.bādhakaḥ || 39 ||
- KAZ03.1.40ab/ tatra satye sthito dharmo vyavahāras tu sāksiṣu |
- KAZ03.1.40cd/ caritraṁ saṅgrahe puṁsām rājñām ājñā tu śāsanam || 40 ||
- KAZ03.1.41ab/ rājñāḥ sva.dharmaḥ svargāya prajā dharmeṇa rakṣituḥ |
- KAZ03.1.41cd/ arakṣitur vā kṣeptur vā mithyā.daṇḍam ato 'nyathā || 41 ||
- KAZ03.1.42ab/ daṇḍo hi kevalo lokaṁ param ca-imam ca rakṣati |

KAZ03.1.42cd/ rājñā putre ca śatrau ca yathā.doṣaṁ samaṁ dhṛtaḥ || 42 ||
 KAZ03.1.43ab/ anuśāsadd hi dharmeṇa vyavahāreṇa saṁsthayā |
 KAZ03.1.43cd/ nyāyena ca caturthena catur.antām vā mahīm jayet || 43 ||
 KAZ03.1.44ab/ saṁsthā yā dharma.śāstreṇa śāstraṁ vā vyāvahārikam |
 KAZ03.1.44cd/ yasminn arthe virudhyeta dharmeṇa-arthaṁ vinirṇayet || 44 ||
 KAZ03.1.45ab/ śāstraṁ vipratipadyeta dharme nyāyena kenacit |
 KAZ03.1.45cd/ nyāyas tatra pramāṇaṁ syāt tatra pāṭho hi naśyati || 45 ||
 KAZ03.1.46ab/ dṛṣṭa.doṣaḥ svayaṁ.vādaḥ sva.pakṣa.para.pakṣayoḥ |
 KAZ03.1.46cd/ anuyoga.ārjavaṁ hetuḥ śapathaś ca-artha.sādhakaḥ || 46 ||
 KAZ03.1.47ab/ pūrva.uttara.artha.vyāghāte sākṣi.vaktavya.kāraṇe |
 KAZ03.1.47cd/ cāra.hastāc ca niṣpāte pradeṣṭavyaḥ parājayaḥ || 47 ||

3.2 Chapter 2 (Section 59): Concerning Marriage

142

KAZ03.2.01/ vivāha.pūrvo vyavahāraḥ | 1 |
 KAZ03.2.02/ kanyā.dānaṁ kanyām alaṅkr̥tya brāhmo vivāhaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ03.2.03/ saha.dharma.caryā prajāpatyaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ03.2.04/ go.mithuna.ādānād āraṣaḥ | 4 |
 KAZ03.2.05/ antar.vedyām ṛtvije dānād daivaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ03.2.06/ mithaḥ.samavāyād gāndharvaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ03.2.07/ śulka.ādānād āsuraḥ | 7 |
 KAZ03.2.08/ prasahya.ādānād rākṣasaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ03.2.09/ supta.matta.ādānāt paisācaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ03.2.10/ pitṛ.pramāṇās catvāraḥ pūrve dharmyāḥ, mātā.pitṛ.pramāṇāḥ śeṣāḥ | 10 |
 KAZ03.2.11/ tau hi śulka.harau duhituḥ, anyatara.abhāve 'nyataro vā | 11 |
 KAZ03.2.12/ dvitīyaṁ śulkaṁ strī hareta | 12 |
 KAZ03.2.13/ sarveṣāṁ prīty.āropaṇam apratiśiddham | 13 | iti vivāha.dharmaḥ |
 KAZ03.2.14/ vṛttir ābandhyaṁ vā strī.dhanam | 14 |
 KAZ03.2.15/ para.dvi.sāhasrā sthāpyā vṛttiḥ, ābandhya.aniyamaḥ | 15 |
 KAZ03.2.16/ tad ātma.putra.snuṣā.bharmaṇi pravāsa.apratividhāne ca bhāryāyā bhoktum
 adoṣaḥ, pratirodhaka.vyādhi.durbhikṣa.bhaya.pratikāre dharma.kārye ca patyuh, sambhūya
 vā dampatyor mithunaṁ prajātayoḥ | 16 |
 KAZ03.2.17/ tri.varṣa.upabhuktaṁ ca dharmiṣṭheṣu vivāheṣu na-anuyuñjita | 17 |
 KAZ03.2.18/ gāndharva.āsura.upabhuktaṁ sa-vṛddhikam ubhayaṁ dāpyeta,
 rākṣasa.paisāca.upabhuktaṁ steyaṁ dadyāt | 18 |
 KAZ03.2.19/ mṛte bhartari dharma.kāmā tadānīm eva sthāpya-ābharaṇaṁ śulka.śeṣaṁ ca
 labheta | 19 |
 KAZ03.2.20/ labdhvā vā vindamānā sa-vṛddhikam ubhayaṁ dāpyeta | 20 |
 KAZ03.2.21/ kuṭumba.kāmā tu śvaśura.pati.dattaṁ niveśa.kāle labheta | 21 |
 KAZ03.2.22/ niveśa.kālaṁ hi dīrgha.pravāse vyākhyāsyāmaḥ | 22 |
 KAZ03.2.23/ śvaśura.prātilomyena vā niviṣṭā śvaśura.pati.dattaṁ jīyeta | 23 |
 KAZ03.2.24/ jñāti.hastād.abhimṛṣṭāyā jñātayo yathā.grhītaṁ dadyuḥ | 24 |
 KAZ03.2.25/ nyāya.upagatāyāḥ pratipattā strī.dhanaṁ gopayet | 25 |
 KAZ03.2.26/ pati.dāyaṁ vindamānā jīyeta | 26 |
 KAZ03.2.27/ dharma.kāmā bhuñjita | 27 |
 KAZ03.2.28/ putratvā vindamānā strī.dhanaṁ jīyeta | 28 |
 KAZ03.2.29/ tat tu strī.dhanaṁ putrā hareyuḥ | 29 |

¹⁴²[K tr. 227 :: K2 tr. 196

- KAZ03.2.30/ putra.bharaṇa.arthaṁ vā vindamānā putra.arthaṁ sphātī.kuryāt | 30 |
 KAZ03.2.31/ bahu.puruṣa.prajānām putrāṇām yathā.pitr.dattaṁ strī.dhanam avasthāpayet | 31 |
 KAZ03.2.32/ kāma.karaṇīyam api strī.dhanam vindamānā putra.samsthaṁ kuryāt | 32 |
 KAZ03.2.33/ aputrā pati.śayanaṁ pālayantī guru.samīpe strī.dhanam āyuh.kṣayād bhuñjīta | 33 |
 KAZ03.2.34/ āpad.arthaṁ hi strī.dhanam | 34 |
 KAZ03.2.35/ ūrdhvaṁ dāyādaṁ gacchet | 35 |
 KAZ03.2.36/ jīvati bhartari mṛtāyāḥ putrā duhitaras ca strī.dhanam vibhajeraṁ, aputrāyā duhitaras, tad.abhāve bhartā | 36 |
 KAZ03.2.37/ śulkaṁ anvādheyam anyad vā bandhubhir dattaṁ bāndhavā hareyuh | 37 | iti strī.dhana.kalpaḥ |
 KAZ03.2.38/ varṣāṇy aṣṭāv aprajāyamānām aputrām vandhyām ca-ākāṅkṣeta, daśa nindum, dvādaśa kanyā.prasavinīm | 38 |
 KAZ03.2.39/ tataḥ putra.arthī dvitīyām vindeta | 39 |
 KAZ03.2.40/ tasya-atikrame śulkaṁ strī.dhanam ardhaṁ ca-ādhivedanikaṁ dadyāt, catur.vimśati.paṇa.paraṁ ca daṇḍam | 40 |
 KAZ03.2.41/ śulkaṁ strī.dhanam aśulka.strī.dhanāyās tat.pramāṇam ādhivedanikaṁ anurūpam ca vṛttiṁ dattvā bahvīr api vindeta | 41 |
 KAZ03.2.42/ putra.arthā hi striyaḥ | 42 |
 KAZ03.2.43/ tīrtha.samavāye ca-āsām yathā.vivāhaṁ pūrva.ūdhām jīvat.putrām vā pūrvam gacchet | 43 |
 KAZ03.2.44/ tīrtha.gūhana.āgamane ṣaṇ.ṇavatir daṇḍaḥ | 44 |
 KAZ03.2.45/ putravatīm dharma.kāmām vandhyām nindum nīrajaskām vā na-akāmām upeyāt | 45 |
 KAZ03.2.46/ na ca-akāmaḥ puruṣaḥ kuṣṭhinīm unmattām vā gacchet | 46 |
 KAZ03.2.47/ strī tu putra.arthaṁ evam.bhūtaṁ vā-upagacchet | 47 |
 KAZ03.2.48ab/ nīcatvaṁ para.deśam vā prasthito rāja.kilbiṣī |
 KAZ03.2.48cd/ prāṇa.abhiantā patitas tyājyaḥ klībo 'pi vā patiḥ || 48 ||

3.3 Chapter 3 (Section 59): Concerning Marriage (cont.)

143

- KAZ03.3.01/ dvādaśa.varṣā strī prāpta.vyavahārā bhavati, ṣoḍaśa.varṣaḥ pumān | 1 |
 KAZ03.3.02/ ata ūrdhvaṁ aśuśrūṣāyām dvādaśa.paṇaḥ striyā daṇḍaḥ, pumso dvi.guṇaḥ | 2 | iti śuśrūṣā |
 KAZ03.3.03/ bharmāṇyāyām anirdiṣṭa.kālāyām grāsa.ācchādanaṁ vā-adhikaṁ yathā.puruṣa.pativāpaṁ saviśeṣam dadyāt | 3 |
 KAZ03.3.04/ nirdiṣṭa.kālāyām tad eva saṅkhyāya bandhaṁ ca dadyāt | 4 |
 KAZ03.3.05/ śulka.strī.dhana.ādhivedanikānām anādāne ca | 5 |
 KAZ03.3.06/ śvaśura.kula.praviṣṭāyām vibhaktāyām vā na-abhiyojyaḥ patiḥ | 6 | iti bharmā |
 KAZ03.3.07/ "naṣṭe" "vinaṣṭe" "nyaṅge" "apitṛke" "amātṛke" ity anirdeśena vinaya.grāhaṇam | 7 |
 KAZ03.3.08/ veṇu.dala.rajju.hastānām anyatamena vā pṛṣṭhe trir āghātaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ03.3.09/ tasya-atikrame vāg.daṇḍa.pāruṣya.daṇḍābhyaṁ ardha.daṇḍaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ03.3.10/ tad eva striyā bhartari prasiddha.doṣāyāḥ | 10 |
 KAZ03.3.11/ īrṣyā bāhya.vihāreṣu dvāreṣv atyayo yathā.nirdiṣṭaḥ | 11 | iti pāruṣyam |

¹⁴³[K tr. 232 :: K2 tr. 201

- KAZ03.3.12/ bhartāraṁ dviṣatī strī sapta.ārtavāny amaṇḍāyamānā tadānīm eva
sthāpya-ābharaṇaṁ nidhāya bhartāraṁ anyayā saha śayānam anuśayīta | 12 |
- KAZ03.3.13/ bhikṣuky.anvādhi.jñāti.kulānām anyatame vā bhartā dviṣan striyam ekām
anuśayīta | 13 |
- KAZ03.3.14/ drṣṭa.liṅge maithuna.apahāre savarṇa.apasarpa.upagame vā mithyā.vādī
dvādaśa.paṇaḥ dadyāt | 14 |
- KAZ03.3.15/ amokṣyā bhartur akāmasya dviṣatī bhāryā, bhāryāyās ca bhartā | 15 |
- KAZ03.3.16/ parasparaṁ.dveṣān mokṣaḥ | 16 |
- KAZ03.3.17/ strī.viprakārād vā puruṣaś cen mokṣam icched yathā.grhītam asyai dadyāt | 17 |
- KAZ03.3.18/ puruṣa.viprakārād vā strī cen mokṣam icchen na-asyai yathā.grhītaṁ dadyāt | 18 |
- KAZ03.3.19/ amokṣo dharma.vivāhānām | 19 | iti dveṣaḥ |
- KAZ03.3.20/ pratiṣiddhā strī darpa.madya.kriḍāyām tri.paṇaṁ daṇḍaṁ dadyāt | 20 |
- KAZ03.3.21/ divā strī.prekṣā.vihāra.gamane ṣaṭ.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, puruṣa.prekṣā.vihāra.gamane
dvādaśa.paṇaḥ | 21 |
- KAZ03.3.22/ rātrau dvi.guṇaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ03.3.23/ supta.matta.pravrajane bhartur adāne ca dvārasya dvādaśa.paṇaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ03.3.24/ rātrau niṣkasane dvi.guṇaḥ | 24 |
- KAZ03.3.25/ strī.puṁsayor maithuna.arthena-aṅga.viceṣṭāyām raho 'ślīla.sambhāṣāyām vā
catur.vimśati.paṇaḥ striyā daṇḍaḥ, puṁso dvi.guṇaḥ | 25 |
- KAZ03.3.26/ keśa.nīvi.danta.nakha.ālambaneṣu pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, puṁso dvi.guṇaḥ | 26 |
- KAZ03.3.27/ śaṅkita.sthāne sambhāṣāyām ca paṇa.sthāne śīphā.daṇḍaḥ | 27 |
- KAZ03.3.28/ strīṇām grāma.madhye caṇḍālaḥ pakṣa.antare pañca.śīphā dadyāt | 28 |
- KAZ03.3.29/ paṇikāṁ vā prahāraṁ mokṣayet | 29 | ity aticāraḥ |
- KAZ03.3.30/ pratiṣiddhayoḥ strī.puṁsayor anyonya.upakāre kṣudraka.dravyāṇām
dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, sthūlaka.dravyāṇām catur.vimśati.paṇaḥ, hiraṇya.suvarṇayoś
catuṣ.pañcāśat.paṇaḥ striyā daṇḍaḥ, puṁsor dvi.guṇaḥ | 30 |
- KAZ03.3.31/ ta eva-agamyayor ardha.daṇḍaḥ, tathā pratiṣiddha.puruṣa.vyavahāreṣu ca | 31 |
| iti pratiṣedhaḥ |
- KAZ03.3.32ab/ rāja.dviṣṭa.aticārābhyām ātma.apakramaṇena ca |
- KAZ03.3.32cd/ strī.dhana.ānīta.śulkaṇām asvāmyām jāyate striyāḥ || 32 ||

3.4 Chapter 4 (Section 59): Concerning Marriage (cont.)

144

- KAZ03.4.01/ pati.kulān niṣpatitāyāḥ striyāḥ ṣaṭ.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, anyatra viprakārāt | 1 |
- KAZ03.4.02/ pratiṣiddhāyām dvādaśa.paṇaḥ | 2 |
- KAZ03.4.03/ prativeśa.grha.atigatāyāḥ ṣaṭ.paṇaḥ | 3 |
- KAZ03.4.04/ prātiveśika.bhikṣuka.vaidehakānām avakāśa.bhikṣā.paṇya.dāne dvādaśa.paṇo
daṇḍaḥ | 4 |
- KAZ03.4.05/ pratiṣiddhānām pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 5 |
- KAZ03.4.06/ para.grha.atigatāyās catur.vimśati.paṇaḥ | 6 |
- KAZ03.4.07/ para.bhāryā.avakāśa.dāne śatyō daṇḍaḥ, anyatra-āpadbhyāḥ | 7 |
- KAZ03.4.08/ vāraṇa.ajñānāyor nirdoṣaḥ | 8 |

¹⁴⁴[K tr. 236 :: K2 tr. 205

- KAZ03.4.09/ "pati.viprakārāt
pati.jñāti.sukha.avastha.grāmika.anvādhi.bhikṣukī.jñāti.kulānām anyatamam apuruṣaṁ
gantum adoṣaḥ" iti ācāryāḥ | 9 |
- KAZ03.4.10/ sa-puruṣaṁ vā jñāti.kulam | 10 |
- KAZ03.4.11/ kuto hi sādhvī.janasyac-chalam | 11 |
- KAZ03.4.12/ sukham etad avaboddhum, iti kauṭilyaḥ | 12 |
- KAZ03.4.13/ preta.vyādhi.vyasana.garbha.nimittam apratiṣiddham eva jñāti.kula.gamanam |
13 |
- KAZ03.4.14/ tan.nimittaṁ vārayato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ03.4.15/ tatra-api gūhamānā strī.dhanam jīyeta, jñātayo vā chādayantaḥ śulka.śeṣam |
15 | iti niṣpatanam |
- KAZ03.4.16/ pati.kulān niṣpatya grāma.antara.gamane dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ
sthāpyā.ābharaṇa.lopaś ca | 16 |
- KAZ03.4.17/ gāmyena vā puṁsā saha prasthāne catur.vimśati.paṇaḥ sarva.dharma.lopaś ca,
anyatra bhārma.dāna.tīrtha.gamanābhyām | 17 |
- KAZ03.4.18/ puṁsaḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ tulya.śreyasoḥ, pāpīyaso madhyamaḥ | 18 |
- KAZ03.4.19/ bandhur.adaṇḍyaḥ | 19 |
- KAZ03.4.20/ pratiṣedhe 'rdha.daṇḍāḥ | 20 |
- KAZ03.4.21/ pathi vyantare gūḍha.deśa.abhigamane maithuna.arthena
śaṅkita.pratiṣiddhāyām vā pathy.anusaraṇe saṅgrahaṇam vidyāt | 21 |
- KAZ03.4.22/ tāla.avacara.cāraṇa.matsya.bandhaka.lubdhaka.go.pālaka.śauṇḍikānām
anyeṣāṁ ca prasrṣṭa.strīkāṇām pathy.anusaraṇam adoṣaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ03.4.23/ pratiṣiddhe vā nayataḥ puṁsaḥ striyo vā gacchantyās ta eva-ardha.daṇḍāḥ | 23
| iti pathy.anusaraṇam |
- KAZ03.4.24/ hrasva.pravāsinām śūdra.vaiśya.kṣatriya.brāhmaṇānām bhāryāḥ
saṁvatsara.uttaram kālam ākāṅkṣeran aprajātāḥ, saṁvatsara.adhikam prajātāḥ | 24 |
- KAZ03.4.25/ prativihitā dvi.guṇam kālam | 25 |
- KAZ03.4.26/ aprativihitāḥ sukha.avasthā bibhṛyuh, param catvāri varṣāṇy aṣṭau vā jñātayaḥ
| 26 |
- KAZ03.4.27/ tato yathā.dattam ādāya pramuñceyuh | 27 |
- KAZ03.4.28/ brāhmaṇam adhīyānam daśa.varṣāṇy aprajātā, dvādaśa prajātā, rāja.puruṣam
āyuh.kṣayād ākāṅkṣeta | 28 |
- KAZ03.4.29/ savarṇataś ca prajātā na-apavādam labheta | 29 |
- KAZ03.4.30/ kuṭumba.rddhi.lope vā sukha.avasthair vimuktā yathā.iṣṭam vindeta,
jīvita.artham āpad.gatā vā | 30 |
- KAZ03.4.31/ dharma.vivāhāt kumārī parigrahītaram anākhyāya proṣitam aśrūyamāṇam
sapta tīrthāny ākāṅkṣeta, saṁvatsaram śrūyamāṇam | 31 |
- KAZ03.4.32/ ākhyāya proṣitam aśrūyamāṇam pañca tīrthāny ākāṅkṣeta, daśa śrūyamāṇam |
32 |
- KAZ03.4.33/ eka.deśa.datta.śulkaṁ trīṇi tīrthāny aśrūyamāṇam, śrūyamāṇam sapta tīrthāny
ākāṅkṣeta | 33 |
- KAZ03.4.34/ datta.śulkaṁ pañca tīrthāny aśrūyamāṇam, daśa śrūyamāṇam | 34 |
- KAZ03.4.35/ tataḥ param dharmasthair viśrṣṭa yathā.iṣṭam vindeta | 35 |
- KAZ03.4.36/ tīrtha.uparodho hi dharma.vadha iti kauṭilyaḥ | 36 | iti hrasva.pravāsaḥ |
- KAZ03.4.37/ dīrgha.pravāsināḥ pravrajitasya pretasya vā bhāryā sapta tīrthāny ākāṅkṣeta,
saṁvatsaram prajātā | 37 |
- KAZ03.4.38/ tataḥ pati.sodaryam gacchet | 38 |
- KAZ03.4.39/ bahuṣu pratyāsannam dhārmikam bhārma.samartham kaniṣṭham abhāryam vā
| 39 |

KAZ03.4.40/ tad.abhāve 'py asodaryam sapiṇḍam kulyam vā-āsannam | 40 |
 KAZ03.4.41/ eṭeṣām eṣa eva kramah | 41 |
 KAZ03.4.42ab/ etān utkrāmya dāyādān vedane jāra.karmaṇi |
 KAZ03.4.42cd/ jāra.strī.dātr.vettārah samprāptāḥ saṅgraha.atyayam || 42 ||

3.5 Chapter 5 (Section 60): Partition of Inheritance

145

KAZ03.5.01/ anīśvarāḥ pitṛmantāḥ sthita.pitr.mātrkāḥ putrāḥ | 1 |
 KAZ03.5.02/ teṣām ūrdhvaṁ pitṛto dāya.vibhāgaḥ pitṛ.dravyāṇām | 2 |
 KAZ03.5.03/ svayam.ārjitam avibhājyam, anyatra pitṛ.dravyād utthitebhyaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ03.5.04/ pitṛ.dravyād avibhakta.upagatānām putrāḥ pautrā vā ā.caturthād ity
 amśa.bhājaḥ | 4 |
 KAZ03.5.05/ tāvad avicchinnāḥ piṇḍo bhavati | 5 |
 KAZ03.5.06/ vicchinna.piṇḍāḥ sarve samam vibhajeran | 6 |
 KAZ03.5.07/ apitr.dravyā vibhakta.pitr.dravyā vā saha jīvantaḥ punar vibhajeran | 7 |
 KAZ03.5.08/ yataś ca-uttiṣṭheta sa dvya.amśam labheta | 8 |
 KAZ03.5.09/ dravyam aputrasya sodaryā bhrātaraḥ saha.jīvino vā hareyuḥ kanyās ca | 9 |
 KAZ03.5.10/ riktham putravataḥ putrā duhitara vā dharmiṣṭheṣu vivāheṣu jātāḥ | 10 |
 KAZ03.5.11/ tad.abhāve pitā dharamāṇaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ03.5.12/ pitṛ.abhāve bhrātara bhrātr.putrās ca | 12 |
 KAZ03.5.13/ apitrkā bahavo 'pi ca bhrātara bhrātr.putrās ca pitur ekam amśam hareyuḥ |
 13 |
 KAZ03.5.14/ sodaryāṇām aneka.pitrkāṇām pitṛto dāya.vibhāgaḥ | 14 |
 KAZ03.5.15/ pitṛ.bhrātr.putrāṇām pūrve vidyamāne na-aparam avalambante, jyeṣṭhe ca
 kaniṣṭham artha.grāhiṇam | 15 |
 KAZ03.5.16/ jīvad.vibhāge pitā na-ekam viśeṣayet | 16 |
 KAZ03.5.17/ na ca-ekam akāraṇān nirvibhajeta | 17 |
 KAZ03.5.18/ pitur asaty arthe jyeṣṭhāḥ kaniṣṭhān anugrṇhīyuh, anyatra mithyā.vṛttebhyaḥ |
 18 |
 KAZ03.5.19/ prāpta.vyavahārāṇām vibhāgaḥ | 19 |
 KAZ03.5.20/ aprāpta.vyavahārāṇām deya.viśuddham mātr.bandhuṣu grāma.vṛddheṣu vā
 sthāpayeyuh ā.vyavahāra.prāpaṇāt, proṣitasya vā | 20 |
 KAZ03.5.21/ samniviṣṭa.samam asamniviṣṭebhyo naivesānikam dadyuh, kanyābhyāś ca
 prādānikam | 21 |
 KAZ03.5.22/ ṛṇa.rikthayoḥ samo vibhāgaḥ | 22 |
 KAZ03.5.23/ "uda.pātrāṇy api niṣkiṇcanā vibhajeran" ity ācāryāḥ | 23 |
 KAZ03.5.24/ chalam etad iti kauṭilyaḥ | 24 |
 KAZ03.5.25/ sato 'rthasya vibhāgo na-asataḥ | 25 |
 KAZ03.5.26/ etāvān arthaḥ sāmānyas tasya-etāvān praty.amśa ity anubhāṣya bruvan sāksiṣu
 vibhāgam kārayet | 26 |
 KAZ03.5.27/ durvibhaktam anyonya.apahr̥tam antarhitam avijñāta.utpannam vā punar
 vibhajeran | 27 |
 KAZ03.5.28/ adāyādakam rājā haret strī.vṛtti.preta.kārya.varjam, anyatra śrotriya.dravyāt |
 28 |
 KAZ03.5.29/ tat traivedyebhyaḥ prayacchet | 29 |
 KAZ03.5.30/ patitaḥ patitāḥ jātāḥ klībāś ca-anamśāḥ, jaḍa.unmatta.andha.kuṣṭhinaś ca | 30 |
 KAZ03.5.31/ sati bhārya.arthe teṣām apatyam atad.vidham bhāgam haret | 31 |

¹⁴⁵[K tr. 240 :: K2 tr. 208

KAZ03.5.32/ grāsa.ācchādanam itare patita.varjāḥ | 32 |
 KAZ03.5.33ab/ teṣāṃ ca kṛta.dārāṇāṃ lupte prajanane sati |
 KAZ03.5.33cd/ sṛjeyur bāndhavāḥ putrāṃs teṣāṃ aṃśān prakalpayet || 33 ||

3.6 Chapter 6 (Section 60): Partition of Inheritance (cont.)

146

KAZ03.6.01/ eka.strī.putrāṇāṃ jyeṣṭha.aṃśaḥ - brāhmaṇānāṃ ajāḥ, kṣatriyāṇāṃ aśvāḥ, vaiśyānāṃ gāvaḥ, śūdrāṇāṃ avayaḥ | 1 |
 KAZ03.6.02/ kāṇa.laṅgās teṣāṃ madhyama.aṃśaḥ, bhinna.varṇāḥ kaniṣṭha.aṃśaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ03.6.03/ catuṣpada.abhāve ratna.varjānāṃ daśānāṃ bhāgaṃ dravyāṇāṃ ekaṃ jyeṣṭho haret | 3 |
 KAZ03.6.04/ pratimukta.svadhā.pāśo hi bhavati | 4 |
 KAZ03.6.05/ ity auśanaso vibhāgaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ03.6.06/ pituḥ parivāpād yānam ābharaṇaṃ ca jyeṣṭha.aṃśaḥ, śayana.āsanam bhukta.kāṃsyaṃ ca madhyama.aṃśaḥ, kṛṣṇaṃ dhānya.āyasaṃ gr̥ha.parivāpo go.śakaṭam ca kaniṣṭha.aṃśaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ03.6.07/ śeṣa.dravyāṇāṃ eka.dravyasya vā samo vibhāgaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ03.6.08/ adāyādā bhaginyaḥ, mātuh parivāpād bhukta.kāṃsya.ābharaṇa.bhāginyaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ03.6.09/ mānuṣa.hīno jyeṣṭhas tṛtīyam aṃśaṃ jyeṣṭha.aṃśāl labheta, caturtham anyāya.vṛttiḥ, nivṛtta.dharma.kāryo vā | 9 |
 KAZ03.6.10/ kāma.ācāraḥ sarvaṃ jīyeta | 10 |
 KAZ03.6.11/ tena madhyama.kaniṣṭhau vyākhyātau | 11 |
 KAZ03.6.12/ taylor mānuṣa.upeto jyeṣṭha.aṃśād ardhaṃ labheta | 12 |
 KAZ03.6.13/ nānā.strī.putrāṇāṃ tu saṃskṛta.asaṃskṛtayoḥ kanyā.kṛta.kṣatayor abhāve ca ekasyāḥ putrayor yamayor vā pūrva.janmanā jyeṣṭha.bhāvaḥ | 13 |
 KAZ03.6.14/ sūta.māgadha.vrātya.ratha.kārāṇāṃ aiśvaryato vibhāgaḥ | 14 |
 KAZ03.6.15/ śeṣās tam upajīveyuḥ | 15 |
 KAZ03.6.16/ anīśvarāḥ sama.vibhāgaḥ | 16 |
 KAZ03.6.17/ cāturvarṇya.putrāṇāṃ brāhmaṇī.putraś caturo 'mśān haret, kṣatriyā.putra.strīn aṃśān, vaiśyā.putro dvāv aṃśau, ekaṃ śūdrā.putraḥ | 17 |
 KAZ03.6.18/ tena tri.varṇa.dvi.varṇa.putra.vibhāgaḥ kṣatriya.vaiśyayor vyākhyātau | 18 |
 KAZ03.6.19/ brāhmaṇasya-anantarā.putras tulya.aṃśaḥ | 19 |
 KAZ03.6.20/ kṣatriya.vaiśyayor ardha.aṃśaḥ tulya.aṃśo vā mānuṣa.upetaḥ | 20 |
 KAZ03.6.21/ tulya.atulyayor eka.putraḥ sarvaṃ haret, bandhūś ca bibhṛyāt | 21 |
 KAZ03.6.22/ brāhmaṇānāṃ tu pāraśavas tṛtīyam aṃśaṃ labheta, dvāv aṃśau sapinḍaḥ kulyo vā-āsannaḥ, svadhā.dāna.hetoḥ | 22 |
 KAZ03.6.23/ tad.abhāve pitur ācāryo 'ntevāsī vā | 23 |
 KAZ03.6.24ab/ kṣetre vā janayed asya niyuktaḥ kṣetrajāṃ sutam |
 KAZ03.6.24cd/ mātṛ.bandhuḥ sagotro vā tasmai tat pradiśed dhanam || 24 ||

3.7 Chapter 7 (Section 60): Partition of Inheritance (cont.)

147

KAZ03.7.01/ "para.parigrahe bījam utsṛṣṭaṃ kṣettriṇaḥ" ity ācāryāḥ | 1 |
 KAZ03.7.02/ "mātā bhastrā, yasya retas tasya-apatyam" ity apare | 2 |
 KAZ03.7.03/ vidyamānam ubhayam iti kauṭilyaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ03.7.04/ svayaṃ.jātaḥ kṛta.kriyāyām aurasāḥ | 4 |

¹⁴⁶[K tr. 244 :: K2 tr. 211

¹⁴⁷[K tr. 246 :: K2 tr. 213

- KAZ03.7.05/ tena tulyaḥ putrikā.putraḥ | 5 |
 KAZ03.7.06/ sagotreṇa-anya.gotreṇa vā niyuktena kṣetra.jātaḥ kṣetrajāḥ putraḥ | 6 |
 KAZ03.7.07/ janayitur asaty anyasmin putre sa eva dvi.pitṛko dvi.gotro vā dvayor api svadhā.riktha.bhāg bhavati | 7 |
 KAZ03.7.08/ tat.sadharmā bandhūnām gr̥he gūḍha.jātas tu gūḍhajaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ03.7.09/ bandhunā-utsṛṣṭo 'paviddhaḥ saṃskartuḥ putraḥ | 9 |
 KAZ03.7.10/ kanyā.garbhaḥ kānīnaḥ | 10 |
 KAZ03.7.11/ sagarbha.ūḍhāyāḥ saha.ūḍhaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ03.7.12/ punar.bhūtāyāḥ paunarbhavaḥ | 12 |
 KAZ03.7.13/ svayam.jātaḥ pitur bandhūnām ca dāyādaḥ | 13 |
 KAZ03.7.14/ para.jātaḥ saṃskartur eva na bandhūnām | 14 |
 KAZ03.7.15/ tat.sadharmā mātā.pitṛbhyām adbhīr mukto dattaḥ | 15 |
 KAZ03.7.16/ svayam bandhubhīr vā putra.bhāva.upagata upagataḥ | 16 |
 KAZ03.7.17/ putratve 'dhikṛtaḥ kṛtakāḥ | 17 |
 KAZ03.7.18/ parikṛtaḥ kṛtaḥ | iti | 18 |
 KAZ03.7.19/ aurase tu-utpanne savarṇās tṛtīya.amśa.harāḥ, asavarṇā grāsa.ācchādana.bhāginaḥ | 19 |
 KAZ03.7.20/ brāhmaṇa.kṣatriyayor anantarā.putrāḥ savarṇāḥ, eka.antarā asavarṇāḥ | 20 |
 KAZ03.7.21/ brāhmaṇasya vaiśyāyām ambaṣṭhaḥ, śūdrāyām niṣādaḥ pāraśavo vā | 21 |
 KAZ03.7.22/ kṣatriyasya śūdrāyām ugraḥ | 22 |
 KAZ03.7.23/ śūdra eva vaiśyasya | 23 |
 KAZ03.7.24/ savarṇāsu ca-eṣām acarita.vratebhyo jātā vrātyāḥ | 24 |
 KAZ03.7.25/ ity anulomāḥ | 25 |
 KAZ03.7.26/ śūdrād āyogava.kṣatta.caṇḍālāḥ | 26 |
 KAZ03.7.27/ vaiśyān māgadha.vaidehakau | 27 |
 KAZ03.7.28/ kṣatriyāt sūtaḥ | 28 |
 KAZ03.7.29/ paurāṇikas tv anyāḥ sūto māgadhaś ca, brahma.kṣatrād viśeṣaḥ | 29 |
 KAZ03.7.30/ ta ete pratilomāḥ svadharma.atikramād rājñāḥ sambhavanti | 30 |
 KAZ03.7.31/ ugrān naiśādyām kukkuṭaḥ, viparyaye pulkasaḥ | 31 |
 KAZ03.7.32/ vaidehikāyām ambaṣṭhād vaiṇaḥ, viparyaye kuśilavaḥ | 32 |
 KAZ03.7.33/ kṣattāyām ugrāt-śva.pākāḥ | 33 |
 KAZ03.7.34/ ity ete 'nye ca-antarālāḥ | 34 |
 KAZ03.7.35/ karmaṇā vaiśyo ratha.kāraḥ | 35 |
 KAZ03.7.36/ teṣām sva.yonau vivāhaḥ, pūrva.apara.gāmitvaṃ vṛtta.anuvṛttaṃ ca | 36 |
 KAZ03.7.37/ śūdra.sadharmāṇo vā, anyatra caṇḍālebhyaḥ | 37 |
 KAZ03.7.38/ kevalam evaṃ vartamānaḥ svargam āpnoti rājā, narakam anyathā | 38 |
 KAZ03.7.39/ sarveṣām antarālānām samo vibhāgaḥ | 39 |
 KAZ03.7.40ab/ deśasya jātyāḥ saṅghasya dharmo grāmasya vā-api yaḥ |
 KAZ03.7.40cd/ ucitas tasya tena-eva dāya.dharmaṃ prakalpayet || 40 ||

3.8 Chapter 8 (Section 61): Concerning Immovable Property

148

- KAZ03.8.01/ sāmanta.pratyayā vāstu.vivādāḥ | 1 |
 KAZ03.8.02/ gr̥haṃ kṣetram ārāmaḥ setu.bandhas taṭākam ādhāro vā vāstuḥ | 2 |
 KAZ03.8.03/ karṇa.kīla.āyasa.sambandho 'nugṛhaṃ setuḥ | 3 |
 KAZ03.8.04/ yathā.setu.bhogaṃ veśma kārayet | 4 |

¹⁴⁸[K tr. 249 :: K2 tr. 216

- KAZ03.8.05/ abhūtaṁ vā para.kuḍyād apakramya dvāv aratnī tripadīm vā deśa.bandhaṁ kārayet | 5 |
- KAZ03.8.06/ avaskaraṁ bhramam uda.pānaṁ vā na gr̥ha.ucitād anyatra, anyatra sūtikā.kūpād ā.nirdaśa.ahād iti | 6 |
- KAZ03.8.07/ tasya-atikrame pūrvāḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 7 |
- KAZ03.8.08/ tena-indhanāvaghātana.kṛtaṁ kalyāṇa.kṛtyeṣv ācāma.udaka.mārgās ca vyākhyātāḥ | 8 |
- KAZ03.8.09/ tripadī.pratīkrāntam adhyardham aratnīm vā gāḍha.prasṛtam udaka.mārgam prasravaṇa.prapātaṁ vā kārayet | 9 |
- KAZ03.8.10/ tasya-atikrame catuṣ.pañcāśat.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 10 |
- KAZ03.8.11/ ekapadī.pratīkrāntam aratnīm vā cakri.catuṣpada.sthānam agniṣṭham udan.jara.sthānaṁ rocanīm kuṭṭanīm vā kārayet | 11 |
- KAZ03.8.12/ tasya-atikrame catur.vimśati.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 12 |
- KAZ03.8.13/ sarva.vāstukayoḥ prākṣiptakayor vā śālayoḥ kiṣkur antarikā tripadī vā | 13 |
- KAZ03.8.14/ tayoś catur.aṅgulaṁ nīpra.antaram (nīvra.antaram?) samārūḍhakaṁ vā | 14 |
- KAZ03.8.15/ kiṣku.mātram āṇi.dvāram antarikāyām khaṇḍa.phulla.artham asampātaṁ kārayet | 15 |
- KAZ03.8.16/ prakāśa.artham alpam ūrdhvaṁ vāta.ayanaṁ kārayet | 16 |
- KAZ03.8.17/ tad.avasite veśmanic-chādayet | 17 |
- KAZ03.8.18/ sambhūya vā gr̥ha.svāmīno yathā.iṣṭaṁ kārāyeyuḥ, aṇiṣṭaṁ vārāyeyuḥ | 18 |
- KAZ03.8.19/ vāna.ḷṭyāś ca-ūrdhvam āvārya.bhāgaṁ kaṭa.pracchannam avamarśa.bhittim vā kārāyed varṣa.ābādha.bhayāt | 19 |
- KAZ03.8.20/ tasya-atikrame pūrvāḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, pratiloma.dvāra.vāta.ayana.bādhāyām ca, anyatra rāja.mārga.rathyābhyaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ03.8.21/ khāta.sopāna.praṇālī.niśreṇy.avaskara.bhāgair bahir.bādhāyām bhoga.nigrahe ca | 21 |
- KAZ03.8.22/ para.kuḍyam udakena-upaghnato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, mūtra.purīṣa.upaghāte dvi.guṇaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ03.8.23/ praṇālī.mokṣo varṣati, anyathā dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ03.8.24/ pratiṣiddhasya ca vasataḥ, nirasyataś ca-avakrayiṇam anyatra pārūṣya.steya.sāhasa.saṅgrahaṇa.mithyā.bhogebhyaḥ | 24 |
- KAZ03.8.25/ svayam.abhiprasthito varṣa.avakraya.śeṣaṁ dadyāt | 25 |
- KAZ03.8.26/ sāmānye veśmani sāmānyam aprayacchataḥ, sāmānyam uparundhato bhogaṁ ca gr̥he dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 26 |
- KAZ03.8.27/ vināśayatas tad.dvi.guṇaḥ | 27 |
- KAZ03.8.28ab/ koṣṭhaka.aṅgaṇa.varcānām agni.kuṭṭana.śālayoḥ |
- KAZ03.8.28cd/ vivṛtānām ca sarveṣām sāmānyo bhoga iṣyate || 28 ||

3.9 Chapter 9 (Section 61): Concerning Immovable Property (cont.)

149

- KAZ03.9.01/ jñāti.sāmanta.dhanikāḥ krameṇa bhūmi.parigrahān kretum abhyābhaveyuḥ | 1 |
- KAZ03.9.02/ tato 'nye bāhyāḥ | 2 |
- KAZ03.9.03/ sāmanta.catvāriṁśat.kulyeṣu gr̥ha.pratimukhe veśma śrāvayeyuḥ, sāmanta.grāma.vṛddheṣu kṣetram ārāmaṁ setu.bandhaṁ taṭākam ādhāraṁ vā maryādāsu yathā.setu.bhogaṁ "anena-argheṇa kaḥ kretā" iti | 3 |
- KAZ03.9.04/ trir āghuṣitam avyāhataṁ kretā kretum labheta | 4 |

¹⁴⁹[K tr. 252 :: K2 tr. 219

- KAZ03.9.05/ spardhayā vā mūlya.vardhane mūlya.vṛddhiḥ sa-śulkā kośam gacchet | 5 |
- KAZ03.9.06/ vikraya.pratikroṣṭā śulkaṁ dadyāt | 6 |
- KAZ03.9.07/ asvāmi.pratikroṣe catur.vimśati.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 7 |
- KAZ03.9.08/ sapta.rātrād ūrdhvam anabhisarataḥ pratikruṣṭo vikrīṇita | 8 |
- KAZ03.9.09/ pratikruṣṭa.atikrame vāstuni dviśato daṇḍaḥ, anyatra catur.vimśati.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 9 | iti vāstu.vikrayaḥ |
- KAZ03.9.10/ sīma.vivādaṁ grāmayor ubhayoḥ sāmāntā pañca.grāmī daśa.grāmī vā setubhiḥ sthāvaraiḥ kṛtrimair vā kuryāt | 10 |
- KAZ03.9.11/ karṣaka.go.pālaka.vṛddhāḥ pūrva.bhuktikā vā bāhyāḥ setūnām abhijñā bahava eko vā nirdiśya sīma.setūn viparīta.veśāḥ sīmānaṁ nayeyuḥ | 11 |
- KAZ03.9.12/ uddiṣṭānām setūnām adarśane sahasraṁ daṇḍaḥ | 12 |
- KAZ03.9.13/ tad eva nīte sīma.apahāriṇām setuc.chidāṁ ca kuryāt | 13 |
- KAZ03.9.14/ pranaṣṭa.setu.bhogaṁ vā sīmānaṁ rājā yathā.upakāraṁ vibhajet | 14 | iti sīma.vivādaḥ |
- KAZ03.9.15/ kṣetra.vivādaṁ sāmānta.grāma.vṛddhāḥ kuryuḥ | 15 |
- KAZ03.9.16/ teṣāṁ dvaidhī.bhāve yato bahavaḥ śucayo 'numatā vā tato niyaccheyuḥ madhyaṁ vā gr̥hṇīyuḥ | 16 |
- KAZ03.9.17/ tad.ubhaya.parā.uktaṁ vāstu rājā haret, pranaṣṭa.svāmikaṁ ca | 17 |
- KAZ03.9.18/ yathā.upakāraṁ vā vibhajet | 18 |
- KAZ03.9.19/ prasahya.ādāne vāstuni steya.daṇḍaḥ | 19 |
- KAZ03.9.20/ kāraṇa.ādāne prayāsam ājīvaṁ ca parisankhyāya bandhaṁ dadyāt | 20 | iti kṣetra.vivādaḥ |
- KAZ03.9.21/ maryādā.apaharaṇe pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 21 |
- KAZ03.9.22/ maryādā.bhede catur.vimśati.paṇaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ03.9.23/ tena tapo.vana.vivīta.mahā.patha.śmaśāna.deva.kula.yajana.puṇya.sthāna.-vivādā vyākhyātāḥ | 23 | iti maryādā.sthāpanam |
- KAZ03.9.24/ sarva eva vivādāḥ sāmānta.pratyayāḥ | 24 |
- KAZ03.9.25/ vivīta.sthala.kedāra.ṣaṇḍa.khala.veśma.vāhana.koṣṭhānām pūrvaṁ.pūrvam ābādhaṁ saheta | 25 |
- KAZ03.9.26/ brahma.soma.aranya.deva.yajana.puṇya.sthāna.varjāḥ sthala.pradeśāḥ | 26 |
- KAZ03.9.27/ ādhāra.parivāha.kedāra.upabhogaiḥ para.kṣetra.kṛṣṭa.bīja.himsāyām yathā.upaghātāṁ mūlyaṁ dadyuḥ | 27 |
- KAZ03.9.28/ kedāra.ārāma.setu.bandhānām paraspara.himsāyām himsā.dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 28 |
- KAZ03.9.29/ paścān.niviṣṭam adhara.taṭākāṁ na-upari.taṭākasya kedāram udakena-āplāvayet | 29 |
- KAZ03.9.30/ upari.niviṣṭam na-adhara.taṭākasya pūra.āsrāvaṁ vārayed, anyatra tri.varṣa.uparata.karmaṇaḥ | 30 |
- KAZ03.9.31/ tasya-atikrame pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, taṭāka.vāmanaṁ ca | 31 |
- KAZ03.9.32/ pañca.varṣa.uparata.karmaṇaḥ setu.bandhasya svāmyaṁ lupyeta, anyatra-āpadbhyaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ03.9.33/ taṭāka.setu.bandhānām nava.pravartane pāñcavarṣikaḥ parihāraḥ, bhagna.utsṛṣṭānām caturvarṣikaḥ, samupārūḍhānām traivarṣikaḥ, sthalasya dvaivarṣikaḥ | 33 |
- KAZ03.9.34/ sva.ātma.ādāne vikraye ca | 34 |
- KAZ03.9.35/ khāta.prāvṛttim anadī.nibandha.āyatana.taṭāka.kedāra.ārāma.ṣaṇḍa.vāpānām sasya.varṇa.bhāga.uttarikam anyebhyo vā yathā.upakāraṁ dadyuḥ | 35 |
- KAZ03.9.36/ prakraya.avakraya.adhibhāga.bhoganiṣṭṣṭa.upabhoktāraś ca-eṣāṁ pratikuryuḥ | 36 |

KAZ03.9.37/ arpatikāre hīna.dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 37 |

KAZ03.9.38ab/ setubhyo muñcatas toyam avāre ṣaṭ.paṇo damaḥ |

KAZ03.9.38cd/ vāre vā toyam anyeṣāṁ pramādena-uparundhataḥ || 38 ||

3.10 Chapter 10 (Sections 61; 62): Concerning Immovable Property (cont.); Non-observance of Conventions

150

KAZ03.10.01/ karma.udaka.mārgam ucitaṁ rundhataḥ kurvato 'nucitaṁ vā pūrvaḥ
sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, setu.kūpa.puṇya.sthāna.caitya.deva.āyatanāni ca para.bhūmau niveśayataḥ |
1 |

KAZ03.10.02/ pūrva.anuvṛttaṁ dharma.setum ādhānaṁ vikrayaṁ vā nayato nāyayato vā
madhyamaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, śrotṛṇāṁ uttamaḥ, anyatra bhagna.utsṛṣṭāt | 2 |

KAZ03.10.03/ svāmy abhāve grāmāḥ puṇya.śilā vā pratikuryuḥ | 3 |

KAZ03.10.04/ pathi.pramāṇaṁ durga.niveśe vyākhyātam | 4 |

KAZ03.10.05/ kṣudra.paśu.manuṣya.pathaṁ rundhato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ,
mahā.paśu.pathaṁ catur.vimśati.paṇaḥ, hasti.kṣetra.pathaṁ catuṣ.pañcāśat.paṇaḥ,
setu.vana.pathaṁ ṣaṭ.śataḥ, śmaśāna.grāma.pathaṁ dviśataḥ, droṇa.mukha.pathaṁ
pañca.śataḥ, sthānīya.rāṣṭra.vivīta.pathaṁ sāhasraḥ | 5 |

KAZ03.10.06/ atikaṣaṇe ca-eṣāṁ daṇḍa.caturthā daṇḍaḥ | 6 |

KAZ03.10.07/ kaṣaṇe pūrva.uktāḥ | 7 |

KAZ03.10.08/ kṣetrikasya-akṣipataḥ kṣetram upavāsasya vā tyajato bīja.kāle dvādaśa.paṇo
daṇḍaḥ, anyatra doṣa.upanipāta.aviśahyebhyaḥ | 8 |

KAZ03.10.09/ karadāḥ karadeṣv ādhānaṁ vikrayaṁ vā kuryuḥ, brahma.deyikā
brahma.deyikeṣu | 9 |

KAZ03.10.10/ anyathā pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 10 |

KAZ03.10.11/ karadasya vā-akarada.grāmāṁ praviśataḥ | 11 |

KAZ03.10.12/ karadaṁ tu praviśataḥ sarva.dravyeṣu prākāmyaṁ syāt, anyatra-agārāt | 12 |

KAZ03.10.13/ tad apy asmai dadyāt | 13 |

KAZ03.10.14/ anādeyam akr̥ṣato 'nyaḥ pañca.varṣāṇy upabhujiya prayāsa.niṣkrayeṇa dadyāt
| 14 |

KAZ03.10.15/ akaradāḥ paratra vasanto bhogam upajīveyuḥ | 15 |

KAZ03.10.16/ grāma.arthena grāmikaṁ vrajantam upavāsāḥ paryāyeṇa-anugaccheyuḥ | 16 |

KAZ03.10.17/ ananugacchantaḥ paṇa.ardha.paṇikaṁ yojanaṁ dadyuḥ | 17 |

KAZ03.10.18/ grāmikasya grāmād astena.pāradārikaṁ nirasyataś catur.vimśati.paṇo daṇḍaḥ,
grāmasya-uttamaḥ | 18 |

KAZ03.10.19/ nirastasya praveśo hy abhigamena vyākhyātaḥ | 19 |

KAZ03.10.20/ stambhaiḥ samantato grāmād dhanuḥ.śata.apakṛṣṭam upasālaṁ kārayet | 20 |

KAZ03.10.21/ paśu.pracāra.arthaṁ vivītam ālavanena-upajīveyuḥ | 21 |

KAZ03.10.22/ vivītaṁ bhakṣayitvā-apaṣṭānām uṣṭra.mahiṣāṇāṁ pādikaṁ rūpaṁ gṛhṇīyūḥ,
gava.aśva.kharāṇāṁ ca-ardha.pādikaṁ, kṣudra.paśūnāṁ ṣoḍaśa.bhāgikam | 22 |

KAZ03.10.23/ bhakṣayitvā niṣaṇṇānām eta eva dvi.guṇā daṇḍaḥ, parivasatāṁ catur.guṇāḥ |
23 |

KAZ03.10.24/ grāma.deva.vṛṣā vā-anirdaśa.ahā vā dhenur ukṣāṇo go.vṛṣāś ca-adāṇḍyāḥ | 24
|

KAZ03.10.25/ sasya.bhakṣaṇe sasya.upaghātaṁ niṣpattitaḥ parisaṅkhyāya dvi.guṇaṁ
dāpayet | 25 |

¹⁵⁰[K tr. 256 :: K2 tr. 222

- KAZ03.10.26/ svāmināś ca-anivedya cārayato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, pramuñcataś catur.vimśati.paṇaḥ | 26 |
- KAZ03.10.27/ pālinām ardha.daṇḍāḥ | 27 |
- KAZ03.10.28/ tad eva śaṇḍa.bhakṣaṇe kuryāt | 28 |
- KAZ03.10.29/ vāṭa.bhede dvi.guṇaḥ veśma.khala.valaya.gatānām ca dhānyānām bhakṣaṇe | 29 |
- KAZ03.10.30/ himsā.pratīkāraṁ kuryāt | 30 |
- KAZ03.10.31/ abhaya.vana.mṛgāḥ parigṛhītā vā bhakṣayantaḥ svāmīno nivedya yathā-avadhyās tathā pratiśeddhavyāḥ | 31 |
- KAZ03.10.32/ paśavo raśmi.pratodābhyaṁ vārayitavyāḥ | 32 |
- KAZ03.10.33/ teṣāṁ anyathā himsāyām daṇḍa.pāruṣya.daṇḍāḥ | 33 |
- KAZ03.10.34/ prārthayamānā dr̥ṣṭa.aparādha vā sarva.upāyair niyantavyāḥ | 34 | iti kṣetra.patha.himsā |
- KAZ03.10.35/ karṣakasya grāmam abhyupetya-akurvato grāma eva-atyayaṁ haret | 35 |
- KAZ03.10.36/ karma.akaraṇe karma.vetana.dvi.guṇam, hiraṇya.adāne pratyamśa.dvi.guṇam, bhakṣya.peya.adāne ca prahavaṇeṣu dvi.guṇam amśam dadyāt | 36 |
- KAZ03.10.37/ prekṣāyām anamśadaḥ, sa-sva.jano na prekṣeta | 37 |
- KAZ03.10.38/ pracchanna.śravaṇa.īkṣaṇe ca sarva.hite ca karmaṇi nigraheṇa dvi.guṇam amśam dadyāt | 38 |
- KAZ03.10.39/ sarva.hitam ekasya bruvataḥ kuryur ājñām | 39 |
- KAZ03.10.40/ akaraṇe dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 40 |
- KAZ03.10.41/ tam cet sambhūya vā hanyuḥ pṛthag eṣām aparādha.dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 41 |
- KAZ03.10.42/ upahantr̥ṣu viśiṣṭaḥ | 42 |
- KAZ03.10.43/ brāhmaṇaś ca-eṣām jyaiṣṭhyaṁ niyamyeta | 43 |
- KAZ03.10.44/ prahavaṇeṣu ca-eṣām brāhmaṇa na-akāmāḥ kuryuḥ, amśam ca labheran | 44 |
- KAZ03.10.45/ tena deśa.jāti.kula.saṅghānām samasya-anapākarma vyākhyātam | 45 |
- KAZ03.10.46ab/ rājā deśa.hitān setūn kurvatām pathi saṅkramān |
- KAZ03.10.46cd/ grāma.śobhāś ca rakṣāś ca teṣām priya.hitam caret || 46 ||

3.11 Chapter 11 (Section 63): Non-payment of Debts

151

- KAZ03.11.01/ sapāda.paṇā dharṁyā māsa.vṛddhiḥ paṇa.śatasya, pañca.paṇā vyāvahārikī, daśa.paṇā kāntāragāṇām, vimśati.paṇā sāmudrāṇām | 1 |
- KAZ03.11.02/ tataḥ paraṁ kartuḥ kārayituś ca pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, śrotīṇām eka.ekaṁ pratyardha.daṇḍaḥ | 2 |
- KAZ03.11.03/ rājany ayoga.kṣema.āvahe tu dhanika.dhāraṇikayoś caritram avekṣeta | 3 |
- KAZ03.11.04/ dhānya.vṛddhiḥ sasya.niṣpattāv upārdhā, paraṁ mūlya.kṛtā vardheta | 4 |
- KAZ03.11.05/ prakṣepa.vṛddhir udayād ardham samnidhāna.sannā vārṣikī deyā | 5 |
- KAZ03.11.06/ cira.pravāsaḥ stambha.praviṣṭo vā mūlya.dvi.guṇam dadyāt | 6 |
- KAZ03.11.07/ akṛtvā vṛddhim sādhayato vardhayato vā, mūlyam vā vṛddhim āropya śrāvayato bandha.catur.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 7 |
- KAZ03.11.08/ tuccha.śrāvaṇāyām abhūta.catur.guṇaḥ | 8 |
- KAZ03.11.09/ tasya tri.bhāgam ādātā dadyāt, śeṣam pradātā | 9 |
- KAZ03.11.10/ dīrgha.sattra.vyādhi.guru.kula.uparuddham bālam asāram vā na-ṛṇam anuvardheta | 10 |
- KAZ03.11.11/ mucyamānam ṛṇam apratigrhṇato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 11 |
- KAZ03.11.12/ kāraṇa.apadeśena nivṛtta.vṛddhikam anyatra tiṣṭhet | 12 |

¹⁵¹[K tr. 261 :: K2 tr. 226

- KAZ03.11.13/ daśa.varṣa.upekṣitam ṛṇam apratigrāhyam, anyatra
bāla.vṛddha.vyādhita.vyasani.proṣita.deśa.tyāga.rājya.vibhramebhyaḥ | 13 |
- KAZ03.11.14/ pretasya putrāḥ kusīdam dadyuḥ, dāyādā vā riktha.harāḥ, saha.grāhiṇaḥ,
pratibhuvo vā | 14 |
- KAZ03.11.15/ na prātibhāvyam anyat | 15 |
- KAZ03.11.16/ asāraṁ bāla.prātibhāvyam | 16 |
- KAZ03.11.17/ asaṅkhyāta.deśa.kālaṁ tu putrāḥ pautrā dāyādā vā riktham haramāṇā dadyuḥ
| 17 |
- KAZ03.11.18/ jīvita.vivāha.bhūmi.prātibhāvyam asaṅkhyāta.deśa.kālaṁ tu putrāḥ pautrā vā
vaheyuḥ | 18 |
- KAZ03.11.19/ nānā-ṛṇa.samavāye tu na-ekaṁ dvau yugapad abhivadēyātām, anyatra
pratiṣṭhamānāt | 19 |
- KAZ03.11.20/ tatra-apī gr̥hīta.ānupūrvyā rāja.śrottriya.dravyaṁ vā pūrvam pratipādayet | 20
|
- KAZ03.11.21/ dampatyoh pitā.putrayoh bhrātṛṇām ca-avibhaktānām paraspara..kṛtam ṛṇam
asādhyam | 21 |
- KAZ03.11.22/ agrāhyāḥ karma.kāleṣu karṣakā rāja.puruṣāś ca | 22 |
- KAZ03.11.23/ strī ca-apratiśrāviṇī pati.kṛtam ṛṇam, anyatra go.pālaka.ardha.sītikebhyaḥ |
23 |
- KAZ03.11.24/ patis tu grāhyaḥ strī.kṛtam ṛṇam, aprati.vidhāya proṣita iti | 24 |
- KAZ03.11.25/ sampratipattāv uttamah | 25 |
- KAZ03.11.26/ asmapratipattau tu sākṣiṇaḥ pramāṇam prātyayikāḥ śucayo 'numatā vā trayo
'vara.ardhyāḥ | 26 |
- KAZ03.11.27/ pakṣa.anumatau vā dvau, ṛṇam prati na tv eva-ekaḥ | 27 |
- KAZ03.11.28/ pratiśiddhāḥ
syāla.sahāya.anvarthi.dhanika.dhāraṇika.vairi.nyaṅga.dhṛta.daṇḍāḥ, pūrve ca-avyavahāryāḥ
| 28 |
- KAZ03.11.29/ rāja.śrottriya.grāma.bhṛtaka.kuṣṭhi.vraṇiṇaḥ patita.caṇḍāla.kutsita.karmāṇo
'ndha.badhira.mūka.aham.vādiṇaḥ strī.rāja.puruṣāś ca, anyatra sva.vargebhyaḥ | 29 |
- KAZ03.11.30/ pāruṣya.steya.saṅgrahaṇeṣu tu vairi.syāla.sahāya.varjāḥ | 30 |
- KAZ03.11.31/ rahasya.vyavahāreṣv ekā strī puruṣa upaśrotā upadraṣṭā vā sākṣī syād
rāja.tāpasa.varjam | 31 |
- KAZ03.11.32/ svāmīno bhr̥tyānām ṛtvig.ācāryāḥ śiṣyāṇām mātā.pitarau putrāṇām
ca-anigraheṇa sākṣyaṁ kuryuḥ, tesām itare vā | 32 |
- KAZ03.11.33/ paraspara.abhiyoge ca-eṣām uttamah parā.uktā daśa.bandham dadyuḥ, avarāḥ
pañca.bandham | 33 | iti sākṣy.adhikārah |
- KAZ03.11.34/ brāhmaṇa.uda.kumbha.agni.sakāśe sākṣiṇaḥ parigr̥hṇīyāt | 34 |
- KAZ03.11.35/ tatra brāhmaṇam brūyāt "satyaṁ brūhi" iti | 35 |
- KAZ03.11.36/ rājanyaṁ vaiśyaṁ vā "mā tava-iṣṭā.pūrta.phalam, kapāla.hastaḥ śatru.kulam
bhikṣā.arthī gaccheḥ" iti | 36 |
- KAZ03.11.37/ śūdraṁ "janma.maraṇa.antare yad vaḥ puṇya.phalam tad rājānam gacched,
rājñas ca kilbiṣaṁ yuṣmān anyathā.vāde, daṇḍas ca-anubaddhaḥ, paścād api jñāyeta
yathā.drṣṭa.śrutam, eka.mantrāḥ satyam upaharata" iti | 37 |
- KAZ03.11.38/ anupaharatām sapta.rātrād ūrdhvaṁ dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, tri.pakṣād
ūrdhvaṁ abhiyogaṁ dadyuḥ | 38 |
- KAZ03.11.39/ sākṣi.bhede yato bahavaḥ śucayo 'numatā vā tato niyaccheyuḥ, madhyaṁ vā
gr̥hṇīyuh | 39 |
- KAZ03.11.40/ tad vā dravyaṁ rājā haret | 40 |

- KAZ03.11.41/ sākṣiṇaś ced abhiyogād ūnaṁ brūyur atiriktasya-abhiyoktā bandhaṁ dadyāt | 41 |
- KAZ03.11.42/ atiriktaṁ vā brūyus tad.atiriktaṁ rājā haret | 42 |
- KAZ03.11.43/ bālīśyād abhiyoktur vā duhśrutaṁ durlikhitaṁ preta.abhiniveśaṁ vā samīkṣya sākṣi.pratyayam eva syāt | 43 |
- KAZ03.11.44/ "sākṣi.bālīśyeṣv eva pṛthag.anuyoge deśa.kāla.kāryāṇāṁ pūrva.madhyama.uttamā daṇḍāḥ" ity auśanaś | 44 |
- KAZ03.11.45/ "kūṭa.sākṣiṇo yam artham abhūtaṁ kuryur bhūtaṁ vā nāśayeyus tad daśa.guṇaṁ daṇḍaṁ dadyuḥ" iti mānavāḥ | 45 |
- KAZ03.11.46/ "bālīśyād vā viśamvādayatām citro ghātaḥ" iti bārhaspatyāḥ | 46 |
- KAZ03.11.47/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 47 |
- KAZ03.11.48/ dhruvaṁ hi sākṣibhiḥ śrotavyam | 48 |
- KAZ03.11.49/ aśṛṇvatām catur.vimśati.paṇo daṇḍāḥ, tato 'rdham abruvāṇānām | 49 |
- KAZ03.11.50ab/ deśa.kāla.avidūrasthān sākṣiṇaḥ pratipādayet |
- KAZ03.11.50cd/ dūrasthān aprasārān vā svāmi.vākyena sādhayet || 50 ||

3.12 Chapter 12 (Section 64): Concerning Deposits

152

- KAZ03.12.01/ upanidhir ṛṇena vyākhyātāḥ | 1 |
- KAZ03.12.02/ para.cakra.ātavikābhyām durga.rāṣṭra.vilope vā, pratirodhakair vā grāma.sārtha.vraja.vilope, cakra.yukta.nāśe vā, grāma.madhyā.agny.udaka.ābādhe jvālā.vega.uparuddhe vā, nāvi nimagnāyām muṣitāyām vā svayam uparūḍho na-upanidhim abhyāvahet | 2 |
- KAZ03.12.03/ upanidhi.bhoktā deśa.kāla.anurūpaṁ bhoga.vetanaṁ dadyāt, dvādaśa.paṇaṁ ca daṇḍam | 3 |
- KAZ03.12.04/ upabhoga.nimittaṁ naṣṭaṁ vinaṣṭaṁ vā-abhyāvahet, catur.vimśati.paṇaś ca daṇḍāḥ, anyathā vā niṣpatane | 4 |
- KAZ03.12.05/ pretaṁ vyasana.gataṁ vā na-upanidhim abhyāvahet | 5 |
- KAZ03.12.06/ ādhāna.vikraya.apavyayaneṣu ca-asya catur.guṇa.pañca.bandho daṇḍāḥ | 6 |
- KAZ03.12.07/ parivartane niṣpātane vā mūlya.samaḥ | 7 |
- KAZ03.12.08/ tena-ādhi.praṇāśa.upabhoga.vikraya.ādhāna.apahārā vyākhyātāḥ | 8 |
- KAZ03.12.09/ na-ādhiḥ sa-upakāraḥ sīdet, na ca-asya mūlyaṁ vardheta, anyatra nisargāt | 9 |
- KAZ03.12.10/ nirupakāraḥ sīdet, mūlyaṁ ca-asya vardheta | 10 |
- KAZ03.12.11/ upasthitasya-ādhim aprayacchato dvādaśaṇṇaṇo daṇḍāḥ | 11 |
- KAZ03.12.12/ prayojaka.asamnidhāne vā grāma.vṛddheṣu sthāpayitvā niṣkrayam ādhim pratipadyeta | 12 |
- KAZ03.12.13/ nivṛtta.vṛddhiko vā-ādhis tat.kāla.kṛta.mūlyas tatra-eva-avatiṣṭheta, anāśa.vināśa.karaṇa.adhiṣṭhito vā | 13 |
- KAZ03.12.14/ dhāraṇika.asamnidhāne vā vināśa.bhayād udgata.arghaṁ dharmastha.anujñāto vikrīṇita, ādhi.pāla.pratyayo vā | 14 |
- KAZ03.12.15/ sthāvaras tu prayāsa.bhogyāḥ phala.bhogyo vā prakṣepa.vṛddhi.mūlya.śuddham ājīvam amūlya.kṣayeṇa-upanayet | 15 |
- KAZ03.12.16/ anisṛṣṭa.upabhoktā mūlya.śuddham ājīvaṁ bandhaṁ ca dadyāt | 16 |
- KAZ03.12.17/ śeṣaṁ upanidhinā vyākhyātam | 17 |
- KAZ03.12.18/ etena-ādeśo 'nvādhīś ca vyākhyātau | 18 |

¹⁵²[K tr. 266 :: K2 tr. 230

- KAZ03.12.19/ sārthena-anvādhi.hasto vā pradiṣṭām bhūmim aprāptaś corair bhagna.utsrṣṭo vā na-anvādhim abhyāvahet | 19 |
- KAZ03.12.20/ antare vā mṛtasya dāyādo 'pi na-abhyāvahet | 20 |
- KAZ03.12.21/ śeṣam upanidhinā vyakhyātam | 21 |
- KAZ03.12.22/ yācitakam avakṛitakam vā yathā.vidham gṛhṇīyus tathā.vidham eva-arpayeyuḥ | 22 |
- KAZ03.12.23/ bhreṣa.upanipātābhyām deśa.kāla.uparodhi dattam naṣṭam vinaṣṭam vā na-abhyāvahet | 23 |
- KAZ03.12.24/ śeṣam upanidhinā vyākhyātam | 24 |
- KAZ03.12.25/ vaiyāvṛtya.vikrayas tu - vaiyāvṛtya.karā yathā.deśa.kālam vikrīṇānāḥ paṇyam yathā.jātam mūlyam udayam ca dadyuḥ | 25 |
- KAZ03.12.26/ deśa.kāla.atipātane vā parihīnam sampradāna.kālikena-argheṇa mūlyam udayam ca dadyuḥ | 26 |
- KAZ03.12.27/ yathā.sambhāṣitam vā vikrīṇānā na-udayam adhigaccheyuḥ, mūlyam eva dadyuḥ | 27 |
- KAZ03.12.28/ argha.patane vā parihīnam yathā.parihīnam mūlyam ūnam dadyuḥ | 28 |
- KAZ03.12.29/ sāmvyavahārikeṣu vā prātyayikeṣv arāja.vācyeṣu bhreṣa.upanipātābhyām naṣṭam vinaṣṭam vā mūlyam api na dadyuḥ | 29 |
- KAZ03.12.30/ deśa.kāla.antaritānām tu paṇyānām kṣaya.vyaya.viśuddham mūlyam udayam ca dadyuḥ, paṇya.samavāyānām ca pratyaṁśam | 30 |
- KAZ03.12.31/ śeṣam upanidhinā vyākhyātam | 31 |
- KAZ03.12.32/ etena vaiyāvṛtya.vikrayo vyākhyātaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ03.12.33/ nikṣepaś ca-upanidhinā | 33 |
- KAZ03.12.34/ tam anyena nikṣpitam anyasya-arpayato hīyeta | 34 |
- KAZ03.12.35/ nikṣepa.apahāre pūrva.apadānam nikṣeptāraś ca pramāṇam | 35 |
- KAZ03.12.36/ aśucayo hi kāraḥ | 36 |
- KAZ03.12.37/ na-eṣām karaṇa.pūrvo nikṣepa.dharmaḥ | 37 |
- KAZ03.12.38/ karaṇa.hīnam nikṣepam apavyayamānam gūḍha.bhitti.nyastān sāksīṇo nikṣeptā rahasi praṇipātēna praññāpayet, vana.ante vā madya.prahavaṇa.viśvāsena | 38 |
- KAZ03.12.39/ rahasi vṛddho vyādhitō vā vaidehakaḥ kaścit kṛta.lakṣaṇam dravyam asya haste nikṣipya-apagacchet | 39 |
- KAZ03.12.40/ tasya pratideśena putro bhrātā vā-abhigamya nikṣepam yāceta | 40 |
- KAZ03.12.41/ dāne śuciḥ, anyathā nikṣepam steya.daṇḍam ca dadyāt | 41 |
- KAZ03.12.42/ pravrajyā.abhimukho vā śraddheyaḥ kaścit kṛta.lakṣaṇam dravyam asya haste nikṣipya pratiṣṭheta | 42 |
- KAZ03.12.43/ tataḥ kāla.antara.āgato yāceta | 43 |
- KAZ03.12.44/ dāne śuciḥ, anyathā nikṣepam steya.daṇḍam ca dadyāt | 44 |
- KAZ03.12.45/ kṛta.lakṣaṇena vā dravyeṇa pratyānayed enam | 45 |
- KAZ03.12.46/ bālīśa.jātīyo vā rātrau rāja.dāyikā.kṣaṇa.bhītaḥ sāram asya haste nikṣipya-apagacchet | 46 |
- KAZ03.12.47/ sa enam bandhana.agāra.gato yāceta | 47 |
- KAZ03.12.48/ dāne śuciḥ, anyathā nikṣepam steya.daṇḍam ca dadyāt | 48 |
- KAZ03.12.49/ abhijñānena ca-asya gṛhe janam ubhayam yāceta | 49 |
- KAZ03.12.50/ anyatarta.ādāne yathā.uktam purastāt | 50 |
- KAZ03.12.51/ dravya.bhogānām āgamam ca-asya-anuyujīta, tasya ca-arthasya vyavahāra.upaliṅgamam, abhiyoktuś ca-artha.sāmarthyam | 51 |
- KAZ03.12.52/ etena mithaḥ.samavāyo vyākhyātaḥ | 52 |
- KAZ03.12.53ab/ tasmāt sāksīmad acchannam kuryāt samyag.vibhāṣitam |
- KAZ03.12.53cd/ sve pare vā jane kāryam deśa.kāla.agra.varṇataḥ || 53 ||

3.13 Chapter 13 (Section 65): Law Concerning Slaves and Labourers

153

KAZ03.13.01/ udara.dāsa.varjam ārya.prāṇam aprāpta.vyavahāraṁ śūdraṁ vikraya.ādhanāṁ
nayataḥ sva.janasya dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, vaiśyaṁ dvi.guṇaḥ, kṣatriyaṁ tri.guṇaḥ,
brāhmaṇaṁ catur.guṇaḥ | 1 |

KAZ03.13.02/ para.janasya pūrva.madhyama.uttama.vadhā daṇḍaḥ, kreṭṭ.śrotiṇāṁ ca | 2 |

KAZ03.13.03/ mlecchānāṁ adoṣaḥ prajāṁ vikretum ādhātum vā | 3 |

KAZ03.13.04/ na tv eva-āryasya dāsa.bhāvaḥ | 4 |

KAZ03.13.05/ athavā-āryam ādhāya kula.bandhana āryāṇāṁ āpadi, niṣkrayaṁ ca-adhigamya
bālaṁ sāhāyya.dātāraṁ vā pūrvaṁ niṣkrīṇīraṇ | 5 |

KAZ03.13.06/ sakṛd.ātma.ādhatā niṣpatitaḥ sīdet, dvir anyena-āhitakaḥ, sakṛd ubhau
para.viśaya.abhimukhau | 6 |

KAZ03.13.07/ vitta.apahāriṇo vā dāsasya-ārya.bhāvam apaharato 'rdha.daṇḍaḥ | 7 |

KAZ03.13.08/ niṣpatita.preta.vyasanināṁ ādhātā mūlyaṁ bhajeta | 8 |

KAZ03.13.09/ preta.viṇ.mūtra.ucchiṣṭa.grāhaṇam āhitasya nagna.snāpanaṁ daṇḍa.preṣaṇam
atikramaṇaṁ ca strīṇāṁ mūlya.nāśa.karaṁ, dhātṛi.paricārika.ardha.sītika.upacārikāṇāṁ ca
mokṣa.karam | 9 |

KAZ03.13.10/ siddham upacārakasya-abhiprajātasya-apakramaṇam | 10 |

KAZ03.13.11/ dhātṛim āhitikāṁ vā-akāmāṁ sva.vaśāṁ gacchataḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ,
para.vaśāṁ madhyamaḥ | 11 |

KAZ03.13.12/ kanyāṁ āhitikāṁ vā svayam anyena vā duṣayato mūlya.nāśaḥ śulkaṁ
tad.dvu.guṇaś ca daṇḍaḥ | 12 |

KAZ03.13.13/ ātma.vikrayiṇaḥ prajāṁ āryāṁ vidyāt | 13 |

KAZ03.13.14/ ātma.adhigataṁ svāmi.karma.aviruddham labheta, pitryaṁ ca dāyam | 14 |

KAZ03.13.15/ mūlyena ca-āryatvaṁ gacchet | 15 |

KAZ03.13.16/ tena-udara.dāsa.āhitakau vyākhyātau | 16 |

KAZ03.13.17/ prakṣepa.anurūpaś ca-asya niṣkrayaḥ | 17 |

KAZ03.13.18/ daṇḍa.praṇītaḥ karmaṇā daṇḍam upanayet | 18 |

KAZ03.13.19/ ārya.prāṇo dhvaja.āhṛtaḥ karma.kāla.anurūpeṇa mūlya.ardhena vā vimucyeta
| 19 |

KAZ03.13.20/ gr̥he.jāta.dāya.āgata.labdha.krītānāṁ anyatamaṁ dāsam ūna.aṣṭa.varṣaṁ
vibandhum akāmāṁ nīce karmaṇi videṣe dāsīm vā sagarbhām

aprativihita.garbha.bharmaṇyāṁ vikraya.ādhanāṁ nayataḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ,
kreṭṭ.śrotiṇāṁ ca | 20 |

KAZ03.13.21/ dāsam anurūpeṇa niṣkrayeṇa-āryam akurvato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ,
samrodhaś ca-ā.karaṇāt | 21 |

KAZ03.13.22/ dāsa.dravyasya jñātayo dāyādāḥ, teṣāṁ abhāve svāmī | 22 |

KAZ03.13.23/ svāmīnaḥ svasyāṁ dāsyāṁ jātaṁ samātṛkam adāsaṁ vidyāt | 23 |

KAZ03.13.24/ gr̥hyā cet kuṭumba.artha.cintanī mātā bhrātā bhaginī ca-asyā adāsāḥ syuḥ | 24 |

KAZ03.13.25/ dāsaṁ dāsīm vā niṣkrīya punar vikraya.ādhanāṁ nayato dvādaśa.paṇo
daṇḍaḥ, anyatra svayaṁ.vādibhyaḥ | 25 | iti dāsa.kalpaḥ |

KAZ03.13.26/ karma.karasya karma.sambandham āsannā vidyuh | 26 |

KAZ03.13.27/ yathā.sambhāṣitaṁ vetanaṁ labheta, karma.kāla.anurūpam
asambhāṣita.vetanaḥ | 27 |

KAZ03.13.28/ karṣakaḥ sasyānāṁ go.pālakaḥ sarpiṣāṁ vaidehakaḥ paṇyānāṁ ātmanā
vyavahṛtānāṁ daśa.bhāgam asambhāṣita.vetanaṁ labheta | 28 |

¹⁵³[K tr. 271 :: K2 tr. 235

KAZ03.13.29/ sambhāṣita.vetanas tu yathā.sambhāṣitam | 29 |
KAZ03.13.30/ kāru.śilpi.kuśilava.cikitsaka.vāg.jīvana.paricāraka.ādir āśā.kārika.vargas tu
yathā-anyas tad.vidhaḥ kuryād yathā vā kuśalāḥ kalpayeyus tathā vetanaṁ labheta | 30 |
KAZ03.13.31/ sāksi.pratyayam eva syāt | 31 |
KAZ03.13.32/ sāksiṇām abhāve yataḥ karma tato 'nuyuñjita | 32 |
KAZ03.13.33/ vetana.ādāne daśa.bandho daṇḍaḥ, ṣaṭ.paṇo vā | 33 |
KAZ03.13.34/ apavyayamāne dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, pañca.bandho vā | 34 |
KAZ03.13.35/ nadī.vega.jvālā.stena.vyāla.uparuddhaḥ
sarva.sva.putra.dāra.ātma.dānena-ārtas trātāram āhūya niṣṭirṇaḥ kuśala.pradiṣṭaṁ vetanaṁ
dadyāt | 35 |
KAZ03.13.36/ tena sarvatra-ārta.dāna.anuśayā vyākhyātāḥ | 36 |
KAZ03.13.37ab/ labheta puṁścalī bhogaṁ saṅgamasya-upaliṅganāt |
KAZ03.13.37cd/ atiyācā tu jīyeta daurmatya.avinayena vā || 37 ||

3.14 Chapter 14 (Sections 65; 66): Law Concerning Slaves and Labourers (cont.); Undertakings in Partnership

154

KAZ03.14.01/ gr̥hītvā vetanaṁ karma-akurvato bhṛtakasya dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ,
saṁrodhaś ca-ā.karaṇāt | 1 |
KAZ03.14.02/ aśaktaḥ kutsite karmaṇi vyādhou vyasane vā-anuśayaṁ labheta, pareṇa vā
kārayitum | 2 |
KAZ03.14.03/ tasya.vyaya.karmaṇā labheta bhartā vā kārayitum | 3 |
KAZ03.14.04/ "na-anyas tvayā kārayitavyo, mayā vā na-anyasya kartavyam" ity avarodhe
bhartur akārayato bhṛtakasya-akurvato vā dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 4 |
KAZ03.14.05/ karma.niṣṭhāpane bhartur anyatra gr̥hīta.vetano na-asakāmaḥ kuryāt | 5 |
KAZ03.14.06/ "upasthitam akārayataḥ kṛtam eva vidyād" ity ācāryāḥ | 6 |
KAZ03.14.07/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 7 |
KAZ03.14.08/ kṛtasya vetanaṁ na-akṛtasya-asti | 8 |
KAZ03.14.09/ sa ced alpam api kārayitvā na kārayet kṛtam eva-asya vidyāt | 9 |
KAZ03.14.10/ deśa.kāla.atipātanena karmaṇām anyathā.karaṇe vā na-asakāmaḥ kṛtam
anumanyeta | 10 |
KAZ03.14.11/ sambhāṣitād adhika.kriyāyām prayāsaṁ na moghaṁ kuryāt | 11 |
KAZ03.14.12/ tena saṅgha.bhṛtā vyākhyātāḥ | 12 |
KAZ03.14.13/ teṣām ādhiḥ sapta.rātram āśita | 13 |
KAZ03.14.14/ tato 'nyam upasthāpayet, karma.niṣpākaṁ ca | 14 |
KAZ03.14.15/ na ca-anivedya bhartuḥ saṅghaḥ kañcit parihared upanayed vā | 15 |
KAZ03.14.16/ tasya-atikrame catur.vimśati.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 16 |
KAZ03.14.17/ saṅghena parihṛtasya-ardha.daṇḍaḥ | 17 | iti bhṛtaka.adhikāraḥ |
KAZ03.14.18/ saṅgha.bhṛtāḥ sambhūya.samutthātāro vā yathā.sambhāṣitaṁ vetanaṁ samaṁ
vā vibhajeraṁ | 18 |
KAZ03.14.19/ karṣaṇa.vaidehakā vā sasya.paṇya.ārambha.paryavasāna.antare sannasya
yathā.kṛtasya karmaṇaḥ pratyamśaṁ dadyuḥ | 19 |
KAZ03.14.20/ puruṣa.upasthāne samagram amśaṁ dadyuḥ | 20 |
KAZ03.14.21/ saṁsiddhe tu-uddhṛta.paṇye sannasya tadānīm eva pratyamśaṁ dadyuḥ | 21 |
KAZ03.14.22/ sāmānyā hi pathi.siddhiś ca-asiddhiś ca | 22 |
KAZ03.14.23/ prakrānte tu karmaṇi svasthasya-apakrāmato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 23 |

¹⁵⁴[K tr. 275 :: K2 tr. 239

- KAZ03.14.24/ na ca prākāmyam apakramaṇe | 24 |
 KAZ03.14.25/ coraṁ tv abhaya.pūrvam karmaṇaḥ pratyamśena grāhayed, dadyāt
 pratyamśam abhayaṁ ca | 25 |
 KAZ03.14.26/ punaḥ.steye pravāsanam, anyatra.gamane ca | 26 |
 KAZ03.14.27/ mahā.aparādhe tu dūṣyavad ācāret | 27 |
 KAZ03.14.28/ yājakāḥ svā.pracāra.dravya.varjaṁ yathā.sambhāṣitaṁ vetanaṁ samaṁ vā
 vibhajeraṁ | 28 |
 KAZ03.14.29/ agniṣṭoma.ādiṣu ca kratuṣu dīkṣaṇād ūrdhvaṁ ṛtīyam amśam,
 madhyama.upasada ūrdhvaṁ ardham amśam, sutye prātaḥ.savanād ūrdhvaṁ pāda.ūnam
 amśam | 29 |
 KAZ03.14.30/ mādhyandināt savanād ūrdhvaṁ samagram amśam labheta | 30 |
 KAZ03.14.31/ nītā hi dakṣiṇā bhavanti | 31 |
 KAZ03.14.32/ bṛhaspati.sava.varjaṁ pratisavanaṁ hi dakṣiṇā dīyante | 32 |
 KAZ03.14.33/ tena-ahar.gaṇa.dakṣiṇā vyākhyātāḥ | 33 |
 KAZ03.14.34/ sanānām ā.daśa.aho.rātrāt-śeṣa.bhṛtāḥ karma kuryuḥ, anye vā sva.pratyayāḥ |
 34 |
 KAZ03.14.35/ karmaṇy asamāpte tu yajamānaḥ sīded, ṛtvijaḥ karma samāpayya dakṣiṇām
 hareyuḥ | 35 |
 KAZ03.14.36/ asamāpte tu karmaṇi yājyaṁ yājakaṁ vā tyajataḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 36 |
 KAZ03.14.37ab/ anāhita.agniḥ śata.guru.yajvā ca sahasraguḥ |
 KAZ03.14.37cd/ surāpo vṛṣalī.bhartā brahmahā guru.talpagaḥ || 37 ||
 KAZ03.14.38ab/ asat.pratigrahe yuktaḥ stenaḥ kutsita.yājakaḥ |
 KAZ03.14.38cd/ adoṣas tyaktum anyonyaṁ karma.saṅkara.niścayāt || 38 ||

3.15 Chapter 15 (Section 67): Rescission of Sale and Purchase

155

- KAZ03.15.01/ vikrīya paṇyam aprayacchato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, anyatra
 doṣa.upanipāta.aviśahyebhyaḥ | 1 |
 KAZ03.15.02/ paṇya.doṣo doṣaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ03.15.03/ rāja.cora.agny.udaka.bādha upanipātaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ03.15.04/ bahu.guṇa.hīnam ārta.kṛtaṁ vā-aviśahyam | 4 |
 KAZ03.15.05/ vaidehakānām eka.rātram anuśayaḥ, karṣakānām tri.rātram, go.rakṣakānām
 pañca.rātram | 5 |
 KAZ03.15.06/ vyāmiśrāṇām uttamānām ca varṇānām vṛtti.vikraye sapta.rātram | 6 |
 KAZ03.15.07/ ātipātikānām paṇyānām "anyatra.avikreyam" ity avarodhena-anuśayo deyaḥ |
 7 |
 KAZ03.15.08/ tasya-atikrame catur.vimśati.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, paṇya.daśa.bhāgo vā | 8 |
 KAZ03.15.09/ kṛtvā paṇyam apratigṛhṇato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, anyatra
 doṣa.upanipāta.aviśahyebhyaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ03.15.10/ samānaś ca-anuśayo vikretur anuśayena | 10 |
 KAZ03.15.11/ vivāhānām tu trayāṇām pūrveṣām varṇānām pāṇi.grahaṇāt siddham
 upāvartanaṁ, śūdrāṇām ca prakarmaṇaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ03.15.12/ vṛtta.pāṇi.grahaṇayor api doṣam aupaśāyikaṁ drṣṭvā siddham upāvartanam |
 12 |
 KAZ03.15.13/ na tv eva-abhiprajātayoḥ | 13 |
 KAZ03.15.14/ kanyā.doṣam aupaśāyikaṁ anākhyāya prayacchataḥ kanyām ṣaṇ.ṇavatir
 daṇḍaḥ, śulka.strī.dhana.pratidānaṁ ca | 14 |

¹⁵⁵[K tr. 279 :: K2 tr. 242

- KAZ03.15.15/ varayitur vā vara.doṣaṃ anākhyāya vindato dvi.guṇaḥ, śulka.strī.dhana.nāśaś ca | 15 |
KAZ03.15.16/ dvipada.catuṣpadānām tu kuṇṭha.vyādhita.āsucīnām utsāha.svāsthya.śucīnām ākhyāne dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 16 |
KAZ03.15.17/ ā.tri.pakṣād iti catuṣpadānām upāvartanam, ā.samvatsarād iti manuṣyāṇām | 17 |
KAZ03.15.18/ tāvatā hi kālena śakyam śauca.āśauce jñātum | 18 |
KAZ03.15.19ab/ dātā pratigrahītā ca syātām na-upahatau yathā |
KAZ03.15.19cd/ dāne kraye vā-anuśayaṃ tathā kuryuḥ sabhāsadaḥ || 19 ||

3.16 Chapter 16 (Section 68; 69; 70): Non-conveyance of Gifts; Sale without Ownership; The Relation of Ownership

156

- KAZ03.16.01/ dattasya-apradānam ṛṇa.ādānena vyākhyātam | 1 |
KAZ03.16.02/ dattam avyavahāryam ekatra-anuśaye varteta | 2 |
KAZ03.16.03/ sarva.svaṃ putra.dāram ātmānam vā pradāya-anuśayinaḥ prayacchet | 3 |
KAZ03.16.04/ dharma.dānam asādhuṣu karmasu ca-aupaghātikeṣu vā, artha.dānam anupakāriṣv apakāriṣu vā, kāma.dānam anarheṣu ca | 4 |
KAZ03.16.05/ yathā ca dātā pratigrahītā ca na-upahatau syātām tathā-anuśayaṃ kuśalāḥ kalpayeyuḥ | 5 |
KAZ03.16.06/ daṇḍa.bhayād ākrośa.bhayād anartha.bhayād vā bhaya.dānam pratigrahṇataḥ steya.daṇḍaḥ, prayacchataś ca | 6 |
KAZ03.16.07/ roṣa.dānam para.hiṃsāyām, rājñām upari darpa.dānam ca | 7 |
KAZ03.16.08/ tatra-uttamo daṇḍaḥ | 8 |
KAZ03.16.09/ prātibhāvyam daṇḍa.śulka.śeṣam ākṣikam saurikam ca na-akāmaḥ putro dāyādo vā riktha.haro dadyāt | 9 | iti dattasya-anapākarma |
KAZ03.16.10/ asvāmi.vikrayas tu - naṣṭa.apahr̥tam āsādyā svāmī dharmasthena grāhayet | 10 |
KAZ03.16.11/ deśa.kāla.atipattau vā svayaṃ gr̥hītvā-upaharet | 11 |
KAZ03.16.12/ dharmasthaś ca svāminam anuyuñjīta "kutas te labdham" iti | 12 |
KAZ03.16.13/ sa ced ācāra.kramam darśayeta, na vikretāram, tasya dravyasya-atisargeṇa mucyeta | 13 |
KAZ03.16.14/ vikretā ced dr̥śyeta, mūlyam steya.daṇḍam ca dadyāt | 14 |
KAZ03.16.15/ sa ced apasāram adhigacched apasared ā.apasāra.kṣayāt | 15 |
KAZ03.16.16/ kṣaye mūlyam steya.daṇḍam ca dadyāt | 16 |
KAZ03.16.17/ nāṣṭikaś ca sva.karaṇam kṛtvā naṣṭa.pratyāhṛtam labheta | 17 |
KAZ03.16.18/ sva.karaṇa.abhāve pañca.bandho daṇḍaḥ | 18 |
KAZ03.16.19/ tac ca dravyam rāja.dharmyam syāt | 19 |
KAZ03.16.20/ naṣṭa.apahr̥tam anivedya-utkarṣataḥ svāmināḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 20 |
KAZ03.16.21/ śulka.sthāne naṣṭa.apahr̥ta.utpannam tiṣṭhet | 21 |
KAZ03.16.22/ tri.pakṣād ūrdhvam anabhisāram rājā haret, svāmī vā sva.karaṇena | 22 |
KAZ03.16.23/ pañca.paṇikam dvipada.rūpasya niṣkrayam dadyāt, catuṣpaṇikam eka.khurasya, dvipaṇikam gomahiṣasya, pādikam kṣudra.paśūnām | 23 |
KAZ03.16.24/ ratna.sāra.phalgu.kupyānām pañcakam śatam dadyāt | 24 |
KAZ03.16.25/ para.cakra.aṭavī.hr̥tam tu pratyāñīya rājā yathā.svaṃ prayacchet | 25 |
KAZ03.16.26/ cora.hr̥tam avidyamānam sva.dravyebhyaḥ prayacchet, pratyānetum aśakto vā | 26 |

¹⁵⁶[K tr. 281 :: K2 tr. 243

KAZ03.16.27/ svayam.grāheṇa-āhṛtaṁ pratyānīya tan.niṣkrayaṁ vā prayacchet | 27 |
 KAZ03.16.28/ para.viṣayād vā vikrameṇa-ānītaṁ yathā.pradiṣṭaṁ rājñā bhuñjīta,
 anyatra-ārya.prāṇebhyo deva.brāhmaṇa.tapasvi.dravyebhyaś ca | 28 | ity asvāmi.vikrayaḥ |
 KAZ03.16.29/ sva.svāmi.sambandhas tu - bhoga.anuvṛttir ucchinna.deśānām yathā.svaṁ
 dravyāṇām | 29 |
 KAZ03.16.30/ yat svaṁ dravyam anyair bhujiyamānaṁ daśa varṣāṇy upekṣeta, hīyeta-asya,
 anyatra bāla.vṛddha.vyādrita.vyasani.proṣita.deśa.tyāga.rājya.vibhramebhyaḥ | 30 |
 KAZ03.16.31/ vimśati.varṣa.upekṣitam anavasitaṁ vāstu na-anuyuñjīta | 31 |
 KAZ03.16.32/ jñātayaḥ śrotriyaḥ pāṣaṇḍā vā rājñām asannidhau para.vāstuṣu vivasanto na
 bhogena hareyuḥ, upanidhim ādhim nidhim niḥkṣepaṁ striyaṁ sīmānaṁ
 rāja.śrotriya.dravyāṇi ca | 32 |
 KAZ03.16.33/ āsramaṇaḥ pāṣaṇḍā vā mahaty avakāśe parasparam abādhamānā vaseyuḥ | 33
 |
 KAZ03.16.34/ alpāṁ bādham saheran | 34 |
 KAZ03.16.35/ pūrva.āgato vā vāsa.paryāyaṁ dadyāt | 35 |
 KAZ03.16.36/ apradātā nirasyeta | 36 |
 KAZ03.16.37/ vānaprastha.yati.brahma.cāriṇām ācārya.śiṣya.dharma.bhrātṛ.samāna.tīrthyā
 riktha.bhājaḥ krameṇa | 37 |
 KAZ03.16.38/ vivāda.padeṣu ca-eṣāṁ yāvantaḥ pañā daṇḍās tāvatī rātrīḥ
 kṣapaṇa.abhiṣeka.agni.kārya.mahā.kaccha.vardhanāni rājñāś careyuḥ | 38 |
 KAZ03.16.39/ ahiraṇya.suvarṇaḥ pāṣaḍhāḥ sādhaḥ | 39 |
 KAZ03.16.40/ te yathā.svaṁ upavāsa.vratair ārādhayeyuḥ, anyatra
 pārūṣya.steya.sāhasa.saṅgrahaṇebhyaḥ | 40 |
 KAZ03.16.41/ teṣu yathā.uktā daṇḍāḥ kāryāḥ | 41 |
 KAZ03.16.42ab/ pravrajyāsu vṛthā.ācārān rājā daṇḍena vārayet |
 KAZ03.16.42cd/ dharmo hy adharma.upahataḥ śāstāraṁ hantya upekṣitaḥ || 42 ||

3.17 Chapter 17 (Section 71): Forcible Seizure

157

KAZ03.17.01/ sāhasam anvayavat prasabha.karma | 1 |
 KAZ03.17.02/ niranvaye steyam, apavyayane ca | 2 |
 KAZ03.17.03/ "ratna.sāra.phalgu.kupyānām sāhase mūlya.samo daṇḍaḥ" iti mānavāḥ | 3 |
 KAZ03.17.04/ "mūlya.dvi.guṇaḥ" ity auśanasāḥ | 4 |
 KAZ03.17.05/ yathā.aparādha iti kauṭilyaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ03.17.06/ "puṣpa.phala.śāka.mūla.kanda.pakva.anna.carma.veṇu.mṛd.bhāṇḍa.- ādīnām
 kṣudra.dravyāṇām dvādsā.paṇa.avarāś caturvimśati.paṇa.paro daṇḍaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ03.17.07/ kāla.āyasa.kāṣṭha.rajju.dravya.kṣudra.paśu.paṭa.ādīnām sthūlaka.dravyāṇām
 caturvimśati.paṇa.avarāś 'ṣṭa.catvārimśat.paṇa.paro daṇḍaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ03.17.08/ tāmra.vṛtta.kāṁsa.kāca.danta.bhāṇḍa.ādīnām sthūlaka.dravyāṇām
 aṣṭa.catvārimśat.paṇa.avarāḥ ṣaṇ.ṇavati.paraḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ03.17.09/ mahā.paśu.manuṣya.kṣetra.grha.hiraṇya.suvarṇa.sūkṣma.vastra.ādīnām
 sthūlaka.dravyāṇām dviśata.avarāḥ pañca.śata.paro madhyamaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ03.17.10/ striyaṁ puruṣaṁ vā-abhiṣahya badhnato bandhayato bandhaṁ vā mokṣayataḥ
 pañca.śata.avarāḥ sahasra.para uttamaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | " ity ācāryāḥ | 10 |
 KAZ03.17.11/ "yaḥ sāhasaṁ "pratipattā" iti kārayati sa dvi.guṇaṁ dadyāt | 11 |
 KAZ03.17.12/ "yāvadd hiraṇyam upayokṣyate tāvad dāsyāmi" iti sa catur.guṇaṁ daṇḍaṁ
 dadyāt | 12 |

¹⁵⁷[K tr. 284 :: K2 tr. 245

KAZ03.17.13/ yaḥ "etāvadd hiraṇyaṁ dāsyāmi" iti pramāṇam uddiśya kārāyati sa
yathā.uktaṁ hiraṇyaṁ daṇḍaṁ ca dadyāt" iti bārhaspatyāḥ | 13 |
KAZ03.17.14/ sa cet kopam madam moham vā-apadiśed yathā.uktavād daṇḍam enam
kuryād iti kauṭilyaḥ | 14 |
KAZ03.17.15ab/ daṇḍa.karmasu sarveṣu rūpam aṣṭa.paṇam śatam |
KAZ03.17.15cd/ śatāt pareṣu vyājīm ca vidyāt pañca.paṇam śatam || 15 ||
KAZ03.17.16ab/ prajānām doṣa.bāhulyād rājñām vā bhāva.doṣataḥ |
KAZ03.17.16cd/ rūpa.vyāyāv adharmiṣṭhe dharmyā tu prakṛtiḥ smṛtā || 16 ||

3.18 Chapter 18 (Section 72): Verbal Injury

158

KAZ03.18.01/ vāk.pāruṣyam upavādaḥ kutsanam abhibhartsanam iti | 1 |
KAZ03.18.02/ śarīra.prakṛti.śruta.vṛtti.jana.padānām śarīra.upavāde kāṇa.khañja.ādibhiḥ
satye tri.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, mithyā.upavāde ṣaṭ.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 2 |
KAZ03.18.03/ "śobhana.akṣimantaḥ" iti kāṇa.khañja.ādīnām stuti.nindāyām dvādaśa.paṇo
daṇḍaḥ | 3 |
KAZ03.18.04/ kuṣṭha.unmāda.klaibya.ādibhiḥ kutsāyām ca satya.mithyā.stuti.nindāsu
dvādaśa.paṇa.uttarā daṇḍās tulyeṣu | 4 |
KAZ03.18.05/ viśiṣṭeṣu dvi.guṇāḥ, hīneṣv ardha.daṇḍāḥ, para.strīṣu dvi.guṇāḥ,
pramāda.mada.moha.ādibhir ardha.daṇḍāḥ | 5 |
KAZ03.18.06/ kuṣṭha.unmādayoś cikitsakāḥ sannikṛṣṭā pumāmsaś ca pramāṇam, klība.bhāve
striyo mūtra.pheno 'psu viṣṭhā.nimajjanaṁ ca | 6 |
KAZ03.18.07/ prakṛty.upavāde brāhmaṇa.kṣatriya.vaiśya.sūdra.anta.avasāyinām apareṇa
pūrvasya tri.paṇa.uttarā daṇḍāḥ, pūrveṇa- aparasya dvi.paṇa.adharāḥ, kubrahmaṇa.ādibhiś ca
kutsāyām | 7 |
KAZ03.18.08/ tena śruta.upavādo vāg.jīvanānām, kāru.kuśīlavānām vṛtty.upavādaḥ,
prājñūka.gāndhāra.ādīnām ca jana.pada.upavādā vyākhyātāḥ | 8 |
KAZ03.18.09/ yaḥ param "evam tvām kariṣyāmi" iti karaṇena-abhibhartsayed, akaraṇe yas
tasya karaṇe daṇḍas tato 'rdha.daṇḍam dadyāt | 9 |
KAZ03.18.10/ aśaktaḥ kopam madam moham vā-apadiśed dvādaśa.paṇam daṇḍam dadyāt |
10 |
KAZ03.18.11/ jāta.vaira.āśayaḥ śaktaś ca-apakartum yāvaj.jīvika.avastham dadyāt | 11 |
KAZ03.18.12ab/ sva.deśa.grāmayoḥ pūrvam madhyamam jāti.saṅghayoḥ |
KAZ03.18.12cd/ ākrośād deva.caityānām uttamam daṇḍam arhati || 12 ||

3.19 Chapter 19 (Section 73): Physical Injury

159

KAZ03.19.01/ daṇḍa.pāruṣyam sparśanam avagūrṇam prahatam iti | 1 |
KAZ03.19.02/ nābher adhaḥ.kāyam hasta.pañka.bhasma.pāmsubhir iti sprṣatas tri.paṇo
daṇḍaḥ, tair eva-amedhyaiḥ pāda.ṣṭhīvikābhyām ca ṣaṭ.paṇaḥ, chardi.mūtra.purīṣa.ādibhir
dvādaśa.paṇaḥ | 2 |
KAZ03.19.03/ nābher upari dvi.guṇāḥ, śirasi catur.guṇāḥ sameṣu | 3 |
KAZ03.19.04/ viśiṣṭeṣu dvi.guṇāḥ, hīneṣv ardha.daṇḍāḥ, para.strīṣu dvi.guṇāḥ,
pramāda.mada.moha.ādibhir ardha.daṇḍāḥ | 4 |
KAZ03.19.05/ pāda.vastra.hasta.keśa.avalambaneṣu ṣaṭ.paṇa.uttarā daṇḍāḥ | 5 |
KAZ03.19.06/ pīḍana.āveṣṭana.añcana.prakarṣaṇa.adhyāsaneṣu pūrvāḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 6 |

¹⁵⁸[K tr. 286 :: K2 tr. 246

¹⁵⁹[K tr. 287 :: K2 tr. 247

- KAZ03.19.07/ pātayitvā-apakrāmato 'rdha.daṇḍaḥ | 7 |
- KAZ03.19.08/ śūdro yena-aṅgena brāhmaṇam abhihanyāt tad asyac-chedayet | 8 |
- KAZ03.19.09/ avagūrṇe niṣkrayaḥ, sparśe 'rdha.daṇḍaḥ | 9 |
- KAZ03.19.10/ tena caṇḍāla.aśucayo vyākhyātaḥ | 10 |
- KAZ03.19.11/ hastena-avagūrṇe tri.paṇa.avarō dvādaśa.paṇa.paro daṇḍaḥ, pādena dvi.guṇaḥ, duḥkha.utpādanena dravyeṇa pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, prāṇa.ābādhikena madhyamaḥ | 11 |
- KAZ03.19.12/ kāṣṭha.loṣṭha.pāśāṇa.loha.daṇḍa.rajju.dravyāṇām anyatamena duḥkham aśonitam utpādayataś caturviṃśati.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, śonita.utpādane dvi.guṇaḥ, anyatra duṣṭa.śonitāt | 12 |
- KAZ03.19.13/ mṛta.kalpam aśonitam ghnato hasta.pāda.pārañcikaṁ vā kurvataḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, pāṇi.pāda.danta.bhaṅge kaṇa.nāsa.ācchedane vraṇa.vidāraṇe cca, anyatra duṣṭa.vraṇebhyaḥ | 13 |
- KAZ03.19.14/ sakthi.grīva.ābhañjane netra.bhedane vā vākya.ceṣṭā.bhojana.uparodheṣu ca madhyamaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ samutthāna.vyayaś ca | 14 |
- KAZ03.19.15/ vipattau kaṇṭaka.śodhanāya nīyeta | 15 |
- KAZ03.19.16/ mahā.janasya-ekaṁ ghnataḥ pratyekaṁ dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 16 |
- KAZ03.19.17/ "paryuṣitaḥ kalaho 'nupraveśo vā na-abhiyojyaḥ" ity ācāryāḥ | 17 |
- KAZ03.19.18/ na-asty apakāriṇo mokṣa iti kauṭilyaḥ | 18 |
- KAZ03.19.19/ "kalahe pūrva.āgato jayati, akṣamamāṇo hi pradhāvati" ity ācāryāḥ | 19 |
- KAZ03.19.20/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ03.19.21/ pūrvaṁ paścād vā-abhigatasya sākṣiṇaḥ pramāṇam, asākṣike ghātaḥ kalaha.upaliṅganaṁ vā | 21 |
- KAZ03.19.22/ ghāta.abhiyogam apratibruvatas tad ahar eva paścāt.kāraḥ | 22 |
- KAZ03.19.23/ kalahe dravyam apaharato daśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, kṣudraka.dravya.hiṁsāyām tac ca tāvac ca daṇḍaḥ, sthūlaka.dravya.hiṁsāyām tac ca dvi.guṇaś ca daṇḍaḥ, vastra.ābharaṇa.hiraṇya.suvarṇa.bhāṇḍa.hiṁsāyām tac ca pūrvaś ca sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ03.19.24/ para.kuḍyam abhigātena kṣobhayatas tri.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, chedana.bhedane ṣaṭ.paṇaḥ, pratikāraś ca | 24 |
- KAZ03.19.25/ duḥkha.utpādanam dravyam anya.veśmani prakṣipato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, prāṇa.ābādhikaṁ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 25 |
- KAZ03.19.26/ kṣudra.paśūnām kāṣṭha.ādibhir duḥkha.utpādane paṇo dvi.guṇo vā daṇḍaḥ, śonita.utpādane dvi.guṇaḥ | 26 |
- KAZ03.19.27/ mahā.paśūnām eteṣv eva sthāneṣv dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ samutthāna.vyayaś ca | 27 |
- KAZ03.19.28/ pura.upavana.vanaspatīnām puṣpa.phalac.chāyāvatām prarohac.chedane ṣaṭ.paṇaḥ, kṣudra.sākhāc.chedane dvādaśa.paṇaḥ, pīna.sākhāc.cchedane catur.viṃśati.paṇaḥ, skandha.vadhe pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, samucchittau madhyamaḥ | 28 |
- KAZ03.19.29/ puṣpa.phalac.chāyāvad.gulma.latāsv ardha.daṇḍaḥ, puṇya.sthāna.tapo.vana.śmaśāna.drumeṣu ca | 29 |
- KAZ03.19.30ab/ sīma.vṛkṣeṣu caityeṣu drumeṣv ālakṣiteṣu ca |
- KAZ03.19.30cd/ ta eva dvi.guṇā daṇḍaḥ kāryā rāja.vaneṣu ca || 30 ||

3.20 Chapter 20 (Sections 74; 75): Gambling and Betting; Miscellaneous Offences

160

KAZ03.20.01/ dyūta.adhyakṣo dyūtam eka.mukhaṁ kārayet | 1 |

¹⁶⁰[K tr. 290 :: K2 tr. 250

- KAZ03.20.02/ anyatra dīvyato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍo gūḍha.ājīvi.jñāpana.artham | 2 |
- KAZ03.20.03/ "dyūta.abhiyoge jetuḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, parājitasya madhyamaḥ | 3 |
- KAZ03.20.04/ bālīśa.jātīyo hy eṣa jetu.kāmaḥ parājayam na kṣamate" ity ācāryāḥ | 4 |
- KAZ03.20.05/ na-ity kauṭilyaḥ | 5 |
- KAZ03.20.06/ parājitaś ced dvi.guṇa.daṇḍaḥ kriyeta na kaścana rājānam abhisariṣyati | 6 |
- KAZ03.20.07/ prāyaśo hi kitavāḥ kūṭa.devinaḥ | 7 |
- KAZ03.20.08/ teṣām adhyakṣāḥ śuddhāḥ kākaṇīr akṣāṁś ca sthāpayeyuḥ | 8 |
- KAZ03.20.09/ kākaṇy.akṣāṇām anya.upadhāne dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, kūṭa.karmaṇi pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍo jita.pratyādānam, upadhau steya.daṇḍaś ca | 9 |
- KAZ03.20.10/ jita.dravyād adhyakṣaḥ pañcakaṁ śatam ādadīta, kākaṇy.akṣa.arālā.śālākā.avakrayam udaka.bhūmi.karma.krayam ca | 10 |
- KAZ03.20.11/ dravyāṇām ādhānam vikrayam ca kuryāt | 11 |
- KAZ03.20.12/ akṣa.bhūmi.hasta.doṣāṇām ca-apraṭiśedhane dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 12 |
- KAZ03.20.13/ tena samāhvayo vyākhyātaḥ, anyatra vidyā.śilpa.samāhvayāt | iti | 13 |
- KAZ03.20.14/ prakīrṇakaṁ tu - yācitaka.avakrītaka.āhitaka.nikṣepakāṇām yathā.deśa.kālam adāne, yāmac.chāyā.samupaveśa.samsthītīnām vā deśa.kāla.atipātane, gulmatara.deyam brāhmaṇam sādhayataḥ, prativeśa.anuveśayor upari nimantraṇe ca dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ03.20.15/ sandiṣṭam artham aprayacchato, bhrātr.bhāryām hastena laṅghayato, rūpa.ājīvām anya.uparuddhām gacchataḥ, para.vaktavyam paṇyam kriṇānasya, samudram gṛham udbhindataḥ, sāmanta.catvāriṁśat.kulya.ābādhām ācarataś ca-aṣṭa.catvāriṁśat.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 15 |
- KAZ03.20.16/ kula.nīvī.grāhakasya-apavyayane, vidhavām chanda.vāsinīm prasahya-adhicarataḥ, caṇḍālasya-āryām sprśataḥ, pratyāsannam āpady anabhidhāvato, niṣkāraṇam abhidhāvanam kurvataḥ, śākya.ājīvaka.ādīn vṛṣala.pravrajitān deva.pitr.kāryeṣu bhojayataḥ śatyo daṇḍaḥ | 16 |
- KAZ03.20.17/ śapatha.vākya.anuyogam aniṣṛṣṭam kurvataḥ, yukta.karma ca-ayuktasya, kṣudra.paśu.vṛṣāṇām puṁstva.upaghātinaḥ, dāsyā garbham auśadhena pātayataś ca pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 17 |
- KAZ03.20.18/ pitā.putrayor dampatyor bhrātr.bhaginyor mātula.bhagineyayoḥ śiṣya.ācāryayor vā parasparam apatitam tyajataḥ, sārtha.ābhiprayātam grāma.madhye vā tyajataḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, kāntāre madhyamaḥ, tan.nimittam bhreṣayata uttamaḥ, saha.prasthāyīṣv anyeṣv ardha.daṇḍāḥ | 18 |
- KAZ03.20.19/ puruṣam abandhanīyam badhnato bandhayato bandham vā mokṣayato, bālam aprāpta.vyavahāram badhnato bandhayato vā sahasram daṇḍaḥ | 19 |
- KAZ03.20.20/ puruṣa.aparādha.viśeṣeṇa daṇḍa.viśeṣaḥ kāryaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ03.20.21/ tīrtha.karas tapasvī vyādhitaḥ kṣut.pipāsā.adhva.klāntas tiro.jana.pado daṇḍa.khedī niṣkiñcanaś ca-anugrāhyāḥ | 21 |
- KAZ03.20.22/ deva.brāhmaṇa.tapasvī.strī.bāla.vṛddha.vyādhitānām anāthānām anabhisaratām dharmasthāḥ kāryāṇi kuryuḥ, na ca deśa.kāla.bhogac.chalena-atihareyuḥ | 22 |
- KAZ03.20.23/ pūjyā vidyā.buddhi.pauruṣa.abhijana.karma.atiśayataś ca puruṣāḥ | 23 |
- KAZ03.20.24ab/ evam kāryāṇi dharmasthāḥ kuryur acchala.darśinaḥ |
- KAZ03.20.24cd/ samāḥ sarveṣu bhāveṣu viśvāsyā loka.sampriyāḥ || 24 ||

4 Book 4: The Suppression of Criminals

161

¹⁶¹[K tr. 294–337 :: K2 tr. 254–291

4.1 Chapter 1 (Section 76): Keeping a Watch over Artisans

162

- KAZ04.1.01/ pradeṣṭāras trayas trayo 'mātyāḥ kaṇṭaka.śodhanaṁ kuryuḥ | 1 |
 KAZ04.1.02/ arthya.pratikārāḥ kāru.śāsītāraḥ sannikṣeptāraḥ sva.vitta.kāravaḥ
 śreṇī.pramāṇā nikṣepaṁ grhṇīyuh | 2 |
 KAZ04.1.03/ vipattau śreṇī nikṣepaṁ bhajeta | 3 |
 KAZ04.1.04/ nirdiṣṭa.deśa.kāla.kāryaṁ ca karma kuryuḥ, anirdiṣṭa.deśa.kālaṁ
 kārya.apadeśam | 4 |
 KAZ04.1.05/ kāla.atipātane pāda.hīnaṁ vetanaṁ tad.dvi.guṇaś ca daṇḍaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ04.1.06/ anyatra bhreṣa.upanipātābhyāṁ naṣṭaṁ vinaṣṭaṁ vā-abhyāvaheyuḥ | 6 |
 KAZ04.1.07/ kāryasya-anyathā.karaṇe vetana.nāśas tad.dvi.guṇaś ca daṇḍaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ04.1.08/ tantu.vāyā daśa.ekādaśikaṁ sūtraṁ vardhayeyuḥ | 8 |
 KAZ04.1.09/ vṛddhic.chede cheda.dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ04.1.10/ sūtra.mūlyaṁ vāna.vetanaṁ, kṣauma.kauśeyānām adhyardha.guṇaṁ,
 pattra.ūrṇā.kambala.dukūlānām dvi.guṇam | 10 |
 KAZ04.1.11/ māna.hīne hīna.avahīnaṁ vetanaṁ tad.dvi.guṇaś ca daṇḍaḥ, tulā.hīne
 hīna.catur.guṇo daṇḍaḥ, sūtra.pativartane mūlya.dvi.guṇaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ04.1.12/ tena dvi.paṭa.vānaṁ vyākhyātam | 12 |
 KAZ04.1.13/ ūrṇā.tulāyāḥ pañca.paliko vihananac.chedo romac.chedaś ca | 13 |
 KAZ04.1.14/ rajakāḥ kāṣṭha.phalaka.ślakṣṇa.śilāsu vastrāṇi nenijyuḥ | 14 |
 KAZ04.1.15/ anyatra nenijato vastra.upaghātaṁ ṣaṭ.paṇaṁ ca daṇḍaṁ dadyuḥ | 15 |
 KAZ04.1.16/ mudgara.aṅkāḍ anyad vāsaḥ paridadhānās tri.paṇaṁ daṇḍaṁ dadyuḥ | 16 |
 KAZ04.1.17/ para.vastra.vikraya.avakraya.ādhāneṣu ca dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, parivartane
 mūlya.dvi.guṇo vastra.dānaṁ ca | 17 |
 KAZ04.1.18/ mukula.avadātaṁ śilā.paṭṭa.śuddhaṁ dhauta.sūtra.varṇaṁ pramṛṣṭa.śvetam
 ca-eka.rātra.uttaraṁ dadyuḥ | 18 |
 KAZ04.1.19/ pañca.rātrikaṁ tanu.rāgaṁ, ṣaḍ.rātrikaṁ nīlaṁ, puṣpa.lākṣā.mañjiṣṭhā.raktaṁ
 guru.parikarma yatna.upacāryaṁ jātyaṁ vāsaḥ sapta.rātrikaṁ | 19 |
 KAZ04.1.20/ tataḥ paraṁ vetana.hāniṁ prāpnuyuḥ | 20 |
 KAZ04.1.21/ śraddheyā rāga.vivādeṣu vetanaṁ kuśalāḥ kalpayeyuḥ | 21 |
 KAZ04.1.22/ parārdhyānām paṇo vetanaṁ, madhyamānām ardha.paṇaḥ, pratyavarānām
 pādaḥ, sthūlakānām māṣaka.dvi.māṣakaṁ, dvi.guṇaṁ raktakānām | 22 |
 KAZ04.1.23/ prathama.nejane catur.bhāgaḥ kṣayaḥ, dvitīye pañca.bhāgaḥ | 23 |
 KAZ04.1.24/ tena-uttaraṁ vyākhyātam | 24 |
 KAZ04.1.25/ rajakais tunna.vāyā vyākhyātāḥ | 25 |
 KAZ04.1.26/ suvarṇa.kārāṇām asuci.hastād rūpyaṁ suvarṇam anākhyāya sarūpaṁ krīṇatām
 dvādaśapaṇo daṇḍaḥ, virūpaṁ catur.vimśati.paṇaḥ, cora.hastād aṣṭa.catvāriṁśat.paṇaḥ | 26 |
 KAZ04.1.27/ pracchanna.virūpa.mūlya.hīna.krayeṣu steya.daṇḍaḥ, krta.bhāṇḍa.upadhau ca
 | 27 |
 KAZ04.1.28/ suvarṇān māṣakam apaharato dvi.śato daṇḍaḥ, rūpya.dharaṇān māṣakam
 apaharato dvādaśa.paṇaḥ | 28 |
 KAZ04.1.29/ tena-uttaraṁ vyākhyātam | 29 |
 KAZ04.1.30/ varṇa.utkarṣam apasāraṇaṁ yogam vā sādhyataḥ pañca.śato daṇḍaḥ | 30 |
 KAZ04.1.31/ taylor apacaraṇe rāgasya-apahāraṁ vidyāt | 31 |
 KAZ04.1.32/ māṣako vetanaṁ rūpya.dharaṇasya, suvarṇasya-aṣṭa.bhāgaḥ | 32 |
 KAZ04.1.33/ śikṣā.viśeṣeṇa dvi.guṇo vetana.vṛddhiḥ | 33 |

¹⁶²[K tr. 294 :: K2 tr. 254

- KAZ04.1.34/ tena-uttaraṃ vyākhyātam | 34 |
 KAZ04.1.35/ tāmra.vṛtta.kāṃsa.vaikṛntaka.āra.kūṭakānām pañcakaṃ śataṃ vetanam | 35 |
 KAZ04.1.36/ tāmra.piṇḍo daśa.bhāga.kṣayaḥ | 36 |
 KAZ04.1.37/ pala.hīne hīna.dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 37 |
 KAZ04.1.38/ tena-uttaraṃ vyākhyātam | 38 |
 KAZ04.1.39/ sīsa.trapu.piṇḍo viṃśati.bhāga.kṣayaḥ | 39 |
 KAZ04.1.40/ kākaṇī ca-asya pala.vetanam | 40 |
 KAZ04.1.41/ kāla.āyasa.piṇḍaḥ pañca.bhāga.kṣayaḥ | 41 |
 KAZ04.1.42/ kākaṇī.dvayaṃ ca-asya pala.vetanam | 42 |
 KAZ04.1.43/ tena-uttaraṃ vyākhyātam | 43 |
 KAZ04.1.44/ rūpa.darśakasya sthitāṃ paṇa.yātrām akopyāṃ kopayataḥ kopyāṃ akopayato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 44 |
 KAZ04.1.45/ vyāji.parisuddhau paṇa.yātrā | 45 |
 KAZ04.1.46/ paṇān māśakam upajīvato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 46 |
 KAZ04.1.47/ tena-uttaraṃ vyākhyātam | 47 |
 KAZ04.1.48/ kūṭa.rūpaṃ kārayataḥ pratigrhṇato niryāpayato vā sahasraṃ daṇḍaḥ, kośe prakṣipato vadhaḥ | 48 |
 KAZ04.1.49/ caraka.pāṃsu.dhāvakāḥ sāra.tri.bhāgaṃ, dvau rājā ratnaṃ ca | 49 |
 KAZ04.1.50/ ratna.apahāra uttamo daṇḍaḥ | 50 |
 KAZ04.1.51/ khani.ratna.nidhi.nivedaneṣu ṣaṣṭham aṃśaṃ nivettā labheta, dvādaśaṃ aṃśaṃ bhṛtakāḥ | 51 |
 KAZ04.1.52/ śata.sahasrād ūrdhvaṃ rāja.gāmī nidhiḥ | 52 |
 KAZ04.1.53/ ūne ṣaṣṭham aṃśaṃ dadyāt | 53 |
 KAZ04.1.54/ paurvapauruṣikāṃ nidhiṃ jānapadaḥ śuciḥ sva.karaṇena samagraṃ labheta | 54 |
 KAZ04.1.55/ sva.karaṇa.abhāve pañca.śato daṇḍaḥ, pracchanna.ādāne sahasram | 55 |
 KAZ04.1.56/ bhiṣajaḥ prāṇa.ābādhikam anākhyāya-upakramamāṇasya vipattau pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, karma.aparādhena vipattau madhyamaḥ | 56 |
 KAZ04.1.57/ marma.vadha.vaiguṇya.karaṇe daṇḍa.pāruṣyaṃ vidyāt | 57 |
 KAZ04.1.58/ kuśilavā varṣā.rātram ekasthā vaseyuh | 58 |
 KAZ04.1.59/ kāma.dānam atimātram ekasya-ativādaṃ ca varjayeyuh | 59 |
 KAZ04.1.60/ tasya-atikrame dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 60 |
 KAZ04.1.61/ kāmāṃ deśa.jāti.gotra.caraṇa.maithuna.avahāsenā narmayeyuh | 61 |
 KAZ04.1.62/ kuśilavaiś cāraṇā bhikṣukāś ca vyākhyātāḥ | 62 |
 KAZ04.1.63/ teṣāṃ ayaḥ.śūlena yāvataḥ paṇān abhivadeyus tāvantaḥ śiphā.prahārā daṇḍāḥ | 63 |
 KAZ04.1.64/ śeṣāṇāṃ karmaṇāṃ niṣpatti.vetanaṃ śilpināṃ kalpayet | 64 |
 KAZ04.1.65ab/ evaṃ corān acora.ākhyān vaṇik.kāru.kuśilavān |
 KAZ04.1.65cd/ bhikṣukān kuhakāṃś ca-anyān vārayed deśa.pīḍanāt || 65 ||

4.2 Chapter 2 (Section 77): Keeping a Watch over Traders

163

- KAZ04.2.01/ saṃsthā.adhyakṣaḥ paṇya.saṃsthāyāṃ purāṇa.bhāṇḍānām sva.karaṇa.viśuddhānām ādhānaṃ vikrayaṃ vā sthāpayet | 1 |
 KAZ04.2.02/ tulā.māna.bhāṇḍāni ca-avekṣeta pautava.apacārāt | 2 |
 KAZ04.2.03/ parimāṇī.droṇayor ardha.pala.hīna.atiriktam adoṣaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ04.2.04/ pala.hīna.atirikte dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 4 |

¹⁶³[K tr. 300 :: K2 tr. 259

- KAZ04.2.05/ tena pala.uttarā daṇḍa.vṛddhir vyākhyātā | 5 |
- KAZ04.2.06/ tulāyāḥ karṣa.hīna.atiriktam adoṣaḥ | 6 |
- KAZ04.2.07/ dvi.karṣa.hīna.atirikte ṣaṭ.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 7 |
- KAZ04.2.08/ tena karṣa.uttarā daṇḍa.vṛddhir vyākhyātā | 8 |
- KAZ04.2.09/ āḍhakasya-ardha.karṣa.hīna.atiriktam adoṣaḥ | 9 |
- KAZ04.2.10/ karṣa.hīna.atirikte tri.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 10 |
- KAZ04.2.11/ tena karṣa.uttarā daṇḍa.vṛddhir vyākhyātā | 11 |
- KAZ04.2.12/ tulā.māna.viśeṣāṇām ato 'nyeṣām anumānam kuryāt | 12 |
- KAZ04.2.13/ tulā.mānābhyām atiriktābhyām krītvā hīnābhyām vikrīṇānasya ta eva dvi.guṇā daṇḍaḥ | 13 |
- KAZ04.2.14/ gaṇya.paṇyeṣv aṣṭa.bhāgaṁ paṇya.mūlyeṣv apaharataḥ ṣaṇ.ṇavatir daṇḍaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ04.2.15/ kāṣṭha.loha.maṇi.mayaṁ rajju.carma.mṛṇ.mayaṁ sūtra.valka.roma.mayaṁ vā jātyam ity ajātyam vikraya.ādhānam nayato mūlya.aṣṭa.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 15 |
- KAZ04.2.16/ sāra.bhāṇḍam ity asāra.bhāṇḍam taj.jātam ity ataj.jātam rādhā.yuktam ity upadhiyuktam samudga.parivartitam vā vikraya.ādhānam nayato hīna.mūlyam catuṣpañcāṣat.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, paṇa.mūlyam dvi.guṇo, dvi.paṇa.mūlyam dvi.śataḥ | 16 |
- KAZ04.2.17/ tena-argha.vṛddhau daṇḍa.vṛddhir vyākhyātā | 17 |
- KAZ04.2.18/ kārū.śilpinām karma.guṇa.apakarṣam ājīvam vikraya.kraya.upaghātam vā sambhūya samutthāpayatām sahasram daṇḍaḥ | 18 |
- KAZ04.2.19/ vaidehakānām vā sambhūya paṇyam avarundhatām anargheṇa vikrīṇatām vā sahasram daṇḍaḥ | 19 |
- KAZ04.2.20/ tulā.māna.antaram argha.varṇa.antaram vā - dharakasya māyakasya vā paṇa.mūlyād aṣṭa.bhāgaṁ hasta.doṣeṇa-ācarato dvi.śato daṇḍaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ04.2.21/ tena dvi.śata.uttarā daṇḍa.vṛddhir vyākhyātā | 21 |
- KAZ04.2.22/ dhānya.sneha.kṣāra.lavaṇa.gandha.bhaiṣajya.dravyāṇām sama.varṇa.upadhāne dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ04.2.23/ yan.niṣṛṣṭam upajīveyus tad eṣām divasa.saṅjātām saṅkhyāya vaṇik sthāpayet | 23 |
- KAZ04.2.24/ kreṭṛ.vikretror antara.patitam ādāyād anyad bhavati | 24 |
- KAZ04.2.25/ tena dhānya.paṇya.nicayāms ca-anujñātāḥ kuryuḥ | 25 |
- KAZ04.2.26/ anyathā.nicitam eṣām paṇya.adhyakṣo gṛhṇīyāt | 26 |
- KAZ04.2.27/ tena dhānya.paṇya.vikraye vyavahareta-anugraheṇa prajānām | 27 |
- KAZ04.2.28/ anujñāta.krayād upari ca-eṣām sva.deśīyānām paṇyānām pañcakam śatam ājīvam sthāpayet, para.deśīyānām daśakam | 28 |
- KAZ04.2.29/ tataḥ param argham vardhayatām kraye vikraye vā bhāvayatām paṇa.śate pañca.paṇād dvi.śato daṇḍaḥ | 29 |
- KAZ04.2.30/ tena-argha.vṛddhau daṇḍa.vṛddhir vyākhyātā | 30 |
- KAZ04.2.31/ sambhūya.kraye ca-eṣām avikrīte na-anyam sambhūya.krayam dadyāt | 31 |
- KAZ04.2.32/ paṇya.upaghāte ca-eṣām anugraham kuryāt | 32 |
- KAZ04.2.33/ paṇya.bāhulyāt paṇya.adhyakṣaḥ sarva.paṇyāny eka.mukhāni vikrīṇīta | 33 |
- KAZ04.2.34/ teṣv avikrīteṣu na-anye vikrīṇīran | 34 |
- KAZ04.2.35/ tāni divasa.vetanena vikrīṇīran anugraheṇa prajānām | 35 |
- deśa.kāla.antaritānām tu paṇyānām -KAZ04.2.36ab/ prakṣepam paṇya.niṣpattim śulkaṁ vṛddhim avakrayam |
- KAZ04.2.36cd/ vyayān anyāms ca saṅkhyāya sthāpayed argham arghavit || 36 ||

4.3 Chapter 3 (Section 78): Remedies during Calamities

164

KAZ04.3.01/ daivāny aṣṭau mahā.bhayāni - agnir udakam vyādhir durbhikṣam mūṣikā vyālāḥ
sarpā rakṣāṁsi-iti | 1 |

KAZ04.3.02/ tebhyo jana.padam rakṣet | 2 |

KAZ04.3.03/ grīṣme bahir.adhiśrayaṇam grāmāḥ kuryuḥ, daśa.mūli.saṅgrahaṇa-adhiṣṭhitā vā
| 3 |

KAZ04.3.04/ nāgarika.praṇidhāv agni.pratiṣedho vyākhyātāḥ, niśānta.praṇidhau
rāja.parigrahe ca | 4 |

KAZ04.3.05/ bali.homa.svasti.vācanaiḥ parvasu ca-agni.pūjāḥ kārayet | 5 |

KAZ04.3.06/ varṣā.rātram ānūpa.grāmāḥ pūra.velām utsrjya vaseyuḥ | 6 |

KAZ04.3.07/ kāṣṭha.veṇu.nāvaś ca-upagṛhṇīyuḥ | 7 |

KAZ04.3.08/ uhyamānam alābu.dr̥ti.plava.gaṇḍikā.veṇikābhis tārayeyuḥ | 8 |

KAZ04.3.09/ anabhisaratām dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, anyatra plava.hīnebhyaḥ | 9 |

KAZ04.3.10/ parvasu ca nadī.pūjāḥ kārayet | 10 |

KAZ04.3.11/ mājā.yogavido vedavido vā varṣam abhicareyuḥ | 11 |

KAZ04.3.12/ varṣa.avagrahe śacī.nātha.gaṅgā.parvata.mahā.kaccha.pūjāḥ kārayet | 12 |

KAZ04.3.13/ vyādhi.bhayam aupaniṣadikāiḥ pratikāraiḥ pratikuryuḥ, auśadhaiś cikitsakāḥ
śānti.prāyaścittair vā siddha.tāpasāḥ | 13 |

KAZ04.3.14/ tena marako vyākhyātāḥ | 14 |

KAZ04.3.15/ tīrtha.abhiṣecanam mahā.kaccha.vardhanam gavām śmaśāna.avadohanam
kabandha.dahanam deva.rātrim ca kārayet | 15 |

KAZ04.3.16/ paśu.vyādhi.marake sthāna.artha.nīrājanam sva.daivata.pūjanam ca kārayet |
16 |

KAZ04.3.17/ durbhikṣe rājā bīja.bhakta.upagraham kṛtvā-anugraham kuryāt,
durga.setu.karma vā bhakta.anugraheṇa, bhakta.samvibhāgam vā, deśa.nikṣepam vā | 17 |

KAZ04.3.18/ mitrāṇi vā vyapāśrayeta, karṣanam vamanam vā kuryāt | 18 |

KAZ04.3.19/ niṣpanna.sasyam anya.viṣayam vā sajana.pado yāyāt, samudra.saras.taṭākāni vā
samśrayeta | 19 |

KAZ04.3.20/ dhānya.śāka.mūla.phala.āvāpān vā setuṣu kurvīta,
mṛga.paśu.pakṣi.vyāla.matsya.ārambhān vā | 20 |

KAZ04.3.21/ mūṣika.bhaye mārjāra.nakula.utsargaḥ | 21 |

KAZ04.3.22/ teṣām grahaṇa.himsāyām dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, śunām anigrahe
ca-anyatra-aranya.carebhyaḥ | 22 |

KAZ04.3.23/ snuhi.kṣīra.liptāni dhānyāni visrjed, upaniṣad.yoga.yuktāni vā | 23 |

KAZ04.3.24/ mūṣika.karam vā prayuñjīta | 24 |

KAZ04.3.25/ śāntim vā siddha.tāpasāḥ kuryuḥ | 25 |

KAZ04.3.26/ parvasu ca mūṣika.pūjāḥ kārayet | 26 |

KAZ04.3.27/ tena śalabha.pakṣi.krimi.bhaya.pratikārā vyākhyātāḥ | 27 |

KAZ04.3.28/ vyāla.bhaye madana.rasa.yuktāni paśu.śavāni prasrjet,
madana.kodrava.pūrṇāny audaryāni vā | 28 |

KAZ04.3.29/ lubdhakāḥ śva.gaṇino vā kūṭa.pañjara.avapātaiś careyuḥ | 29 |

KAZ04.3.30/ āvaraṇinaḥ śastra.pāṇayo vyālān abhihanyuḥ | 30 |

KAZ04.3.31/ anabhisartur dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 31 |

KAZ04.3.32/ sa eva lābho vyāla.ghātināḥ | 32 |

KAZ04.3.33/ parvasu ca parvata.pūjāḥ kārayet | 33 |

KAZ04.3.34/ tena mṛga.paśu.pakṣi.saṅgha.grāha.pratikārā vyākhyātāḥ | 34 |

¹⁶⁴[K tr. 303 :: K2 tr. 262

- KAZ04.3.35/ sarpa.bhaye mantrair oṣadhibhiś ca jāṅgulīvidaś careyuḥ | 35 |
 KAZ04.3.36/ sambhūya vā-āpi sarpān hanyuḥ | 36 |
 KAZ04.3.37/ atharva.vedavido vā-abhicareyuḥ | 37 |
 KAZ04.3.38/ parvasu ca nāga.pūjāḥ kārayet | 38 |
 KAZ04.3.39/ tena-udaka.prāṇi.bhaya.pratikārā vyākhyātāḥ | 39 |
 KAZ04.3.40/ rakṣo.bhaye rakṣo.ghnāny atharva.vedavido māyā.yogavido vā karmāṇi kuryuḥ | 40 |
 KAZ04.3.41/ parvasu ca vitardic.chatra.ullopikā.hasta.patākāc.chāga.upahāraiś caitya.pūjāḥ kārayet | 41 |
 KAZ04.3.42/ "caruṁ vaś carāmaḥ" ity evaṁ sarva.bhayeṣv aho.rātraṁ careyuḥ | 42 |
 KAZ04.3.43/ sarvatra ca-upahatān pitā-iva-anugrṇīyāt | 43 |
 KAZ04.3.44ab/ māyā.yogavidaś tasmād viṣaye siddha.tāpasāḥ |
 KAZ04.3.44cd/ vasesuḥ pūjitā rājñā daiva.āpat.pratikāriṇaḥ || 44 ||

4.4 Chapter 4 (Section 79): Guarding against Persons with Secret Income

165

- KAZ04.4.01/ samāharṭṛ.praṇidhau jana.pada.rakṣaṇam uktam | 1 |
 KAZ04.4.02/ tasya kaṇṭaka.śodhanam vakṣyāmaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ04.4.03/ samāhartā jana.pade
 siddha.tāpasa.pravrajita.cakra.cara.cāraṇa.kuhaka.pracchandaka.-
 kārtaṁtika.naimittika.mauhūrtika.cikitsaka.unmatta.mūka.badhira.-
 jaḍa.andha.vaidehaka.kāru.śilpi.kuśīlava.veśa.śauṇḍi-
 ka.āpūpika.pākva.māmsika.audanika.vyañjanān praṇidadhyāt | 3 |
 KAZ04.4.04/ te grāmāṇām adhyakṣāṇām ca śauca.āśaucam vidyuḥ | 4 |
 KAZ04.4.05/ yaṁ ca-atra gūḍha.ājīvinam śaiketa taṁ sattriṇā-apasarpayet | 5 |
 KAZ04.4.06/ dharmastham viśvāsa.upagatam sattri brūyāt - "asau me bandhur abhiyuktaḥ,
 tasya-ayam anarthaḥ pratikriyatām, ayam ca-arthaḥ pratigṛhyatām" iti | 6 |
 KAZ04.4.07/ sa cet tathā kuryād upadā.grāhaka iti pravāsyeta | 7 |
 KAZ04.4.08/ tena pradeṣṭāro vyākhyātāḥ | 8 |
 KAZ04.4.09/ grāma.kūṭam adhyakṣam vā sattri brūyāt - "asau jālmaḥ prabhūta.dravyaḥ,
 tasya-ayam anarthaḥ, tena-enam āhārayasva" iti | 9 |
 KAZ04.4.10/ sa cet tathā kuryād utkocaka iti pravāsyeta | 10 |
 KAZ04.4.11/ kṛtaka.abhiyukto vā kūṭa.sākṣiṇo 'bhijñāta.anartha.vaipulyena-ārabheta | 11 |
 KAZ04.4.12/ te cet tathā kuryuḥ kūṭa.sākṣiṇa iti pravāsyeran | 12 |
 KAZ04.4.13/ tena kūṭa.śrāvaṇa.kārakā vyākhyātāḥ | 13 |
 KAZ04.4.14/ yaṁ vā mantra.yoga.mūla.karmabhiḥ śmāśānikair vā saṁvadana.karakam
 manyeta taṁ sattri brūyāt - "amuṣya bhāryām snuṣām duhitaram vā kāmāye, sā mām
 pratikāmayatām, ayam ca-arthaḥ pratigṛhyatām" iti | 14 |
 KAZ04.4.15/ sa cet tathā kuryāt saṁvadana.kāraka iti pravāsyeta | 15 |
 KAZ04.4.16/ tena kṛtya.abhicāra.śīlau vyākhyātāu | 16 |
 KAZ04.4.17/ yaṁ vā rasasya kartāram kretāram vikretāram bhaiṣajya.āhāra.vyavahāriṇam vā
 rasadam manyeta taṁ sattri brūyāt - "asau me śatruḥ, tasya-upaghātaḥ kriyatām, ayam
 ca-arthaḥ pratigṛhyatām" iti | 17 |
 KAZ04.4.18/ sa cet tathā kuryād rasada iti pravāsyeta | 18 |
 KAZ04.4.19/ tena madana.yoga.vyavahārī vyākhyātāḥ | 19 |

¹⁶⁵[K tr. 307 :: K2 tr. 265

KAZ04.4.20/ yaṁ vā nānā.loha.kṣārāṇām
 aṅgāra.bhasma.asandaṁśa.muṣṭika.adhikaraṇī.bimba.ṭaṅka.mūṣāṇām abhīkṣṇa.kretāraṁ
 maṣī.bhasma.dhūma.digdha.hasta.vastra.liṅgaṁ karmāra.upakaraṇa.saṁsargaṁ
 kūṭa.rūpa.kāraṁ manyeta taṁ sattrī śīṣyatvena saṁvyavahāreṇa ca-anupraviśya
 prajñāpayet | 20 |
 KAZ04.4.21/ prajñātaḥ kūṭa.rūpa.kāraṁ iti pravāsyeta | 21 |
 KAZ04.4.22/ tena rāgasya-apahartā kūṭa.suvarṇa.vyavahārī ca vyākhyātaḥ | 22 |
 KAZ04.4.23ab/ ārabdhāras tu hiṁsāyāṁ gūḍha.ājīvās trayodaśa |
 KAZ04.4.23cd/ pravāsyā niṣkraya.arthaṁ vā dadyur doṣa.viśeṣataḥ || 23 ||

4.5 Chapter 5 (Section 80): Detection of Criminals through Secret Agents

166

KAZ04.5.01/ sattri.prayogād ūrdhvaṁ siddha.vyañjanā māṇavān māṇava.vidyābhiḥ
 pralobhayeyuḥ, prasvāpana.antar.dhāna.dvāra.apoha.mantreṇa pratirodhakān,
 saṁvadana.mantreṇa pāratāpikān | 1 |
 KAZ04.5.02/ teṣāṁ kṛta.utsāhānām mahāntaṁ saṅghaṁ ādāya rātrāv anyāṁ grāmam
 uddiśya-anyāṁ grāmaṁ kṛtaka.strī.puruṣaṁ gatvā brūyuh - "iha-eva vidyā.prabhāvo
 dṛśyatām, kṛcchraḥ para.grāmo gantum" iti | 2 |
 KAZ04.5.03/ tato dvāra.apoha.mantreṇa dvārāṇy apohya "praviśyatām" iti brūyuh | 3 |
 KAZ04.5.04/ antar.dhāna.mantreṇa jāgratām ārakṣiṇām madhyena māṇavān atikrāmayeyuh
 | 4 |
 KAZ04.5.05/ prasvāpana.mantreṇa prasvāpayitvā rakṣiṇaḥ śayābhir māṇavaiḥ sañcārayeyuh
 | 5 |
 KAZ04.5.06/ saṁvadana.mantreṇa bhāryā.vyañjanāḥ pareṣāṁ māṇavaiḥ sammodayeyuh | 6
 |
 KAZ04.5.07/ upalabdha.vidyā.prabhāvāṇām puraścaraṇā.ādy ādiśeyur abhijñāna.arthaṁ | 7
 |
 KAZ04.5.08/ kṛta.lakṣaṇa.dravyeṣu vā veśmasu karma kārayeyuh | 8 |
 KAZ04.5.09/ anupraviṣṭā vā-ekatra grāhayeyuh | 9 |
 KAZ04.5.10/ kṛta.lakṣaṇa.dravya.kraya.vikraya.ādhāneṣu yoga.surā.mattān vā grāhayeyuh |
 10 |
 KAZ04.5.11/ gr̥hītān pūrva.apadāna.sahāyān anuyuñjīta | 11 |
 KAZ04.5.12/ purāṇa.cora.vyañjanā vā corān anupraviṣṭās tathā-eva karma kārayeyur
 grāhayeyuś ca | 12 |
 KAZ04.5.13/ gr̥hītān samāhartā paura.jānapadānām darśayet - "cora.grahaṇīm vidyām adhīte
 rājā, tasya-upadeśād ime corā gr̥hītāḥ, bhūyaś ca grahīṣyāmi, vārayitavyo vaḥ sva.janaḥ
 pāpa.ācārah-" iti | 13 |
 KAZ04.5.14/ yaṁ ca-atra-apasarpa.upadeśena śamyā.pratoda.ādīnām apahartāraṁ jānīyāt
 tam eṣāṁ pratyādiśet "eṣa rājāḥ prabhāvaḥ" iti | 14 |
 KAZ04.5.15/ purāṇa.cora.go.pālaka.vyādha.śva.gaṇiṇāś ca vana.cora.ātavikān anupraviṣṭāḥ
 prabhūta.kūṭa.hiraṇya.kupya.bhāṇḍeṣu sārtha.vraja.grāmeṣv enān abhiyojayeyuh | 15 |
 KAZ04.5.16/ abhiyoge gūḍha.balair ghātayeyuh, madana.rasa.yuktena vā pathy.adanena | 16
 |
 KAZ04.5.17/ gr̥hīta.loptra.bhārān āyata.gata.pariśrāntān prasvapataḥ prahavaṇeṣu
 yoga.surā.mattān vā grāhayeyuh | 17 |
 KAZ04.5.18ab/ pūrvavac ca gr̥hītvā-enān samāhartā prarūpayet |

¹⁶⁶[K tr. 309 :: K2 tr. 267

KAZ04.5.18cd/ sarvajña.khyāpanam rājñah kārāyan rāṣṭra.vāsiṣu || 18 ||

4.6 Chapter 6 (Section 81): Arrest on Suspicion, with the Article and by the Act

167

KAZ04.6.01/ siddha.prayogād ūrdhvaṁ śaṅkā.rūpa.karma.abhigrahaḥ | 1 |

KAZ04.6.02a/ kṣīṇa.dāya.kuṭumbam, alpa.nirveśam,
viparīta.deśa.jāti.gotra.nāma.karma.apadeśam, pracchanna.vṛtti.karmāṇam,-
KAZ04.6.02b/ mām̐sa.surā.bhakṣya.bhojana.gandha.mālya.vastra.vibhūṣaṇeṣu prasaktam,
ativyaya.kartāram, puṁścali.dyūta.śauṇḍikeṣu prasaktam,-
KAZ04.6.02c/ abhikṣṇa.pravāsinam, avijñāta.sthāna.gamanam,
ekānta.arāṇya.niṣkuṭa.vikāla.cāriṇam, pracchanne sa.āmiṣe vā deśe
bahu.mantra.sannipātām,-

KAZ04.6.02d/ sadyaḥ.kṣata.vraṇānām gūḍha.pratīkāra.kārayitāram, antar.gr̥ha.nityam,
abhyadhigantāram, kāntā.param,-

KAZ04.6.02e/ para.parigrahānām para.strī.dravya.veśmanām abhikṣṇa.praṣṭāram,
kutsita.karma.śāstra.upakaraṇa.samsargam,-

KAZ04.6.02f/ virātre channa.kuḍyac.chāyā.saṅcāriṇam, virūpa.dravyāṇam
adeśa.kāla.vikretāram, jāta.vairaśayam, hīna.karma.jātim,-

KAZ04.6.02g/ vigūhamāna.rūpam, liṅgena-āliṅginam, liṅginam vā bhinna.ācāram,
pūrva.kṛta.apadānam, sva.karmabhir apadiṣṭam,-

KAZ04.6.02h/ nāgarika.mahā.mātra.darśane guhamānam apasarantam
anucchvāsa.upaveśinam āvignam śuṣka.bhinna.svara.mukha.varṇam,-

KAZ04.6.02i/ śāstra.hasta.manuṣya.sampāta.trāsinam,
himsra.stena.nidhi.nikṣepa.apahāra.para.prayoga.gūḍha.ājīvinām anyatamam śaṅketa | 2 |
iti śaṅkā.abhigrahaḥ |

KAZ04.6.03/ rūpa.abhigrahas tu - naṣṭa.apahr̥tam avidyamānam taj.jāta.vyavahāriṣu
nivedayet | 3 |

KAZ04.6.04/ tac cen niveditam āsādyā pracchādayeyuḥ sāviva.kara.doṣam āpnuyuḥ | 4 |

KAZ04.6.05/ ajānanto 'sya dravyasya-atisargeṇa mucyeraṇ | 5 |

KAZ04.6.06/ na ca-anivedya samsthā.adhyakṣasya purāṇa.bhāṇḍānām ādhānam vikrayam vā
kuryuḥ | 6 |

KAZ04.6.07/ tac cen niveditam āsādyeta, rūpa.abhigrahītam āgamaṁ pr̥cchet "kutas te
labdham" iti | 7 |

KAZ04.6.08/ sa cet brūyāt "dāyādyād avāptam, amuṣmāl labdham kṛtam kāritam
ādhi.pracchannam, ayam asya deśaḥ kālāś ca-upasamprāpteḥ, ayam asya-arghaḥ pramāṇam
lakṣaṇam mūlyam ca" iti, tasya-āgama.samādhau mucyeta | 8 |

KAZ04.6.09/ nāṣṭikaś cet tad eva pratisandadhyāt, yasyā pūrvo dīrghaś ca paribhogah śucir
vā deśas tasya dravyam iti vidyāt | 9 |

KAZ04.6.10/ catuṣpada.dvipadānām api hi rūpa.liṅga.sāmānyam bhavati, kim aṅga punar
eka.yoni.dravya.karṭṭ.prasūtānām kupya.ābharaṇa.bhāṇḍānām iti | 10 |

KAZ04.6.11/ sa ced brūyāt "yācitakam avakṛitakam āhitakam nikṣepam upanidhim
vaiyāvṛtya.karma vā-amuṣya" iti, tasya-apasāra.pratisandhānena mucyeta | 11 |

KAZ04.6.12/ "na-evam" ity apasāro vā brūyāt, rūpa.abhigrahītaḥ parasya dāna.kāraṇam
ātmanaḥ pratigraha.kāraṇam upaliṅganam vā
dāyaka.dāpaka.nibandhaka.pratigrāhaka.upadraṣṭṛbhir upaśrotṛbhir vā pratisamānayet | 12 |

¹⁶⁷[K tr. 311 :: K2 tr. 268

KAZ04.6.13/ ujjhita.pranasta.niṣpatita.upalabdhasya deśa.kāla.lābha.upaliṅganena śuddhiḥ | 13 |

KAZ04.6.14/ aśuddhas tac ca tāvac ca daṇḍam dadyāt | 14 |

KAZ04.6.15/ anyathā steya.daṇḍam bhajeta | 15 | iti rūpa.abhigrahaḥ |

KAZ04.6.16/ karma.abhigrahas tu - muṣita.veśmanaḥ praveśa.niṣkasanam advāreṇa, dvārasya sandhinā bijena vā vedham, uttama.agārasya jāla.vāta.ayana.nīpra.vedham, ārohaṇa.avataraṇe ca kuḍyasya vedham, upakhananam vā

gūḍha.dravya.nikṣepaṇa.grahaṇa.upāyam, upadeśa.upalabhyam

abhyantarac.cheda.utkara.parimarda.upakaraṇam abhyantara.kṛtam vidyāt | 16 |

KAZ04.6.17/ viparyaye bāhya.kṛtam, ubhayata ubhaya.kṛtam | 17 |

KAZ04.6.18a/ abhyantara.kṛte puruṣam āsannam vyasaninam krūra.sahāyam

taskara.upakaraṇa.samsargaṃ, striyam vā daridra.kulām anya.prasaktām vā,-

KAZ04.6.18b/ paricāraka.janam vā tad.vidha.ācāram, atisvapnam, nidrā.klāntam, āvignam. śuṣka.bhinna.svara.mukha.varṇam, anavasthitam,-

KAZ04.6.18c/ atipralāpinam, ucca.ārohaṇa.samrabdha.gātram,

vilūna.nighṛṣṭa.bhinna.pāṭita.śarīra.vastram, jāta.kiṇa.samrabdha.hasta.pādam,-

KAZ04.6.18d/ pāmsu.pūrṇa.keśa.nakham vilūna.bhugna.keśa.nakham vā,

samyak.snāta.anuliptam taila.pramṛṣṭa.gātram sadyo.dauta.hasta.pādam vā,-

KAZ04.6.18e/ pāmsu.picchileṣu tulya.pāda.pada.nikṣepam, praveśa.niṣkasanayor vā

tulya.mālya.madya.gandha.vastrac.cheda.vilepana.svedaṃ parīkṣeta | 18 |

KAZ04.6.19/ coram pāradārikam vā vidyāt | 19 |

KAZ04.6.20ab/ sagopa.sthāniko bāhyam pradeṣṭā cora.mārgaṇam |

KAZ04.6.20cd/ kuryān nāgarikaś ca-antar.durge nirdiṣṭa.hetubhiḥ || 20 ||

4.7 Chapter 7 (Section 82): Inquest on Sudden Deaths

168

KAZ04.7.01/ taila.abhyaktam āśu.mṛtakam parīkṣeta | 1 |

KAZ04.7.02/ niṣkīrṇa.mūtra.purīṣam vāta.pūrṇa.koṣṭha.tvakkam śūna.pāda.pāṇimān mīlita.akṣam savyaṅjana.kanṭham pītana.niruddha.ucchvāsa.hatam vidyāt | 2 |

KAZ04.7.03/ tam eva saṅkucita.bāhu.sakthim udbandha.hatam vidyāt | 3 |

KAZ04.7.04/ śūna.pāṇi.pāda.udaram apagata.akṣam udvṛtta.nābhim avaropitam vidyāt | 4 |

KAZ04.7.05/ nistabdha.guda.akṣam sandaṣṭa.jihvam ādhmāta.udaram udaka.hatam vidyāt | 5 |

KAZ04.7.06/ śoṇita.anusiktam bhagna.bhinna.gātram kāṣṭhair āsmabhir vā hatam vidyāt | 6 |

KAZ04.7.07/ sambhagna.sphuṭita.gātram avakṣiptam vidyāt | 7 |

KAZ04.7.08/ śyāva.pāṇi.pāda.danta.nakham śithila.māmsa.roma.carmāṇam phena.upadigdha.mukham viṣa.hatam vidyāt | 8 |

KAZ04.7.09/ tam eva sa-śoṇita.damśam sarpa.kīṭa.hatam vidyāt | 9 |

KAZ04.7.10/ vikṣipta.vastra.gātram ativanta.viriktam madana.yoga.hatam vidyāt | 10 |

KAZ04.7.11/ ato 'nyatamena kāraṇena hatam hatvā vā daṇḍa.bhayād udbaddha.nikṛta.kanṭham vidyāt | 11 |

KAZ04.7.12/ viṣa.hatasya bhojana.śeṣam vayobhiḥ parīkṣeta | 12 |

KAZ04.7.13/ hr̥dayād uddhr̥tya-agnau prakṣiptam ciṭciṭāyad.indra.dhanur.varṇam vā viṣa.yuktam vidyāt, dagdhasya hr̥dayam adagdham dr̥ṣṭvā vā | 13 |

¹⁶⁸[K tr. 314 :: K2 tr. 272

- KAZ04.7.14/ tasya paricāraka.janaṁ vāg.daṇḍa.pāruṣya.atilabdhaṁ mārgeta,
duḥkha.upahataṁ anya.prasaktaṁ vā strī.janaṁ, dāya.vṛtti.strī.jana.abhimantāraṁ vā
bandhum | 14 |
- KAZ04.7.15/ tad eva hata.udbaddhasya parīkṣeta | 15 |
- KAZ04.7.16/ svayam udbaddhasya vā viprakāram ayuktaṁ mārgeta | 16 |
- KAZ04.7.17/ sarveṣāṁ vā strī.dāyādya.doṣaḥ karma.spardhā pratipakṣa.dveṣaḥ
paṇya.samsthā.samavāyo vā vivāda.padānāṁ anyatamad vā roṣa.sthānam | 17 |
- KAZ04.7.18/ roṣa.nimitto ghātaḥ | 18 |
- KAZ04.7.19/ svayaṁ.ādiṣṭa.puruṣair vā, corair artha.nimittaṁ, sādṛśyād anya.vairibhir vā
hatasya ghātaṁ āsannebhyaḥ parīkṣeta | 19 |
- KAZ04.7.20/ yena-āhūtaḥ saha sthitaḥ prasthito hata.bhūmim ānīto vā tam anuyuñjīta | 20 |
- KAZ04.7.21/ ye ca-asya hata.bhūmāv āsanna.carās tān eka.ekaśaḥ pṛcchet "kena-ayam
iha-ānīto hato vā, kaḥ sa.śastraḥ saṅgūhamāna udvigno vā yuṣmābhir dṛṣṭaḥ" iti | 21 |
- KAZ04.7.22/ te yathā brūyus tathā-anuyuñjīta | 22 |
- KAZ04.7.23ab/ anāthasya śarīra.stham upabhogaṁ paricchadam |
- KAZ04.7.23cd/ vastraṁ veṣaṁ vibhūṣāṁ vā dṛṣṭvā tad.vyavahāriṇaḥ || 23 ||
- KAZ04.7.24ab/ anuyuñjīta saṁyogaṁ nivāsaṁ vāsa.kāraṇam |
- KAZ04.7.24cd/ karma ca vyavahāraṁ ca tato mārgaṇam ācaret || 24 ||
- KAZ04.7.25ab/ rajju.śastra.viṣair vā-api kāma.krodha.vaśena yaḥ |
- KAZ04.7.25cd/ ghātayet svayam ātmānaṁ strī vā pāpena mohitā || 25 ||
- KAZ04.7.26ab/ rajjunā rāja.mārge tānś caṇḍālena-apakarṣayet |
- KAZ04.7.26cd/ na śmaśāna.vidhis teṣāṁ na sambandhi.kriyās tathā || 26 ||
- KAZ04.7.27ab/ bandhus teṣāṁ tu yaḥ kuryāt preta.kārya.kriyā.vidhim |
- KAZ04.7.27cd/ tad.gatiṁ sa caret paścāt sva.janād vā pramucyate || 27 ||
- KAZ04.7.28ab/ saṁvatsareṇa patati patitena samācaran |
- KAZ04.7.28cd/ yājana.adhyāpanād yaunāt taiś ca-anyo 'pi samācaran || 28 ||

4.8 Chapter 8 (Section 83): Investigation through Interrogation and through Torture

169

- KAZ04.8.01/ muṣita.sannidhau bāhyānām abhyantarāṇāṁ ca sākṣiṇām abhiśastasya
deśa.jāti.gotra.nāma.karma.sāra.sahāya.nivāsān anuyuñjīta | 1 |
- KAZ04.8.02/ tānś ca-apadeśaiḥ pratisamānayet | 2 |
- KAZ04.8.03/ tataḥ pūrvasya-ahnaḥ pracāraṁ rātrau nivāsaṁ cā grahaṇād ity anuyuñjīta | 3 |
- KAZ04.8.04/ tasya-apasāra.pratisandhāne śuddhaḥ syāt, anyathā karma.prāptaḥ | 4 |
- KAZ04.8.05/ tri.rātrād ūrdhvam agrāhyaḥ śaṅkitakaḥ pṛcchā.abhāvād
anyatra-upakaraṇa.darśanāt | 5 |
- KAZ04.8.06/ acoraṁ cora ity abhivyāharataś cora.samo daṇḍaḥ, coraṁ pracchādayataś ca |
6 |
- KAZ04.8.07/ coreṇa-abhiśasto vaira.dveṣābhyām apadiṣṭakaḥ śuddhaḥ syāt | 7 |
- KAZ04.8.08/ śuddhaṁ parivāsayataḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 8 |
- KAZ04.8.09/ śaṅkā.niṣpannam upakaraṇa.mantri.sahāya.rūpa.vaiyāvṛtya.karān niṣpādayet |
9 |
- KAZ04.8.10/ karmaṇaś ca pradeśa.dravya.ādāna.amśa.vibhāgaiḥ pratisamānayet | 10 |
- KAZ04.8.11/ eteṣāṁ kāraṇānām anabhisandhāne vipralapantam acoraṁ vidyāt | 11 |

¹⁶⁹[K tr. 317 :: K2 tr. 274

- KAZ04.8.12/ dr̥śyate hy acoro 'pi cora.mārge yadṛcchayā sannipāte
cora.veṣa.śāstra.bhāṇḍa.sāmānyena gr̥hyamāṇaś cora.bhāṇḍasya-upavāsenā vā,
yathā-aṇi.māṇḍavyaḥ karma.kleśa.bhayād acoraḥ "coro 'smi" iti bruvāṇaḥ | 12 |
- KAZ04.8.13/ tasmāt samāpta.karaṇaṁ niyamayet | 13 |
- KAZ04.8.14/ manda.aparādhaṁ bālaṁ vṛddhaṁ vyādhitaṁ mattam unmattaṁ
kṣut.pipāsā.adhva.klāntaṁ atyāśitaṁ āmaka.aśitaṁ durbalaṁ vā na karma kārayet | 14 |
- KAZ04.8.15/ tulya śīla.puṁścalī.prāpāvika.kathā.avakāśa.bhojana.dātṛbhir apasarpayet | 15 |
- KAZ04.8.16/ evaṁ atisandadhyāt, yathā vā nikṣepa.apahāre vyākhyātam | 16 |
- KAZ04.8.17/ āpta.doṣaṁ karma kārayet, na tv eva striyaṁ garbhīṇīm sūtikām vā
māsa.avara.prajātām | 17 |
- KAZ04.8.18/ striyās tv ardha.karma, vākya.anuyogo vā | 18 |
- KAZ04.8.19/ brāhmaṇasya sattri.parigrahaḥ śrutavatas tapasvinaś ca | 19 |
- KAZ04.8.20/ tasya-atikrama uttamo daṇḍaḥ kartuḥ kārayituś ca, karmaṇā vyāpādanena ca | 20 |
- KAZ04.8.21/ vyāvahārikaṁ karma.catuṣkaṁ - ṣaḍ daṇḍāḥ, sapta kaśāḥ, dvāv
upari.nibandhau, udaka.nālikā ca | 21 |
- KAZ04.8.22/ paraṁ pāpa.karmaṇāṁ nava vetra.latāḥ, dvādaśa kaśāḥ, dvāv ūru.veṣṭau,
viṁśatir nakta.māla.latāḥ, dvātrimśat.talāḥ, dvau vṛścika.bandhau, ullambane ca dve, sūcī
hastasya, yavāgū.pīṭasya eka.parva.dahanam aṅgulyāḥ, sneha.pīṭasya pratāpanam ekam ahaḥ,
śīsira.rātrau balbaja.agra.śayyā ca | 22 |
- KAZ04.8.23/ ity aṣṭādaśakaṁ karma | 23 |
- KAZ04.8.24/ tasya.upakaraṇaṁ pramāṇaṁ praharaṇaṁ pradharanaṁ avadhāraṇaṁ ca
khara.paṭṭād āgamayet | 24 |
- KAZ04.8.25/ divasa.antaram eka.ekaṁ ca karma kārayet | 25 |
- KAZ04.8.26/ pūrva.kṛta.apadānaṁ pratijñāya-apaharantaṁ eka.deśa.dr̥ṣṭa.dravyaṁ karmaṇā
rūpeṇa vā gr̥hitaṁ rāja.kośam avastr̥ṇantaṁ karma.vadhyāṁ vā rāja.vacanāt samastaṁ
vyastam abhyastaṁ vā karma kārayet | 26 |
- KAZ04.8.27/ sarva.aparādheśv apīdanīyo brāhmaṇaḥ | 27 |
- KAZ04.8.28/ tasya-abhiśasta.aṅko lalāṭe syād vyavahāra.patanāya, steyo śvā, manuṣya.vadhe
kabandhaḥ, guru.talpe bhagam, surā.pāne madya.dhvajaḥ | 28 |
- KAZ04.8.29ab/ brāhmaṇaṁ pāpa.karmāṇam udghuṣya-aṅka.kṛta.vraṇam |
- KAZ04.8.29cd/ kuryān nirviṣayaṁ rājā vāsayed ākareṣu vā || 29 ||

4.9 Chapter 9 (Section 84): Keeping a Watch over Departments

170

- KAZ04.9.01/ samāhartr̥.pradeṣṭāraḥ pūrvam adhyakṣaṇāṁ adhyakṣa.puruṣaṇāṁ ca
niyamaṇaṁ kuryuḥ | 1 |
- KAZ04.9.02/ khani.sāra.karma.antebhyaḥ sārāṁ ratnaṁ vā-apaharataḥ śuddha.vadhaḥ | 2 |
- KAZ04.9.03/ phalgu.dravya.karma.antebhyaḥ phalgu dravyam upaskaraṁ vā pūrvaḥ
sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 3 |
- KAZ04.9.04/ paṇya.bhūmibhyo vā rāja.paṇyaṁ māṣa.mūlyād ūrdhvam āpāda.mūlyād ity
apaharato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, ā.dvi.pāda.mūlyād iti catur.viṁśati.paṇaḥ,
ā.tri.pāda.mūlyād iti ṣaṭ.triṁśat.paṇaḥ, ā.paṇa.mūlyād ity aṣṭa.catvāriṁśat.paṇaḥ,
ā.dvi.paṇa.mūlyād iti pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, ā.catuṣpaṇa.mūlyād iti madhyamaḥ,
ā.aṣṭa.paṇa.mūlyād ity uttamaḥ, ā.daśa.paṇa.mūlyād iti vadhaḥ | 4 |

¹⁷⁰[K tr. 321 :: K2 tr. 277

- KAZ04.9.05/ koṣṭha.paṇya.kupya.āyudha.agārebhyaḥ kupya.bhāṇḍa.upaskara.apahāreṣv ardha.mūlyeṣu eta eva daṇḍāḥ | 5 |
- KAZ04.9.06/ kośa.bhāṇḍa.agāra.akṣa.śālābhyaś catur.bhāga.mūlyeṣu eta eva dvi.guṇā daṇḍāḥ | 6 |
- KAZ04.9.07/ corāṇām abhipradharṣaṇe citro ghātaḥ | 7 |
- KAZ04.9.08/ iti rāja.parigraheṣu vyākhyātam | 8 |
- KAZ04.9.09/ bāhyeṣu tu - pracchannam ahani kṣetra.khala.veśma.āpaṇebhyaḥ kupya.bhāṇḍam upaskaram vā māśa.mūlyād ūrdhvam ā.pāda.mūlyād iti apaharatas tri.paṇo daṇḍāḥ, gomaya.pradehena vā pralipya-avaghoṣaṇam-ā.dvi.pāda.mūlyād iti ṣaṭ.paṇaḥ, gomaya.bhasmanā vā pralipya-avaghoṣaṇam, ā.tri.pāda.mūlyād iti nava.paṇaḥ, gomaya.bhasmanā vā pralipya-avaghoṣaṇam, śarāva.mekhalayā vā-ā.paṇa.mūlyād iti dvādaśa.paṇaḥ, muṇḍanaṁ pravrajanaṁ vā-ā.dvi.paṇa.mūlyād iti catur.vimśati.paṇaḥ, muṇḍasya-iṣṭakā.śakalena pravrajanaṁ vā- ā.catuṣ.paṇa.mūlyād iti ṣaṭ.trimśat.paṇaḥ-ā.pañca.paṇa.mūlyād iti aṣṭa.catvāriṁśat.paṇaḥ, ā.daśa.paṇa.mūlyād iti pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍāḥ- ā.vimśati.paṇa.mūlyād it dviśataḥ-ā.trimśat.paṇa.mūlyād iti pañca.śataḥ-ā.catvāriṁśat.paṇa.mūlyād iti sāhasrah- ā.pañcāśat.paṇa.mūlyād iti vadhaḥ | 9 |
- KAZ04.9.10/ prasahya divā rātrau vā-āntaryāmikam apaharato 'rdha.mūlyeṣu eta eva daṇḍāḥ | 10 |
- KAZ04.9.11/ prasahya divā rātrau vā sa-śastrasya-apaharataś catur.bhāga.mūlyeṣu eta eva dvi.guṇā daṇḍāḥ | 11 |
- KAZ04.9.12/ kuṭumbika.adhyakṣa.mukhya.svāminām kūṭa.śāsana.mudrā.karmasu pūrva.madhyam.uttama.vadhā daṇḍāḥ, yathā.aparādham vā | 12 |
- KAZ04.9.13/ dharmasthaś ced vivadamānaṁ puruṣaṁ tarjayati bhartsayaty apasārayaty abhigrasate vā pūrvam asmai sāhasa.daṇḍam kuryāt, vāk.pāruṣye dvi.guṇam | 13 |
- KAZ04.9.14/ prcchyaṁ na prcchati, aprcchyaṁ prcchati, prṣṭvā vā visrjati, śikṣayati, smārayati, pūrvam dadāti vā, iti madhyamam asmai sāhasa.daṇḍam kuryāt | 14 |
- KAZ04.9.15/ deyaṁ deśaṁ na prcchati, adeyaṁ deśaṁ prcchati, kāryam adeśena-ativāhayati, chalena-atiharati, kāla.haraṇena śrāntam apavāhayati, mārگا.āpannam vākyam utkramayati, mati.sāhāyyaṁ sākṣibhyo dadāti, tārita.anuśiṣṭaṁ kāryaṁ punar api grhṇāti, uttamam asmai sāhasa.daṇḍam kuryāt | 15 |
- KAZ04.9.16/ punar.aparādhe dvi.guṇam sthānād vyavaropaṇam ca | 16 |
- KAZ04.9.17/ lekhakaś ced uktaṁ na likhati, anuktaṁ likhati, duruktam upalikhati, sūktam ullikhati, artha.utpattiṁ vā vikalpayati, iti pūrvam asmai sāhasa.daṇḍam kuryād, yathā.aparādham vā | 17 |
- KAZ04.9.18/ dharmasthaḥ pradeṣṭā vā hairaṇya.daṇḍam adaṇḍye kṣipati kṣepa.dvi.guṇam asmai daṇḍam kuryāt, hīna.atirikta.aṣṭa.guṇam vā | 18 |
- KAZ04.9.19/ śārīra.daṇḍam kṣipati śārīram eva daṇḍam bhajeta, niṣkraya.dvi.guṇam vā | 19 |
- KAZ04.9.20/ yaṁ vā bhūtam arthaṁ nāśayati abhūtam arthaṁ karoti tad.aṣṭa.guṇam daṇḍam dadyāt | 20 |
- KAZ04.9.21/ dharmasthīye cārake bandhana.agāre vā śāyā.āsana.bhojana.uccāra.sañcāra.rodha.bandhaneṣu tri.paṇa.uttarā daṇḍāḥ kartuḥ kārayituś ca | 21 |
- KAZ04.9.22/ cārakād abhiyuktaṁ muñcato niṣpātayato vā madhyamaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍāḥ, abhiyoga.dānaṁ ca, bandhana.agārāt sarva.svaṁ vadhaś ca | 22 |
- KAZ04.9.23/ bandhana.agāra.adhyakṣasya samruddhakam anākhyāya cārayataś catur.vimśati.paṇo daṇḍāḥ, karma kārayato dvi.guṇaḥ, sthāna.anyatvaṁ gamayato 'nna.pānaṁ vā rundhataḥ ṣaṇ.ṇavatir daṇḍāḥ, parikleśayata utkoṭayato vā madhyamaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍāḥ, ghnataḥ sāhasrah | 23 |

KAZ04.9.24/ parigr̥hītām dāsīm āhitikām vā saṁruddhikām adhicarataḥ pūrvah
 sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, cora.ḍāmarika.bhāryām madhyamaḥ, saṁruddhikām āryām uttamaḥ | 24 |
 KAZ04.9.25/ saṁruddhasya vā tatra-eva ghātaḥ | 25 |
 KAZ04.9.26/ tad eva-akṣaṇa.gr̥hītāyām āryāyām vidyāt, dāsyaṁ pūrvah sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 26 |
 KAZ04.9.27/ cārakam abhittvā niṣpātayato madhyamaḥ, bhittvā vadhaḥ, bandhana.agārāt
 sarva.svaṁ vadhaś ca | 27 |
 KAZ04.9.28ab/ evam artha.carān pūrvam rājā daṇḍena śodhayet |
 KAZ04.9.28cd/ śodhayeyuś ca śuddhās te paura.jānapadān damaiḥ || 28 ||

4.10 Chapter 10 (Section 85): Redemption from Corporal Punishment

171

KAZ04.10.01/ tīrtha.ghāta.granthi.bheda.ūrdhva.karāṇām prathame 'parādhe
 sandeśac.chedanam catuṣ.pañcāśat.paṇo vā daṇḍaḥ, dvitīye chedanam pañasya śatyō vā
 daṇḍaḥ, tṛtīye dakṣiṇa.hasta.vadhaś catuḥ.śato vā daṇḍaḥ, caturthe yathā.kāmī vadhaḥ | 1 |
 KAZ04.10.02/ pañca.vimśati.paṇa.avareṣu kukkuṭa.nakula.mārjāra.śva.sūkara.steyeṣu
 himsāyām vā catuṣ.pañcāśat.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, nāsa.agrac.chedanam vā- caṇḍāla.aranya.carāṇam
 ardha.daṇḍaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ04.10.03/ pāśa.jāla.kūṭa.avapāteṣu baddhānām mṛga.paśu.pakṣi.vyāla.matsyānām ādāne
 tac ca tāvac ca daṇḍaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ04.10.04/ mṛga.dravya.vanān mṛga.dravya.apahāre śatyō daṇḍaḥ | 4 |
 KAZ04.10.05/ bimba.vihāra.mṛga.pakṣi.steye himsāyām vā dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ04.10.06/ kāru.śilpi.kuśīlava.tapasvinām kṣudraka.dravya.apahāre śatyō daṇḍaḥ,
 sthūlaka.dravya.apahāre dvi.śataḥ, kṛṣi.dravya.apahāre ca | 6 |
 KAZ04.10.07/ durgam akṛta.praveśasya praviśataḥ prākārac.chidrād vā nikṣepaṁ
 gr̥hītvā-apasarataḥ kāṇḍarā.vadho, dvi.śato vā daṇḍaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ04.10.08/ cakra.yuktaṁ nāvaṁ kṣudra.paśuṁ vā-apaharata eka.pāda.vadhaḥ, tri.śato vā
 daṇḍaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ04.10.09/ kūṭa.kākaṇy.akṣa.arālā.śālākā.hasta.viṣama.kāriṇa eka.hasta.vadhaḥ,
 catuḥ.śato vā daṇḍaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ04.10.10/ stena.pāradārikayoḥ sāvīya.karmaṇi striyāḥ saṅgr̥hītāyāś ca
 karṇa.nāsac.chedanam, pañca.śato vā daṇḍaḥ, puṁṣo dvi.guṇaḥ | 10 |
 KAZ04.10.11/ mahā.paśuṁ ekaṁ dāsaṁ dāsīm vā-apaharataḥ preta.bhāṇḍaṁ vā
 vikrīṇānasya dvi.pāda.vadhaḥ, ṣaṭ.chato vā daṇḍaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ04.10.12/ varṇa.uttamānām gurūṇām ca hasta.pāda.laṅghane
 rāja.yāna.vāhana.ādy.ārohaṇe ca-eka.hasta.pāda.vadhaḥ, sapta.śato vā daṇḍaḥ | 12 |
 KAZ04.10.13/ śūdrasya brāhmaṇa.vādinō deva.dravyam avastr̥ṇato rāja.dviṣṭam ādiśato
 dvi.netra.bhedinaś ca yoga.añjanena-andhatvam, aṣṭa.śato vā daṇḍaḥ | 13 |
 KAZ04.10.14/ coraṁ pāradārikaṁ vā mokṣayato rāja.śāsanam ūnam atiriktaṁ vā likhataḥ
 kanyām dāsīm vā sa-hiraṇyam aparahataḥ kūṭa.vyavahāriṇo vimāṁsa.vikrayiṇaś ca
 vāma.hasta.dvi.pāda.vadho, nava.śato vā daṇḍaḥ | 14 |
 KAZ04.10.15/ mānuṣa.māṁsa.vikraye vadhaḥ | 15 |
 KAZ04.10.16/
 deva.paśu.pratimā.manuṣya.kṣetra.gr̥ha.hiraṇya.suvarṇa.ratna.sasya.apahāriṇa uttamo
 daṇḍaḥ, śuddha.vadho vā | 16 |
 KAZ04.10.17ab/ puruṣaṁ ca-aparādham ca kāraṇaṁ guru.lāghavam |
 KAZ04.10.17cd/ anubandham tadātvam ca deśa.kālau samīkṣya ca || 17 ||

¹⁷¹[K tr. 325 :: K2 tr. 281

KAZ04.10.18ab/ uttama.avara.madhyatvaṃ pradeṣṭā daṇḍa.karmaṇi |
KAZ04.10.18cd/ rājñaś ca prakṛtīnām ca kalpayed antarā sthitaḥ || 18 ||

4.11 Chapter 11 (Section 86): Capital Punishment

172

KAZ04.11.01/ kalahe ghnataḥ puruṣaṃ citro ghātaḥ | 1 |
KAZ04.11.02/ sapta.rātrasya-antar.mṛte śuddha.vadhaḥ, pakṣasya-antar uttamaḥ,
māsasya-antaḥ pañca.śataḥ samutthāna.vyayaś ca | 2 |
KAZ04.11.03/ śāstreṇa praharata uttamo daṇḍaḥ | 3 |
KAZ04.11.04/ madena hasta.vadhaḥ, mohena dvi.śataḥ | 4 |
KAZ04.11.05/ vadhe vadhaḥ | 5 |
KAZ04.11.06/ prahāreṇa garbhaṃ pātayata uttamo daṇḍaḥ, bhaiṣajyena madhyamaḥ,
parikleśena pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 6 |
KAZ04.11.07/ prasabha.strī.puruṣa.ghātaka.abhisāraka.nigrāhaka.avaghoṣaka.-
avaskandaka.upavedhakān pathi.veśma.pratirodhakān rāja.hasty.aśva.rathānām himsakān
stenān vā śūlān ārohayeyuḥ | 7 |
KAZ04.11.08/ yaś ca-enān dahed apanayed vā sa tam eva daṇḍaṃ labheta, sāhasam uttamaṃ
vā | 8 |
KAZ04.11.09/ himsra.stenānām
bhakta.vāsa.upakaraṇa.agni.mantra.dāna.vaiyāvṛtya.karmasu-uttamo daṇḍaḥ, paribhāṣaṇam
avijñāte | 9 |
KAZ04.11.10/ himsra.stenānām putra.dāram asamantraṃ visṛjet, samantram ādadīta | 10 |
KAZ04.11.11/ rājya.kāmukam antaḥpura.pradharsakam aṭavy.amitra.utsāhakaṃ
durga.rāṣṭra.daṇḍa.kopakam vā śīro.hasta.prādīpikam ghātayet | 11 |
KAZ04.11.12/ brāhmaṇaṃ tamaḥ praveśayet | 12 |
KAZ04.11.13/ mātṛ.pitṛ.putra.bhrātr.ācārya.tapasvi.ghātakaṃ vā-a.tvak.śiraḥ.prādīpikam
ghātayet | 13 |
KAZ04.11.14/ teṣāṃ ākrośe jihvāc.chedaḥ, aṅga.abhiradane tad.aṅgān mocyaḥ | 14 |
KAZ04.11.15/ yadṛcchā.ghāte puṃsaḥ paśu.yūtha.steye ca śuddha.vadhaḥ | 15 |
KAZ04.11.16/ daśa.avaraṃ ca yūthaṃ vidyāt | 16 |
KAZ04.11.17/ udaka.dhāraṇaṃ setuṃ bhindatas tatra-eva-apsu nimajjanam, anudakam
uttamaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, bhagna.utsṛṣṭakaṃ madhyamaḥ | 17 |
KAZ04.11.18/ viṣa.dāyakaṃ puruṣaṃ striyaṃ ca puruṣaghnīm apaḥ praveśayed agarbhiṇīm,
garbhiṇīm māsava.prajātām | 18 |
KAZ04.11.19/ pati.guru.prajā.ghātikām agni.viṣadām sandhic.chedikām vā gobhiḥ pātayet |
19 |
KAZ04.11.20/ vivīta.kṣetra.khala.veśma.dravya.hasti.vana.ādīpikam agninā dāhayet | 20 |
KAZ04.11.21/ rāja.ākrośaka.mantra.bhedakayor aniṣṭa.pravṛttikasya
brāhmaṇa.mahānasa.avalehinaś ca jihvām utpātayet | 21 |
KAZ04.11.22/ praharaṇa.āvaraṇa.stenam anāyudhīyam iṣubhir ghātayet | 22 |
KAZ04.11.23/ āyudhīyasya-uttamaḥ | 23 |
KAZ04.11.24/ meḍhra.phala.upaghātinā tad evac-chedayet | 24 |
KAZ04.11.25/ jihvā.nāsa.upaghāte sandaṃśa.vadhaḥ | 25 |
KAZ04.11.26ab/ ete śāstreṣv anugatāḥ kleśa.daṇḍā mahātmanām |
KAZ04.11.26cd/ akliṣṭānām tu pāpānām dharmyaḥ śuddha.vadhaḥ smrtaḥ || 26 ||

¹⁷²[K tr. 327 :: K2 tr. 283

4.12 Chapter 12 (Section 87): Violation of Maidens

173

- KAZ04.12.01/ savarṇām aprāpta.phalām prakurvato hasta.vadhaḥ, catuḥ.śato vā daṇḍaḥ | 1 |
- KAZ04.12.02/ mṛtāyām vadhaḥ | 2 |
- KAZ04.12.03/ prāpta.phalām prakurvato madhyamā.pradeśinī.vadho, dvi.śato vā daṇḍaḥ | 3 |
- KAZ04.12.04/ pituś ca-avahīnaṁ dadyāt | 4 |
- KAZ04.12.05/ na ca prākāmyam akāmāyām labbheta | 5 |
- KAZ04.12.06/ sakāmāyām catuḥ.pañcāśat.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, striyās tv ardha.daṇḍaḥ | 6 |
- KAZ04.12.07/ para.śulka.avaruddhāyām hasta.vadhaḥ, catuḥ.śato vā daṇḍaḥ, śulka.dānaṁ ca | 7 |
- KAZ04.12.08/ sapta.ārtava.prajātām varaṇād ūrdhvam alabhamānaḥ prakṛtya prākāmī syāt, na ca pitur avahīnaṁ dadyāt | 8 |
- KAZ04.12.09/ ṛtu.pratirodhibhiḥ svāmyād apakrāmati | 9 |
- KAZ04.12.10/ tri.varṣa.prajāta.ārtavāyās tulyo gantum adoṣaḥ, tataḥ param atulyo 'py analaṅkṛtāyāḥ | 10 |
- KAZ04.12.11/ pitṛ.dravya.ādāne steyaṁ bhajeta | 11 |
- KAZ04.12.12/ param uddiśya-anyaśya vindato dvi.śato daṇḍaḥ | 12 |
- KAZ04.12.13/ na ca prākāmyam akāmāyām labbheta | 13 |
- KAZ04.12.14/ kanyām anyām darśayitvā-anyām prayacchataḥ śatyō daṇḍas tulyāyām, hīnāyām dvi.guṇaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ04.12.15/ prakarmaṇy akumāryāś catuḥ.pañcāśat.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, śulka.vyaya.karmaṇī ca pratidadyāt | 15 |
- KAZ04.12.16/ avasthāya taj.jātaṁ paścāt.kṛtā dvi.guṇaṁ dadyāt | 16 |
- KAZ04.12.17/ anya.śoṇita.upadhāne dviśato daṇḍaḥ, mithyā.abhiśamsinaś ca pumsaḥ | 17 |
- KAZ04.12.18/ śulka.vyaya.karmaṇī ca jīyeta | 18 |
- KAZ04.12.19/ na ca prākāmyam akāmāyām labbheta | 19 |
- KAZ04.12.20/ strī.prakṛtā sakāmā samānā dvādaśa.paṇaṁ daṇḍaṁ dadyāt, prakartrī dvi.guṇaṁ | 20 |
- KAZ04.12.21/ akāmāyāḥ śatyō daṇḍa ātma.rāga.artham, śulka.dānaṁ ca | 21 |
- KAZ04.12.22/ svayaṁ prakṛtā rāja.dāsyam gacchet | 22 |
- KAZ04.12.23/ bahir.grāmasya prakṛtāyām mithyā.abhiśamsane ca dvi.guṇo daṇḍaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ04.12.24/ prasahya kanyām apaharato dvi.śataḥ, sa-savarṇām uttamaḥ | 24 |
- KAZ04.12.25/ bahūnām kanyā.apahāriṇām pṛthag yathā.uktā daṇḍāḥ | 25 |
- KAZ04.12.26/ gaṇikā.duhitaraṁ prakurvataś catuḥ.pañcāśat.paṇo daṇḍaḥ, śulkaṁ mātūr bhogaḥ ṣoḍaśa.guṇaḥ | 26 |
- 04.12.27/ dāsasya dāsyā vā duhitaram adāsīm prakurvataś catur.vimśati.paṇo daṇḍaḥ śulka.ābandhya.dānaṁ ca | 27 |
- KAZ04.12.28/ niṣkraya.anurūpām dāsīm prakurvato dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍo vastra.ābandhya.dānaṁ ca | 28 |
- KAZ04.12.29/ sācivya.avakāśa.dāne kartṛ.samo daṇḍaḥ | 29 |
- KAZ04.12.30/ proṣita.patikām apacarantīm pati.bandhus tat.puruṣo vā saṅgrhṇīyāt | 30 |
- KAZ04.12.31/ saṅgrhītā patim ākāṅkṣeta | 31 |
- KAZ04.12.32/ patiś cet kṣameta visṛjyeta-ubhayam | 32 |
- KAZ04.12.33/ akṣamāyām striyāḥ karṇa.nāsa.ācchedanam, vadhaṁ jāraś ca prāpnuyāt | 33 |

¹⁷³[K tr. 330 :: K2 tr. 285

KAZ04.12.34/ jāraṁ cora ity abhiharataḥ pañca.śato daṇḍaḥ, hiraṇyena muñcatas tad.aṣṭa.guṇaḥ | 34 |
 KAZ04.12.35/ keśākeśikaṁ saṅgrahaṇam, upaliṅganād vā śarīra.upabhogānām, taj.jātebhyaḥ (taj.jñātebhyaḥ? cf. N12.60), strī.vacanād vā | 35 |
 KAZ04.12.36/ para.cakra.aṭavī.hṛtām ogha.pravyūdhām araṇyeṣu durbhikṣe vā tyaktām preta.bhāva.utsṛṣṭām vā para.striyaṁ nistārayitvā yathā.sambhāṣitaṁ samupabhuñjita | 36 |
 KAZ04.12.37/ jāti.viśiṣṭām akāmām apatyavatīm niṣkrayaṇa dadyāt | 37 |
 KAZ04.12.38ab/ cora.hastān nadī.vegād durbhikṣād deśa.vibhramāt |
 KAZ04.12.38cd/ nistārayitvā kāntārān naṣṭām tyaktām mṛtā-iti vā || 38 ||
 KAZ04.12.39ab/ bhuñjita striyam anyeṣāṁ yathā.sambhāṣitaṁ naraḥ |
 KAZ04.12.39cd/ na tu rāja.pratāpena pramuktām svajanena vā || 39 ||
 KAZ04.12.40ab/ na ca-uttamām na ca-akāmām pūrva.apatyavatīm na ca |
 KAZ04.12.40cd/ idṛśīm tv anurūpeṇa niṣkrayaṇa-apavāhayet || 40 ||

4.13 Chapter 13 (Section 88): Punishment for Transgressions

174

KAZ04.13.01/ brāhmaṇam apeyam abhakṣyaṁ vā grāsayata uttamo daṇḍaḥ, kṣatriyaṁ madhyamaḥ, vaiśyaṁ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, śūdraṁ catuṣ.pañcāśat.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 1 |
 KAZ04.13.02/ svayaṁ grāsītāro nirviṣayaḥ kāryaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ04.13.03/ para.gr̥ha.abhigamane divā pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, rātrau madhyamaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ04.13.04/ divā rātrau vā saśastrasya praviśata uttamo daṇḍaḥ | 4 |
 KAZ04.13.05/ bhikṣuka.vaidehakau matta.unmattau balād āpadi ca-atisannikṣṭaḥ pravṛtta.praveśāś ca-adaṇḍyaḥ, anyatra pratiṣedhāt | 5 |
 KAZ04.13.06/ sva.veśmano virātrād ūrdhvaṁ parivāram ārohataḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, para.veśmano madhyamaḥ, grāma.ārāma.vāṭa.bhedinaś ca | 6 |
 KAZ04.13.07/ grāmeṣv antaḥ sārthikā jñāta.sārā vaseyuḥ | 7 |
 KAZ04.13.08/ muṣitaṁ pravāsitaṁ ca-eṣām anirgataṁ rātrau grāma.svāmī dadyāt | 8 |
 KAZ04.13.09/ grāma.antareṣu vā muṣitaṁ pravāsitaṁ vivīta.adhyakṣo dadyāt | 9 |
 KAZ04.13.10/ avivītānām cora.rajjukah | 10 |
 KAZ04.13.11/ tathā-apy aguptānām sīma.avarodhena vicayaṁ dadyuḥ | 11 |
 KAZ04.13.12/ aśīma.avarodhe pañca.grāmī daśa.grāmī vā | 12 |
 KAZ04.13.13/ durbalaṁ veśma śakaṭam anuttabdham ūrdha.stambhaṁ śastram anapāśrayam apraticchannaṁ śvabhraṁ kūpaṁ kūṭa.avapātaṁ vā kṛtvā himsāyām daṇḍa.pāruṣyaṁ vidyāt | 13 |
 KAZ04.13.14/ vṛkṣac.chedane daṁya.raśmi.haraṇe catuṣpadānām adānta.sevane vāhane vā kāṣṭha.loṣṭa.pāṣāṇa.daṇḍa.bāṇa.bāhu.vikṣepaṇeṣu yāne hastinā ca smaghaṭṭane "apehi" iti prakośann adaṇḍyaḥ | 14 |
 KAZ04.13.15/ hastinā roṣitena hato droṇa.annaṁ madya.kumbhaṁ mālya.anulepanaṁ danta.pramārjanaṁ ca paṭaṁ dadyāt | 15 |
 KAZ04.13.16/ aśva.medha.avabhṛtha.snānena tulyo hastinā vadha iti pāda.prakṣālanam | 16 |
 KAZ04.13.17/ udāsīna.vadhe yātur uttamo daṇḍaḥ | 17 |
 KAZ04.13.18/ śṛṅgiṇā daṁṣṭriṇā vā himsyamānam amokṣayataḥ svāmīnaḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, pratikruṣṭasya dvi.guṇaḥ | 18 |
 KAZ04.13.19/ śṛṅgi.daṁṣṭribhyaṁ anyonyaṁ ghātayatas tac ca tāvac ca daṇḍaḥ | 19 |
 KAZ04.13.20/ deva.paśum ṛṣabham ukṣāṇaṁ go.kumārīm vā vāhayataḥ pañca.śato daṇḍaḥ, pravāsayata uttamaḥ | 20 |

¹⁷⁴[K tr. 333 :: K2 tr. 288

- KAZ04.13.21/ loma.doha.vāhana.prajanana.upakāriṇām kṣudra.paśūnām adāne tac ca tāvac ca daṇḍaḥ, pravāsane ca, anyatra deva.pitr̥.kāryebhyaḥ | 21 |
- KAZ04.13.22/ chinna.nasyam bhagna.yugam tiryak.pratimukha.āgataṁ pratyāsaraḍ vā cakra.yuktaṁ yātā paśu.manuṣya.sambādhe vā hiṁsāyām adaṇḍyaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ04.13.23/ anyathā yathā.uktaṁ mānuṣa.prāṇi.hiṁsāyām daṇḍam abhyāvahet | 23 |
- KAZ04.13.24/ amānuṣa.prāṇi.vadhe prāṇi.dānam ca | 24 |
- KAZ04.13.25/ bāle yātari yānasthaḥ svāmī daṇḍyaḥ, asvāmini yānasthaḥ, prāpta.vyavahāro vā yātā | 25 |
- KAZ04.13.26/ bāla.adhiṣṭhitam apuruṣam vā yānam rājā haret | 26 |
- KAZ04.13.27/ kṛtya.abhicārābhyām yat.param āpādayet tad.āpādayitavyaḥ | 27 |
- KAZ04.13.28/ kāmam bhāryāyām anicchantyām kanyāyām vā dāra.arthino bhartari bhāryāyā vā saṁvadana.karaṇam | 28 |
- KAZ04.13.29/ anyathā.hiṁsāyām madhyamaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 29 |
- KAZ04.13.30/ mātā.pitror bhaginīm mātulānīm ācāryāṇīm snuṣām duhitaram bhaginīm vā-adhicaratas tri.liṅgac.chedanam vadhaś ca | 30 |
- KAZ04.13.31/ sakāmā tad eva labheta, dāsa.paricāraka.āhitaka.bhuktā ca | 31 |
- KAZ04.13.32/ brāhmaṇyām aguptāyām kṣatriyasya-uttamaḥ, sarva.svaṁ vaiśyasya, śūdraḥ kaṭa.agninā dahyeta | 32 |
- KAZ04.13.33/ sarvatra rāja.bhāryā.gamane kumbhī.pākaḥ | 33 |
- KAZ04.13.34/ śva.pākī.gamane kṛta.kabandha.aṅkaḥ para.viṣayam gacchet, śva.pākatvaṁ vā śūdraḥ | 34 |
- KAZ04.13.35/ śva.pākasya-āryā.gamane vadhaḥ, striyāḥ karṇa.nāsa.ācchedanam | 35 |
- KAZ04.13.36/ pravrajitā.gamane catur.vimśati.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 36 |
- KAZ04.13.37/ sakāmā tad eva labheta | 37 |
- KAZ04.13.38/ rūpa.ājīvāyāḥ prasahya.upabhoge dvādaśa.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 38 |
- KAZ04.13.39/ bahūnām ekām adhicaratām prthak catur.vimśati.paṇo daṇḍaḥ | 39 |
- KAZ04.13.40/ striyam ayonau gacchataḥ pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ, puruṣam adhimehataś ca | 40 |
- KAZ04.13.41ab/ maithune dvādaśa.paṇas tiryag.yoniṣv anātmanaḥ |
- KAZ04.13.41cd/ daivata.pratimānām ca gamane dvi.guṇaḥ smṛtaḥ || 41 ||
- KAZ04.13.42ab/ adaṇḍya.daṇḍane rājño daṇḍas trimśad.guṇo 'mbhasi |
- KAZ04.13.42cd/ varuṇāya pradātavyo brāhmaṇebhyas tataḥ param || 42 ||
- KAZ04.13.43ab/ tena tat pūyate pāpam rājño daṇḍa.apacārajam |
- KAZ04.13.43cd/ śāstā hi varuṇo rājñām mithyā vyācaratām nṛṣu || 43 ||

5 Book 5: Secret Conduct

175

5.1 Chapter 1 (Section 89): Infliction of Secret Punishment

176

- KAZ05.1.01/ durga.rāṣṭrayoḥ kaṇṭaka.śodhanam uktaṁ | 1 |
- KAZ05.1.02/ rāja.rājyayor vakṣyāmaḥ | 2 |
- KAZ05.1.03/ rājānam avagr̥hya-upajīvināḥ śatru.sādhāraṇā vā ye mukhyās teṣu gūḍha.puruṣa.praṇidhiḥ kṛtya.pakṣa.upagraho vā siddhiḥ yathā.uktaṁ purastād, upajāpo 'pasarpo vā yathā pāragrāmike vakṣyāmaḥ | 3 |

¹⁷⁵[K tr. 338–363 :: K2 tr. 292–313

¹⁷⁶[K tr. 338 :: K2 tr. 292

- KAZ05.1.04/ rājya.upaghātinā tu vallabhāḥ saṁhatā vā ye mukhyāḥ prakāśam aśakyāḥ
pratiśeddhūṁ dūṣyāḥ teṣu dharma.rucir upāṁśu.daṇḍaṁ prayuñjīta | 4 |
- KAZ05.1.05/ dūṣya.mahā.mātra.bhrātaram asat.kṛtāṁ sattrī protsāhya rājānaṁ darśayet | 5
|
- KAZ05.1.06/ taṁ rājā dūṣya.dravya.upabhoga.atiśargeṇa dūṣye vikramayet | 6 |
- KAZ05.1.07/ śastreṇa rasena vā vikrāntaṁ tatra-eva ghātayed "bhrātr.ghātako 'yam" iti | 7 |
- KAZ05.1.08/ tena pāraśavaḥ paricārikā.putraś ca vyākhyātau | 8 |
- KAZ05.1.09/ dūṣyaṁ.mahāmātraṁ vā sattri.protsāhito bhrātā dāyaṁ yāceta | 9 |
- KAZ05.1.10/ taṁ dūṣya.gr̥ha.pratidvāri rātrāv upaśayānam anyatra vā vasantaṁ tīkṣṇo hantā
brūyād "hato 'yam dāya.kāmukaḥ" iti | 10 |
- KAZ05.1.11/ tato hata.pakṣam upagṛhya-itarāṁ nigṛhṇīyāt | 11 |
- KAZ05.1.12/ dūṣya.samīpasthā vā sattriṇo bhrātaraṁ dāyaṁ yācamānaṁ ghātena
paribhartsayeyuḥ | 12 |
- KAZ05.1.13/ taṁ rātrau iti samānam | 13 |
- KAZ05.1.14/ dūṣya.mahā.mātrayor vā yaḥ putraḥ pituḥ pitā vā putrasya dārān adhicarati,
bhrātā vā bhrātuḥ, tayoḥ kāpaṭika.mukhaḥ kalahaḥ pūrveṇa vyākhyātau | 14 |
- KAZ05.1.15/ dūṣya.mahā.mātra.putram ātma.sambhāvitaṁ vā sattrī "rāja.putras tvam,
śatru.bhayād iha nyasto 'si" ity upajapet | 15 |
- KAZ05.1.16/ pratipannaṁ rājā rahasi pūjayet "prāpta.yauvarājya.kālam tvāṁ
mahā.mātra.bhayān na-abhiśiñcāmi" iti | 16 |
- KAZ05.1.17/ taṁ sattrī mahā.mātra.vadhe yojayet | 17 |
- KAZ05.1.18/ vikrāntaṁ tatra-eva ghātayet "pitṛ.ghātako 'yam" iti | 18 |
- KAZ05.1.19/ bhikṣukī vā dūṣya.bhāryāṁ sāmvaṇikībhīr auśadhībhiḥ saṁvāsyā
rasena-atisandadhyāt | 19 |
- KAZ05.1.20/ ity āpya.prayogaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ05.1.21/ dūṣya.mahā.mātram aṭavīm para.grāmaṁ vā hantuṁ kāntāra.vyavahite vā deśe
rāṣṭra.pālam anta.pālam vā sthāpayituṁ nāgara.sthānaṁ vā kupitam avagrāhitaṁ
sārtha.ativāhyaṁ pratyante vā sa-pratyādeyam ādātuṁ phalgu.balaṁ tīkṣṇa.yuktaṁ preṣayet
| 21 |
- KAZ05.1.22/ rātrau divā vā yuddhe pravṛtte tīkṣṇāḥ pratirodhaka.vyañjanā vā hanyuḥ
"abhiyoge hataḥ" iti | 22 |
- KAZ05.1.23/ yātrā.vihāra.gato vā dūṣya.mahā.mātrān darśanāya-āhvayet | 23 |
- KAZ05.1.24/ te gūḍha.śāstrais tīkṣṇaiḥ saha praviṣṭā madhyama.kakṣyāyām ātma.vicayam
antaḥ.praveśana.arthaṁ dadyuḥ | 24 |
- KAZ05.1.25/ tato dauvārika.abhigṛhītās tīkṣṇāḥ "dūṣya.prayuktāḥ sma" iti brūyuh | 25 |
- KAZ05.1.26/ te tad.abhivikhyāpya dūṣyān hanyuḥ | 26 |
- KAZ05.1.27/ tīkṣṇa.sthāne ca-anye vadhyāḥ | 27 |
- KAZ05.1.28/ bahir.vihāra.gato vā dūṣyān āsanna.āvāsān pūjayet | 28 |
- KAZ05.1.29/ teṣāṁ devī.vyañjanā vā duḥstrī rātrāv āvāseṣu gṛhyeta-iti samānaṁ pūrveṇa |
29 |
- KAZ05.1.30/ dūṣya.mahā.mātraṁ vā "sūdo bhakṣa.kāro vā te śobhanaḥ" iti stavena
bhakṣya.bhojyaṁ yāceta, bahir vā kvacid adhva.gataḥ pānīyam | 30 |
- KAZ05.1.31/ tad.ubhayaṁ rasena yojayitvā pratisvādane tāv eva-upayojayet | 31 |
- KAZ05.1.32/ tad.abhivikhyāpya "rasadau" iti ghātayet | 32 |
- KAZ05.1.33/ abhicāra.śīlaṁ vā siddha.vyañjano "godhā.kūrma.karkaṭaka.kūṭānām
lakṣaṇyānām anyatama.prāśanena manorathān avāpsyasi" iti grāhayet | 33 |
- KAZ05.1.34/ pratipannaṁ karmaṇi rasena loha.musalair vā ghātayet "karma.vyāpadā hataḥ"
iti | 34 |

- KAZ05.1.35/ cikitsaka.vyañjano vā daurātmikam asādhyam vā vyādhiṃ dūṣyasya sthāpayitvā bhaiṣajya.āhāra.yogeṣu rasena-atisandadhyāt | 35 |
- KAZ05.1.36/ sūda.ārālika.vyañjanā vā prañihitā dūṣyam rasena-atisandadhyuḥ | 36 |
- KAZ05.1.37/ ity upaniṣat.pratiṣedhaḥ | 37 |
- KAZ05.1.38/ ubhaya.dūṣya.pratiṣedhas tu | 38 |
- KAZ05.1.39/ yatra dūṣyaḥ pratiṣeddhavyas tatra dūṣyam eva phalgu.bala.tikṣṇa.yuktaṃ preṣayet, gaccha, amuṣmin durge rāṣṭre vā sainyam utthāpaya hiraṇyam vā, vallabhād vā hiraṇyam āhāraya, vallabha.kanyām vā prasahya-ānaya, durga.setu.vaṇik.patha.śūnya.niveśa.khani.dravya.hasti.vana.karmaṇām anyatamad vā kāraya rāṣṭra.pālyam anta.pālyam vā-yaś ca tvā pratiṣedhayen na vā te sāhāyām dadyāt sa bandhavyaḥ syāt" iti | 39 |
- KAZ05.1.40/ tathaiva-itareṣāṃ preṣayed "amuṣya-avinayaḥ pratiṣeddhavyaḥ" iti | 40 |
- KAZ05.1.41/ tam eteṣu kalaha.sthāneṣu karma.pratiḡhāteṣu vā vivadamānaṃ tikṣṇāḥ śāstraṃ pātayitvā pracchannaṃ hanyuḥ | 41 |
- KAZ05.1.42/ tena doṣeṇa-itare niyantavyāḥ | 42 |
- KAZ05.1.43/ purāṇāṃ grāmāṇāṃ kulānāṃ vā dūṣyāṇāṃ sīmā.kṣetra.khala.veśma.maryādāsu dravya.upakaraṇa.sasya.vāhana.himsāsu prekṣā.kṛtya-utsaveṣu vā samutpanne kalahe tikṣṇair utpādite vā tikṣṇāḥ śāstraṃ pātayitvā brūyuḥ "evam kriyante ye 'munā kalahāyante: iti | 43 |
- KAZ05.1.44/ tena doṣeṇa-itare niyantavyāḥ | 44 |
- KAZ05.1.45/ yeṣāṃ vā dūṣyāṇāṃ jāta.mūlāḥ kalahāḥ teṣāṃ kṣetra.khala.veśmāny ādīpayitvā bandhu.sambandhiṣu vāhaneṣu vā tikṣṇāḥ śāstraṃ pātayitvā tathaiva brūyuḥ "amunā prayuktāḥ smaḥ" iti | 45 |
- KAZ04.4.46/ tena doṣeṇa-itare niyantavyāḥ | 46 |
- KAZ05.1.47/ durga.rāṣṭra.dūṣyāṇ vā sattriṇaḥ parasparasya-āveśanikān kārayeyuḥ | 47 |
- KAZ05.1.48/ tatra rasadā rasaṃ dadyuḥ | 48 |
- KAZ05.1.49/ tena doṣeṇa-itare niyantavyāḥ | 49 |
- KAZ05.1.50/ bhikṣukī vā dūṣya.rāṣṭra.mukhyaṃ "dūṣya.rāṣṭra.mukhyasya bhāryā snuṣā duhitā vā kāmāyate" ity upajapet | 50 |
- KAZ05.1.51/ pratipannasya-ābharaṇam ādāya svāmine darśayet "asau te mukhyo yauvana.utsikto bhāryāṃ snuṣāṃ duhitaraṃ vā-abhimanyate" iti | 51 |
- KAZ05.1.52/ tayoḥ kalaho rātrau iti samānam | 52 |
- KAZ05.1.53/ dūṣya.daṇḍa.upanateṣu tu - yuva.rājaḥ senā.patir vā kiñcid apakṛtya-apakrānto vikrameta | 53 |
- KAZ05.1.54/ tato rājā dūṣya.daṇḍa.upanatān eva preṣayet phalgu.bala.tikṣṇa.yuktān iti samānāḥ sarva eva yogāḥ | 54 |
- KAZ05.1.55/ teṣāṃ ca putreṣv anukṣiyatsu yo nirvikāraḥ sa pitṛ.dāyaṃ labheta | 55 |
- KAZ05.1.56/ evam asya putra.pautrān anuvartate rājyam apāsta.puruṣa.doṣam | 56 |
- KAZ05.1.57ab/ sva.pakṣe para.pakṣe vā tūṣṇīm daṇḍam prayojayet |
- KAZ05.1.57cd/ āyatyām ca tadātve ca kṣamāvān aviśaṅkitaḥ || 57 ||

5.2 Chapter 2 (Section 90): Replenishment of the Treasury

177

- KAZ05.2.01/ kośam akośaḥ pratyutpanna.artha.kṛcchraḥ saṅgrhñīyāt | 1 |
- KAZ05.2.02/ jana.padaṃ mahāntam alpa.pramāṇam vā-adeva.mātrkaṃ prabhūta.dhānyam dhānyasya-amśam trītiyaṃ caturthaṃ vā yāceta, yathā.sāraṃ madhyam avaraṃ vā | 2 |
- KAZ05.2.03/ durga.setu.karma.vaṇik.patha.śūnya.niveśa.khani.dravya.hasti.vana.karma.-upakāriṇāṃ pratyantam alpa.pramāṇam vā na yāceta | 3 |

¹⁷⁷[K tr. 343 :: K2 tr. 296

- KAZ05.2.04/ dhānya.paśu.hiraṇya.ādi nivīsamānāya dadyāt | 4 |
- KAZ05.2.05/ caturtham amśam dhānyānām bīja.bhakta.śuddham ca hiraṇyena krīṇīyāt | 5 |
- KAZ05.2.06/ araṇya.jātaṁ śrotriya.svaṁ ca pariharet | 6 |
- KAZ05.2.07/ tad apy anugraheṇa krīṇīyāt | 7 |
- KAZ05.2.08/ tasya-akaraṇe vā samāharṭṛ.puruṣā grīṣme karṣakāṇām udvāpaṁ kārayeyuḥ | 8 |
- KAZ05.2.09/ pramāda.avaskannasya-atyayaṁ dvi.guṇam udāharanto bīja.kāle bīja.lekhyam kuryuḥ | 9 |
- KAZ05.2.10/ niṣpanne harita.pakva.ādānam vārayeyuḥ, anyatra śāka.kaṭa.bhaṅga.muṣṭibhyāṁ deva.pitṛ.pūjā.dāna.artham gava.artham vā | 10 |
- KAZ05.2.11/ bhikṣuka.grāma.bhṛta.artham ca rāśi.mūlam parihareyuḥ | 11 |
- KAZ05.2.12/ sva.sasya.apahāriṇaḥ pratipāto 'ṣṭa.guṇaḥ | 12 |
- KAZ05.2.13/ para.sasya.apahāriṇaḥ pañcāśad.guṇaḥ sītā.atyayaḥ, sva.vargasya, bāhyasya tu vadhaḥ | 13 |
- KAZ05.2.14/ caturtham amśam dhānyānām ṣaṣṭham vanyānām tūla.lākṣā.kṣauma.valka.kārpāsa.rauma.kauśeya.kauśadha.gandha.-puṣpa.phala.śāka.paṇyānām kāṣṭha.veṇu.māmsa.vallūrāṇām ca grhṇīyuḥ, danta.ajinasya-ardham | 14 |
- KAZ05.2.15/ tad anisṛṣṭam vikrīṇānasya pūrvaḥ sāhasa.daṇḍaḥ | 15 |
- KAZ05.2.16/ iti karṣakeṣu praṇayaḥ | 16 |
- KAZ05.2.17/ suvarṇa.rajata.vajra.maṇi.muktā.pravāla.aśva.hasti.paṇyāḥ pañcāśat.karāḥ | 17 |
- KAZ05.2.18/ sūtra.vastra.tāmra.vṛtta.kāmsa.gandha.bhaiṣajya.śīdhu.paṇyāś catvāriṁśat.karāḥ | 18 |
- KAZ05.2.19/ dhānya.rasa.loha.paṇyāḥ śakaṭa.vyavahāriṇaś ca trimśat.karāḥ | 19 |
- KAZ05.2.20/ kāca.vyavahāriṇo mahā.kāravaś ca vimśati.karāḥ | 20 |
- KAZ05.2.21/ kṣudra.kāravo bandhakī.poṣakāś ca daśa.karāḥ | 21 |
- KAZ05.2.22/ kāṣṭha.veṇu.pāṣāṇa.mṛd.bhāṇḍa.pakva.anna.harita.paṇyāḥ pañca.karāḥ | 22 |
- KAZ05.2.23/ kuśilavā rūpa.ājīvāś ca vetana.ardham dadyuḥ | 23 |
- KAZ05.2.24/ hiraṇya.karam karmaṇyān āhārayeyuḥ, na ca-eṣāṁ kañcid aparādham parihareyuḥ | 24 |
- KAZ05.2.25/ te hy aparigrhītam abhinīya vikrīṇīran | 25 |
- KAZ05.2.26/ iti vyavahāriṣu praṇayaḥ | 26 |
- KAZ05.2.27/ kukkuṭa.sūkaram ardham dadyāt, kṣudra.paśavaḥ ṣaḍ.bhāgam, go.mahiṣa.aśvatara.khara.uṣṭrāś ca daśa.bhāgam | 27 |
- KAZ05.2.28/ bandhakī.poṣakā rāja.preṣyābhiḥ parama.rūpa.yauvanābhiḥ kośam saṁhareyuḥ | 28 |
- KAZ05.2.29/ iti yoni.poṣakeṣu praṇayaḥ | 29 |
- KAZ05.2.30/ sakṛd eva na dviḥ prayojyaḥ | 30 |
- KAZ05.2.31/ tasya-akaraṇe vā samāhartā kāryam apadiśya paura.jānapadān bhikṣeta | 31 |
- KAZ05.2.32/ yoga.puruṣāś ca-atra pūrvam atimātram dadyuḥ | 32 |
- KAZ05.2.33/ etena pradeśena rājā paura.jānapadān bhikṣeta | 33 |
- KAZ05.2.34/ kāpaṭikāś ca-enān alpaṁ prayacchataḥ kutsayeyuḥ | 34 |
- KAZ05.2.35/ sārato vā hiraṇyam ādhyān yāceta, yathā.upakāram vā, sva.vaśā vā yad upahareyuḥ | 35 |
- KAZ05.2.36/ sthānac.chatra.veṣṭana.vibhūṣāś ca-eṣāṁ hiraṇyena prayacchet | 36 |
- KAZ05.2.37/ pāṣaṇḍa.saṅgha.dravyam aśrotriya.upabhogyam deva.dravyam vā kṛtya.karāḥ pretasya dagdha.grhasya vā haste nyastam ity upahareyuḥ | 37 |

- KAZ05.2.38/ devatā.adhyakṣo durga.rāṣṭra.devatānām yathā.svam ekasthaṁ kośaṁ kuryāt, tathaiva ca-upaharet | 38 |
- KAZ05.2.39/ daivata.caityaṁ siddha.puṇya.sthānam aupapādikam vā rātrāv utthāpya yātrā.samājābhyām ājivet | 39 |
- KAZ05.2.40/ caitya.upavana.vṛkṣeṇa vā devatā.abhigamanam anārtava.puṣpa.phala.yuktena khyāpayet | 40 |
- KAZ05.2.41/ manuṣya.karaṁ vā vṛkṣe rakṣo.bhayaṁ prarūpayitvā siddha.vyañjanāḥ paura.jānapadānām hiraṇyena pratikuryuḥ | 41 |
- KAZ05.2.42/ suruṅgā.yukte vā kūpe nāgam aniyata.śiraskaṁ hiraṇya.upahāreṇa darśayet | 42 |
- KAZ05.2.43/ nāga.pratimāyām antaś.channāyām caityac.chidre valmīkac.chidre vā sarpa.darśanam āhāreṇa pratibaddha.sañjñāṁ kṛtvā śraddadhānānām darśayet | 43 |
- KAZ05.2.44/ āśraddadhānānām ācamana.prokṣaṇeṣu rasam upacārya devatā.abhiśāpaṁ brūyāt, abhityaktaṁ vā darśayitvā | 44 |
- KAZ05.2.45/ yoga.darśana.pratīkāreṇa vā kośa.abhisamharaṇam kuryāt | 45 |
- KAZ05.2.46/ vaidehaka.vyañjano vā prabhūta.paṇya.antevāsi vyavahareta | 46 |
- KAZ05.2.47/ sa yadā paṇya.mūlye nikṣepa.prayogair upacitaḥ syāt tadā-enam rātrau moṣayet | 47 |
- KAZ05.2.48/ etena rūpa.darśakaḥ suvarṇa.kāraś ca vyākhyātau | 48 |
- KAZ05.2.49/ vaidehaka.vyañjano vā prakhyāta.vyavahāraḥ prahavaṇa.nimittaṁ yācitakam avakṛitakam vā rūpya.suvarṇa.bhāṇḍam anekaṁ gṛhṇīyāt | 49 |
- KAZ05.2.50/ samāje vā sarva.paṇya.sandohena prabhūtaṁ hiraṇya.suvarṇam ṛṇam gṛhṇīyāt, pratibhāṇḍa.mūlyam ca | 50 |
- KAZ05.2.51/ tad ubhayaṁ rātrau moṣayet | 51 |
- KAZ05.2.52/ sādhvī.vyañjanābhiḥ strībhir dūṣyān unmādayitvā tāsām eva veśmasv abhigrhya sarva.svāny āhareyuḥ | 52 |
- KAZ05.2.53/ dūṣya.kulyānām vā vivāde pratyutpanne rasadāḥ praṇihitā rasaṁ dadyuḥ | 53 |
- KAZ05.2.54/ tena doṣeṇa-itare paryādātavyāḥ | 54 |
- KAZ05.2.55/ dūṣyam abhityakto vā śraddheya.apadeśaṁ paṇyam hiraṇya.nikṣepam ṛṇa.prayogaṁ dāyam vā yāceta | 55 |
- KAZ05.2.56/ dāsa.śabdena vā dūṣyam ālambeta, bhāryām asya snuṣām duhitaraṁ vā dāsi.śabdena bhāryā.śabdena vā | 56 |
- KAZ05.2.57/ taṁ dūṣya.gṛha.pratidvāri rātrāv upaśayānam anyatra vā vasantaṁ tikṣṇo hatvā brūyāt "hato 'yam artha.kāmukaḥ" iti | 57 |
- KAZ05.2.58/ tena doṣeṇa-itare paryādātavyāḥ | 58 |
- KAZ05.2.59/ siddha.vyañjano vā dūṣyam jambhaka.vidyābhiḥ pralobhayitvā brūyāt "akṣaya.hiraṇyaṁ rāja.dvārikaṁ strī.hṛdayam ari.vyādhi.karam āyuṣyaṁ putrīyaṁ vā karma jānāmi" iti | 59 |
- KAZ05.2.60/ pratipannaṁ caitya.sthāne rātrau prabhūta.surā.māmsa.gandham upahāraṁ kārayet | 60 |
- KAZ05.2.61/ eka.rūpaṁ ca-atra hiraṇyaṁ pūrva.nikhātaṁ preta.aṅgaṁ preta.śiśur vā yatra nihitaḥ syāt, tato hiraṇyam asya darśayed "atyalpam" iti ca brūyāt | 61 |
- KAZ05.2.62/ "prabhūta.hiraṇya.hetoḥ punar upahāraḥ kartavya iti svayam eva-etena hiraṇyena śvo.bhūte prabhūtam aupahārikaṁ krīṇīhi" iti | 62 |
- KAZ05.2.63/ sa tena hiraṇyena-aupahārika.kraye gṛhyeta | 63 |
- KAZ05.2.64/ mātṛ.vyañjanayā vā "putro me tvayā hataḥ" ity avakupitā syāt | 64 |
- KAZ05.2.65/ saṁsiddham eva-asya rātri.yāge vana.yāge vana.krīḍāyām vā pravṛttāyām tikṣṇā viśasya-abhityaktaṁ atinayeyuḥ | 65 |

KAZ05.2.66/ dūṣyasya vā bhṛtaka.vyañjano vetana.hiraṇye kūṭa.rūpaṃ prakṣīpya prarūpayet | 66 |

KAZ05.2.67/ karma.kara.vyañjano vā gr̥he karma kurvāṇaḥ
stena.kūṭa.rūpa.kāraka.upakaraṇam upanidadhyāt, cikitsaka.vyañjano vā garam
agada.apadeśena | 67 |

KAZ05.2.68/ pratyāsanno vā dūṣyasya sattrī praṇihitam abhiṣeka.bhāṇḍam amitra.śāsanam
ca kāpaṭika.mukhena-ācakṣīta, kāraṇam ca brūyāt | 68 |

KAZ05.2.69/ evaṃ dūṣyeṣv adhārmikeṣu ca varteta, na-itareṣu | 69 |

KAZ05.2.70ab/ pakvaṃ pakvam iva-ārāmāt phalaṃ rājyād avāpnuyāt |

KAZ05.2.70cd/ ātmac.cheda.bhayād āmaṃ varjayet kopa.kārakam || 70 ||

5.3 Chapter 3 (Section 91): The Salaries of State Servants

178

KAZ05.3.01/ durga.jana.pada.śaktyā bhṛtya.karma samudaya.pādena sthāpayet,
kārya.sādhana.sahena vā bhṛtya.lābhena | 1 |

KAZ05.3.02/ śārīram avekṣeta, na dharma.arthau pīḍayet | 2 |

KAZ05.3.03/ ṛtvig.ācārya.mantri.purohita.senā.pati.yuva.rāja.rāja.mātr.rāja.- mahiṣyo
'ṣṭa.catvāriṃśat.sāhasrāḥ | 3 |

KAZ05.3.04/ etāvatā bharaṇena-anāspadyatvam akopakaṃ ca-eṣāṃ bhavati | 4 |

KAZ05.3.05/ dauvārika.antar.vamśika.praśāstr.samāhartr.sannidhātāś
catur.vimśati.sāhasrāḥ | 5 |

KAZ05.3.06/ etāvatā karmaṇyā bhavanti | 6 |

KAZ05.3.07/ kumāra.kumāra.mātr.nāyaka.paura.vyāvahārika.kārmāntika.mantri.-
pariṣad.rāṣṭra.anta.pālās ca dvādaśa.sāhasrāḥ | 7 |

KAZ05.3.08/ svāmi.paribandha.bala.sahāyā hy etāvatā bhavanti | 8 |

KAZ05.3.09/ śreṇī.mukhyā hasty.aśva.ratha.mukhyāḥ pradeṣṭāś ca-aṣṭa.sāhasrāḥ | 9 |

KAZ05.3.10/ sva.varga.anukarṣiṇo hy etāvatā bhavanti | 10 |

KAZ05.3.11/ patty.aśva.ratha.hasty.adhyakṣā dravya.hasti.vana.pālās ca catuḥ.sāhasrāḥ | 11 |

KAZ05.3.12/ rathika.anīkastha.cikitsaka.aśva.damaka.vardhakayo yoni.poṣakās ca
dvi.sāhasrāḥ | 12 |

KAZ05.3.13/ kārtāntika.naimittika.mauhūrtika.paurāṇika.sūta.māgadhaḥ purohita.puruṣāḥ
sarva.adhyakṣās ca sāhasrāḥ | 13 |

KAZ05.3.14/ śilpavantaḥ pādātāḥ saṅkhyāyaka.lekhaka.ādi.vargaś ca pañca.śatāḥ | 14 |

KAZ05.3.15/ kuśīlavās tv ardha.tṛtīya.śatāḥ, dvi.guṇa.vetanās ca-eṣāṃ tūrya.karāḥ | 15 |

KAZ05.3.16/ kāru.śilpino vimśati.śatikāḥ | 16 |

KAZ05.3.17/ catuṣpada.dvipada.paricāraka.pārikarmika.aupasthāyika.pālaka.-
viṣṭi.bandhakāḥ ṣaṣṭi.vetanāḥ, ārya.yukta.ārohaka.māṇavaka.śaila.khanakāḥ
sarva.upasthāyinaś ca | 17 |

KAZ05.3.18/ ācāryā vidyāvantaś ca pūjā.vetanāni yathā.arhaṃ labheran pañca.śata.avaraṃ
sahasra.param | 18 |

KAZ05.3.19/ daśa.paṇiko yojane dūto madhyamaḥ, daśa.uttare dvi.guṇa.vetana
ā.yojana.śatād iti | 19 |

KAZ05.3.20/ samāna.vidyebhyas tri.guṇa.vetano rājā rāja.sūya.ādiṣu kratuṣu | 20 |

KAZ05.3.21/ rājñāḥ sārathiḥ sāhasraḥ | 21 |

KAZ05.3.22/ kāpaṭika.udāsthita.gr̥ha.patika.vaidehaka.tāpasa.vyañjanāḥ sāhasrāḥ | 22 |

KAZ05.3.23/ grāma.bhṛtaka.sattri.tikṣṇa.rasada.bhikṣukyaḥ pañca.śatāḥ | 23 |

¹⁷⁸[K tr. 350 :: K2 tr. 302

- KAZ05.3.24/ cāra.sañcāriṇo 'rdha.trṭīya.śatāḥ, prayāsa.vṛddha.vetanā vā | 24 |
- KAZ05.3.25/ śata.varga.sahasra.vargāṇām adhyakṣā bhakta.vetana.lābham ādeśam vikṣepam ca kuryuḥ | 25 |
- KAZ05.3.26/ avikṣepo rāja.parigraha.durga.rāṣṭra.rakṣa.avekṣaṇeṣu ca | 26 |
- KAZ05.3.27/ nitya.mukhyāḥ syur aneka.mukhyāś ca | 27 |
- KAZ05.3.28/ karmasu mṛtānām putra.dārā bhakta.vetanam labheran | 28 |
- KAZ05.3.29/ bāla.vṛddha.vyādhitāś ca-eṣām anugrāhyāḥ | 29 |
- KAZ05.3.30/ preta.vyādhita.sūtikā.kṛtyeṣu ca-eṣām artha.māna.karma kuryāt | 30 |
- KAZ05.3.31/ alpa.kośaḥ kupya.paśu.kṣetrāṇi dadyāt, alpaṁ ca hiraṇyam | 31 |
- KAZ05.3.32/ śūnyam vā niveśayitum abhyutthito hiraṇyam eva dadyāt, na grāmaṁ grāma.sañjāta.vyavahāra.sthāpana.artham | 32 |
- KAZ05.3.33/ etena bhṛtānām abhṛtānām ca vidyā.karmabhyām bhakta.vetana.viśeṣam ca kuryāt | 33 |
- KAZ05.3.34/ ṣaṣṭi.vetanasya-āḍhakaṁ kṛtvā hiraṇya.anurūpam bhaktam kuryāt | 34 |
- KAZ05.3.35/ patty.aśva.ratha.dvipāḥ sūrya.udaye bahiḥ sandhi.divasa.varjam śilpa.yogyāḥ kuryuḥ | 35 |
- KAZ05.3.36/ teṣu rājā nitya.yuktaḥ syāt, abhīkṣnam ca-eṣām śilpa.darśanam kuryāt | 36 |
- KAZ05.3.37/ kṛta.nara.indra.aṅkam śastra.āvaraṇam āyudha.agāram praveśayet | 37 |
- KAZ05.3.38/ aśastrāś careyuḥ, anyatra mudrā.anujñātāt | 38 |
- KAZ05.3.39/ naṣṭam.vinaṣṭam vā dvi.guṇam dadyāt | 39 |
- KAZ05.3.40/ vidhvasta.gaṇanām ca kuryāt | 40 |
- KAZ05.3.41/ sārthikānām śastra.āvaraṇam anta.pālā gṛhṇīyuḥ, samudram avacārayeyur vā | 41 |
- KAZ05.3.42/ yātrām abhyutthito vā senām udyojayet | 42 |
- KAZ05.3.43/ tato vaidehaka.vyañjanāḥ sarva.paṇyāny āyudhīebhyo yātrā.kāle dvi.guṇa.pratyādeyāni dadyuḥ | 43 |
- KAZ05.3.44/ evam rāja.paṇya.yoga.vikrayo vetana.pratyādānam ca bhavati | 44 |
- KAZ05.3.45/ evam avekṣita.āya.vyayaḥ kośa.daṇḍa.vyasanam na-avāpnoti | 45 |
- KAZ05.3.46/ iti bhakta.vetana.vikalpaḥ | 46 |
- KAZ05.3.47ab/ satttriṇaś ca-āyudhīyānām veśyāḥ kāru.kuśīlavāḥ |
- KAZ05.3.47cd/ daṇḍa.vṛddhāś ca jānīyuḥ śauca.aśaucam atandritāḥ || 47 ||

5.4 Chapter 4 (Section 92): Conduct Proper for a Dependant

179

- KAZ05.4.01/ loka.yātrāvid rājānam ātma.dravya.prakṛti.sampannam priya.hita.dvāreṇa-āśrayeta | 1 |
- KAZ05.4.02/ yaṁ vā manyeta "yathā-aham āśraya.īpsur evam asau vinaya.īpsur ābhigāmika.guṇa.yuktaḥ" iti, dravya.prakṛti.hīnam apy enam āśrayeta, na tv eva-anātma.sampannam | 2 |
- KAZ05.4.03/ anātmavā hi nīti.śāstra.dveṣād anarthya.samyogād vā prāpya-api mahad aiśvaryam na bhavati | 3 |
- KAZ05.4.04/ ātmavati labdha.avakāśaḥ śāstra.anuyogam dadyāt | 4 |
- KAZ05.4.05/ aśaṁvādādd hi sthāna.sthairyam avāpnoti | 5 |
- KAZ05.4.06/ mati.karmasu pṛṣṭhas tadātve ca-āyatyām ca dharma.artha.samyuktam samartham pravīṇavad aparīṣad.bhīruḥ kathayet | 6 |

¹⁷⁹[K tr. 354 :: K2 tr. 305

KAZ05.4.07/ ĩpsitaḥ paṇeta "dharma.artha.anuyogam aviśiṣṭeṣu balavat.saṁyukteṣu daṇḍa.dhāraṇaṁ mat.saṁyoge tadātve ca daṇḍa.dhāraṇaṁ iti na kuryāḥ, pakṣaṁ vṛttim guhyaṁ ca me na-upahanyāḥ, sañjñayā ca tvāṁ kāma.krodha.daṇḍaneṣu vārayeyam" iti | 7 |
 KAZ05.4.08/ ādiṣṭaḥ pradiṣṭāyāṁ bhūmāv anujñātaḥ praviśet, upaviśec ca pārśvataḥ sannikṛṣṭa.viprakṛṣṭaḥ para.āsanam | 8 |
 KAZ05.4.09/ viḡrhya kathanam asabhyam apratyakṣam aśraddheyam anṛtaṁ ca vākyam uccair anarmaṇi hāsaṁ vāta.ṣṭhivane ca śabdavatī na kuryāt | 9 |
 KAZ05.4.10/ mithaḥ kathanam anyena, jana.vāde dvandva.kathanam, rājño veṣam uddhata.kuhakānāṁ ca, ratna.atiśaya.prakāśa.abhyarthanam, eka.akṣy.oṣṭha.nirbhogaṁ bhrukuṭi.karma vākya.avakṣepaṇaṁ ca bruvati, balavat saṁyukta.virodham, strībhiḥ strī.darśibhiḥ sāmanta.dūtair dveṣya.pakṣa.avakṣiptān arthyaś ca pratisaṁsargam eka.artha.caryāṁ saṅghātaṁ ca varjayet | 10 |
 KAZ05.4.11ab/ ahīna.kālaṁ rāja.arthaṁ sva.arthaṁ priya.hitaiḥ saha |
 KAZ05.4.11cd/ para.arthaṁ deśa.kāle ca brūyād dharma.artha.saṁhitam || 11 ||
 KAZ05.4.12ab/ pṛṣṭaḥ priya.hitam brūyān na brūyād ahitam priyam |
 KAZ05.4.12cd/ apriyaṁ vā hitam brūyāt-śṛṇvato 'numato mithaḥ || 12 ||
 KAZ05.4.13ab/ tūṣṇīm vā prativākye syād veṣya.ādīmś ca na varṇayet |
 KAZ05.4.13cd/ apriyā api dakṣāḥ syus tad.bhāvād ye bahiḥ.kṛtāḥ || 13 ||
 KAZ05.4.14ab/ anarthyāś ca priyā dṛṣṭāś citta.jñāna.anuvartinaḥ |
 KAZ05.4.14cd/ abhihāsyēṣv abhihased ghora.hāsāmś ca varjayet || 14 ||
 KAZ05.4.15ab/ parāt saṅkrāmeyed ghoram na ca ghoram pare vadet |
 KAZ05.4.15cd/ titikṣeta-ātmanaś caiva kṣamāvān pṛthivī.samaḥ || 15 ||
 KAZ05.4.16ab/ ātma.rakṣā hi satataṁ pūrvam kāryā vijānatā |
 KAZ05.4.16cd/ agnāv iva hi samproktā vṛttī rājā-upajīvinām || 16 ||
 KAZ05.4.17ab/ eka.deśam dahed agniḥ śarīram vā param gataḥ |
 KAZ05.4.17cd/ sa-putra.dāram rājā tu ghātayed ardhayeta vā || 17 ||

5.5 Chapter 5 (Section 93): Proper Behaviour of a Courtier

180

KAZ05.5.01/ niyuktaḥ karmasu vyaya.viśuddham udayam darśayet | 1 |
 KAZ05.5.02/ ābhyantaram bāhyam guhyam prakāśyam ātyayikam upekṣitavyam vā kāryam "idam evam" iti viśeṣayec ca | 2 |
 KAZ05.5.03/ mṛgayā.dyūta.madya.strīṣu prasaktaṁ na-enam anuvarteta praśaṁsābhiḥ | 3 |
 KAZ05.5.04/ āsannaś ca-asya vyasana.upaghāte prayateta, para.upajāpa.atisandhāna.upadhibhyaś ca rakṣet | 4 |
 KAZ05.5.05/ iṅgita.ākārau ca-asya lakṣayet | 5 |
 KAZ05.5.06/ kāma.dveṣa.harṣa.dainya.vyavasāya.bhaya.dvandva.viparyāsam iṅgita.ākārābhyām hi mantra.saṁvaraṇa.artham ācarati prājñāḥ | 6 |
 KAZ05.5.07/ darśane prasīdati, vākyam pratigrhṇāti, āsanam dadāti, vivikto darśayate, śaṅkā.sthāne na-atīśaṅkate, kathāyām ramate, pariñāpyeṣv avekṣate, pathyam uktaṁ sahate, smayamāno niyuṅkte, hastena spṛśati, ślāghye na-upahasati, parokṣam guṇam bravīti, bhakṣyeṣu smarati, saha vihāram yāti, vyasane 'bhyupapadyate, tad.bhaktīm pūjayati, guhyam ācaṣṭe, mānam vardhayati, artham karoti, anarthaṁ pratihanti - iti tuṣṭa.jñānam | 7 |
 KAZ05.5.08/ etad eva viparītam atuṣṭasya, bhūyaś ca vakṣyāmaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ05.5.09/ sandarśane kopāḥ, vākyaśya-aśravaṇa.pratiśedhau, āsana.cakṣuṣor adānam, varṇa.svara.bhedāḥ, eka.akṣi.bhrukuṭy.oṣṭha.nirbhogaḥ, sveda.śvāsa.smitānām asthāna.utpattiḥ, para.mantraṇam, akasmād.vrajanam, vardhanam anyasya,

¹⁸⁰[K tr. 356 :: K2 tr. 307

bhūmi.gātra.vilekhanam, anyasya-upatodanam, vidyā.varṇa.deśa.kutsā, sama.doṣa.nindā, pratidoṣa.nindā, pratiloma.stavaḥ, sukṛta.anavekṣaṇam, duṣkṛta.anukīrtanam, pṛṣṭha.avadhānam, atityāgaḥ, mithyā.abhibhāṣaṇam, rāja.darśinām ca tad.vṛtta.anyatvam | 9 |
 KAZ05.5.10/ vṛtti.vikāram ca-avekṣeta-apy amānuṣāṇām | 10 |
 KAZ05.5.11/ "āyam uccaiḥ siñcati" iti kātīyānaḥ pravavrāja, "krauñco 'pasavyam" iti kaṇiṅko bhāradvājaḥ, "tṛṇam" iti dīrghaś cārāyaṇaḥ, "śītā śātī" iti ghoṭa.mukhaḥ, "hastī pratyaukṣīt" iti kiñjalkaḥ, "ratha.aśvaṁ prāśamsīt" iti piśunaḥ, prati.ravaṇe śunaḥ piśuna.putraḥ | 11 |
 KAZ05.5.12/ artha.māna.avakṣepe ca parityāgaḥ | 12 |
 KAZ05.5.13/ svāmi.śīlam ātmanaś ca kilbiṣam upalabhya vā pratikurvīta | 13 |
 KAZ05.5.14/ mitram upakṛṣṭam vā-asya gacchet | 14 |
 KAZ05.5.15ab/ tatrastho doṣa.nirghātaṁ mitrair bhartari ca-ācaret |
 KAZ05.5.15cd/ tato bhartari jīve vā mṛte vā punar āvrajet || 15 ||

5.6 Chapter 6 (Sections 94; 95): Continuance of the Kingdom; Continuous Sovereignty

181

KAZ05.6.01/ rāja.vyasanam evam amātyaḥ pratikurvīta | 1 |
 KAZ05.6.02/ prāḡ eva maraṇa.ābādha.bhayād rājñāḥ priya.hita.upagraheṇa māsa.dvi.māsa.antaraṁ darśanaṁ sthāpayed "deśa.pīḍā.apaham amitra.apaham āyuṣyaṁ putrīyaṁ vā karma rājā sādhayati" ity apadeśena | 2 |
 KAZ05.6.03/ rāja.vyañjanam arūpa.velāyāṁ prakṛtīnām darśayet, mitra.amitra.dūtānām ca | 3 |
 KAZ05.6.04/ taiś ca yathā.ucitāṁ sambhāṣāṁ amātya.mukho gacchet | 4 |
 KAZ05.6.05/ dauvārika.antar.vamśika.mukhaś ca yathā.uktaṁ rāja.praṇidhim anuvartayet | 5 |
 KAZ05.6.06/ apakāriṣu ca heḍaṁ prasādaṁ vā prakṛti.kāntaṁ darśayet, prasādam eva-upakāriṣu | 6 |
 KAZ05.6.07/ āpta.puruṣa.adhiṣṭhitau durga.pratyantasthau vā kośa.daṇḍāv ekasthau kārayet, kulya.kumāra.mukhyāṁś ca-anyā.apadeśena | 7 |
 KAZ05.6.08/ yaś ca mukhyaḥ pakṣavān durga.aṭavīstho vā vaiguṇyaṁ bhajeta tam upagrāhayet | 8 |
 KAZ05.6.09/ bahv.ābādhaṁ vā yātrāṁ preṣayet, mitra.kulaṁ vā | 9 |
 KAZ05.6.10/ yasmāc ca sāmāntād ābādhaṁ paśyet tam utsava.vivāha.hasti.bandhana.aśva.paṇya.bhūmi.pradāna.- apadeśena-avagrāhayet, sva.mitreṇa vā | 10 |
 KAZ05.6.11/ tataḥ sandhim adūṣyaṁ kārayet | 11 |
 KAZ05.6.12/ āṭavika.amitrair vā vairaṁ grāhayet | 12 |
 KAZ05.6.13/ tat.kulīnam aparuddhaṁ vā bhūmy.eka.deśena-upagrāhayet | 13 |
 KAZ05.6.14/ kulya.kumāra.mukhya.upagrahaṁ kṛtvā vā kumāram abhiṣiktaṁ eva darśayet | 14 |
 KAZ05.6.15/ dāṇḍa.karmikavad vā rājya.kaṇṭakān uddhṛtya rājyaṁ kārayet | 15 |
 KAZ05.6.16/ yadi vā kaścin mukhyaḥ sāmānta.ādīnām anyatamaḥ kopaṁ bhajeta tam "ehi, rājānaṁ tvā kariṣyāmi" ity āvāhayitvā ghātayet | 16 |
 KAZ05.6.17/ āpat.pratikāreṇa vā sādhayet | 17 |
 KAZ05.6.18/ yuva.rāje vā krameṇa rājya.bhāram āropya rāja.vyasanam khyāpayet | 18 |

¹⁸¹[K tr. 359 :: K2 tr. 309

- KAZ05.6.19/ para.bhūmau rāja.vyasane mitreṇa-amitra.vyañjanena śatroḥ sandhim avasthāpya-apagacchet | 19 |
- KAZ05.6.20/ sāmanta.ādīnām anyatamaṁ vā-asya durge sthāpayitvā-apagacchet | 20 |
- KAZ05.6.21/ kumāram abhiṣicya vā prativyūheta | 21 |
- KAZ05.6.22/ pareṇa-abhiyukto vā yathā.uktam āpat.pratikāram kuryāt | 22 |
- KAZ05.6.23/ evaṁ eka.aiśvaryam amātyaḥ kārayed iti kauṭilyaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ05.6.24/ "na-evam" iti bhāradvājaḥ | 24 |
- KAZ05.6.25/ "pramriyamāṇe vā rājany amātyaḥ kulya.kumāra.mukhyān parasparam mukhyeṣu vā vikramayet | 25 |
- KAZ05.6.26/ vikrāntaṁ prakṛti.kopena ghātayet | 26 |
- KAZ05.6.27/ kulya.kumāra.mukhyān upāṁśu.dāṇḍena vā sādhayitvā svayaṁ rājyaṁ grhṇīyāt | 27 |
- KAZ05.6.28/ rāja.kāraṇādd hi pitā putrān putrās ca pitaram abhidruhyanti, kim aṅga punar amātya.prakṛtir hy eka.pragraho rājyasya | 28 |
- KAZ05.6.29/ tat svayaṁ upasthitaṁ na-avamanyeta | 29 |
- KAZ05.6.30/ "svayaṁ ārūḍhā hi strī tyajyamānā-abhiśapati" iti loka.pravādaḥ | 30 |
- KAZ05.6.31ab/ kālāś ca sakṛd abhyeti yaṁ naraṁ kāla.kāṅkṣiṇam |
- KAZ05.6.31cd/ durlabhaḥ sa punas tasya kālāḥ karma cikīrṣataḥ || 31 ||
- KAZ05.6.32/ prakṛti.kopakam adharmiṣṭham anaikāntikaṁ ca-etaḍ iti kauṭilyaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ05.6.33/ rāja.putram ātma.sampannaṁ rājye sthāpayet | 33 |
- KAZ05.6.34/ sampanna.abhāve 'vyasaninaṁ kumāraṁ rāja.kanyāṁ garbhiṇīm devīm vā puras.kṛtya mahā.mātrān sannipātya brūyāt "ayaṁ vo nikṣepaḥ, pitaram asya-avekṣadhvaṁ sattva.abhijanam ātmanaś ca, dhvaja.mātro 'yaṁ bhavanta eva svāminaḥ, kathaṁ vā kriyatām" iti | 34 |
- KAZ05.6.35/ tathā bruvāṇaṁ yoga.puruṣā brūyuh "ko 'nyo bhavat.purogād asmād rājñaś cāturvarṇyam arhati pālayitum" iti | 35 |
- KAZ05.6.36/ "tathā" ity amātyaḥ kumāraṁ rāja.kanyāṁ garbhiṇīm devīm vā-adhikurvīta, bandhu.sambandhinām mitra.amitra.dūtānām ca darśayet | 36 |
- KAZ05.6.37/ bhakta.vetana.viśeṣam amātyānām āyudhīyānām ca kārayet, "bhūyaś ca-ayaṁ vṛddhaḥ kariṣyati" iti brūyāt | 37 |
- KAZ05.6.38/ evaṁ durga.rāṣṭra.mukhyān ābhāṣeta, yathā.arhaṁ ca mitra.amitra.pakṣam | 38 |
- KAZ05.6.39/ vinaya.karmaṇi ca kumārasya prayateta | 39 |
- KAZ05.6.40/ kanyāyāṁ samāna.jātīyād apatyam utpādyā vā-abhiṣiñcet | 40 |
- KAZ05.6.41/ mātuś citta.kṣobha.bhayāt kulyam alpa.sattvaṁ chātraṁ ca lakṣaṇyam upanidadhyāt | 41 |
- KAZ05.6.42/ ṛtau ca-enām rakṣet | 42 |
- KAZ05.6.43/ na ca-ātma.arthaṁ kañcid utkṛṣṭam upabhogaṁ kārayet | 43 |
- KAZ05.6.44/ rāja.arthaṁ tu yāna.vāhana.ābharaṇa.vastra.strī.veśma.parivāpān kārayet | 44 |
- KAZ05.6.45ab/ yauvanasthaṁ ca yāceta viśramaṁ citta.kāraṇāt |
- KAZ05.6.45cd/ parityajed atuṣyantaṁ tuṣyantaṁ ca-anupālayet || 45 ||
- KAZ05.6.46ab/ nivedya putra.rakṣā.arthaṁ gūḍha.sāra.parigrahān |
- KAZ05.6.46cd/ araṇyaṁ dīrgha.sattram vā seveta-ārucyatām gataḥ || 46 ||
- KAZ05.6.47ab/ mukhyair avagrhitāṁ vā rājānaṁ tat.priya.āsritaḥ |
- KAZ05.6.47cd/ itihāsa.purāṇābhyām bodhayed artha.śāstravit || 47 ||
- KAZ05.6.48ab/ siddha.vyañjana.rūpo vā yogam āsthāya pārthivam |
- KAZ05.6.48cd/ labheta labdhvā dūṣyeṣu dāṇḍakarmikam ācāret || 48 ||

6 Book 6: The Circle of Kings as the Basis

182

6.1 Chapter 1 (Section 96): Excellences of Constituents

183

- KAZ06.1.01/ svāmy.amātya.jana.pada.durga.kośa.daṇḍa.mitrāṇi prakṛtayaḥ | 1 |
- KAZ06.1.02/ tatra svāmi.sampat | 2 |
- KAZ06.1.03/ mahā.kulīno daiva.buddhi.sattva.sampanno vṛddha.darśī dhārmikaḥ satya.vāg
avisamvādaḥ kṛtajñaḥ sthūla.lakṣo mahā.utsāho 'dīrgha.sūtraḥ śakya.sāmanto
dṛḍha.buddhir akṣudra.pariṣatko vinaya.kāma ity ābhigāmikā guṇāḥ | 3 |
- KAZ06.1.04/ śuśrūṣā.śravaṇa.grahaṇa.dhāraṇa.vijñāna.ūha.apoha.tattva.abhiniveśāḥ
prajñā.guṇāḥ | 4 |
- KAZ06.1.05/ śauryam amarṣaḥ śighratā dākṣyaṁ ca-utsāha.guṇāḥ | 5 |
- KAZ06.1.06/ vāgmī pragalbhaḥ smṛti.mati.balavān udagraḥ sv.avagrahaḥ kṛta.śilpo 'vyasano
daṇḍa.nāyy upakāra.apakārayor dṛṣṭa.pratikārī hrīmān āpat.prakṛtyor viniyoktā
dīrgha.dūra.darśī deśa.kāla.puruṣa.kāra.kārya.pradhānaḥ
sandhi.vikrama.tyāga.samyama.paṇa.parac.chidra.vibhāgī samvṛto
'dīna.abhihāsyā.jihma.bhrukuṭī.kṣaṇaḥ
kāma.krodha.lobha.stambha.cāpala.upatāpa.paiśunya.hīnaḥ śaklaḥ smita.udagra.abhibhāṣī
vṛddha.upadeśa.ācāra ity ātma.sampat | 6 |
- KAZ06.1.07/ amātya.sampad uktā purastāt | 7 |
- KAZ06.1.08/ madhye ca-ante ca sthānavān ātma.dhāraṇaḥ para.dhāraṇaś ca-āpadi
sva.ārakṣaḥ sva.ājīvaḥ śatru.dveṣī śakya.sāmantaḥ
pañka.pāṣāṇa.uṣara.viṣama.kanṭaka.śreṇī.vyāla.mṛga.aṭavī.hīnaḥ kāntaḥ
sītā.khani.dravya.hastī.vanavān gavyaḥ pauruṣeyo gupta.gocaraḥ paśumān adeva.mātṛko
vāri.sthala.pathābhyām upetaḥ sāra.citra.bahu.paṇyo daṇḍa.kara.sahaḥ karma.śīla.karṣako
'bālīśa.svāmy.avara.varṇa.prāyo bhakta.śuci.manuṣya iti jana.pada.sampat | 8 |
- KAZ06.1.09/ durga.sampad uktā purastāt | 9 |
- KAZ06.1.10/ dharma.adhigataḥ pūrvaiḥ svayaṁ vā hema.rūpya.prāyaś
citra.sthūla.ratna.hiraṇyo dīrghām apy āpadam anāyatiṁ saheta-iti kośa.sampat | 10 |
- KAZ06.1.11/ pitṛ.paitāmaho nityo vaśyas tuṣṭa.bhṛta.putra.dāraḥ pravāseṣv avisamvāditāḥ
sarvatra-apratihato duḥkha.saho bahu.yuddhaḥ sarva.yuddha.praharaṇa.vidyā.viśāradaḥ
saha.vṛddhi.kṣayikatvād advaidhyaḥ kṣatra.prāya iti daṇḍa.sampat | 11 |
- KAZ06.1.12/ pitṛ.paitāmahaṁ nityaṁ vaśyam advaidhyaṁ mahal.laghu.samuttham iti
mitra.sampat | 12 |
- KAZ06.1.13/ arāja.bījī lubdhaḥ kṣudra.pariṣatko virakta.prakṛtir anyāya.vṛttir ayukto
vyasanī nirutsāho daiva.pramāṇo yat.kiñcana.kārya.gatir ananubandhaḥ klībo nitya.apakārī
ca-ity amitra.sampat | 13 |
- KAZ06.1.14/ evaṁ.bhūto hi śatruḥ sukhaḥ samucchettum bhavati | 14 |
- KAZ06.1.15ab/ ari.varjāḥ prakṛtayaḥ sapta-etāḥ sva.guṇa.udayāḥ |
- KAZ06.1.15cd/ uktāḥ pratyaṅga.bhūtās tāḥ prakṛtā rāja.sampadaḥ || 15 ||
- KAZ06.1.16ab/ sampādayaty asampannāḥ prakṛtīr ātmavān nṛpaḥ |
- KAZ06.1.16cd/ vivṛddhāś ca-anuraktāś ca prakṛtīr hantya anātmavān || 16 ||
- KAZ06.1.17ab/ tataḥ sa duṣṭa.prakṛtiś cāturanto 'py anātmavān |
- KAZ06.1.17cd/ hanyate vā prakṛtibhir yāti vā dviṣatām vaśam || 17 ||
- KAZ06.1.18ab/ ātmavānś tv alpa.deśo 'pi yuktaḥ prakṛti.sampadā |

¹⁸²[K tr. 364–371 :: K2 tr. 314–320

¹⁸³[K tr. 364 :: K2 tr. 314

KAZ06.1.18cd/nayajñāḥ prthivīm kṛtsnām jayaty eva na hīyate || 18 ||

6.2 Chapter 2 (Section 97): Concerning Peace and Activity

184

- KAZ06.2.01/ śama.vyāyāmau yoga.kṣemayor yoniḥ | 1 |
 KAZ06.2.02/ karma.ārambhānām yoga.ārādhano vyāyāmaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ06.2.03/ karma.phala.upabhogānām kṣema.ārādhanaḥ śamaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ06.2.04/ śama.vyāyāmayor yoniḥ śāḍguṇyam | 4 |
 KAZ06.2.05/ kṣayaḥ sthānam vṛddhir ity udāyās tasya | 5 |
 KAZ06.2.06/ mānuṣaṁ naya.apanayau, daivam aya.anayau | 6 |
 KAZ06.2.07/ daiva.mānuṣaṁ hi karma lokaṁ yāpayati | 7 |
 KAZ06.2.08/ adrṣṭa.kāritaṁ daivam | 8 |
 KAZ06.2.09/ tasminn iṣṭena phalena yogo 'yaḥ, aniṣṭena-anayaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ06.2.10/ drṣṭa.kāritaṁ mānuṣam | 10 |
 KAZ06.2.11/ tasmin yoga.kṣema.niṣpattir nayaḥ, vipattir apanayaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ06.2.12/ tac cintyam, acintyaṁ daivam | 12 |
 KAZ06.2.13/ rājā ātma.dravya.prakṛti.sampanno nayasya-adhiṣṭhānam vijigīṣuḥ | 13 |
 KAZ06.2.14/ tasya samantato maṇḍalī.bhūtā bhūmy.anantarā ari.prakṛtiḥ | 14 |
 KAZ06.2.15/ tathā-eva bhūmy.eka.antarā mitra.prakṛtiḥ | 15 |
 KAZ06.2.16/ ari.sampad.yuktaḥ sāmantaḥ śatruḥ, vyasanī yātavyaḥ, anapāśrayo durbala.āśrayo vā-ucchadanīyaḥ, viparyaye pīdanīyaḥ karśanīyo vā | 16 |
 KAZ06.2.17/ ity ari.viśeṣāḥ | 17 |
 KAZ06.2.18/ tasmān mitram ari.mitraṁ mitra.mitram ari.mitra.mitraṁ ca-ānantaryeṇa bhūmīnām prasajyante purastāt, paścāt pārṣṇi.grāha ākrandaḥ pārṣṇi.grāha.āsāra ākranda.āsāraḥ | 18 |
 KAZ06.2.19/ bhūmy.anantaraḥ prakṛti.mitraḥ, tulya.abhijanaḥ sahajaḥ, viruddho virodhayitā vā kṛtrimāḥ | 19 |
 KAZ06.2.20/ bhūmy.eka.antaraṁ prakṛti.mitram, mātā.pitr.sambaddham sahajam, dhana.jīvita.hetor āśritaṁ kṛtrimam | 20 |
 KAZ06.2.21/ ari.vijigīṣvor bhūmy.anantaraḥ saṁhata.asaṁhatayor anugraha.samartho nigrahe ca-asaṁhatayor madhyamaḥ | 21 |
 KAZ06.2.22/ ari.vijigīṣu.madhyānām bahiḥ prakṛtibhyo balavattaraḥ saṁhata.asaṁhatānām ari.vijigīṣu.madhyamānām anugraha.samartho nigrahe ca-asaṁhatānām udāsīnaḥ | 22 |
 KAZ06.2.23/ iti prakṛtayaḥ | 23 |
 KAZ06.2.24/ vijigīṣur mitram mitra.mitraṁ vā-asya prakṛtayas tisraḥ | 24 |
 KAZ06.2.25/ tāḥ pañcabhir amātya.jana.pada.durga.kośa.daṇḍa.prakṛtibhir eka.ekaśaḥ samyuktā maṇḍalam aṣṭādaśakaṁ bhavati | 25 |
 KAZ06.2.26/ anena maṇḍala.prthaktvaṁ vyākhyātam ari.madhyama.udāsīnānām | 26 |
 KAZ06.2.27/ evaṁ catur.maṇḍala.saṁkṣepaḥ | 27 |
 KAZ06.2.28/ dvādaśa rāja.prakṛtayaḥ ṣaṣṭir dravya.prakṛtayaḥ, saṁkṣepeṇa dvi.saptatiḥ | 28 |
 KAZ06.2.29/ tāsāṁ yathā.svaṁ sampadaḥ | 29 |
 KAZ06.2.30/ śaktiḥ siddhiś ca | 30 |
 KAZ06.2.31/ balaṁ śaktiḥ | 31 |
 KAZ06.2.32/ sukhaṁ siddhiḥ | 32 |
 KAZ06.2.33/ śaktis trividhā - jñāna.balaṁ mantra.śaktiḥ, kośa.daṇḍa.balaṁ prabhu.śaktiḥ, vikrama.balaṁ utsāha.śaktiḥ | 33 |

¹⁸⁴[K tr. 368 :: K2 tr. 317

KAZ06.2.34/ evaṁ siddhis trividhā-eva - mantra.śakti.sādhya mantra.siddhiḥ, prabhu.śakti.sādhya prabhu.siddhiḥ, utsāha.śakti.sādhya utsāha.siddhiḥ | 34 |
 KAZ06.2.35/ tābhir abhyuccito jyāyān bhavati, apacito hīnaḥ, tulya.śaktiḥ samaḥ | 35 |
 KAZ06.2.36/ tasmāt-śaktiṁ siddhiṁ ca ghaṭeta-ātmany āveśayitum, sādharmaṇo vā dravya.prakṛtiṣv ānantaryeṇa śauca.vaśena vā | 36 |
 KAZ06.2.37/ dūṣya.amitrābhyāṁ vā-apakraṣṭum yateta | 37 |
 KAZ06.2.38/ yadi vā paśyet "amitro me śakti.yukto vāg.daṇḍa.pāruṣya.artha.dūṣaṇaiḥ prakṛtīr upahaniṣyati, siddhi.yukto vā mṛgayā.dyūta.madya.strībhiḥ pramādaṁ gamiṣyati, sa virakta.prakṛtīr upakṣiṇaḥ pramatto vā sādhyo me bhaviṣyati, vighraha.abhiyukto vā sarva.sandohena-ekastho 'durgastho vā sthāsyati, sa saṁhata.sainyo mitra.durga.viyuktaḥ sādhyo me bhaviṣyati, "balavān vā rājā parataḥ śatrum ucchettu.kāmaḥ tam ucchidya mām ucchidyād" iti balavatā prārthitasya me vipanna.karma.ārambhasya vā sāhāyāṁ dāsyati", madhyama.lipsāyāṁ ca, ity evaṁ.ādiṣu kāraṇeṣv amitrasya-api śaktiṁ siddhiṁ ca-icchati | 38 |
 KAZ06.2.39ab/ nemim eka.antarān rājñāḥ kṛtvā ca-anantarān arān |
 KAZ06.2.39cd/ nābhim ātmānam āyacchen netā prakṛti.maṇḍale || 39 ||
 KAZ06.2.40ab/ madhye hy upahitaḥ śatrur netur mitrasya ca-ubhayoḥ |
 KAZ06.2.40cd/ ucchedyaḥ pīḍanīyo vā balavān api jāyate || 40 ||

7 Book 7: The Six Measures of Foreign Policy

185

7.1 Chapter 1 (Sections 98; 99): Enumeration of the Six Measures; Use of Measures in Decline, Stable Condition and Advancement

186

KAZ07.1.01/ śāḍguṇyasya prakṛti.maṇḍalaṁ yoniḥ | 1 |
 KAZ07.1.02/ "sandhi.vighraha.āsana.yāna.saṁśraya.dvaidhī.bhāvāḥ śāḍguṇyam" ity ācāryāḥ | 2 |
 KAZ07.1.03/ "dvaiguṇyam" iti vāta.vyādhiḥ | 3 |
 KAZ07.1.04/ "sandhi.vighrahābhyāṁ hi śāḍguṇyāṁ sampadyate" iti | 4 |
 KAZ07.1.05/ śāḍguṇyam eva-etad avasthā.bhedād iti kauṭilyaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ07.1.06/ tatra paṇa.bandhaḥ sandhiḥ | 6 |
 KAZ07.1.07/ apakāro vighrahaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ07.1.08/ upekṣaṇam āsanam | 8 |
 KAZ07.1.09/ abhyuccayo yānam | 9 |
 KAZ07.1.10/ para.arpaṇaṁ saṁśrayaḥ | 10 |
 KAZ07.1.11/ sandhi.vighraha.upādānaṁ dvaidhī.bhāvaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ07.1.12/ iti śāḍ.guṇāḥ | 12 |
 KAZ07.1.13/ parasmādd hīyamānaḥ sandadhīta | 13 |
 KAZ07.1.14/ abhyuccīyamāno vighrñīyāt | 14 |
 KAZ07.1.15/ "na mām paro na-aham param upahantum śaktaḥ" ity āsīta | 15 |
 KAZ07.1.16/ guṇa.atiśaya.yukto yāyāt | 16 |
 KAZ07.1.17/ śakti.hīnaḥ saṁśrayeta | 17 |
 KAZ07.1.18/ sahāya.sādhye kārye dvaidhībhāvaṁ gacchet | 18 |
 KAZ07.1.19/ iti guṇa.avasthāpanam | 19 |

¹⁸⁵[K tr. 372–444 :: K2 tr. 321–384

¹⁸⁶[K tr. 372 :: K2 tr. 321

- KAZ07.1.20/ teṣāṃ yasmin vā guṇe sthitaḥ paśyet "iha.sthaḥ śakṣyāmi durga.setu.karma.vaṇik.patha.sūnya.niveśa.khani.dravya.hasti.vana.karmāṇy ātmanaḥ pravartayitum, parasya ca-etāni karmāṇy upahantum" iti tam ātiṣṭhet | 20 |
- KAZ07.1.21/ sā vṛddhiḥ | 21 |
- KAZ07.1.22/ "āśutarā me vṛddhir bhūyastarā vṛddhy.udayatarā vā bhaviṣyati, viparītā parasya" iti jñātvā para.vṛddhim upekṣeta | 22 |
- KAZ07.1.23/ tulya.kāla.phala.udayāyām vā vṛddhau sandhim upeyāt | 23 |
- KAZ07.1.24/ yasmin vā guṇe sthitaḥ sva.karmaṇām upaghātaṃ paśyen na-itarasya tasmin na tiṣṭhet | 24 |
- KAZ07.1.25/ eṣa kṣayaḥ | 25 |
- KAZ07.1.26/ "ciratareṇa-alpataram vṛddhy.udayataram vā kṣeṣye, viparītaṃ paraḥ" iti jñātvā kṣayam upekṣeta | 26 |
- KAZ07.1.27/ tulya.kāla.phala.udaye vā kṣaye sandhim upeyāt | 27 |
- KAZ07.1.28/ yasmin vā guṇe sthitaḥ sva.karma.vṛddhim kṣayaṃ vā na-abhipaśyed etat.sthānam | 28 |
- KAZ07.1.29/ "hrasvatarām vṛddhy.udayataram vā sthāsyāmi, viparītaṃ paraḥ" iti jñātvā sthānam upekṣeta | 29 |
- KAZ07.1.30/ "tulya.kāla.phala.udaye vā sthāne sandhim upeyād" ity ācāryaḥ | 30 |
- KAZ07.1.31/ na-etad vibhāṣitam iti kauṭilyaḥ | 31 |
- KAZ07.1.32a/ yadi vā paśyet "sandhau sthito mahā.phalaiḥ sva.karmabhiḥ para.karmāṇy upahaniṣyāmi, mahā.phalāni vā sva.karmāṇy upabhokṣye, para.karmāṇi vā, sandhi.viśvāseṇa vā yoga.upaniṣat.praṇidhibhiḥ para.karmāṇy upahaniṣyāmi, sukhaṃ vā sa.anugraha.parihāra.saukaryam phala.lābha.bhūyastvena sva.karmaṇām para.karma.yoga.āvaham janam āsrāvayiṣyāmi -
- KAZ07.1.32b/ balinā-atimātreṇa vā saṃhitaḥ paraḥ sva.karma.upaghātaṃ prāpsyati, yena vā vigrhīto mayā.sandhatte tena-asya vighrahaṃ dīrghaṃ kariṣyāmi, mayā vā saṃhitasya mad.dveṣiṇo jana.padam pīḍayiṣyati -
- KAZ07.1.32c/ para.upahato vā-asya jana.pado mām āgamiṣyati, tataḥ karmasu vṛddhim prāpsyāmi, vipanna.karma.ārambho vā viśamasthaḥ paraḥ karmasu na me vikrameta -
- KAZ07.1.32d/ parataḥ pravṛtta.karma.ārambho vā tābhyām saṃhitaḥ karmasu vṛddhim prāpsyāmi, śatru.pratibaddhaṃ vā śatruṇā sandhim kṛtvā maṇḍalaṃ bhetsyāmi -
- KAZ07.1.32e/ bhinnam avāpsyāmi, daṇḍa.anugraheṇa vā śatrum upagrhya maṇḍala.lipsāyām vidveṣaṃ grāhayiṣyāmi, vidviṣṭaṃ tena-eva ghātayiṣyāmi" iti sandhinā vṛddhim ātiṣṭhet | 32 |
- KAZ07.1.33a/ yadi vā paśyet "āyudhīya.prāyaḥ śreṇī.prāyo vā me jana.padaḥ śaila.vana.nadī.durga.eka.dvāra.āraḥṣo vā śakṣyati para.abhiyogaṃ pratihantum, viśaya.ante durgam aviśahyam apāśrito vā śakṣyāmi para.karmāṇy upahantum -
- KAZ07.1.33b/ vyasana.pīḍa.upahata.utsāho vā paraḥ samprāpta.karma.upaghāta.kālaḥ, vigrhītasya-anyato vā śakṣyāmi jana.padam apavāhayitum" iti vighrahe sthito vṛddhim ātiṣṭhet | 33 |
- KAZ07.1.34/ yadi vā manyeta "na me śaktaḥ paraḥ karmāṇy upahantum na-aham tasya karma.upaghātī vā, vyasanam asya, śva.varāhayor iva kalahe vā, sva.karma.anuṣṭhāna.paro vā vardhiṣye" ity āsanena vṛddhim ātiṣṭhet | 34 |
- KAZ07.1.35/ yadi vā manyeta "yāna.sādhyāḥ karma.upaghātaḥ śatroḥ, prativihita.sva.karma.āraḥṣaś ca-asmi" iti yānena vṛddhim ātiṣṭhet | 35 |
- KAZ07.1.36/ yadi vā manyeta "na-asmi śaktaḥ para.karmāṇy upahantum, sva.karma.upaghātaṃ vā trātum" iti, balavantam āśritaḥ sva.karma.anuṣṭhānena kṣayāt sthānam sthānād vṛddhim ca-ākāṅkṣeta | 36 |

KAZ07.1.37/ yadi vā manyeta "sandhinā-ekataḥ sva.karmāṇi pravartayiṣyāmi,
vighraṇa-ekataḥ para.karmāṇy upahaniṣyāmi" iti dvaidhī.bhāvena vṛddhim ātiṣṭhet | 37 |
KAZ07.1.38ab/ evaṃ ṣaḍbhir guṇair etaiḥ sthitaḥ prakṛti.maṇḍale |
KAZ07.1.38cd/ paryeṣeta kṣayāt sthānaṃ sthānād vṛddhim ca karmasu || 38 ||

7.2 Chapter 2 (Section 100): Conduct when Seeking Shelter

187

KAZ07.2.01/ sandhi.vigrahayos tulyāyām vṛddhau sandhim upeyāt | 1 |
KAZ07.2.02/ vighrahe hi kṣaya.vyaya.pravāsa.pratyavāyā bhavanti | 2 |
KAZ07.2.03/ tena-āsana.yānayor āsanaṃ vyākhyātam | 3 |
KAZ07.2.04/ dvaidhī.bhāva.samśrayayor dvaidhī.bhāvaṃ gacchet | 4 |
KAZ07.2.05/ dvaidhī.bhūto hi sva.karma.pradhāna ātmana eva-upakaroti, samśritas tu
parasya-upakaroti, na-ātmanaḥ | 5 |
KAZ07.2.06/ yad.balaḥ sāmantas tad.viśiṣṭa.balam āśrayet | 6 |
KAZ07.2.07/ tad.viśiṣṭa.bala.abhāve tam eva-āśritaḥ kośa.daṇḍa.bhūmīnām
anyatamena-asya-upakartum adrṣṭaḥ prayateta | 7 |
KAZ07.2.08/ mahā.doṣo hi viśiṣṭa.bala.samāgamo rājñām, anyatra-ari.vigrhītāt | 8 |
KAZ07.2.09/ aśakye daṇḍa.upanatavad varteta | 9 |
KAZ07.2.10/ yadā ca-asya prāṇa.haraṃ vyādhim antaḥ.kopaṃ śatru.vṛddhim
mitra.vyasanam upasthitaṃ vā tan.nimittam ātmanaś ca vṛddhim paśyet tadā
sambhāvya.vyādhi.dharma.kārya.apadeśena-apayāyāt | 10 |
KAZ07.2.11/ sva.viśayastho vā na-upagacchet | 11 |
KAZ07.2.12/ āsanno vā-asya cchidreṣu praharet | 12 |
KAZ07.2.13/ balīyasor vā madhya.gatas trāṇa.samartham āśrayeta, yasya vā-antardhiḥ syāt,
ubhau vā | 13 |
KAZ07.2.14/ kapāla.samśrayas tiṣṭhet, mūla.haram itarasya-itaram apadiśan | 14 |
KAZ07.2.15/ bhedam ubhayor vā paraspara.apadeśaṃ prayuñjīta, bhinnayor
upāṃśu.daṇḍam | 15 |
KAZ07.2.16/ pārśvastho vā balasthayor āsanna.bhayāt pratikurvīta | 16 |
KAZ07.2.17/ durga.apāśrayo vā dvaidhī.bhūtas tiṣṭhet | 17 |
KAZ07.2.18/ sandhi.vighra.krama.hetubhir vā ceṣṭeta | 18 |
KAZ07.2.19/ dūṣya.amitra.ātavikān ubhayor upagrhnīyāt | 19 |
KAZ07.2.20/ etayor anyataraṃ gacchaṃs tair eva-anyatarasya vyasane praharet | 20 |
KAZ07.2.21/ dvābhyām upahato vā maṇḍala.apāśrayas tiṣṭhet, madhyamam udāsīnaṃ vā
samśrayeta | 21 |
KAZ07.2.22/ tena saha-ekam upagrhya-itaram ucchindyād, ubhau vā | 22 |
KAZ07.2.23/ dvābhyām ucchinno vā madhyama.udāsīnayos tat.pakṣīyāṇām vā rājñām
nyāya.vṛttim āśrayeta | 23 |
KAZ07.2.24/ tulyānām vā yasya prakṛtayaḥ sukhayeyur enam, yatrastho vā śaknuyād
ātmānam uddhartum, yatra vā pūrva.puruṣa.ucitā gatiḥ āsannaḥ sambandho vā, mitrāṇi
bhūyāṃsy atīśaktimanti vā bhaveyuh | 24 |
KAZ07.2.25ab/ priyo yasya bhaved yo vā priyo 'sya kataras tayoḥ |
KAZ07.2.25cd/ priyo yasya sa tam gacched ity āśraya.gatiḥ parā || 25 ||

¹⁸⁷[K tr. 376 :: K2 tr. 325

7.3 Chapter 3 (Sections 101; 102): Policies for the Equal, the Weaker and the Stronger Kings; Peace-Treaties by the Weaker King

188

- KAZ07.3.01/ vijigīṣuḥ śakty.apekṣaḥ śāḍguṇyam upayujīta | 1 |
 KAZ07.3.02/ sama.jyāyobhyām sandhīyeta, hīnena vigṛhṇīyāt | 2 |
 KAZ07.3.03/ vigṛhīto hi jyāyasā hastinā pāda.yuddham iva-abhyupaiti | 3 |
 KAZ07.3.04/ samena ca-āmaṁ pātram āmena-ahatam iva-ubhayataḥ kṣayaṁ karoti | 4 |
 KAZ07.3.05/ kumbhena-iva-aśmā hīnena-eka.anta.siddhim avāpnoti | 5 |
 KAZ07.3.06/ jyāyāms cen na sandhim icched daṇḍa.upanata.vṛttam ābalīyasaṁ vā yogam ātiṣṭhet | 6 |
 KAZ07.3.07/ samaś cen na sandhim icched yāvan.mātram apakuryāt tāvan.mātram asya pratyapakuryāt | 7 |
 KAZ07.3.08/ tejo hi sandhāna.kāraṇam | 8 |
 KAZ07.3.09/ na-ataptaṁ lohaṁ lohena sandhatta iti | 9 |
 KAZ07.3.10/ hīnaś cet sarvatra-anupraṇatas tiṣṭhet sandhim upeyāt | 10 |
 KAZ07.3.11/ āraṇyo 'gnir iva hi duḥkha.amarṣajaṁ tejo vikramayati | 11 |
 KAZ07.3.12/ maṇḍalasya ca-anugrāhyo bhavati | 12 |
 KAZ07.3.13/ saṁhitaś cet "para.prakṛtayo lubdha.kṣīṇa.apacaritāḥ pratyādāna.bhayād vā na-upagacchanti" iti paśyedd hīno 'pi vigṛhṇīyāt | 13 |
 KAZ07.3.14/ vigṛhītaś cet "para.prakṛtayo lubdha.kṣīṇa.apacaritā vighraha.udvignā vā mām na-upagacchanti" iti paśyej jyāyān api sandhīyeta, vighraha.udvegaṁ vā śamayet | 14 |
 KAZ07.3.15/ vyasana.yaugapadye 'pi "guru.vyasano 'smi, laghu.vyasanaḥ paraḥ sukkena pratikṛtya vyasanam ātmano 'bhiyujyād" iti paśyej jyāyān api sandhīyeta | 15 |
 KAZ07.3.16/ sandhi.vighrahayoś cet para.karṣanam ātma.upacayaṁ vā na-abhipaśyej jyāyān apy āsīta | 16 |
 KAZ07.3.17/ para.vyasanam apratikāryaṁ cet paśyedd hīno 'py abhiyāyāt | 17 |
 KAZ07.3.18/ apratikārya.āsanna.vyasano vā jyāyān api saṁśrayeta | 18 |
 KAZ07.3.19/ sandhinā-ekato vighraheṇa-ekataś cet kārya.siddhim paśyej jyāyān api dvaidhī.bhūtas tiṣṭhet | 19 |
 KAZ07.3.20/ evaṁ samasya śāḍguṇya.upayogaḥ | 20 |
 KAZ07.3.21/ tatra tu prativiśeṣaḥ | 21 |
 KAZ07.3.22ab/ pravṛtta.cakreṇa-ākṛānto rājñā balavatā-abalaḥ |
 KAZ07.3.22cd/ sandhinā-upanamet tūrṇaṁ kośa.daṇḍa.ātma.bhūmibhiḥ || 22 ||
 KAZ07.3.23ab/ svayaṁ saṁkhyāta.daṇḍena daṇḍasya vibhavana vā |
 KAZ07.3.23cd/ upasthātavyam ity eṣa sandhir ātma.āmiṣo mataḥ || 23 ||
 KAZ07.3.24ab/ senā.pati.kumārābhyām upasthātavyam ity ayam |
 KAZ07.3.24cd/ puruṣa.antara.sandhiḥ syān na-ātmanā-ity ātma.rakṣaṇaḥ || 24 ||
 KAZ07.3.25ab/ ekena-anyatra yātavyaṁ svayaṁ daṇḍena vā-ity ayam |
 KAZ07.3.25cd/ adṛṣṭa.puruṣaḥ sandhir daṇḍa.mukhya.ātma.rakṣaṇaḥ || 25 ||
 KAZ07.3.26ab/ mukhya.strī.bandhanaṁ kuryāt pūrvayoh paścime tv arim |
 KAZ07.3.26cd/ sādhayed gūḍham ity ete daṇḍa.upanata.sandhayaḥ || 26 ||
 KAZ07.3.27ab/ kośa.dānena śeṣāṇāṁ prakṛtīnāṁ vimokṣaṇam |
 KAZ07.3.27cd/ parikrayo bhavet sandhiḥ sa eva ca yathā.sukham || 27 ||
 KAZ07.3.28ab/ skandha.upaneyo bahudhā jñeyaḥ sandhir upagrahaḥ |
 KAZ07.3.28cd/ niruddho deśa.kālābhyām atyayaḥ syād upagrahaḥ || 28 ||

¹⁸⁸[K tr. 378 :: K2 tr. 327

KAZ07.3.29ab/ viṣahya.dānād āyatyām kṣamaḥ strī.bandhanād api |
 KAZ07.3.29cd/ suvarṇa.sandhir viśvāsād ekī.bhāva.gato bhavet || 29 ||
 KAZ07.3.30ab/ viparītaḥ kapālaḥ syād atyādāna.abhibhāṣitaḥ |
 KAZ07.3.30cd/ pūrvayoḥ praṇayet kupyaṁ hasty.aśvaṁ vā gara.anvitam || 30 ||
 KAZ07.3.31ab/ tṛtīye praṇayed arthaṁ kathayan karmaṇām kṣayam |
 KAZ07.3.31cd/ tiṣṭhec caturtha ity ete kośa.upanata.sandhayaḥ || 31 ||
 KAZ07.3.32ab/ bhūmy.eka.deśa.tyāgena śeṣa.prakṛti.rakṣaṇam |
 KAZ07.3.32cd/ ādiṣṭa.sandhis tatra-iṣṭo gūḍha.stena.upaghātinaḥ || 32 ||
 KAZ07.3.33ab/ bhūmīnām ātta.sārāṇām mūla.varjaṁ praṇāmanam |
 KAZ07.3.33cd/ ucchinna.sandhis tatra-iṣṭaḥ para.vyasana.kāṅkṣiṇaḥ || 33 ||
 KAZ07.3.34ab/ phala.dānena bhūmīnām mokṣaṇam syād avakrayaḥ |
 KAZ07.3.34cd/ phala.atimukto bhūmibhyaḥ sandhiḥ sa paridūṣaṇaḥ || 34 ||
 KAZ07.3.35ab/ kuryād avekṣaṇam pūrvau paścimau tv ābalīyasam |
 KAZ07.3.35cd/ ādāya phalam ity ete deśa.upanata.sandhayaḥ || 35 ||
 KAZ07.3.36ab/ sva.kāryāṇām vaśena-ete deśe kāle ca bhāṣitaḥ |
 KAZ07.3.36cd/ ābalīyasikāḥ kāryās trividhā hīna.sandhayaḥ || 36 ||

7.4 Chapter 4 (Sections 103; 104; 105; 106; 107): Staying Quiet after Making War; Staying Quiet after Making Peace; Marching after Making War; Marching after Making Peace; Marching with Other Kings

189

KAZ07.4.01/ sandhi.vigrahayor āsanam yānam ca vyākhyātam | 1 |
 KAZ07.4.02/ sthānam āsanam upekṣaṇam ca-ity āsana.paryāyāḥ | 2 |
 KAZ07.4.03/ viśeṣas tu - guṇa.ekadeśe sthānam, sva.vṛddhi.prāpty.artham āsanam,
 upāyānām aprayoga upekṣaṇam | 3 |
 KAZ07.4.04/ atisandhāna.kāmayor ari.vijigīṣvor upahantum aśaktayor vigr̥hya-āsanam
 sandhāya vā | 4 |
 KAZ07.4.05/ yadā vā paśyet "sva.daṇḍair mitra.aṭavī.daṇḍair vā samaṁ jyāyāmsam vā
 karṣayitum utsahe" iti tadā kṛta.bāhya.abhyantara.kṛtyo vigr̥hya-āsita | 5 |
 KAZ07.4.06/ yadā vā paśyet "utsāha.yuktā me prakṛtayaḥ saṁhatā vivṛddhāḥ sva.karmāṇy
 avyāhatāś carīṣyanti parasya vā karmāṇy upahaniṣyanti" iti tadā vigr̥hya-āsita | 6 |
 KAZ07.4.07a/ yadā vā paśyet "parasya-apacaritāḥ kṣiṇā lubdhāḥ
 sva.cakra.stena.aṭavī.vyathitā vā prakṛtayaḥ svayam upajāpena vā mām eṣyanti, sampannā me
 vārttā, vipannā parasya, tasya prakṛtayo durbhikṣa.upahatā mām eṣyanti; vipannā me vārttā,
 sampannā parasya, -
 KAZ07.4.07b/ tam me prakṛtayo na gamiṣyanti, vigr̥hya ca-asya dhānya.paśu.hiraṇyāny
 āhariṣyāmi, sva.paṇya.upaghātīni vā para.paṇyāni nivartayiṣyāmi, -
 KAZ07.4.07c/ para.vaṇik.pathād vā saravanti mām eṣyanti vigr̥hīte, na-itaram,
 dūṣya.amitra.aṭavī.nigrahaṁ vā vigr̥hīto na kariṣyati, tair eva vā vighrahaṁ prāpsyati, -
 KAZ07.4.07d/ mitram me mitra.bhāvya abhiprayāto bahv.alpa.kālaṁ tanu.kṣaya.vyayam
 arthaṁ prāpsyati, guṇavatīm ādeyām vā bhūmim, -
 KAZ07.4.07e/ sarva.sandohena vā mām anādṛtya prayātu.kāmaḥ kathaṁ na yāyād" iti
 para.vṛddhi.pratighāta.arthaṁ pratāpa.arthaṁ ca vigr̥hya-āsita | 7 |
 KAZ07.4.08/ "tam eva hi pratyāvṛtto grasate" ity ācāryāḥ | 8 |
 KAZ07.4.09/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 9 |

¹⁸⁹[K tr. 383 :: K2 tr. 331

- KAZ07.4.10/ karṣana.mātram asya kuryād avyasaninaḥ, para.vṛddhyā tu vṛddhaḥ samucchadanam | 10 |
- KAZ07.4.11/ evaṁ parasya yātavyo 'smai sāhāyā avinaṣṭaḥ prayacchet | 11 |
- KAZ07.4.12/ tasmāt sarva.sandoha.prakṛtaṁ vigṛhya-āsita | 12 |
- KAZ07.4.13/ vigṛhya.āsana.hetu.prātilomye sandhāya-āsita | 13 |
- KAZ07.4.14/ vigṛhya.āsana.hetubhir abhyuccitaḥ sarva.sandoha.varjaṁ vigṛhya yāyāt | 14 |
- KAZ07.4.15/ yadā vā paśyet "vyasanī paraḥ, prakṛti.vyasanam vā-asya śeeṣa.prakṛtibhir apratikāryam, sva.cakra.pīḍitā viraktā vā-asya prakṛtayaḥ karṣitā nirutsāhāḥ parasparād vā bhinnāḥ śakyā lobhayitum, agny.udaka.vyādhi.maraka.durbhikṣa.nimittaṁ kṣīṇa.yugya.puruṣa.nicaya.rakṣā.vidhānaḥ paraḥ" iti tadā vigṛhya yāyāt | 15 |
- KAZ07.4.16/ yadā vā paśyet "mitram ākrandaś ca me sūra.vṛddha.anurakta.prakṛtiḥ, viparīta.prakṛtiḥ paraḥ pārṣṇi.grāhaś ca-āsāraś ca, śakṣyāmi mitreṇa-āsāram ākrandena pārṣṇi.grāham vā vigṛhya yātum" iti tadā vigṛhya yāyāt | 16 |
- KAZ07.4.17/ yadā vā phalam eka.hāryam alpa.kālāṁ paśyet tadā pārṣṇi.grāha.āsārābhyām vigṛhya yāyāt | 17 |
- KAZ07.4.18/ viparyaye sandhāya yāyāt | 18 |
- KAZ07.4.19/ yadā vā paśyet "na śakyam ekena yātum avaśyam ca yātavyam" iti tadā sama.hīna.jyāyobhiḥ sāmavāyikaiḥ sambhūya yāyād, ekaṭra nirdiṣṭena-amśena, anekatra-anirdiṣṭena-amśena | 19 |
- KAZ07.4.20/ teṣāṁ asamavāye daṇḍam anyatamasman niviṣṭa.amśena yāceta | 20 |
- KAZ07.4.21/ sambhūya.abhigamanena vā nirviśyeta, dhruve lābhe nirdiṣṭena-amśena, adhruve lābha.amśena | 21 |
- KAZ07.4.22ab/ amśo daṇḍa.samaḥ pūrvaḥ prayāsa.sama uttamaḥ |
- KAZ07.4.22cd/ vilopo vā yathā.lābham prakṣepa.sama eva vā || 22 ||

7.5 Chapter 5 (Sections 108; 109; 110): Considerations about Attack on a Vulnerable King and the Enemy; Causes Leading to Decline, Greed and Disaffection among Subjects; Confederated Allies

190

- KAZ07.5.01/ tulya.sāmanta.vyasane yātavyam amitram vā-ity amitram abhiyāyāt, tat.siddhau yātavyam | 1 |
- KAZ07.5.02/ amitra.siddhau hi yātavyaḥ sāhāyāṁ dadyān na-amitro yātavya.siddhau | 2 |
- KAZ07.5.03/ guru.vyasanam yātavyaṁ laghu.vyasanam amitram vā-iti "guru.vyasanam saukaryato yāyād" ity ācāryaḥ | 3 |
- KAZ07.5.04/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 4 |
- KAZ07.5.05/ laghu.vyasanam amitram yāyāt | 5 |
- KAZ07.5.06/ laghv api hi vyasanam abhiyuktasya kṛcchraṁ bhavati | 6 |
- KAZ07.5.07/ satyaṁ gurv api gurutaraṁ bhavati | 7 |
- KAZ07.5.08/ anabhiyuktas tu laghu.vyasanāḥ sukhena vyasanam pratikṛtya-amitro yātavyam abhisaret, pārṣṇim vā gṛhṇīyāt | 8 |
- KAZ07.5.09/ yātavya.yaugapadye guru.vyasanam nyāya.vṛttim laghu.vyasanam anyāya.vṛttim virakta.prakṛtim vā-iti virakta.prakṛtim yāyāt | 9 |
- KAZ07.5.10/ guru.vyasanam nyāya.vṛttim abhiyuktaṁ prakṛtayo 'nugṛhṇanti, laghu.vyasanam anyāya.vṛttim upekṣante, viraktā balavantam apy ucchindanti | 10 |
- KAZ07.5.11/ tasmād virakta.prakṛtim eva yāyāt | 11 |

¹⁹⁰[K tr. 386 :: K2 tr. 334

- KAZ07.5.12/ kṣīṇa.lubdha.prakṛtim apacarita.prakṛtim vā-iti kṣīṇa.lubdha.prakṛtim yāyāt, kṣīṇa.lubdhā hi prakṛtayaḥ sukhena-upajāpaṁ pīḍāṁ vā-upagacchanti, na-apacaritāḥ pradhāna.avagraha.sādhyāḥ" ity ācāryāḥ | 12 |
- KAZ07.5.13/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 13 |
- KAZ07.5.14/ kṣīṇa.lubdhā hi prakṛtayo bhartari snigdhā bhartṛ.hite tiṣṭhanti, upajāpaṁ vā viśaṁvādayanti, anurāge sārvaṅṇyaṁ iti | 14 |
- KAZ07.5.15/ tasmād apacarita.prakṛtim eva yāyāt | 15 |
- KAZ07.5.16/ balavantam anyāya.vṛttim durbalaṁ vā nyāya.vṛttim iti balavantam anyāya.vṛttim yāyāt | 16 |
- KAZ07.5.17/ balavantam anyāya.vṛttim abhiyuktaṁ prakṛtayo na-anugṛhṇanti, niṣpātayanti, amitraṁ vā-asya bhajante | 17 |
- KAZ07.5.18/ durbalaṁ tu nyāya.vṛttim abhiyuktaṁ prakṛtayaḥ parigṛhṇanti, anuniṣpatanti vā | 18 |
- KAZ07.5.19ab/ avakṣepeṇa hi satāṁ asatāṁ pragraheṇa ca |
- KAZ07.5.19cd/ abhūtānāṁ ca himsānāṁ adharmyāṇāṁ pravartanaiḥ || 19 ||
- KAZ07.5.20ab/ ucitānāṁ caritrāṇāṁ dharmiṣṭhānāṁ nivartanaiḥ |
- KAZ07.5.20cd/ adharmasya prasaṅgena dharmasya-avagraheṇa ca || 20 ||
- KAZ07.5.21ab/ akāryāṇāṁ ca karaṇaiḥ kāryāṇāṁ ca praṇāśanaiḥ |
- KAZ07.5.21cd/ apradānaiḥ ca deyaṇāṁ adeyaṇāṁ ca sādhanaiḥ || 21 ||
- KAZ07.5.22ab/ adaṇḍanaiḥ ca daṇḍyānāṁ adaṇḍyānāṁ ca daṇḍanaiḥ |
- KAZ07.5.22cd/ agrāhyāṇāṁ upagrāhair grāhyāṇāṁ ca-anabhigrahaiḥ || 22 ||
- KAZ07.5.23ab/ anarthyānāṁ ca karaṇair arthyānāṁ ca vighātanaiḥ |
- KAZ07.5.23cd/ arakṣaṇaiḥ ca corebhyaḥ svayaṁ ca parimoṣaṇaiḥ || 23 ||
- KAZ07.5.24ab/ pātaiḥ puruṣa.kārāṇāṁ karmaṇāṁ guṇa.dūṣaṇaiḥ |
- KAZ07.5.24cd/ upaghātaiḥ pradhānānāṁ mānyaṇāṁ ca-avamānanaiḥ || 24 ||
- KAZ07.5.25ab/ virodhanaiḥ ca vṛddhānāṁ vaiṣamyena-anṛtena ca |
- KAZ07.5.25cd/ kṛtasya-apratikāreṇa sthitasya-akaraṇena ca || 25 ||
- KAZ07.5.26ab/ rājñāḥ pramāda.ālasyaḥkṣemā yuga.kṣema.vadhena vā |
- KAZ07.5.26cd/ prakṛtīnāṁ kṣayo lobho vairāgyaṁ ca-upajāyate || 26 ||
- KAZ07.5.27ab/ kṣīṇāḥ prakṛtayo lobhaṁ lubdhā yānti virāgatāṁ |
- KAZ07.5.27cd/ viraktā yānti amitraṁ vā bhartāraṁ ghnanti vā svayaṁ || 27 ||
- KAZ07.5.28/ tasmāt prakṛtīnāṁ kṣaya.lobha.virāga.kāraṇāni na-utpādayet, utpannāni vā sadyaḥ pratikurvīta | 28 |
- KAZ07.5.29/ kṣīṇā lubdhā viraktā vā prakṛtaya iti | 29 |
- KAZ07.5.30/ kṣīṇāḥ pīḍana.ucchedana.bhayāt sadyaḥ sandhiṁ yuddhaṁ niṣpatanaṁ vā rocayante | 30 |
- KAZ07.5.31/ lubdhā lobhena-asantuṣṭāḥ para.upajāpaṁ lipsante | 31 |
- KAZ07.5.32/ viraktāḥ para.abhiyogam abhyutiṣṭhante | 32 |
- KAZ07.5.33/ tāsāṁ hiraṇya.dhānya.kṣayaḥ sarva.upaghātī kṛcchra.pratikāraś ca, yugya.puruṣa.kṣayo hiraṇya.dhānya.sādhyāḥ | 33 |
- KAZ07.5.34/ lobha aikadeśiko mukhya.āyattaḥ para.artheṣu śakyaḥ pratihantum ādātum vā | 34 |
- KAZ07.5.35/ virāgaḥ pradhāna.avagraha.sādhyāḥ | 35 |
- KAZ07.5.36/ niṣpradhānā hi prakṛtayo bhogyā bhavanty anupajāpyās ca-anyeṣāṁ, anāpat.sahās tu | 36 |
- KAZ07.5.37/ prakṛti.mukhya.pragrahaḥ tu bahudhā bhinnā guptā bhavanty āpat.sahās ca | 37 |
- KAZ07.5.38/ sāmavāyikānāṁ api sandhi.vigraha.kāraṇāny avekṣya śakti.śauca.yuktaiḥ sambhūya yāyāt | 38 |

KAZ07.5.39/ śāktimān hi pārṣṇi.grahaṇe yātrā.sāhāyā.dāne vā śaktaḥ, śuciḥ siddhau ca-asiddhau ca yathā.sthita.kārī-iti | 39 |
 KAZ07.5.40/ teṣāṃ jyāyasā-ekena dvābhyāṃ samābhyāṃ vā sambhūya yātavyam iti dvābhyāṃ samābhyāṃ śreyaḥ | 40 |
 KAZ07.5.41/ jyāyasā hy avagr̥hītaś carati, samābhyāṃ atisandhāna.ādhikye vā | 41 |
 KAZ07.5.42/ tau hi sukhau bhedayitum, duṣṭaś ca-eko dvābhyāṃ niyantum bheda.upagrahaṃ ca-upagantum iti | 42 |
 KAZ07.5.43/ samena-ekena dvābhyāṃ hīnābhyāṃ vā-iti dvābhyāṃ hīnābhyāṃ śreyaḥ | 43 |
 KAZ07.5.44/ tau hi dvi.kārya.sādhakau vāsyau ca bhavataḥ | 44 |
 KAZ07.5.45ab/ kārya.siddhau tu - kṛta.arthāḥ jyāyaso gūḍhaḥ sa.apadeśam apasravet |
 KAZ07.5.45cd/ aśuceḥ śuci.vṛttāt tu pratīkṣeta-ā visarjanāt || 45 ||
 KAZ07.5.46ab/ sattrād apasared yattaḥ kalatram apanīya vā |
 KAZ07.5.46cd/ samād api hi labdha.arthād viśvas tasya bhayaṃ bhavet || 46 ||
 KAZ07.5.47ab/ jyāyastve ca-api labdha.arthaḥ samo 'pi parikalpate |
 KAZ07.5.47cd/ abhyuccitaś ca-aviśvāsyō vṛddhiś citta.vikāriṇī || 47 ||
 KAZ07.5.48ab/ viśiṣṭād alpam apy aṃśaṃ labdhvā tuṣṭa.mukho vrajet |
 KAZ07.5.48cd/ anāṃśō vā tato 'sya-aṅke prahr̥tya dvi.guṇaṃ haret || 48 ||
 KAZ07.5.49ab/ kṛta.arthas tu svayaṃ netā visṛjet sāmavāyikān |
 KAZ07.5.49cd/ api jīyeta na jayen maṇḍala.iṣṭas tathā bhavet || 49 ||

7.6 Chapter 6 (Sections 111; 112): March of two Allied Kings; Treaties with Stipulations, without Stipulations and with Deserters

191

KAZ07.6.01/ vijigīṣur dvitīyāṃ prakṛtim evam atisandadhyāt | 1 |
 KAZ07.6.02/ sāmantaṃ saṃhita.prayāṇe yoja- yet "tvam ito yāhi, aham ito yāsyāmi, samāno lābhaḥ" iti | 2 |
 KAZ07.6.03/ lābha.sāmye sandhiḥ, vaiśāmye vikramaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ07.6.04/ sandhiḥ paripaṇitaś ca-aparipaṇitaś ca | 4 |
 KAZ07.6.05/ "tvam etaṃ deśaṃ yāhi, aham imaṃ deśaṃ yāsyāmi" iti paripaṇita.deśaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ07.6.06/ "tvam etāvantāṃ kālāṃ ceṣṭasva, aham etāvantāṃ kālāṃ ceṣṭiṣye" iti paripaṇita.kālāḥ | 6 |
 KAZ07.6.07/ "tvam etāvat.kāryaṃ sādahaya, aham idaṃ kāryaṃ sādhayiṣyāmi" iti paripaṇita.arthaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ07.6.08/ yadi vā manyeta "śaila.vana.nadī.durgam aṭavī.vyavahitaṃ chinna.dhānya.puruṣa.vivādha.āsāram ayavasa.indhana.udakam avijñātaṃ prakṛṣṭam anya.bhāva.deśīyaṃ vā sainya.vyāyāmānām alabdha.bhaumaṃ vā deśaṃ paro yāsyati, viparītam aham" ity etasmin viśeṣe paripaṇita.deśaṃ sandhim upeyāt | 8 |
 KAZ07.6.09/ yadi vā manyeta "pravārṣa.uṣṇa.śītam ativyādhi.prāyam upakṣiṇa.āhāra.upabhogaṃ sainya.vyāyāmānām ca-auparodhikaṃ kārya.sāadhanānām ūnam atiriktaṃ vā kālāṃ paraś ceṣṭiṣyate, viparītam aham" ity etasmin viśeṣe paripaṇita.kālāṃ sandhim upeyāt | 9 |
 KAZ07.6.10/ yadi vā manyeta "pratyādeyaṃ prakṛti.kopakāṃ dīrgha.kālāṃ mahā.kṣaya.vyayam alpam anartha.anubandham akalyam adharmyaṃ madhyama.udāsīna.viruddhaṃ mitra.upaghātaṃ vā kāryaṃ paraḥ sādhayiṣyati, viparītam aham" ity etasmin viśeṣe paripaṇita.arthaṃ sandhim upeyāt | 10 |

¹⁹¹[K tr.391 :: K2 tr. 338

- KAZ07.6.11/ evaṁ deśa.kālayoḥ kāla.kāryayor deśa.kāryayor deśa.kāla.kāryāṇāṁ
ca-avasthāpanāt sapta.vidhaḥ paripaṇitaḥ | 11 |
- KAZ07.6.12/ tasmin prāg eva-ārabhya pratiṣṭhāpya ca sva.karmāṇi para.karmasu vikrameta |
12 |
- KAZ07.6.13/ vyasana.tvara.avamāna.ālasya.yuktam ajñāṁ vā śatrum atisandhātu.kāmo
deśa.kāla.kāryāṇāṁ anavasthāpanāt "saṁhitau svaḥ" iti sandhi.viśvāsena parac.chidram
āsāḍya prahared ity aparipaṇitaḥ | 13 |
- KAZ07.6.14/ tatra-etad bhavati | 14 |
- KAZ07.6.15ab/ sāmantena-eva sāmantaṁ vidvān āyojya vighrahe |
- KAZ07.6.15cd/ tato 'nyasya hared bhūmiṁ chittvā pakṣaṁ samantataḥ || 15 ||
- KAZ07.6.16/ sandher akṛta.cikīrṣā kṛta.śleṣaṇaṁ kṛta.vidūṣaṇaṁ avaśīrṇa.kriyā ca | 16 |
- KAZ07.6.17/ vikramasya prakāśa.yuddhaṁ kūṭa.yuddhaṁ tūṣṇīm.yuddham | 17 |
- KAZ07.6.18/ iti sandhi.vikramau | 18 |
- KAZ07.6.19/ apūrvasya sandheḥ sa.anubandhaiḥ sāma.ādibhiḥ paryeṣaṇaṁ
sama.hīna.jyāyasāṁ ca yathā.balam avasthāpanam akṛta.cikīrṣā | 19 |
- KAZ07.6.20/ kṛtasya priya.hitābhyāṁ ubhayataḥ paripālanaṁ yathā.sambhāṣitasya ca
nibandhanasya-anuvartanaṁ rakṣaṇaṁ ca "kathaṁ parasmān na bhidyeta" iti kṛta.śleṣaṇaṁ |
20 |
- KAZ07.6.21/ parasya-apasandheyatām dūṣya.atisandhānena sthāpayitvā vyatikramah
kṛta.vidūṣaṇaṁ | 21 |
- KAZ07.6.22/ bhr̥tyena mitreṇa vā doṣa.apasṛtena pratisandhānam avaśīrṇa.kriyā | 22 |
- KAZ07.6.23/ tasyāṁ gata.āgataś catur.vidhaḥ - kāraṇād gata.āgato, viparītaḥ, kāraṇād gato
'kāraṇād āgato, viparītaś ca-iti | 23 |
- KAZ07.6.24/ svāmīno doṣeṇa gato guṇeṇa-āgataḥ parasya guṇeṇa gato doṣeṇa-āgata iti
kāraṇād gata.āgataḥ sandheyah | 24 |
- KAZ07.6.25/ sva.doṣeṇa gata.āgato guṇam ubhayoḥ parityajya akāraṇād gata.āgataḥ
cala.buddhir asandheyah | 25 |
- KAZ07.6.26/ svāmīno doṣeṇa gataḥ parasmāt sva.doṣeṇa-āgata iti kāraṇād gato 'kāraṇād
āgataḥ tarkayitavyah "para.prayuktaḥ svena vā doṣeṇa-apakartu.kāmaḥ, parasya-ucchettāram
amitraṁ me jñātvā pratighāta.bhayād āgataḥ, param vā mām ucchettu.kāmaṁ
parityajya-ānṛśaṁsyād āgataḥ" iti | 26 |
- KAZ07.6.27/ jñātvā kalyāṇa.buddhiṁ pūjayed, anyathā.buddhiṁ apakṛṣṭaṁ vāsayet | 27 |
- KAZ07.6.28/ sva.doṣeṇa gataḥ para.doṣeṇa-āgata ity akāraṇād gataḥ kāraṇād āgataḥ
tarkayitavyah " chidraṁ me pūrayiṣyati, ucito 'yam asya vāsaḥ, paratra-asya jano na ramate,
mitrair me saṁhitaḥ, śatrubhir vigṛhītaḥ, lubdha.krūrād āvignaḥ śatru.saṁhitād vā parasmāt"
iti | 28 |
- KAZ07.6.29/ jñātvā yathā.buddhy avasthāpayitavyah | 29 |
- KAZ07.6.30/ "kṛta.praṇāśaḥ śakti.hānir vidyā.paṇyatvam āśā.nirvedo deśa.laulyam aviśvāso
balavad.vighraho vā parityāga.sthānam" ity ācāryāḥ | 30 |
- KAZ07.6.31/ bhayam avṛttir amarṣa iti kauṭilyah | 31 |
- KAZ07.6.32/ iha-apakārī tyājyah, para.apakārī sandheyah, ubhaya.apakārī tarkayitavya iti
samānam | 32 |
- KAZ07.6.33/ asandheyena tv avaśyaṁ sandhātavye yataḥ prabhāvas tataḥ pratividadyāt |
33 |
- KAZ07.6.34ab/ sa.upakāraṁ vyavahitaṁ guptam āyuh.kṣayād iti |
- KAZ07.6.34cd/ vāsayed ari.pakṣīyam avaśīrṇa.kriyā.vidhau || 34 ||
- KAZ07.6.35ab/ vikramayed bhartari vā siddhaṁ vā daṇḍa.cāriṇam |
- KAZ07.6.35cd/ kuryād amitra.aṭavīṣu pratyante vā-anyataḥ kṣipet || 35 ||
- KAZ07.6.36ab/ paṇyam kuryād asiddhaṁ vā siddhaṁ vā tena saṁvṛtam |

KAZ07.6.36cd/ tasya-eva doṣeṇa.adūṣya para.sandheya.kāraṇāt || 36 ||
 KAZ07.6.37ab/ atha vā śamayed enam āyaty.artham upāmsunā |
 KAZ07.6.37cd/ āyatyām ca vadha.prepsuṁ dṛṣṭvā hanyād gata.āgatam || 37 ||
 KAZ07.6.38ab/ arito 'bhyāgato doṣaḥ śatru.samvāsa.kāritaḥ |
 KAZ07.6.38cd/ sarpa.samvāsa.dharmitvān nitya.udvegena dūṣitaḥ || 38 ||
 KAZ07.6.39ab/ jāyate plakṣa.bīja.āśāt kapotād iva śālmaleḥ |
 KAZ07.6.39cd/ udvega.janano nityaṁ paścād api bhaya.āvahaḥ || 39 ||
 KAZ07.6.40ab/ prakāśa.yuddhaṁ nirdiṣṭe deṣe kāle ca vikramaḥ |
 KAZ07.6.40cd/ vibhīṣaṇam avaskandaḥ pramāda.vyasana.ardanam || 40 ||
 KAZ07.6.41ab/ ekaṭra tyāga.ghātau ca kūṭa.yuddhasya mātṛkā |
 KAZ07.6.41cd/ yoga.gūḍha.upajāpa.arthaṁ tūṣṇīm.yuddhasya lakṣaṇam || 41 ||

7.7 Chapter 7 (Section 113): Peace and War Connected with Dual Policy

192

KAZ07.7.01/ vijigīṣur dvitīyāṁ prakṛtim evam upagrṇhīyāt | 1 |
 KAZ07.7.02/ sāmantaṁ sāmanta sambhūya yāyāt, yadi vā manyeta "pārṣṇīm me na grahiṣyati, pārṣṇi.grāhaṁ vārayiṣyati, yātavyaṁ na-abhisariṣyati, bala.dvaiguṇyaṁ me bhaviṣyati, vīvadha.āsārau me pravartayiṣyati, parasya vārayiṣyati, bahv.ābādhe me pathi kaṇṭakān mardayiṣyati, durga.aṭavy.apasāreṣu daṇḍena carīṣyati, yātavyam aviṣahye doṣe sandhau vā sthāpayiṣyati, labdha.lābha.amśo vā śatrūn anyān me viśvāsayiṣyati" iti | 2 |
 KAZ07.7.03/ dvaidhī.bhūto vā koṣena daṇḍaṁ daṇḍena koṣaṁ sāmantaṇām anyatamāl lipseta | 3 |
 KAZ07.7.04/ teṣāṁ jyāyaso 'dhikena-amśena samāt samena hīnādd hīnena-iti sama.sandhiḥ | 4 |
 KAZ07.7.05/ viparyaye viśama.sandhiḥ | 5 |
 KAZ07.7.06/ taylor viśeṣa.lābhād atisandhiḥ | 6 |
 KAZ07.7.07/ vyasaninam apāya.sthāne saktam anarthinaṁ vā jyāyāmsaṁ hīno bala.samena lābhena paṇeta | 7 |
 KAZ07.7.08/ paṇitas tasya-apakāra.samartho vikrameta, anyathā sandadhyāt | 8 |
 KAZ07.7.09/ evaṁ.bhūto vā hīna.śakti.pratāpa.pūraṇa.arthaṁ sambhāvya.artha.abhisārī mūla.pārṣṇi.trāṇa.arthaṁ vā jyāyāmsaṁ hīno bala.samād viśiṣṭena lābhena paṇeta | 9 |
 KAZ07.7.10/ paṇitaḥ kalyāṇa.buddhim anugṛhṇīyāt, anyathā vikrameta | 10 |
 KAZ07.7.11/ jāta.vyasana.prakṛti.randhram upasthita.anarthaṁ vā jyāyāmsaṁ hīno durga.mitra.pratiṣṭabdho vā hrasvam adhvānaṁ yātu.kāmaḥ śatrum ayuddham eka.anta.siddhiṁ vā lābham ādātu.kāmo bala.samādd hīnena lābhena paṇeta | 11 |
 KAZ07.7.12/ paṇitas tasya-apakāra.samartho vikrameta, anyathā sandadhyāt | 12 |
 KAZ07.7.13/ arandhra.vyasano vā jyāyān dur.ārabdha.karmāṇaṁ bhūyaḥ kṣaya.vyayābhyāṁ yoktu.kāmo dūṣya.daṇḍaṁ pravāsayitu.kāmo dūṣya.daṇḍaṁ āvāhayitu.kāmo vā pīdanīyam ucchedanīyaṁ vā hīnena vyathayitu.kāmaḥ sandhi.pradhāno vā kalyāṇa.buddhir hīnaṁ lābham pratigṛhṇīyāt | 13 |
 KAZ07.7.14/ kalyāṇa.buddhinā sambhūya-arthaṁ lipseta, anyathā vikrameta | 14 |
 KAZ07.7.15/ evaṁ samaḥ samam atisandadhyād anugṛhṇīyād vā | 15 |
 KAZ07.7.16/ para.anikasya pratyanīkaṁ mitra.aṭavīnāṁ vā, śatror vibhūmīnāṁ deśikaṁ mūla.pārṣṇi.trāṇa.arthaṁ vā samo bala.samena lābhena paṇeta | 16 |
 KAZ07.7.17/ paṇitaḥ kalyāṇa.buddhim anugṛhṇīyāt, anyathā vikrameta | 17 |

¹⁹²[K tr. 396 :: K2 tr. 342

KAZ07.7.18/ jāta.vyasana.prakṛti.randhram aneka.viruddham anyato labhamāno vā samo
bala.samādd hīnena lābhena paṇeta | 18 |
KAZ07.7.19/ paṇitas tasya-apakāra.samartho vikrameta, anyathā sandadhyāt | 19 |
KAZ07.7.20/ evaṁ.bhūto vā samaḥ sāmanta.āyatta.kāryaḥ kartavya.balo vā bala.samād
viśiṣṭena lābhena paṇeta | 20 |
KAZ07.7.21/ paṇitaḥ kalyāṇa.buddhim anugṛhṇīyāt anyathā vikrameta | 21 |
KAZ07.7.22/ jāta.vyasana.prakṛti.randhram abhiantu.kāmaḥ sv.ārabdham eka.anta.siddhim
vā-asya karma.upahantu.kāmo mūle yātrāyām vā prahartu.kāmo yātavyād.bhūyo labhamāno
vā jyāyāmsaṁ hīnaṁ samaṁ vā bhūyo yāceta | 22 |
KAZ07.7.23/ bhūyo vā yācitaḥ sva.bala.rakṣā.arthaṁ durdharṣam anya.durgam āsāram
aṭavīm vā para.daṇḍena marditu.kāmaḥ prakṛṣṭe 'dhvani kāle vā para.daṇḍam
kṣaya.vyayābhyām yoktu.kāmaḥ para.daṇḍena vā vivṛddhas tam eva-ucchettu.kāmaḥ
para.daṇḍam ādātu.kāmo vā bhūyo dadyāt | 23 |
KAZ07.7.24/ jyāyān vā hīnaṁ yātavya.apadeśena haste kartu.kāmaḥ param ucchidya vā tam
eva-ucchettu.kāmaḥ, tyāgaṁ vā kṛtvā pratyādātu.kāmo bala.samād viśiṣṭena lābhena paṇeta |
24 |
KAZ07.7.25/ paṇita-s tasya-apakāra.samartho vikrameta, anyathā sandadhyāt | 25 |
KAZ07.7.26/ yātavya.sāmhito vā tiṣṭhet, dūṣya.amitra.aṭavī.daṇḍam vā-asmai dadyāt | 26 |
KAZ07.7.27/ jāta.vyasana.prakṛti.randhro vā jyāyān hīnaṁ bala.samena lābhena paṇeta | 27
|
KAZ07.7.28/ paṇitas tasya-apakāra.samartho vikrameta, anyathā sandadhyāt | 28 |
KAZ07.7.29/ evaṁ.bhūtaṁ hīnaṁ jyāyān bala.samādd hīnena lābhena paṇeta | 29 |
KAZ07.7.30/ paṇitas tasya-apakāra.samartho vikrameta, anyathā sandadhyāt | 30 |
KAZ07.7.31ab/ ādau budhyeta paṇitaḥ paṇamānaś ca kāraṇam |
KAZ07.7.31cd/ tato vitarkya.ubhayato yataḥ śreyaś tato vrajet || 31 ||

7.8 Chapter 8 (Sections 114; 115): Conduct of the King about to be Attacked; Allies Fit to be Helped

193

KAZ07.8.01/ yātavyo 'bhiyāsyamānaḥ sandhi.kāraṇam ādātu.kāmo vihanu.kāmo vā
sāmavāyikānām anyatamaṁ lābha.dvaiguṇyena paṇeta | 1 |
KAZ07.8.02/ paṇamānaḥ kṣaya.vyaya.pravāsa.pratyavāya.para.upakāra.śarīra.ābādhānś
ca-asya varṇayet | 2 |
KAZ07.8.03/ pratipannam arthena yojayet | 3 |
KAZ07.8.04/ vairam vā parair grāhayitvā viśamvādayet | 4 |
KAZ07.8.05/ durārabdha.karmāṇaṁ bhūyaḥ kṣaya.vyayābhyām yoktu.kāmaḥ sv.ārabdhām
vā yātrā.siddhim vighātayitu.kāmo mūle yātrāyām vā prahartu.kāmo yātavya.sāmhitaḥ punar
yācitu.kāmaḥ pratyutpanna.artha.kṛcchras tasminn aviśvasto vā tadātve lābham alpam icchet,
āyatyām prabhūtam | 5 |
KAZ07.8.06/ mitra.upakāram amitra.upaghātam artha.anubandham avekṣamāṇaḥ
pūrva.upakāraṁ kārayitu.kāmo bhūyas tadātve mahāntaṁ lābham utsṛjya-āyatyām alpam
icchet | 6 |
KAZ07.8.07/ dūṣya.amitrābhyām mūla.hareṇa vā jyāyasā vighṛhitaṁ trātu.kāmas
tathā.vidham upakāraṁ kārayitu.kāmaḥ sambandha.avekṣi vā tadātve ca-āyatyām ca lābham
na pratigṛhṇīyāt | 7 |

¹⁹³[K tr. 400 :: K2 tr. 346

- KAZ07.8.08/ kṛta.sandhir atikramitu.kāmaḥ parasya prakṛti.karśanaṁ
mitra.amitra.sandhi.viśleṣaṇaṁ vā kartu.kāmaḥ para.abhiyogāt-śaṅkamāno lābham aprāptam
adhikaṁ vā yāceta | 8 |
- KAZ07.8.09/ tam itaras tadātve ca-āyatyām ca kramam avekṣeta | 9 |
- KAZ07.8.10/ tena pūrve vyākhyātāḥ | 10 |
- KAZ07.8.11/ ari.vijigīṣvos tu svaṁ svaṁ mitram anugṛhṇatoḥ
śakya.kalya.bhavya.ārambhī.sthira.karma.anurakta.prakṛtibhyo viśeṣaḥ | 11 |
- KAZ07.8.12/ śakya.ārambhī viśahyaṁ karma-ārabhate, kalya.ārambhī nirdoṣam,
bhavya.ārambhī kalyāṇa.udayam | 12 |
- KAZ07.8.13/ sthira.karmā na-asamāpya karma-uparamate | 13 |
- KAZ07.8.14/ anurakta.prakṛtiḥ susahāyatvād alpēna-apy anugraheṇa kāryaṁ sādhayati | 14 |
- KAZ07.8.15/ ta ete kṛta.arthāḥ sukhena prabhūtaṁ ca-upakurvanti | 15 |
- KAZ07.8.16/ ataḥ pratilomā na-anugrāhyāḥ | 16 |
- KAZ07.8.17/ taylor eka.puruṣa.anugrahe yo mitraṁ mitra.taraṁ vā-anugṛhṇāti so
'tisandhatte | 17 |
- KAZ07.8.18/ mitrād ātma.vṛddhiṁ hi prāpnoti, kṣaya.vyaya.pravāsa.para.upakārān itarāḥ |
18 |
- KAZ07.8.19/ kṛta.arthaś ca śatrur vaiguṇyam eti | 19 |
- KAZ07.8.20/ madhyamaṁ tv anugṛhṇator yo madhyamaṁ mitraṁ mitrataraṁ
vā-anugṛhṇāti so 'tisandhatte | 20 |
- KAZ07.8.21/ mitrād ātma.vṛddhiṁ hi prāpnoti, kṣaya.vyaya.pravāsa.para.upakārān itarāḥ |
21 |
- KAZ07.8.22/ madhyamaś ced anugrāhito viguṇaḥ syād amitro 'tisandhatte | 22 |
- KAZ07.8.23/ kṛta.prayāsaṁ hi madhyama.amitraṁ apasṛtam eka.artha.upagataṁ prāpnoti |
23 |
- KAZ07.8.24/ tena-udāsīna.anugraho vyākhyātāḥ | 24 |
- KAZ07.8.25/ madhyama.udāsīnaylor bala.amśa.dāne yaḥ śūraṁ kṛta.astraṁ duḥkha.saham
anuraktaṁ vā daṇḍaṁ dadāti so 'tisandhīyate | 25 |
- KAZ07.8.26/ viparīto 'tisandhatte | 26 |
- KAZ07.8.27/ yatra tu daṇḍaḥ prahitas taṁ vā ca-arthaṁ anyāś ca sādhayati tatra
maula.bhṛta.śreṇī.mitra.aṭavī.balānām anyatamam upalabdha.deśa.kālaṁ daṇḍaṁ dadyāt,
amitra.aṭavī.balaṁ vā vyavahita.deśa.kālam | 27 |
- KAZ07.8.28/ yaṁ tu manyeta "kṛta.artho me daṇḍaṁ grhṇīyād, amitra.aṭavy.abhūmy.anṛtuṣu
vā vāsayed, aphalaṁ vā kuryād" iti, daṇḍa.vyāsaṅga.apadeśena na-enam anugṛhṇīyāt | 28 |
- KAZ07.8.29/ evam avaśyaṁ tv anugrahītavye tat.kāla.saham asmai daṇḍaṁ dadyāt | 29 |
- KAZ07.8.30/ ā.samāpteś ca-enam vāsayed yodhayec ca bala.vyasanebhyaś ca rakṣet | 30 |
- KAZ07.8.31/ kṛta.arthāc ca sa.apadeśam apasṛvayet | 31 |
- KAZ07.8.32/ dūṣya.amitra.aṭavī.daṇḍaṁ vā-asmai dadyāt | 32 |
- KAZ07.8.33/ yātvayena vā sandhāya-enam atisandadhīyāt | 33 |
- KAZ07.8.34ab/ same hi lābhe sandhiḥ syād viśame vikramo mataḥ |
- KAZ07.8.34cd/ sama.hīna.viśiṣṭānām ity uktāḥ sandhi.vikramāḥ || 34 ||

7.9 Chapter 9 (Section 116): Pacts for Securing an Ally, Money, Land and an Undertaking

194

¹⁹⁴[K tr. 404 :: K2 tr. 349

- KAZ07.9.01/ saṁhita.prayāṇe mitra.hiraṇya.bhūmi.lābhānām uttara.uttaro lābhaḥ śreyān | 1 |
- KAZ07.9.02/ mitra.hiraṇye hi bhūmi.lābhād bhavataḥ, mitraṁ hiraṇya.lābhāt | 2 |
- KAZ07.9.03/ yo vā lābhaḥ siddhaḥ śeṣayor anyataram sādhayati | 3 |
- KAZ07.9.04/ "tvaṁ ca-aham ca mitraṁ labhāvahe" ity evaṁ.ādīdh sama.sandhiḥ | 4 |
- KAZ07.9.05/ "tvaṁ mitraṁ" ity evaṁ.ādir viśama.sandhiḥ | 5 |
- KAZ07.9.06/ tayor viśeṣa.lābhād atisandhiḥ | 6 |
- KAZ07.9.07/ sama.sandhau tu yaḥ sampannaṁ mitraṁ mitra.kṛcchre vā mitram avāpnoti so 'tisandhatte | 7 |
- KAZ07.9.08/ āpadd hi sauhṛda.sthairyam utpādayati | 8 |
- KAZ07.9.09/ mitra.kṛcchre 'pi nityam avaśyam anityaṁ vaśyam vā-iti "nityam avaśyam śreyaḥ, tadd hi anupakurvad api na-apakaroti" ity ācāryāḥ | 9 |
- KAZ07.9.10/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 10 |
- KAZ07.9.11/ vaśyam anityaṁ śreyaḥ | 11 |
- KAZ07.9.12/ yāvad upakaroti tāvan mitraṁ bhavati, upakāra.lakṣaṇaṁ mitram iti | 12 |
- KAZ07.9.13/ vaśyayor api mahā.bhogam anityam alpa.bhogam vā nityam iti "mahā.bhogam anityaṁ śreyaḥ, mahā.bhogam anityam alpa.kālena mahad.upakurvan mahānti vyaya.sthānāni pratikaroti" ity ācāryāḥ | 13 |
- KAZ07.9.14/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ07.9.15/ nityam alpa.bhogam śreyaḥ | 15 |
- KAZ07.9.16/ mahā.bhogam anityam upakāra.bhayād apakrāmati, upakṛtya vā pratyādātum ihate | 16 |
- KAZ07.9.17/ nityam alpa.bhogam sātatyād alpam upakurvan mahatā kālena mahad upakaroti | 17 |
- KAZ07.9.18/ guru.samuttham mahan mitraṁ laghu.samuttham alpaṁ vā-iti "guru.samuttham mahan mitraṁ pratāpa.karam bhavati, yadā ca-uttiṣṭhate tadā kāryaṁ sādhayati" ity ācāryāḥ | 18 |
- KAZ07.9.19/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 19 |
- KAZ07.9.20/ laghu.samuttham alpaṁ śreyaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ07.9.21/ lagu.samuttham alpaṁ mitraṁ kārya.kālam na-atipātayati daurbalyāc ca yathā.iṣṭa.bhogyam bhavati, na-itarat prakṛṣṭa.bhaumam | 21 |
- KAZ07.9.22/ vikṣipta.sainyam avaśya.sainyam vā-iti "vikṣiptaṁ sainyam śakyaṁ pratisaṁhartum vaśyatvād" ity ācāryāḥ | 22 |
- KAZ07.9.23/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ07.9.24/ avaśya.sainyam śreyaḥ | 24 |
- KAZ07.9.25/ avaśyam hi śakyaṁ sāma.ādibhir vaśyam kartum, na-itarat kārya.vyāsaktaṁ pratisaṁhartum | 25 |
- KAZ07.9.26/ puruṣa.bhogam hiraṇya.bhogam vā mitram iti "puruṣa.bhogam mitraṁ śreyaḥ, prūṣa.bhogam mitraṁ pratāpa.karam bhavati, yadā ca-uttiṣṭhate tadā kāryaṁ sādhayati" ity ācāryāḥ | 26 |
- KAZ07.9.27/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 27 |
- KAZ07.9.28/ hiraṇya.bhogam mitraṁ śreyaḥ | 28 |
- KAZ07.9.29/ nityo hi hiraṇyena yogaḥ kadācid daṇḍena | 29 |
- KAZ07.9.30/ daṇḍaś ca hiraṇyena-anye ca kāmāḥ prāpyanta iti | 30 |
- KAZ07.9.31/ hiraṇya.bhogam bhūmi.bhogam vā mitram iti "hiraṇya.bhogam gatimattvāt sarva.vyaya.pratikāra.karam" ity ācāryāḥ | 31 |
- KAZ07.9.32/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ07.9.33/ mitra.hiraṇye hi bhūmi.lābhād bhavata ity uktaṁ purastād | 33 |
- KAZ07.9.34/ tasmād bhūmi.bhogam mitraṁ śreya iti | 34 |

- KAZ07.9.35/ tulye puruṣa.bhoge vikramaḥ kleśa.sahatvam anurāgaḥ sarva.bala.lābho vā mitra.kulād viśeṣaḥ | 35 |
- KAZ07.9.36/ tulye hiraṇya.bhoge prārthita.arthatā prābhūtyam alpa.prayasatā sātatyam ca viśeṣaḥ | 36 |
- KAZ07.9.37/ tatra-etad bhavati | 37 |
- KAZ07.9.38ab/ nityam vaśyam laghu.utthānam pitṛ.paitāmahaṁ mahat |
- KAZ07.9.38cd/ advaidhyam ca-iti sampannam mitram ṣaḍ.guṇam ucyate || 38 ||
- KAZ07.9.39ab/ r̥te yad artham praṇayād rakṣyate yac ca rakṣati |
- KAZ07.9.39cd/ pūrva.upacita.sambandham tan mitram nityam ucyate || 39 ||
- KAZ07.9.40ab/ sarva.citra.mahā.bhogam trividham vaśyam ucyate |
- KAZ07.9.40cd/ ekato.bhogy ubhayataḥ sarvato.bhogi ca-aparam || 40 ||
- KAZ07.9.41ab/ ādātṛ vā dātṛ.apī vā jīvaty ariṣu himsayā |
- KAZ07.9.41cd/ mitram nityam avaśyam tad.durga.aṭavy.apasāri ca || 41 ||
- KAZ07.9.42ab/ anyato viḡhītam yal laghu.vyasanam eva vā |
- KAZ07.9.42cd/ sandhatte ca-upakārāya tan mitram vaśyam adhruvam || 42 ||
- KAZ07.9.43ab/ eka.arthena-atha sambaddham upakārā.vikāri ca |
- KAZ07.9.43cd/ mitra.bhāvi bhavaty etan mitram advaidhyam āpadi || 43 ||
- KAZ07.9.44ab/ mitra.bhāvād dhruvam mitram śatru.sādhāraṇac calam |
- KAZ07.9.44cd/ na kasyacid udāsīnam dvayor ubhaya.bhāvi tat || 44 ||
- KAZ07.9.45ab/ vijigīṣor amitram yan mitram antardhitām gatam |
- KAZ07.9.45cd/ upakāre 'niviṣtam vā-aśaktam vā-anupakāri tat || 45 ||
- KAZ07.9.46ab/ priyam parasya vā rakṣyam pūjyam sambaddham eva vā |
- KAZ07.9.46cd/ anugṛhṇāti yan mitram śatru.sādhāraṇam hi tat || 46 ||
- KAZ07.9.47ab/ prakṛṣṭa.bhauman santuṣtam balavac ca-ālasam ca yat |
- KAZ07.9.47cd/ udāsīnam bhavaty etad vyasanād avamānitam || 47 ||
- KAZ07.9.48ab/ arer netuś ca yad vṛddhim daurbalyād anuvartate |
- KAZ07.9.48cd/ ubhayasya-apy avidviṣtam vidyād ubhaya.bhāvi tat || 48 ||
- KAZ07.9.49ab/ kāraṇa.akāraṇa.dhvastam kāraṇa.akāraṇa.āgatam |
- KAZ07.9.49cd/ yo mitram samupekṣeta sa mṛtyum upagūhati || 49 ||
- KAZ07.9.50/ kṣipram alpo lābhaś cirān mahān iti vā "kṣipram alpo lābhaḥ kārya.deśa.kāla.samvādakaḥ śreyān" ity ācāryaḥ | 50 |
- KAZ07.9.51/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 51 |
- KAZ07.9.52/ cirād avinipātī bija.sadharmā mahāml lābhaḥ śreyān, viparyaye pūrvaḥ | 52 |
- KAZ07.9.53ab/ evam dṛṣṭvā dhruve lābhe lābha.amśe ca guṇa.udayam |
- KAZ07.9.53cd/ sva.artha.siddhi.paro yāyāt samhitaḥ sāmavāyikaiḥ || 53 ||

7.10 Chapter 10 (Section 116): Pacts for Securing an Ally, Money, Land and an Undertaking (cont.)

195

- KAZ07.10.01/ "tvaṁ ca-aham ca bhūmim labhāvahe" iti bhūmi.sandhiḥ | 1 |
- KAZ07.10.02/ taylor yaḥ pratyupasthita.arthaḥ sampannām bhūmim avāpnoti so 'tisandhatte | 2 |
- KAZ07.10.03/ tulye sampanna.alābhe yo balavantam ākrāmya bhūmim avāpnoti so 'tisandhatte | 3 |
- KAZ07.10.04/ bhūmi.lābham śatru.karśanam pratāpam ca hi prāpnoti | 4 |
- KAZ07.10.05/ durbalād.bhūmi.lābhe satyam saukaryam bhavati | 5 |

¹⁹⁵[K tr. 409 :: K2 tr. 353

- KAZ07.10.06/ durbala eva ca bhūmi.lābhaḥ, tat.sāmantaś ca mitram amitra.bhāvaṃ gacchati | 6 |
- KAZ07.10.07/ tulye baliyastve yaḥ sthita.śatrum utpātya bhūmim avāpnoti so 'tisandhatte | 7 |
- KAZ07.10.08/ durga.avāptir hi sva.bhūmi.rakṣaṇam amitra.aṭavī.pratiśedham ca karoti | 8 |
- KAZ07.10.09/ cala.amitrād.bhūmi.lābhe śakya.sāmantato viśeṣaḥ | 9 |
- KAZ07.10.10/ durbala.sāmantā hi kṣipra.āpyāyana.yoga.kṣemā bhavati | 10 |
- KAZ07.10.11/ viparītā balavat sāmantā kośa.daṇḍa.avacchedanī ca bhūmir bhavati | 11 |
- KAZ07.10.12/ sampannā nitya.amitrā manda.guṇā vā bhūmir anitya.amitrā-iti "sampannā nitya.amitrā śreyasī bhūmiḥ sampannā hi kośa.daṇḍau sampādayati, tau ca-amitra.pratighātakau ity ācāryāḥ | 12 |
- KAZ07.10.13/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 13 |
- KAZ07.10.14/ nitya.amitra.alābhe bhūyān śatru.lābho bhavati | 14 |
- KAZ07.10.15/ nityaś ca śatrur upakṛte ca-apakṛte ca śatrur eva bhavati, anityas tu śatrur upakārād anapakārād vā śāmyati | 15 |
- KAZ07.10.16/ yasyā hi bhūmer bahu.durgāś cora.gaṇair mleccha.aṭavībhīr vā nitya.avirahitāḥ pratyantāḥ sā nitya.amitrā, viparyaye tv anitya.amitrā | 16 |
- KAZ07.10.17/ alpā pratyāsannā mahatī vyavahitā vā bhūmir iti alpā pratyāsannā śreyasī | 17 |
- KAZ07.10.18/ sukhā hi prāptuṃ pālayitum abhisārayitum ca bhavati | 18 |
- KAZ07.10.19/ viparītā vyavahitā | 19 |
- KAZ07.10.20/ vyavahitayor api daṇḍa.dhāraṇā-ātma.dhāraṇā vā bhūmir iti ātma.dhāraṇā śreyasī | 20 |
- KAZ07.10.21/ sā hi sva.samutthābhyāṃ kośa.daṇḍābhyāṃ dhāryate | 21 |
- KAZ07.10.22/ viparītā daṇḍa.dhāraṇā daṇḍa.sthānam | 22 |
- KAZ07.10.23/ bālīśāt prājñād vā bhūmi.lābha ity bālīśād.bhūmi.lābhaḥ śreyān | 23 |
- KAZ07.10.24/ suprāpyā-anupālyā hi bhavati, apratyādeyā ca | 24 |
- KAZ07.10.25/ viparītā prājñād anuraktā | 25 |
- KAZ07.10.26/ pīḍanīya.ucchedanīyayor ucchedanīyād bhūmi.lābhaḥ śreyān | 26 |
- KAZ07.10.27/ ucchedanīyo hy anapāśrayo durbala.apāśrayo vā-abhiyuktaḥ kośa.daṇḍāv ādāya-apasartu.kāmaḥ prakṛtibhis tyajyate, na pīḍanīyo durga.mitra.pratiṣṭabdhāḥ | 27 |
- KAZ07.10.28/ durga.pratiṣṭabdhayor api sthala.nadī.durgīyābhyāṃ sthala.durgīyād bhūmi.lābhaḥ śreyān | 28 |
- KAZ07.10.29/ sthāleyaṃ hi surodha.avamarda.avaskandam anihśrāvi.śatru ca | 29 |
- KAZ07.10.30/ nadī.durgam tu dvi.guṇa.kleśa.karam, udakam ca pātavyam vṛtti.karam ca-amitrasya | 30 |
- KAZ07.10.31/ nadī.parvata.durgīyābhyāṃ nadī.durgīyād bbbhūmi.lābhaḥ śreyān | 31 |
- KAZ07.10.32/ nadī.durgam hi hasti.stambha.saṅkrama.setu.bandha.naubhiḥ sādhyam anitya.gāmbhīryam avasrāvy udakam ca | 32 |
- KAZ07.10.33/ pārvataṃ tu sv.ārakṣaṃ duruparodhi kṛcchra.ārohaṇam, bhagne ca-ekasmin na sarva.vadhaḥ, śilā.vṛkṣa.pramokṣaś ca mahā.apakāriṇām | 33 |
- KAZ07.10.34/ nimna.sthala.yodhibhyo nimna.yodhibhyo bhūmi.lābhaḥ śreyān | 34 |
- KAZ07.10.35/ nimna.yodhino hy uparuddha.deśa.kālāḥ, sthala.yodhinas tu sarva.deśa.kāla.yodhinaḥ | 35 |
- KAZ07.10.36/ khanaka.ākāśa.yodhibhyaḥ khanakebhyo bhūmi.lābhaḥ śreyān | 36 |
- KAZ07.10.37/ khanakā hi khātena śastreṇa ca-ubhayathā yudhyante, śastreṇa-eva-ākāśa.yodhinaḥ | 37 |
- KAZ07.10.38ab/ evaṃ.vidhyebhyaḥ pṛthivīm labhamāno 'rtha.śāstravit |
- KAZ07.10.38cd/ saṃhitebhyaḥ parebhyas ca viśeṣam adhigacchati || 38 ||

7.11 Chapter 11 (Section 116): Pacts for Securing an Ally, Money, Land and an Undertaking (cont.)

196

- KAZ07.11.01/ "tvam ca-aham ca sūnyam niveśayāvahe" ity anavasita.sandhiḥ | 1 |
 KAZ07.11.02/ taylor yaḥ pratyupasthita.artho yathā.ukta.guṇām bhūmim niveśayati so 'tisandhatte | 2 |
 KAZ07.11.03/ tatra-api sthalaṃ audakaṃ vā-iti mahataḥ sthalaḥ alpam audakaṃ śreyah, sātatyād avasthitatvāc ca phalānām | 3 |
 KAZ07.11.04/ sthalayor api prabhūta.pūrva.apara.sasyam alpa.varṣa.pākam asakta.ārambham śreyah | 4 |
 KAZ07.11.05/ audakayor api dhānya.vāpam adhānya.vāpāt-śreyah | 5 |
 KAZ07.11.06/ taylor alpa.bahutve dhānya.kāntād alpān mahad adhānya.kāntam śreyah | 6 |
 KAZ07.11.07/ mahaty avakāśe hi sthālyāś ca-anūpyāś ca-oṣadhayo bhavanti | 7 |
 KAZ07.11.08/ durga.ādīni ca karmāṇi prabhūtyena kriyante | 8 |
 KAZ07.11.09/ kṛtrimā hi bhūmi.guṇāḥ | 9 |
 KAZ07.11.10/ khani.dhānya.bhogayor khani.bhogah kośa.karah, dhānya.bhogah kośa.koṣṭha.agāra.karah | 10 |
 KAZ07.11.11/ dhānya.mūlā hi durga.ādīnām karmaṇām ārambhāḥ | 11 |
 KAZ07.11.12/ mahā.viśaya.vikrayo vā khani.bhogah śreyān | 12 |
 KAZ07.11.13/ "dravya.hasti.vana.bhogayor dravya.vana.bhogah sarva.karmaṇām yoniḥ prabhūta.nidhāna.kṣamaś ca, viparīto hasti.vana.bhogah" ity ācāryāḥ | 13 |
 KAZ07.11.14/ na-iti kauṭilyah | 14 |
 KAZ07.11.15/ śakyam dravya.vanam anekam anekasyām bhūmau vāpayitum, na hasti.vanam | 15 |
 KAZ07.11.16/ hasti.pradhāno hi para.anīka.vadha iti | 16 |
 KAZ07.11.17/ vāri.sthala.patha.bhogayor anityo vāri.patha.bhogah, nityah sthala.patha.bhogah | 17 |
 KAZ07.11.18/ bhinna.manuṣyā śreṇī.manuṣyā vā bhūmir iti bhinna.manuṣyā śreyasī | 18 |
 KAZ07.11.19/ bhinna.manuṣyā bhogyā bhavati, anupajāpyā ca-anyeṣām, anāpat.sahā tu | 19 |
 KAZ07.11.20/ viparītā śreṇī.manuṣyā, kope mahā.doṣā | 20 |
 KAZ07.11.21/ tasyām cāturvarṇya.niveśe sarva.bhoga.sahatvād avara.varṇa.prāyā śreyasī, bāhulyād dhruvatvāc ca kṛṣyāḥ karṣakavati, kṛṣyāś ca-anyeṣām ca-ārambhāṇām prayojakatvāt go.rakṣakavati, paṇya.nicaya.ṛṇa.anugrahād āḍhya.vaṇigvatī | 21 |
 KAZ07.11.22/ bhūmi.guṇānām apāśrayah śreyān | 22 |
 KAZ07.11.23/ durga.apāśrayā puruṣa.apāśrayā vā bhūmir iti puruṣa.apāśrayā śreyasī | 23 |
 KAZ07.11.24/ puruṣavad dhi rājyam | 24 |
 KAZ07.11.25/ apuruṣā gaur vandhy eva kiṃ duhīta | 25 |
 KAZ07.11.26/ mahā.kṣaya.vyaya.niveśām tu bhūmim avāptu.kāmaḥ pūrvam eva kretāraṃ paṇeta durbalam arāja.bījinaṃ nirutsāham apakṣam anyāya.vṛttiṃ vyasaninaṃ daiva.pramāṇam yat.kiñcana.kāriṇam vā | 26 |
 KAZ07.11.27/ mahā.kṣaya.vyaya.niveśāyām hi bhūmau durbalo rāja.bījī nivīṣṭah sagandhābhiḥ prakṛtibhiḥ saha kṣaya.vyayena-avasīdati | 27 |
 KAZ07.11.28/ balavān arāja.bījī kṣaya.vyaya.bhayād asagandhābhiḥ prakṛtibhis tyajyate | 28 |
 KAZ07.11.29/ nirutsāhas tu daṇḍavān api daṇḍasya-apraṇetā sadaṇḍah kṣaya.vyayena-avabhajyate | 29 |

¹⁹⁶[K tr. 411 :: K2 tr. 355

- KAZ07.11.30/ kośavān apy apakṣaḥ kṣaya.vyaya.anugraha.hīnatvān na kutaścīt prāpnoti | 30 |
KAZ07.11.31/ anyāya.vṛttir niviṣṭam apy utthāpayet | 31 |
KAZ07.11.32/ sa katham aniviṣṭam niveśayet | 32 |
KAZ07.11.33/ tena vyasanī vyākhyātaḥ | 33 |
KAZ07.11.34/ daiva.pramāṇo mānuṣa.hīno nirārambho vipanna.karma.ārambho vā-avasīdati | 34 |
KAZ07.11.35/ yat.kiñcana.kārī na kiñcid āsādayati | 35 |
KAZ07.11.36/ sa ca-eṣām pāpiṣṭhatamo bhavati | 36 |
KAZ07.11.37/ "yat.kiñcid.ārabhamāṇo hi vijigīṣoḥ kadācic chidram āsādayed" ity ācāryāḥ | 37 |
KAZ07.11.38/ yathā chidram tathā vināśam apy āsādayed iti kauṭilyaḥ | 38 |
KAZ07.11.39/ teṣām alābhe yathā pārṣṇi.grāha.upagrahe vakṣyāmas tathā bhūmim avasthāpayet | 39 |
KAZ07.11.40/ ity abhihita.sandhiḥ | 40 |
KAZ07.11.41/ guṇavatīm ādeyām vā bhūmim balavatā krayeṇa yācitaḥ sandhim avasthāpya dadyāt | 41 |
KAZ07.11.42/ ity anibhrta.sandhiḥ | 42 |
KAZ07.11.43/ samena vā yācitaḥ kāraṇam avekṣya dadyāt "pratyādeyā me bhūmir vaśyā vā, anayā pratibaddhaḥ paro me vaśyo bhaviṣyati- bhūmi.vikrayād vā mitra.hiraṇya.lābhāḥ kārya.sāmarthya.karo me bhaviṣyati" iti | 43 |
KAZ07.11.44/ tena hīnaḥ kretā vyākhyātaḥ | 44 |
KAZ07.11.45ab/ evaṁ mitram hiraṇyam ca sajanām ajanām ca gām |
KAZ07.11.45cd/ labhamāno 'tisandhatte śāstravit sāmavāyikān | 45 |

7.12 Chapter 12 (Section 116): Pacts for Securing an Ally, Money, Land and an Undertaking (cont.)

197

- KAZ07.12.01/ "tvaṁ ca-aham ca durgam kārayāvahe" iti karma.sandhiḥ | 1 |
KAZ07.12.02/ tayor yo daiva.kṛtam aviśahyam alpa.vyaya.ārambham durgam kārayati so 'tisandhatte | 2 |
KAZ07.12.03/ tatra-api sthala.nadī.parvata.durgāṇām uttara.uttaram śreyaḥ | 3 |
KAZ07.12.04/ setu.bandhayor apy āhārya.udakāt saha.udakaḥ śreyān | 4 |
KAZ07.12.05/ saha.udakayor api prabhūta.vāpa.sthānaḥ śreyān | 5 |
KAZ07.12.06/ dravya.vanayor api yo mahat.sāravad.dravya.aṭavīkam viśaya.ante nadī.mātṛkam dravya.vanam chedayati so 'tisandhatte | 6 |
KAZ07.12.07/ nadī.mātṛkam hi sv.ājīvam apāśrayaś ca-āpadi bhavati | 7 |
KAZ07.12.08/ hasti.vanayor api yo bahu.sūra.mṛgam durbala.prativeśam.ananta.avakleśi viśaya.ante hasti.vanam badhnāti so 'tisandhatte | 8 |
KAZ07.12.09/ tatra-api "bahu.kuṇṭha.alpa.sūrayoḥ alpa.sūram śreyaḥ, sūreṣu hi yuddham, alpāḥ sūrā bahūn asūrān bhañjanti, te bhagnāḥ sva.sainya.avaghātino bhavanti" ity ācāryāḥ | 9 |
KAZ07.12.10/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 10 |
KAZ07.12.11/ kuṇṭhā bahavaḥ śreyāmsaḥ, skandha.viniyogād anekam karma kurvāṇāḥ sveṣām apāśrayo yuddhe, pareṣām durdharṣā vibhīṣaṇāś ca | 11 |
KAZ07.12.12/ bahuṣu hi kuṇṭheṣu vinaya.karmaṇā śakyam śauryam ādhātum, na tv eva-alpeṣu sūreṣu bahutvam iti | 12 |

¹⁹⁷[K tr. 415 :: K2 tr. 359

- KAZ07.12.13/ khanyor api yaḥ prabhūta.sārām adurga.mārgām alpa.vyaya.ārambhām
khanīm khānayaṭi, so 'tisandhatte | 13 |
- KAZ07.12.14/ tatra-api mahā.sāram alpam alpa.sāram vā prabhūtam iti "mahā.sāram alpam
śreyaḥ, vajra.maṇi.muktā.pravāla.hema.rūpya.dhātur hi prabhūtam alpa.sāram atyargheṇa
grasate" ity ācāryāḥ | 14 |
- KAZ07.12.15/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 15 |
- KAZ07.12.16/ cirād alpo mahā.sārasya kretā vidyate, prabhūtaḥ sātatyād alpa.sārasya | 16 |
- KAZ07.12.17/ etena vaṇik.patho vyākhyātaḥ | 17 |
- KAZ07.12.18/ tatra-api "vāri.sthala.pathayor vāri.pathaḥ śreyān, alpa.vyaya.vyāyāmaḥ
prabhūta.paṇya.udayaś ca" ity ācāryāḥ | 18 |
- KAZ07.12.19/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 19 |
- KAZ07.12.20/ samruddha.gatir asārvakālikāḥ prakṛṣṭa.bhaya.yonir niṣpratīkāraś ca
vāri.pathaḥ, viparītaḥ sthala.pathaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ07.12.21/ vāri.pathe tu kūla.samyāna.pathayoḥ kūla.pathaḥ
paṇya.pattana.bāhulyāt-śreyān, nadī.patho vā, sātatyād viśahya.ābādhatvāc ca | 21 |
- KAZ07.12.22/ sthala.pathe 'pi "haimavato dakṣiṇā.pathāt-śreyān,
hasty.aśva.gandha.danta.ajina.rūpya.suvarṇa.paṇyāḥ sāravattarāḥ" ity ācāryāḥ" | 22 |
- KAZ07.12.23/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ07.12.24/ kambala.ajina.aśva.paṇya.varjāḥ śāṅkha.vajra.maṇi.muktā.suvarṇa.paṇyāś ca
prabhūtatarā dakṣiṇā.pathe | 24 |
- KAZ07.12.25/ dakṣiṇā.pathe 'pi bahu.khaniḥ sāra.paṇyaḥ prasiddha.gatir
alpa.vyaya.vyāyāmo vā vaṇik.pathaḥ śreyān, prabhūta.viśayo vā phalgu.puṇyaḥ | 25 |
- KAZ07.12.26/ tena pūrvaḥ paścimaś ca vaṇik.patho vyākhyātaḥ | 26 |
- KAZ07.12.27/ tatra-api cakra.pāda.pathayoś cakra.patho vipula.ārambhatvāt-śreyān,
deśa.kāla.sambhāvano vā khara.uṣṭra.pathaḥ | 27 |
- KAZ07.12.28/ ābhyām aṁsa.patho vyākhyātaḥ | 28 |
- KAZ07.12.29/ para.karma.udayo netuḥ kṣayo vṛddhir viparyaye | 29 |
- KAZ07.12.30/ tulye karma.pathe sthānam jñeyam svaṁ vijigīṣuṇā | 30 |
- KAZ07.12.31/ alpa.āgama.ativyayatā kṣayo vṛddhir viparyaye | 31 |
- KAZ07.12.32/ samāya.vyayatā sthānam karmasu jñeyam ātmanaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ07.12.33/ tasmād alpa.vyaya.ārambham durga.ādiṣu mahā.udayam | 33 |
- KAZ07.12.34/ karma labdhvā viśiṣṭaḥ syād ity uktāḥ karma.sandhayaḥ | 34 |

7.13 Chapter 13 (Section 117): Considerations about the King Attacking in the Rear

198

- KAZ07.13.01/ samhatya-ari.vijigīṣvor amitrayoḥ para.abhiyoginoḥ pārṣṇim gr̥hṇator yaḥ
śakti.sampannasya pārṣṇim gr̥hṇāti so 'tisandhatte | 1 |
- KAZ07.13.02/ śakti.sampanno hy amitram ucchidya pārṣṇi.grāham ucchindyāt, na
hīna.śaktir alabdha.lābhaḥ | 2 |
- KAZ07.13.03/ śakti.sāmye yo vipula.ārambhasya pārṣṇim gr̥hṇāti so 'tisandhatte | 3 |
- KAZ07.13.04/ vipula.ārambho hy amitram ucchidya pārṣṇi.grāham ucchindyāt,
na-alpa.ārambhaḥ sakta.cakraḥ | 4 |
- KAZ07.13.05/ ārambha.sāmye yaḥ sarva.sandohena prayātasya pārṣṇim gr̥hṇāti so
'tisandhatte | 5 |
- KAZ07.13.06/ śūnya.mūlo hy asya sukaro bhavati, naika.deśa.bala.prayātaḥ
kr̥ta.pārṣṇi.pratividhānaḥ | 6 |

¹⁹⁸[K tr. 418 :: K2 tr. 361

- KAZ07.13.07/ bala.upādāna.sāmye yaś cala.amitraṃ prayāṭasya pārṣṇiṃ gr̥hṇāti so 'tisandhatte | 7 |
- KAZ07.13.08/ cala.amitraṃ prayāto hi sukhena-avāpta.siddhiḥ pārṣṇi.grāham ucchindyāt, na sthita.amitraṃ prayātaḥ | 8 |
- KAZ07.13.09/ asau hi durga.pratihataḥ pārṣṇi.grāhe ca pratinivṛttaḥ sthitena-amitreṇa-avagr̥hyate | 9 |
- KAZ07.13.10/ tena pūrve vyākhyātāḥ | 10 |
- KAZ07.13.11/ śatru.sāmye yo dhārmika.abhiyoginaḥ pārṣṇiṃ gr̥hṇāti so 'tisandhatte | 11 |
- KAZ07.13.12/ dhārmika.abhiyogī hi sveṣāṃ pareṣāṃ ca dveṣyo bhavati, adhārmika.abhiyogī sampriyaḥ | 12 |
- KAZ07.13.13/ tena mūla.hara.tādātvika.kadarya.abhiyogināṃ pārṣṇi.grahaṇaṃ vyākhyātam | 13 |
- KAZ07.13.14/ mitra.abhiyoginoḥ pārṣṇi.grahaṇe ta eva hetavaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ07.13.15/ mitram amitraṃ ca-abhiyuñjānāyor yo mitra.abhiyoginaḥ pārṣṇiṃ gr̥hṇāti so 'tisandhatte | 15 |
- KAZ07.13.16/ mitra.abhiyogī hi sukhena-avāpta.siddhiḥ pārṣṇi.grāham ucchindyāt | 16 |
- KAZ07.13.17/ sukaro hi mitreṇa sandhir na-amitreṇa | 17 |
- KAZ07.13.18/ mitram amitraṃ ca-uddharator yo 'mitra.uddhāriṇaḥ pārṣṇiṃ gr̥hṇāti so 'tisandhatte | 18 |
- KAZ07.13.19/ vṛddha.mitro hy amitra.uddhārī pārṣṇi.grāham ucchindyāt, na-itarah sva.pakṣa.upaghātī | 19 |
- KAZ07.13.20/ taylor alabdha.lābha.apagamane yasya.amitro mahato lābhād viyuktaḥ kṣaya.vyaya.adhiko vā sa pārṣṇi.grāho 'tisandhatte | 20 |
- KAZ07.13.21/ labdha.lābha.apagamane yasya-amitro lābhena śaktyā hīnaḥ sa pārṣṇi.grāho 'tisandhatte, yasya vā yātavyaḥ śatror vighraha.apakāra.samarthaḥ syāt | 21 |
- KAZ07.13.22/ pārṣṇi.grāhayor api yaḥ śakya.ārambha.bala.upādāna.adhikaḥ sthita.śatruḥ pārśva.sthāyī vā so 'tisandhatte | 22 |
- KAZ07.13.23/ pārśva.sthāyī hi yātavya.abhisāro mūla.ābādhakaś ca bhavati, mūla.ābādhaka eva paścāt.sthāyī | 23 |
- KAZ07.13.24ab/ pārṣṇi.grāhās trayo jñeyāḥ śatroś ceṣṭā.nirodhakāḥ |
- KAZ07.13.24cd/ sāmantaḥ pr̥sthato vargaḥ prativeśau ca pārśvayoḥ || 24 ||
- KAZ07.13.25ab/ arer netuś ca madhyastho durbalo 'ntardhir ucyate |
- KAZ07.13.25cd/ pratighāto balavato durga.aṭavy.apasāravān || 25 ||
- KAZ07.13.26/ madhyamaṃ tvari.vijigīṣvor lipsamānāyor madhyamasya pārṣṇiṃ gr̥hṇator labdha.lābha.apagamane yo madhyamaṃ mitrād viyojayaty amitraṃ ca mitram āpnoti so 'tisandhatte | 26 |
- KAZ07.13.27/ sandheyaś ca śatruḥ upakurvāṇo, na mitraṃ mitra.bhāvād utkrāntam | 27 |
- KAZ07.13.28/ tena-udāsīna.lipsā vyākhyātā | 28 |
- KAZ07.13.29/ "pārṣṇi.grahaṇa.abhiyānāyor tu mantra.yuddhād abhyuccayaḥ | 29 |
- Kaś07.13.30/ vyāyāma.yuddhe hi kṣaya.vyayābhyām ubhayor avṛddhiḥ | 30 |
- KAZ07.13.31/ jitvā-api hi kṣiṇa.daṇḍa.kośaḥ parājito bhavati" ity ācāryāḥ | 31 |
- KAZ07.13.32/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ07.13.33/ sumahatā-api kṣaya.vyayena śatru.vināśo 'bhyupagantavyaḥ | 33 |
- KAZ07.13.34/ tulye kṣaya.vyaye yaḥ purastād dūṣya.balaṃ ghātayitvā nihśalyaḥ paścād vaśya.balo yudhyeta so 'tisandhatte | 34 |
- KAZ07.13.35/ dvayor api purastād dūṣya.bala.ghātinor yo bahulataram śaktimattaram atyanta.dūṣyaṃ ca ghātayet so 'tisandhatte | 35 |
- KAZ07.13.36/ tena-amitra.aṭavī.bala.ghāto vyākhyātāḥ | 36 |
- KAZ07.13.37ab/ pārṣṇi.grāho 'bhiyoktā vā yātavyo vā yadā bhavet |

KAZ07.13.37cd/ vijigīṣus tadā tatra netram etat samācāret || 37 ||
 KAZ07.13.38ab/ pārṣṇi.grāho bhaven netā śātror mitra.abhiyoginaḥ |
 KAZ07.13.38cd/ vigrāhya pūrvam ākrandaṁ pārṣṇi.grāha.abhisāriṇā || 38 ||
 KAZ07.13.39ab/ ākrandena-abhiyuñjānaḥ pārṣṇi.grāhaṁ nivārayet |
 KAZ07.13.39cd/ tathā-ākrandā.abhisāreṇa pārṣṇi.grāha.abhisāriṇam || 39 ||
 KAZ07.13.40ab/ ari.mitreṇa mitraṁ ca purastād avaghaṭṭayet |
 KAZ07.13.40cd/ mitra.mitraṁ areś ca-api mitra.mitreṇa vārayet || 40 ||
 KAZ07.13.41ab/ mitreṇa grāhayet pārṣṇim abhiyukto 'bhiyoginaḥ |
 KAZ07.13.41cd/ mitra.mitreṇa ca-ākrandam pārṣṇi.grāhān nivārayet || 41 ||
 KAZ07.13.42ab/ evaṁ maṇḍalam ātma.arthaṁ vijigīṣur niveśayet |
 KAZ07.13.42cd/ prṣṭhataś ca purastāc ca mitra.prakṛti.sampadā || 42 ||
 KAZ07.13.43ab/ kṛtsne ca maṇḍale nityaṁ dūtān gūḍhānś ca vāsayet |
 KAZ07.13.43cd/ mitra.bhūtaḥ sapatnānām hatvā hatvā ca samvṛtaḥ || 43 ||
 KAZ07.13.44ab/ asaṁvṛtasya kāryāṇi prāptāny api viśeṣataḥ |
 KAZ07.13.44cd/ nihsaṁśayaṁ vipadyante bhinna.plava iva-udadhau || 44 ||

7.14 Chapter 14 (Section 118): Recoupment of Powers Become Weak

199

KAZ07.14.01/ sāmavāyikair evaṁ abhiyukto vijigīṣur yas teṣāṁ pradhānas taṁ brūyāt "tvayā me sandhiḥ, idaṁ hiraṇyam, ahaṁ ca mitram, dvi.guṇā te vṛddhiḥ, na-arhasy ātma.kṣayeṇa mitra.mukhān amitṛān vardhayitum, ete hi vṛddhās tvām eva paribhaviṣyanti" iti | 1 |
 KAZ07.14.02/ bhedaṁ vā brūyāt "anapakāro yathā-aham etaiḥ sambhūya-abhiyuktas tathā tvām apy ete saṁhita.balāḥ svasthā vyasane vā-abhiyokṣyante, balaṁ hi cittam vikaroti, tad eṣāṁ vighātaya" iti | 2 |
 KAZ07.14.03/ bhinneṣu pradhānam upagṛhya hīneṣu vikramayet, hīnān anugrāhya vā pradhāne, yathā vā śreyo 'bhimanyeta tathā | 3 |
 KAZ07.14.04/ vairam vā parair grāhayitvā visamvādayet | 4 |
 KAZ07.14.05/ phala.bhūyastvena vā pradhānam upajāpya sandhim kārayet | 5 |
 KAZ07.14.06/ atha-ubhaya.vetanāḥ phala.bhūyastvaṁ darśayantaḥ sāmavāyikān "atisaṁhitāḥ stha" ity udddūṣayeyuḥ | 6 |
 KAZ07.14.07/ duṣṭeṣu sandhim dūṣayet | 7 |
 KAZ07.14.08/ atha-ubhaya.vetanā bhūyo bhedaṁ eṣāṁ kuryuḥ "evaṁ tad yad asmābhir darśitam" iti | 8 |
 KAZ07.14.09/ bhinneṣv anyatama.upagraheṇa ceṣṭeta | 9 |
 KAZ07.14.10/ pradhāna.abhāve sāmavāyikānām utsāhayitāraṁ sthira.karmāṇam anurakta.prakṛtiṁ lobhād bhayād vā saṅghātam upāgataṁ vijigīṣor bhītaṁ rājya.pratisambaddhaṁ mitraṁ cala.amitraṁ vā pūrvān uttara.abhāve sādhayet - utsāhayitāraṁ ātma.nisargeṇa, sthira.karmāṇaṁ sāntva.praṇipātena, anurakta.prakṛtiṁ kanyā.dāna.yāpanābhyām, lubdham aṁśa.dvaiguṇyena, bhītam ebhyaḥ kośa.daṇḍa.anugraheṇa, svato bhītaṁ viśvāsyā pratibhū.pradānena, rājya.pratisambaddham ekī.bhāva.upagamanena, mitram ubhayataḥ priya.hitābhyām, upakāra.tyāgena vā, cala.amitraṁ avadhṛtam anapakāra.upakārābhyām | 10 |
 KAZ07.14.11/ yo vā yathā-ayogaṁ bhajeta taṁ tathā sādhayet, sāma.dāna.bheda.daṇḍair vā yathā-āpatsu vyākhyāsyāmaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ07.14.12/ vyasana.upaghāta.tvarito vā kośa.daṇḍābhyām deśe kāle kārye vā-avadhṛtaṁ sandhim upeyāt | 12 |

¹⁹⁹[K tr. 423 :: K2 tr. 366

KAZ07.14.13/ kṛta.sandhir hīnam ātmānam pratikurvīta | 13 |
 KAZ07.14.14/ pakṣe hīno bandhu.mitra.pakṣam kurvīta, durgam aviśahyaṁ vā | 14 |
 KAZ07.14.15/ durga.mitra.pratiṣṭabdhō hi sveṣām pareṣām ca pūjyo bhavati | 15 |
 KAZ07.14.16/ mantra.śakti.hīnaḥ prājña.puruṣa.upacayaṁ vidyā.vṛddha.samyogaṁ vā kurvīta | 16 |
 KAZ07.14.17/ tathā hi sadyaḥ śreyaḥ prāpnoti | 17 |
 KAZ07.14.18/ prabhāva.hīnaḥ prakṛti.yoga.kṣema.siddhau yateta | 18 |
 KAZ07.14.19/ jana.padaḥ sarva.karmaṇām yoniḥ, tataḥ prabhāvaḥ | 19 |
 KAZ07.14.20/ tasya sthānam ātmanaś ca-āpadi durgam | 20 |
 KAZ07.14.21/ setu.bandhaḥ sasyānām yoniḥ | 21 |
 KAZ07.14.22/ nitya.anuśakto hi varṣa.guṇa.lābhaḥ setu.vāpeṣu | 22 |
 KAZ07.14.23/ vaṇik.pathaḥ para.atisandhānasya yoniḥ | 23 |
 KAZ07.14.24/ vaṇik.pathena hi daṇḍa.gūḍha.puruṣa.atinayanam śāstra.āvaraṇa.yāna.vāhana.krayaś ca kriyate, praveśo nirṇayanam ca | 24 |
 KAZ07.14.25/ khaniḥ saṅgrāma.upakaraṇānām yoniḥ, dravya.vanam durga.karmaṇām yāna.rathayoś ca, hasti.vanam hastinām, gava.aśva.khara.uṣṭrānām ca vrajaḥ | 25 |
 KAZ07.14.26/ teṣām alābhe bandhu.mitra.kulebhyaḥ samārjanam | 26 |
 KAZ07.14.27/ utsāha.hīnaḥ śreṇī.pravīra.puruṣānām cora.gaṇa.āṭavika.mleccha.jātīnām para.apakāriṇām gūḍha.puruṣānām ca yathā.lābham upacayaṁ kurvīta | 27 |
 KAZ07.14.28/ para.mīśra.apratikāram ābalīyasam vā pareṣu prayuñjīta | 28 |
 KAZ07.14.29ab/ evaṁ pakṣeṇa mantreṇa dravyeṇa ca balena ca |
 KAZ07.14.29cd/ sampannaḥ pratirigacchet para.avagraham ātmanaḥ || 29 ||

7.15 Chapter 15 (Sections 119; 120): Entrenching Oneself in a Fort in War with a Stronger King; Conduct of the King Surrendering with Troops

200

KAZ07.15.01/ durbalo rājā balavatā-abhiyuktas tad.viśiṣṭa.balam āśrayeta yam itaro mantra.śaktyā na-atisandadhyāt | 1 |
 KAZ07.15.02/ tulya.mantra.śaktīnām āyatta.sampado vṛddha.samyogād vā viśeṣaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ07.15.03/ viśiṣṭa.bala.abhāve sama.balais tulya.bala.saṅghair vā balavataḥ sambhūya tiṣṭhed yān na mantra.prabhāva.śaktibhyām atisandadhyāt | 3 |
 KAZ07.15.04/ tulya.mantra.prabhāva.śaktīnām vipula.ārambhato viśeṣaḥ | 4 |
 KAZ07.15.05/ sama.bala.abhāve hīna.balaiḥ śucibhir utsāhibhiḥ pratyānīka.bhūtair balavataḥ sambhūya tiṣṭhed yān na mantra.prabhāva.utsāha.śaktibhir atisandadhyāt | 5 |
 KAZ07.15.06/ tulya.utsāha.śaktīnām sva.yuddha.bhūmi.lābhād viśeṣaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ07.15.07/ tulya.bhūmīnām sva.yuddha.kāla.lābhād viśeṣaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ07.15.08/ tulya.deśa.kālānām yugya.śāstra.āvaraṇato viśeṣaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ07.15.09/ sahāya.abhāve durgam āśrayeta yatra-amitraḥ prabhūta.sainyo 'pi bhakta.yavasa.indhana.udaka.uparodham na kuryāt svayaṁ ca kṣaya.vyayābhyaṁ yujyeta | 9 |
 KAZ07.15.10/ tulya.durgānām nicaya.apasārato viśeṣaḥ | 10 |
 KAZ07.15.11/ nicaya.apasāra.sampannam hi manuṣya.durgam icched iti kauṭilyaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ07.15.12a/tad ebhiḥ kārṇair āśrayeta - "pārṣṇi.grāham āsāram madhyamam udāsīnam vā pratipādayiṣyāmi, sāmanta.āṭavika.tat.kulīna.aparuddhānām anyatamena-asya rājyaṁ hārayiṣyāmi ghātayiṣyāmi vā -

²⁰⁰[K tr. 426 :: K2 tr. 369

- KAZ07.15.12b/ kṛtya.pakṣa.upagraheṇa vā-asya durge rāṣṭre skandha.āvāre vā kopam samutthāpayiṣyāmi, śāstra.agni.rasa.praṇidhānair aupaniṣadikair vā yathā.iṣṭam āsannaṁ haniṣyāmi -
- KAZ07.15.12c/ svayam.adhiṣṭhitena vā yoga.praṇidhānena kṣaya.vyayam enam upaneṣyāmi, kṣaya.vyaya.pravāsa.upatapte vā-asya mitra.varge sainye vā krameṇa-upajāpam prāpsyāmi -
- KAZ07.15.12d/ vīvadha.āsāra.prasāra.vadhena vā-asya skandha.āvāra.avagraham kariṣyāmi, daṇḍa.upanayena vā-asya randhram utthāpya sarva.sandohena prahariṣyāmi, pratihata.utsāhena vā yathā.iṣṭam sandhim avāpsyāmi, mayi pratibaddhasya vā sarvataḥ kopāḥ samutthāsyanti -
- KAZ07.15.12e/ nirāsāram vā-asya mūlam mitra.aṭavī.daṇḍair uddhātayiṣyāmi, mahato vā deśasya yoga.kṣemam ihaṣṭhaḥ pālayiṣyāmi, sva.vikṣiptam mitra.vikṣiptam vā me sainyam ihaṣṭhasya-ekastham aviṣahyam bhaviṣyati, nimna.khāta.rātri.yuddha.viśāradaṁ vā me sainyam pathya.ābādha.muktam āsanne karma kariṣyati -
- KAZ07.15.12f/ viruddha.deśa.kālam iha.āgato vā svayam eva kṣaya.vyayābhyām na bhaviṣyati, mahā.kṣaya.vyaya.abhigamyo 'yam deśo durga.aṭavy.apasāra.bāhulyāt -
- KAZ07.15.12g/ pareṣāṁ vyādhi.prāyaḥ sainya.vyāyāmānām alabdha.bhaumaś ca, tam āpad.gataḥ pravekṣyati, praviṣṭo vā na nirgamiṣyati" iti | 12 |
- KAZ07.15.13/ "kāraṇa.abhāve bala.samucchraye vā parasya durgam unmucya-apagacchet | 13 |
- KAZ07.15.14/ agni.pataṅgavad amitre vā praviśet | 14 |
- KAZ07.15.15/ anyatara.siddhir hi tyakta.ātmano bhavati" ity ācāryāḥ | 15 |
- KAZ07.15.16/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 16 |
- KAZ07.15.17/ sandheyatām ātmanaḥ parasya ca-upalabhya sandadhīta | 17 |
- KAZ07.15.18/ viparyaye vikrameṇa sandhim apasāram vā lipseta | 18 |
- KAZ07.15.19/ sandheyasya vā dūtam preṣayet | 19 |
- KAZ07.15.20/ tena vā preṣitam artha.mānābhyām satkṛtya brūyāt "idaṁ rājñāḥ paṇya.agāram, idaṁ devī.kumārāṇām, devī.kumāra.vacanāt, idaṁ rājyam aham ca tvad.arpaṇaḥ" iti | 20 |
- KAZ07.15.21/ labdha.samśrayaḥ samaya.ācārikavad bhartari varteta | 21 |
- KAZ07.15.22/ durga.ādīni ca karmāṇi āvāha.vivāha.putra.abhiṣeka.aśva.paṇya.hasti.grahaṇa.sattra.yātrā.- vihāra.gamanāni ca-anujñātaḥ kurvīta | 22 |
- KAZ07.15.23/ sva.bhūmy.avasthita.prakṛti.sandhim upaghātam apasṛteṣu vā sarvam anujñātaḥ kurvīta | 23 |
- KAZ07.15.24/ duṣṭa.paura.jānapado vā nyāya.vṛttir anyām bhūmiṁ yāceta | 24 |
- KAZ07.15.25/ duṣyavad upāṁśu.daṇḍena vā pratikurvīta | 25 |
- KAZ07.15.26/ ucitām vā mitrād bhūmiṁ dīyamānām na pratigṛhṇīyāt | 26 |
- KAZ07.15.27/ mantri.purohita.senā.pati.yuva.rājānām anyatamam adṛśyamāne bhartari paśyet, yathā.śakti ca-upakuryāt | 27 |
- KAZ07.15.28/ daivata.svasti.vācaneṣu tat.parā āśiṣo vācayet | 28 |
- KAZ07.15.29/ sarvatra-ātma.nisargaṁ guṇam brūyāt | 29 |
- KAZ07.15.30ab/ samyukta.balavat.sevī viruddhaḥ śāṅkita.ādibhiḥ |
- KAZ07.15.30cd/ varteta daṇḍa.upanato bhartary evam avasthitaḥ || 30 ||

7.16 Chapter 16 (Section 121): Conduct of the King Subjugating by Force

201

²⁰¹[K tr. 430 :: K2 tr. 372

- KAZ07.16.01/ anujñāta.sandhi.paṇa.udvega.karaṁ balavān vijigīṣamāṇo yataḥ sva.bhūmiḥ sva.rtu.vṛttiś ca sva.sainyānām, adurga.apasāraḥ śatrur.apārṣṇir anāsāraś ca, tato yāyāt | 1 |
- KAZ07.16.02/ viparyaye kṛta.pratikāro yāyāt | 2 |
- KAZ07.16.03/ sāmā.dānābhyām durbalān upanamayet, bheda.daṇḍābhyām balavataḥ | 3 |
- KAZ07.16.04/ niyoga.vikalpa.samuccayaiś ca-upāyānām anantara.eka.antarāḥ prakṛtiḥ sādhayet | 4 |
- KAZ07.16.05/ grāma.araṇya.upajīvi.vraja.vaṇik.patha.anupālanaṁ ujjhita.apasṛta.apakāriṇām ca-arpaṇam iti sāntvam ācāret | 5 |
- KAZ07.16.06/ bhūmi.dravya.kanyā.dānam abhayasya ca-iti dānam ācāret | 6 |
- KAZ07.16.07/ sāmanta.āṭavika.tat.kulīna.aparuddhānām anyatama.upagraheṇa kośa.daṇḍa.bhūmi.dāya.yācanam iti bhedaṁ ācāret | 7 |
- KAZ07.16.08/ prakāśa.kūṭa.tūṣṇīm.yuddha.durga.lambha.upāyair amitra.pragrahaṇam iti daṇḍam ācāret | 8 |
- KAZ07.16.09/ evam utsāhavato daṇḍa.upakāriṇaḥ sthāpayet, sva.prabhāvavataḥ kośa.upakāriṇaḥ, prajñāvato bhūmy.upakāriṇaḥ | 9 |
- KAZ07.16.10/ teṣāṁ paṇya.pattana.grāma.khani.sañjātena ratna.sāra.phalgu.kupyena dravya.hasti.vana.vraja.samutthana yāna.vāhanena vā yad bahuśa upakaroti tac citra.bhogam | 10 |
- KAZ07.16.11/ yad daṇḍena kośena vā mahad upakaroti tan mahā.bhogam | 11 |
- KAZ07.16.12/ yad daṇḍa.kośa.bhūmibhir upakaroti tat sarva.bhogam | 12 |
- KAZ07.16.13/ yad amitram ekataḥ pratikaroti tad ekato.bhogi | 13 |
- KAZ07.16.14/ yad amitram āsāraṁ ca-ubhayataḥ pratikaroti tad ubhayato.bhogi | 14 |
- KAZ07.16.15/ yad amitra.āsāra.pratīveśa.āṭavikān sarvataḥ pratikaroti tat sarvato.bhogi | 15 |
- KAZ07.16.16a/ pārṣṇi.grāhaś ca-āṭavikaḥ śatru.mukhyaḥ śatrur vā bhūmi.dāna.sādhyāḥ kaścid āsādyeta, nirguṇayā bhūmyā-enam upagrāhayet, apratisambaddhayā durgastham, nirupajīvyayā-āṭavikaṁ -
- KAZ07.16.16b/ pratyādeyayā tat.kulīnaṁ śatroḥ, apacchinayā śatror aparuddhaṁ nitya.amitrayā śreṇī.balam, balavat.sāmantayā saṁhata.balam, ubhābhyām yuddhe pratilomam, -
- KAZ07.16.16c/ alabdha.vyāyāmayā-utsāhinam, sūyayā-ari.pakṣīyam, karṣitayā-apavāhitam, mahā.kṣaya.vyaya.niveśayā gata.pratyāgatam, anapāśrayayā pratyapasṛtam, pareṇa-anadhivāsyayā svayam eva bhartāram upagrāhayet | 16 |
- KAZ07.16.17/ teṣāṁ mahā.upakāraṁ nirvikāraṁ ca-anuvartayet | 17 |
- KAZ07.16.18/ pratilomam upāmsunā sādhayet | 18 |
- KAZ07.16.19/ upakāriṇam upakāra.śaktyā toṣayet | 19 |
- KAZ07.16.20/ prayāsataś ca-artha.mānau kuryād, vyasaneṣu ca-anugraham | 20 |
- KAZ07.16.21/ svayaṁ.āgatānām yathā.iṣṭa.darśanaṁ pratividhānaṁ ca kuryāt | 21 |
- KAZ07.16.22/ paribhava.upaghāta.kutsa.ativādānś ca-eṣu na prayuñjīta | 22 |
- KAZ07.16.23/ dattvā ca-abhayaṁ pitā-iva-anugrṇīyāt | 23 |
- KAZ07.16.24/ yaś ca-asya-apakuryāt tad doṣam abhivikhyāpya prakāśam enaṁ ghātayet | 24 |
- KAZ07.16.25/ para.udvega.kāraṇād vā dāṇḍakarmikavac ceṣṭeta | 25 |
- KAZ07.16.26/ na ca hatasya bhūmi.dravya.putra.dārān abhimanyeta | 26 |
- KAZ07.16.27/ kulyān apy asya sveṣu pātreṣu sthāpayet | 27 |
- KAZ07.16.28/ karmaṇi mṛtasya putraṁ rāje sthāpayet | 28 |
- KAZ07.16.29/ evam asya daṇḍa.upanataḥ putra.pautrān anuvartante | 29 |
- KAZ07.16.30/ yas tu-upanatān hatvā baddhvā vā bhūmi.dravya.putra.dārān abhimanyeta tasya-udvignaṁ maṇḍalam abhāvāya-uttiṣṭhate | 30 |

KAZ07.16.31/ ye ca-asya-amātyāḥ sva.bhūmiṣv āyattās te ca-asya-udvignā maṇḍalam āśrayante | 31 |

KAZ07.16.32/ svayaṁ vā rājyaṁ prāṇān vā-asya-abhimanyante | 32 |

KAZ07.16.33ab/ sva.bhūmiṣu ca rājānas tasmāt sāmṇā-anupālītāḥ |

KAZ07.16.33cd/ bhavanty anuṅṇā rājñāḥ putra.pautra.anuvartinaḥ || 33 ||

7.17 Chapter 17 (Sections 122; 123): The Making of Peace; Liberation of the Hostage

202

KAZ07.17.01/ śamaḥ sandhiḥ samādhir ity eko 'rthaḥ | 1 |

KAZ07.17.02/ rājñāṁ viśvāsa.upagamaḥ śamaḥ sandhiḥ samādhir iti | 2 |

KAZ07.17.03/ "satyaṁ śapatho vā calaḥ sandhiḥ, pratibhūḥ pratigraho vā sthāvaraḥ" ity ācāryāḥ | 3 |

KAZ07.17.04/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 4 |

KAZ07.17.05/ satyaṁ śapatho vā paratra-iha ca sthāvaraḥ sandhiḥ, iha.artha eva pratibhūḥ pratigraho vā bala.apekṣaḥ | 5 |

KAZ07.17.06/ "saṁhitāḥ smaḥ" iti satya.sandhāḥ pūrve rājānaḥ satyena sandadhire | 6 |

KAZ07.17.07/ tasya-atikrame śapathena

agny.udaka.sītā.prākāra.loṣṭa.hasti.skandha.aśva.prṣṭa.ratha.upastha.-

śastra.ratna.bīja.gandha.rasa.suvarṇa.hiraṇyāny ālebhire "hanyur etāni tyajeyuś ca-enam yaḥ śapatham atikrāmet" iti | 7 |

KAZ07.17.08/ śapatha.atikrame mahatām tapasvinām mukhyānām vā prātibhāvya.bandhaḥ pratibhūḥ | 8 |

KAZ07.17.09/ tasmin yaḥ para.avagraha.samarthān pratibhuvo ḡḥṇāti, so 'tisandhatte | 9 |

KAZ07.17.10/ viparīto 'tisandhīyate | 10 |

KAZ07.17.11/ bandhu.mukhya.pragrahaḥ pratigrahaḥ | 11 |

KAZ07.17.12/ tasmin yo dūṣya.amātyaṁ dūṣya.apatyam vā dadāti, so 'tisandhatte | 12 |

KAZ07.17.13/ viparīto 'tisandhīyate

KAZ07.17.14/ pratigraha.graṇa.viśvastasya hi paraś chidreṣu nirapekṣaḥ praharati | 14 |

KAZ07.17.15/ apatya.samādhau tu kanyā.putra.dāne dadat tu kanyām atisandhatte | 15 |

KAZ07.17.16/ kanyā hy adāyādā pareṣām eva-arthāya-ākleśyā (?) ca | 16 |

KAZ07.17.17/ viparītaḥ putraḥ | 17 |

KAZ07.17.18/ putrayor api yo jātyaṁ prājñam sūram kṛta.astam eka.putram vā dadāti so 'tisandhīyate | 18 |

KAZ07.17.19/ viparīto 'tisandhatte | 19 |

KAZ07.17.20/ jātyād ajātyo hi lupta.dāyāda.santānatvād ādhātuṁ śreyān, prājñād aprājño mantra.śakti.lopāt, sūrād aśūra utsāha.śakti.lopāt, kṛta.astrād akṛta.astraḥ

prahartavya.sampal.lopāt, eka.putrād aneka.putro nirapekṣatvāt | 20 |

KAZ07.17.21/ jātya.prājñayor jātyam aprājñam aiśvarya.prakṛtir anuvartate, prājñam ajātyam mantra.adhikāraḥ | 21 |

KAZ07.17.22/ mantra.adhikāre 'pi vṛddha.samyogāj jātyaḥ prājñam atisandhatte | 22 |

KAZ07.17.23/ prājña.sūrayoḥ prājñam aśūram mati.karmaṇām yogo 'nuvartate, sūram aprājñam vikrama.adhikāraḥ | 23 |

KAZ07.17.24/ vikrama.adhikāre 'pi hastinam iva lubdhakaḥ prājñāḥ sūram atisandhatteś | 24 |

KAZ07.17.25/ sūra.kṛta.astrayoḥ sūram akṛta.astram vikrama.vyavasāyo 'nuvartate, kṛta.astam aśūram lakṣya.lambha.adhikāraḥ | 25 |

²⁰²[K tr. 434 :: K2 tr. 375

- KAZ07.17.26/ lakṣya.lambha.adhikāre 'pi sthairyā.pratipatty.asammoṣaiḥ śūrah kṛta.astram atisandhatte | 26 |
- KAZ07.17.27/ bahv.eka.putrayor bahu.putra ekaṁ dattvā śeṣa.pratiṣṭabdhaḥ sandhim atikrāmati, na-itarah | 27 |
- KAZ07.17.28/ putra.sarva.sva.dāne sandhiś cet putra.phalato viśeṣah | 28 |
- KAZ07.17.29/ sama.phalayoḥ śakta.prajananato viśeṣah | 29 |
- KAZ07.17.30/ śakta.prajananayor apy upasthita.prajananato viśeṣah | 30 |
- KAZ07.17.31/ śaktimatya eka.putre tu lupta.putra.utpattir ātmānam ādadhyāt, na ca-eka.putram iti | 31 |
- KAZ07.17.32/ abhyuccīyamānaḥ samādhi.mokṣaṁ kārayet | 32 |
- KAZ07.17.33/ kumāra.āsannāḥ sattriṇaḥ kārū.śilpi.vyañjanāḥ karmāṇi kurvāṇāḥ suruṅgayā rātrāv upakhānayitvā kumāram apahareyuh | 33 |
- KAZ07.17.34/ naṭanartaka.gāyana.vādaka.vāg.jīvana.kuśīlava.plavaka.saubhikā vā pūrva.praṇihitāḥ param upatiṣṭheran | 34 |
- KAZ07.17.35/ te kumāraṁ paraṁ.parayā-upatiṣṭheran | 35 |
- KAZ07.17.36/ teṣāṁ aniyata.kāla.praveśa.sthāna.nirgamanāni sthāpayet | 36 |
- KAZ07.17.37/ tatas tad.vyañjano vā rātrau pratiṣṭheta | 37 |
- KAZ07.17.38/ tena rūpa.ājīvā bhāryā.vyañjanāś ca vyākhyātāḥ | 38 |
- KAZ07.17.39/ teṣāṁ vā tūrya.bhāṇḍa.phelāṁ gr̥hītvā nirgacchet | 39 |
- KAZ07.17.40/ sūda.ārālika.snāpaka.samvāhaka.āstaraka.kalpaka.prasādhaka.-udaka.paricārakair vā dravya.vastra.bhāṇḍa.phelā.śayana.āsana.sambhogair nirhriyeta | 40 |
- KAZ07.17.41/ paricārakac.chadmanā vā kiñcid arūpa.velāyām ādāya nirgacchet, suruṅgā.mukhena vā niśā.upahāreṇa | 41 |
- KAZ07.17.42/ toya.āsāye vā vāruṇaṁ yogam ātiṣṭhet | 42 |
- KAZ07.17.43/ vaidehaka.vyañjanā vā pakva.anna.phala.vyavahāreṇa-āraḥkṣiṣu rasam upacārayeyuh | 43 |
- KAZ07.17.44/ daivata.upahāra.śrāddha.prahavaṇa.nimittam āraḥkṣiṣu madana.yoga.yuktam anna.pānaṁ rasaṁ vā prayujya-apagacchet, āraḥkṣaka.protsāhanena vā | 44 |
- KAZ07.17.45/ nāgaraka.kuśīlava.cikitsaka.āpūpika.vyañjanā vā rātrau samṛddha.gr̥hāṇy ādīpayeyuh āraḥkṣiṇāṁ vā | 45 |
- KAZ07.17.46/ vaidehaka.vyañjanā vā paṇya.samsthām ādīpayeyuh | 46 |
- KAZ07.17.47/ anyad vā śarīraṁ nikṣipya sva.gr̥ham ādīpayed anupāta.bhayāt | 47 |
- KAZ07.17.48/ tataḥ sandhic.cheda.khāta.suruṅgābhīr apagacchet | 48 |
- KAZ07.17.49/ kāca.kumbha.bhāṇḍa.bhāra.vyañjano vā rātrau pratiṣṭheta | 49 |
- KAZ07.17.50/ muṇḍa.jaṭilānāṁ pravāsanāny anupraviṣṭo vā rātrau tad.vyañjanaḥ pratiṣṭheta, virūpa.vyādhi.karaṇa.arāṇya.carac.chadmanām anyatamena vā | 50 |
- KAZ07.17.51/ preta.vyañjano vā gūḍhair nirhriyeta | 51 |
- KAZ07.17.52/ pretaṁ vā strī.veṣeṇa-anugacchet | 52 |
- KAZ07.17.53/ vana.cara.vyañjanāś ca-enam anyato yāntam anyato 'padiśeyuh | 53 |
- KAZ07.17.54/ tato 'nyato gacchet | 54 |
- KAZ07.17.55/ cakra.carāṇāṁ vā śakaṭa.vāṭair apagacchet | 55 |
- KAZ07.17.56/ āsanne ca-anupāte sattraṁ vā gr̥hṇīyāt | 56 |
- KAZ07.17.57/ sattra.abhāve hiraṇyaṁ rasa.viddham vā bhakṣya.jātam ubhayataḥ.panthānam utsṛjet | 57 |
- KAZ07.17.58/ tato 'nyato 'pagacchet | 58 |
- KAZ07.17.59/ gr̥hīto vā sāmā.ādibhir anupātām atisandadhyāt, rasa.viddhena vā pathy.adanena | 59 |
- KAZ07.17.60/ vāruṇa.yoga.agni.dāheṣu vā śarīram anyad ādhāya śatrum abhiyuñjīta "putro me tvayā hataḥ" iti | 60 |

KAZ07.17.61ab/ upāttac.channa.śastro vā rātrau vikramya rakṣiṣu |
KAZ07.17.61cd/ śighra.pātail apasared gūḍha.praṇihitaiḥ saha | 61 |

7.18 Chapter 18 (Sections 124; 125; 126): Conduct towards the Middle King; Conduct towards the Neutral King; Conduct towards the Circle of Kings

203

KAZ07.18.01/ madhyamasya-ātmā tṛtīyā pañcamī ca prakṛtī prakṛtayaḥ | 1 |
KAZ07.18.02/ dvitīyā caturthī ṣaṣṭhī ca vikṛtayaḥ | 2 |
KAZ07.18.03/ tac ced ubhayaṁ madhyamo 'nugṛhṇīyāt, vijigīṣur madhyama.anulomaḥ syāt | 3 |
KAZ07.18.04/ na ced anugṛhṇīyāt, prakṛty.anulomaḥ syāt | 4 |
KAZ07.18.05/ madhyamaś ced vijigīṣor mitram mitra.bhāvi lipseta, mitrasya-ātmanaś ca mitrāṇy utthāpya madhyamāc ca mitrāṇi bhedayitvā mitram trāyeta | 5 |
KAZ07.18.06/ maṇḍalaṁ vā protsāhayet "atipravṛddho 'yaṁ madhyamaḥ sarveṣāṁ no vināśāya-abhyutthitaḥ, sambhūya-asya yātrāṁ vihanāma" iti | 6 |
KAZ07.18.07/ tac cen maṇḍalam anugṛhṇīyāt, madhyama.avagraheṇa-ātmānam upabṛmḥayet | 7 |
KAZ07.18.08/ na ced anugṛhṇīyāt, kośa.daṇḍābhyāṁ mitram anugṛhya ye madhyama.dveṣiṇo rājānaḥ paraspara.anugṛhītā vā bahavas tiṣṭheyuḥ, eka.siddhau vā bahavaḥ sidhyeyuḥ, parasparād vā śaṅkitā na-uttīṣṭheran, teṣāṁ pradhānam ekam āsannaṁ vā sāma.dānābhyāṁ labheta | 8 |
KAZ07.18.09/ dvi.guṇo dvitīyaṁ tri.guṇas tṛtīyam | 9 |
KAZ07.18.10/ evaṁ abhyuccito madhyamam avagṛhṇīyāt | 10 |
KAZ07.18.11/ deśa.kāla.atipattau vā sandhāya madhyamena mitrasya sāvīyaṁ kuryāt, dūṣyeṣu vā karma.sandhim | 11 |
KAZ07.18.12/ karśanīyaṁ vā-asya mitram madhyamo lipseta, pratistambhayed enaṁ "ahaṁ tvā trāyeya" iti ā karśanāt | 12 |
KAZ07.18.13/ karśitam enaṁ trāyeta | 13 |
KAZ07.18.14/ ucchedanīyaṁ vā-asya mitram madhyamo lipseta, karśitam enaṁ trāyeta madhyama.vṛddhi.bhayāt | 14 |
KAZ07.18.15/ ucchinnaṁ vā bhūmy.anugraheṇa haste kuryād anyatra-apasāra.bhayāt | 15 |
KAZ07.18.16/ karśanīya.ucchedanīyayoś cen mitrāṇi madhyamasya sāvīya.karāṇi syuḥ, puruṣa.antareṇa sandhīyeta | 16 |
KAZ07.18.17/ vijigīṣor vā taylor mitrāṇy avagraha.samarthāni syuḥ, sandhim upeyāt | 17 |
KAZ07.18.18/ amitram vā-asya madhyamo lipseta, sandhim upeyāt | 18 |
KAZ07.18.19/ evaṁ sva.arthaś ca kṛto bhavati madhyamasya priyaṁ ca | 19 |
KAZ07.18.20/ madhyamaś cet sva.mitram mitra.bhāvi lipseta, puruṣa.antareṇa sandadhyāt | 20 |
KAZ07.18.21/ sa.apekṣaṁ vā "na-arhasi mitram ucchettum" iti vārayet | 21 |
KAZ07.18.22/ upekṣeta vā "maṇḍalam asya kupyatu sva.pakṣa.vadhāt" iti | 22 |
KAZ07.18.23/ amitram ātmano vā madhyamo lipseta, kośa.daṇḍābhyāṁ enaṁ adṛśyamāno 'nugṛhṇīyāt | 23 |
KAZ07.18.24/ udāsīnaṁ vā madhyamo lipseta, asmai sāhāyaṁ dadyād "udāsīnād bhidyatām" iti | 24 |
KAZ07.18.25/ madhyama.udāsīnayor yo maṇḍalasya-abhipretas tam āśrayeta | 25 |

²⁰³[K tr. 439 :: K2 tr. 380

- KAZ07.18.26/ madhyama.caritena-udāsīna.caritaṃ vyākhyātam | 26 |
- KAZ07.18.27/ udāsīnaś cen madhyamaṃ lipseta, yataḥ śatrum atisandadhyān
mitrasya-upakāraṃ kuryād udāsīnaṃ vā daṇḍa.upakāriṇaṃ labheta tataḥ pariṇameta | 27 |
- KAZ07.18.28/ evam upabr̥hya-ātmānam ari.prakṛtiṃ karśayen mitra.prakṛtiṃ
ca-upagr̥hṇīyāt | 28 |
- KAZ07.18.29a/ saty apy amitra.bhāve tasya-anātmavān nitya.apakārī śatruḥ śatru.sāmhitaḥ
pārṣṇi.grāho vā vyasanī yātavyo vyasane vā netur abhiyoktā ity ari.bhāvinaḥ,
eka.artha.abhiprayātaḥ pṛthag.artha.abhiprayātaḥ sambhūya.yātrikaḥ sāmhita.prayānikaḥ
sva.artha.abhiprayātaḥ sāmuththāyikaḥ kośa.daṇḍayor anyatarasya kretā vikretā vā
dvaidhī.bhāvika iti mitra.bhāvinaḥ, -
- KAZ07.18.29b/ sāmanto balavataḥ pratighāto 'ntardhiḥ prativeśo vā balavataḥ pārṣṇi.grāho
vā svayam upanataḥ pratāpa.upanato vā daṇḍa.upanata iti bhr̥tya.bhāvinaḥ sāmantaḥ | 29 |
- KAZ07.18.30/ tair bhūmy.eka.antarā vyākhyātāḥ | 30 |
- KAZ07.18.31ab/ teṣāṃ śatru.virodhe yan mitram eka.arthatām vrajet |
- KAZ07.18.31cd/ śaktyā tad.anugr̥hṇīyād viśaheta yayā param || 31 ||
- KAZ07.18.32ab/ prasādhya śatrum yan mitram vṛddhaṃ gacched avaśyatām |
- KAZ07.18.32cd/ sāmanta.eka.antarābhyām tat.prakṛtibhyām virodhayet || 32 ||
- KAZ07.18.33ab/ tat.kulīna.aparuddhābhyām bhūmiṃ vā tasya hārayet |
- KAZ07.18.33cd/ yathā vā-anugraha.apekṣaṃ vaśyaṃ tiṣṭhet tathā caret || 33 ||
- KAZ07.18.34ab/ na-upakuryād amitraṃ vā gacched yad atikarśitam |
- KAZ07.18.34cd/ tad ahīnam avṛddhaṃ ca sthāpayen mitram arthavit || 34 ||
- KAZ07.18.35ab/ artha.yuktyā calaṃ mitram sandhiṃ yad upagacchati |
- KAZ07.18.35cd/ tasya-apagamane hetuṃ vihanyān na caled yathā || 35 ||
- KAZ07.18.36ab/ ari.sādhāraṇaṃ yad vā tiṣṭhet tad aritaḥ śaṭham |
- KAZ07.18.36cd/ bhedayed bhinnam ucchindyāt tataḥ śatrum anantaram || 36 ||
- KAZ07.18.37ab/ udāsīnaṃ ca yat tiṣṭhet sāmantaḥ tad virodhayet |
- KAZ07.18.37cd/ tato vīgraha.santaptam upakāre niveśayet || 37 ||
- KAZ07.18.38ab/ amitraṃ vijigīṣuṃ ca yat sañcarati durbalam |
- KAZ07.18.38cd/ tad balena-anugr̥hṇīyād yathā syān na parān.mukham || 38 ||
- KAZ07.18.39ab/ apanīya tato 'nyasyāṃ bhūmau vā samniveśayet |
- KAZ07.18.39cd/ niveśya pūrvaṃ tatra-anyad daṇḍa.anugraha.hetunā || 39 ||
- KAZ07.18.40ab/ apakuryāt samarthaṃ vā na-upakuryād yad āpadi |
- KAZ07.18.40cd/ ucchindyād eva tan.mitraṃ viśvasya-aṅkam upasthitam || 40 ||
- KAZ07.18.41ab/ mitra.vyasanato vā-arir uttiṣṭhet yo 'navagrahaḥ |
- KAZ07.18.41cd/ mitreṇa-eva bhavet sādhyāś chādita.vyasanena saḥ || 41 ||
- KAZ07.18.42ab/ amitra.vyasanān mitram utthitaṃ yad virajyati |
- KAZ07.18.42cd/ ari.vyasana.siddhyā tat.śatruṇā-eva prasidhyati || 42 ||
- KAZ07.18.43ab/ vṛddhiṃ kṣayaṃ ca sthānaṃ ca karśana.ucchedanaṃ tathā |
- KAZ07.18.43cd/ sarva.upāyān samādadhyād etān yaś ca-artha.śāstravit || 43 ||
- KAZ07.18.44ab/ evam anyonya.sañcāraṃ śāḍguṇyaṃ yo 'nupaśyati |
- KAZ07.18.44cd/ sa buddhi.nigalair baddhair iṣṭaṃ krīḍati pārthivaiḥ || 44 ||

8 Book 8: Concerning the Topic of Calamities

204

²⁰⁴[K tr. 445–469 :: K2 tr. 385–405

8.1 Chapter 1 (Section 127): Calamities of the Constituent Elements

205

- KAZ08.1.01/ vyaṣana.yaugapadye saukaryato yātavyaṃ rakṣitavyaṃ vā-iti vyaṣana.cintā | 1 |
 KAZ08.1.02/ daivaṃ mānuṣaṃ vā prakṛti.vyaṣanam anaya.apanayābhyāṃ sambhavati | 2 |
 KAZ08.1.03/ guṇa.prātilomyam abhāvaḥ pradoṣaḥ prasaṅgaḥ pīḍā vā vyaṣanam | 3 |
 KAZ08.1.04/ vyasyaty enaṃ śreyasa iti vyaṣanam | 4 |
 KAZ08.1.05/ "svāmy.amātya.jana.pada.durga.kośa.daṇḍa.mitra.vyaṣanānāṃ pūrvaṃ pūrvaṃ
 garīyaḥ" ity ācāryāḥ | 5 |
 KAZ08.1.06/ na-iti bharadvājaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ08.1.07/ "svāmy.amātya.vyaṣanayor amātya.vyaṣanaṃ garīyaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ08.1.08/ mantra mantrā.phala.avāptiḥ karma.anuṣṭhānam āya.vyaya.karma
 daṇḍa.praṇayanam amitra.aṭavī.pratiṣedho rājya.rakṣaṇaṃ vyaṣana.pratīkāraḥ
 kumāra.rakṣaṇam abhiṣekaś ca kumārāṇāṃ āyattam amātyeṣu | 8 |
 KAZ08.1.09/ teṣāṃ abhāve tad.abhāvaḥ, chinna.pakṣasya-iva rājñāś ceṣṭā.nāśaś ca | 9 |
 KAZ08.1.10/ vyaṣaneṣu ca-āsannaḥ para.upajāpaḥ | 10 |
 KAZ08.1.11/ vaiguṇye ca prāṇa.ābādhaḥ prāṇa.antika.caratvād rājñāḥ" iti | 11 |
 KAZ08.1.12/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 12 |
 KAZ08.1.13/ mantri.purohita.ādi.bhṛtya.vargam adhyakṣa.pracāraṃ
 puruṣa.dravya.prakṛti.vyaṣana.pratīkāraṃ edhanaṃ ca rājā-eva karoti | 13 |
 KAZ08.1.14/ vyaṣaniṣu vā-amātyeṣv anyān avyaṣaninaḥ karoti | 14 |
 KAZ08.1.15/ pūjya.pūjane dūṣya.avagrahe ca nitya.yuktas tiṣṭhati | 15 |
 KAZ08.1.16/ svāmī ca sampannaḥ sva.sampadbhiḥ prakṛtiḥ sampādayati | 16 |
 KAZ08.1.17/ sa yat.śīlas tat.śīlāḥ prakṛtayo bhavanti, utthāne pramāde ca tad.āyattatvāt | 17 |
 KAZ08.1.18/ tat.kūṭa.sthānīyo hi svāmī-iti | 18 |
 KAZ08.1.19/ "amātya.jana.pada.vyaṣanayor jana.pada.vyaṣanaṃ garīyaḥ" iti viśāla.akṣaḥ |
 19 |
 KAZ08.1.20/ "kośo daṇḍaḥ kupyaṃ viṣṭir vāhanaṃ nicayāś ca jana.padād uttiṣṭhante | 20 |
 KAZ08.1.21/ teṣāṃ abhāvo jana.pada.abhāve, svāmy.amātyayoś ca-anantaraḥ" iti | 21 |
 KAZ08.1.22/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 22 |
 KAZ08.1.23/ amātya.mūlāḥ sarva.ārambhāḥ - jana.padasya karma.siddhayaḥ svataḥ parataś
 ca yoga.kṣema.sādhanaṃ vyaṣana.pratīkāraḥ śūnya.niveśa.upacayau daṇḍa.kara.anugrahaś
 ca-iti | 23 |
 KAZ08.1.24/ "jana.pada.durga.vyaṣanayor durga.vyaṣanam" iti pārāśarāḥ | 24 |
 KAZ08.1.25/ "durge hi kośa.-daṇḍa.utpattir āpadi sthānaṃ ca jana.padasya | 25 |
 KAZ08.1.26/ śaktimattarāś ca paura jānapadebhyo nityāś ca-āpadi sahāyā rājñāḥ | 26 |
 KAZ08.1.27/ jānapadās tv amitra.sādhāraṇāḥ" iti | 27 |
 KAZ08.1.28/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 28 |
 KAZ08.1.29/ jana.pada.mūlā durga.kośa.daṇḍa.setu.vārttā.ārambhāḥ | 29 |
 KAZ08.1.30/ śauryaṃ sthairyam dākṣyam bāhulyam ca jānapadeṣu | 30 |
 KAZ08.1.31/ parvata.antar.dvīpāś ca durgā na-adhyuṣyante jana.pada.abhāvāt | 31 |
 KAZ08.1.32/ karṣaka.prāye tu durga.vyaṣanam, āyudhīya.prāye tu jana.pade
 jana.pada.vyaṣanam iti | 32 |
 KAZ08.1.33/ "durga.kośa.vyaṣanayoḥ kośa.vyaṣanam" iti piśunaḥ | 33 |
 KAZ08.1.34/ "kośa.mūlo hi durga.saṃskāro durga.rakṣaṇaṃ jana.pada.mitra.amitra.nigraho
 deśa.antarītānāṃ utsāhanaṃ daṇḍa.bala.vyavahāraś ca | 34 |
 KAZ08.1.35/ durgāḥ kośād upajāpyaḥ pareṣāṃ | 35 |

²⁰⁵[K tr. 445 :: K2 tr. 385

- KAZ08.1.36/ kośam ādāya ca vyasane śakyam apayātum, na durgam" iti | 36 |
 KAZ08.1.37/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 37 |
 KAZ08.1.38/ durga.arpaṇaḥ kośo daṇḍas tūṣṇīm.yuddham sva.pakṣa.nigraho
 daṇḍa.bala.vyavahāra āsāra.pratigrahaḥ para.cakra.aṭavī.pratiśedhaś ca | 38 |
 KAZ08.1.39/ durga.abhāve ca kośaḥ pareṣām | 39 |
 KAZ08.1.40/ drśyate hi durgavatām anucchittir iti | 40 |
 KAZ08.1.41/ "kośa.daṇḍavyasanayor daṇḍa.vyasanam" iti kauṇapadantaḥ | 41 |
 KAZ08.1.42/ "daṇḍa.mūlo hi mitra.amitra.nigrahaḥ para.daṇḍa.utsāhanam
 sva.daṇḍa.pratigrahaś ca | 42 |
 KAZ08.1.43/ daṇḍa.abhāve ca dhruvaḥ kośa.vināśaḥ | 43 |
 KAZ08.1.44/ kośa.abhāve ca śakyaḥ kupyena bhūmyā para.bhūmi.svayaṁ.grāheṇa vā
 daṇḍaḥ piṇḍayitum, daṇḍavatā ca kośaḥ | 44 |
 KAZ08.1.45/ svāmināś ca-āsanna.vṛttitvād amātya.sadharmā daṇḍaḥ" iti | 45 |
 KAZ08.1.46/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 46 |
 KAZ08.1.47/ kośa.mūlo hi daṇḍaḥ | 47 |
 KAZ08.1.48/ kośa.abhāve daṇḍaḥ paraṁ gacchati, svāminam vā hanti | 48 |
 KAZ08.1.49/ sarva.abhiyoga.karaś ca kośo dharma.kāma.hetuḥ | 49 |
 KAZ08.1.50/ deśa.kāla.kārya.vaśena tu kośa.daṇḍayor anyataraḥ pramāṇī.bhavati | 50 |
 KAZ08.1.51/ lambha.pālano hi daṇḍaḥ kośasya, kośaḥ kośasya daṇḍasya ca bhavati | 51 |
 KAZ08.1.52/ sarva.dravya.prayojakatvāt kośa.vyasanam garīya iti | 52 |
 KAZ08.1.53/ "daṇḍa.mitra.vyasanayor mitra.vyasanam" iti vātavyādhiḥ | 53 |
 KAZ08.1.54/ "mitram abhṛtaṁ vyavahitaṁ ca karma karoti, pārṣṇi.grāham āsāram amitram
 āṭavikaṁ ca pratikaroti, kośa.daṇḍa.bhūmibhiś ca-upakaroti vyasana.avasthā.yogam" iti | 54 |
 KAZ08.1.55/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 55 |
 KAZ08.1.56/ daṇḍavato mitram mitra.bhāve tiṣṭhati, amitro vā mitra.bhāve | 56 |
 KAZ08.1.57/ daṇḍa.mitrayos tu sādharmaṇe kārye sārataḥ sva.yuddha.deśa.kāla.lābhād
 viśeṣaḥ | 57 |
 KAZ08.1.58/ śighra.abhiyāne tv amitra.āṭavika.anabhyantara.kope ca na mitram vidyate |
 58 |
 KAZ08.1.59/ vyasana.yaugapadye para.vṛddhau ca mitram artha.yuktau tiṣṭhati | 59 |
 KAZ08.1.60/ iti prakṛti.vyasana.sampradhāraṇam uktam | 60 |
 KAZ08.1.61ab/ prakṛty.avayavānām tu vyasanasya viśeṣataḥ |
 KAZ08.1.61cd/ bahu.bhāvo 'nurāgo vā sāro vā kārya.sādhakaḥ || 61 ||
 KAZ08.1.62ab/ dvayos tu vyasane tulye viśeṣo guṇataḥ kṣayāt |
 KAZ08.1.62cd/ śeṣa.prakṛti.sādguṇyam yadi syān na-avidheyakam || 62 ||
 KAZ08.1.63ab/ śeṣa.prakṛti.nāśas tu yatra-eka.vyasanād bhavet |
 KAZ08.1.63cd/ vyasanam tad garīyaḥ syāt pradhānasya-itarasya vā || 63 ||

8.2 Chapter 2 (Section 128): Calamities of the King and Kingship

206

- KAZ08.2.01/ rājā rājyam iti prakṛti.saṅkṣepaḥ | 1 |
 KAZ08.2.02/ rājño 'bhyantaro bāhyo vā kopa iti | 2 |
 KAZ08.2.03/ ahi.bhayād abhyantaraḥ kopo bāhya.kopāt pāpīyān, antar.amātya.kopāś
 ca-antaḥ.kopāt | 3 |
 KAZ08.2.04/ tasmāt kośa.daṇḍa.śaktim ātma.samsthām kurvīta | 4 |

²⁰⁶[K tr. 451 :: K2 tr. 390

- KAZ08.2.05/ "dvairājya.vairājyayor dvairājyam anyonya.pakṣa.dveṣa.anurāgābhyām
paraspara.saṅgharṣeṇa vā vīnaśyati, vairājyaṁ tu prakṛti.citta.grahaṇa.apekṣi yathā.sthitam
anyair bhujyate" ity ācāryāḥ | 5 |
- KAZ08.2.06/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 6 |
- KAZ08.2.07/ pitā.putrayor bhrātror vā dvairājyaṁ tulya.yoga.kṣemam amātya.avagraham
vartayati | 7 |
- KAZ08.2.08/ vairājyaṁ tu jīvataḥ parasya-ācchidya "na-etan mama" iti manyamānaḥ
karśayati, apavāhayati, paṇyaṁ vā karoti, viraktaṁ vā parityajya-apagacchati-iti | 8 |
- KAZ08.2.09/ andhaś calita.śāstro vā rājā-iti "aśāstra.cakṣur andho yat.kiñcana.kārī
dṛḍha.abhiniveśī para.praṇeyo vā rājyaṁ anyāyena-upahanti, calita.śāstras tu yatra śāstrāc
calita.matir bhavati śakya.anunayo bhavati" ity ācāryāḥ | 9 |
- KAZ08.2.10/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 10 |
- KAZ08.2.11/ andho rājā śakyate sahāya.sampadā yatra tatra vā paryavasthāpayitum | 11 |
- KAZ08.2.12/ calita.śāstras tu śāstrād anyathā.abhiniviṣṭa.buddhir anyāyena rājyaṁ ātmānaṁ
ca-upahanti-iti | 12 |
- KAZ08.2.13/ vyādhito navo vā rājā-iti "vyādhito rājā rājya.upaghātam amātya.mūlaṁ
prāṇa.ābādhaṁ vā rājya.mūlam avāpnōti, navas tu rājā
sva.dharma.anugraha.parihāra.dāna.māna.karmabhiḥ prakṛti.rañjana.upakāraiś carati" ity
ācāryāḥ | 13 |
- KAZ08.2.14/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ08.2.15/ vyādhito rājā yathā.pravṛttaṁ rāja.praṇidhim anuvartayati | 15 |
- KAZ08.2.16/ navas tu rājā bala.āvarjitaṁ "mama-idaṁ rājyaṁ" iti yathā.iṣṭam anavagrahaś
carati | 16 |
- KAZ08.2.17/ sāmuthāyikair avagrhīto vā rājya.upaghātaṁ marśayati | 17 |
- KAZ08.2.18/ prakṛtiṣv arūḍhaḥ sukham ucchettum bhavati-iti | 18 |
- KAZ08.2.19/ vyādhite viśeṣaḥ pāpa.rogya.pāpa.rogī ca | 19 |
- KAZ08.2.20/ nave 'py abhijāto 'nabhijāta iti | 20 |
- KAZ08.2.21/ durbalo 'bhijāto balavān anabhijāto rājā-iti "durbalasya-abhijātasya-upajāpaṁ
daurbalya.apekṣāḥ prakṛtayaḥ kṛcchreṇa-upagacchanti, balavataś ca-anabhijātasya
bala.apekṣāḥ sukhena" ity ācāryāḥ | 21 |
- KAZ08.2.22/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ08.2.23/ durbalam abhijātaṁ prakṛtayaḥ svayam upanamanti, jātyam aiśvarya.prakṛtir
anuvartata iti | 23 |
- KAZ08.2.24/ balavataś ca-anabhijātasya-upajāpaṁ viśamvādayanti, anurāge sārvaṇyaṁ iti
| 24 |
- KAZ08.2.25/ prayāsa.vadhāt sasya.vadho muṣṭi.vadhāt pāpīyān, nirājīvatvād avṛṣṭir
ativṛṣṭitaḥ | 25 |
- KAZ08.2.26ab/ dvayor dvayor vyasanayoḥ prakṛtīnām bala.abalam |
- KAZ08.2.26cd/ pārampara.krameṇa-uktaṁ yāne sthāne ca kāraṇam || 26 ||

8.3 Chapter 3 (Section 129): Vices of Man

207

- KAZ08.3.01/ avidyā.vinayaḥ puruṣa.vyasana.hetuḥ | 1 |
- KAZ08.3.02/ avinīto hi vyasana.doṣān na paśyati | 2 |
- KAZ08.3.03/ tān upadekṣyāmaḥ | 3 |
- KAZ08.3.04/ kopajas tri.vargaḥ, kāmajaś catur.vargaḥ | 4 |
- KAZ08.3.05/ tayoḥ kopo garīyān | 5 |

²⁰⁷[K tr. 455 :: K2 tr. 393

- KAZ08.3.06/ sarvatra hi kopaś carati | 6 |
- KAZ08.3.07/ prāyaśaś ca kopa.vaśā rājānaḥ prakṛti.kopair hataḥ śrūyante, kāma.vaśāḥ kṣaya.nimittam ari.vyādhibhir iti | 7 |
- KAZ08.3.08/ na-iti bhāradvājaḥ | 8 |
- KAZ08.3.09/ "sat.puruṣa.ācāraḥ kopo vaira.yātanam avajñā.vadho bhīta.manuṣyatā ca | 9 |
- KAZ08.3.10/ nityaś ca kopena sambandhaḥ pāpa.pratiṣedha.arthaḥ | 10 |
- KAZ08.3.11/ kāmaḥ siddhi.lābhaḥ sāntvaṁ tyāga.śīlatā sampriya.bhāvaś ca | 11 |
- KAZ08.3.12/ nityaś ca kāmēna sambandhaḥ kṛta.karmaṇaḥ phala.upabhoga.arthaḥ" iti | 12 |
- KAZ08.3.13/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 13 |
- KAZ08.3.14/ dveṣyatā śatru.vedanaṁ duḥkha.āsaṅgaś ca kopaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ08.3.15/ paribhavo dravya.nāśaḥ pāṭaccara.dyūtakāra.lubdhaka.gāyana.vādakaiś ca-anarthyaiḥ samyogaḥ kāmaḥ | 15 |
- KAZ08.3.16/ tayoḥ paribhavād dveṣyatā garīyasī | 16 |
- KAZ08.3.17/ paribhūtaḥ svaiḥ paraiś ca-avagṛhyate, dveṣyaḥ samucchidyata iti | 17 |
- KAZ08.3.18/ dravya.nāśāt-śatru.vedanaṁ garīyaḥ | 18 |
- KAZ08.3.19/ dravya.nāśaḥ kośa.ābādhakaḥ, śatru.vedanaṁ prāṇa.ābādhakam iti | 19 |
- KAZ08.3.20/ anarthyā.samyogād duḥkha.samyogo garīyān | 20 |
- KAZ08.3.21/ anarthyā.samyogo muhūrta.pratīkāro, dīrgha.kleśa.karo duḥkhanām āsaṅga iti | 21 |
- KAZ08.3.22/ tasmāt kopo garīyān | 22 |
- KAZ08.3.23/ vāk.pāruṣyam artha.dūṣaṇaṁ daṇḍa.pāruṣyam iti | 23 |
- KAZ08.3.24/ "vāk.pāruṣya.artha.dūṣaṇayor vāk.pāruṣyaṁ garīyaḥ" iti viśāla.akṣaḥ | 24 |
- KAZ08.3.25/ "paruṣa.mukto hi tejasvī tejaśā pratyārohati | 25 |
- KAZ08.3.26/ durukta.śalyaṁ hṛdi nikhātaṁ tejaḥ.sandīpanam indriya.upatāpi ca" iti | 26 |
- KAZ08.3.27/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 27 |
- KAZ08.3.28/ artha.pūjā vāk.śalyam apahanti, vṛtti.vilopas tv artha.dūṣaṇam | 28 |
- KAZ08.3.29/ adānam ādānaṁ vināśaḥ parityāgo vā-arthasya-ity artha.dūṣaṇam | 29 |
- KAZ08.3.30/ "artha.dūṣaṇa.daṇḍa.pāruṣyayor artha.dūṣaṇaṁ garīyaḥ" iti pārāśaraḥ | 30 |
- KAZ08.3.31/ "artha.mūlau dharma.kāmau | 31 |
- KAZ08.3.32/ artha.pratibaddhaś ca loko vartate | 32 |
- KAZ08.3.33/ tasya.upaghāto garīyān" iti | 33 |
- KAZ08.3.34/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 34 |
- KAZ08.3.35/ sumahatā-apy arthēna na kaścana śarīra.vināśam icchet | 35 |
- KAZ08.3.36/ daṇḍa.pāruṣyāc ca tam eva doṣam anyebhyaḥ prāpnoti | 36 |
- KAZ08.3.37/ iti kopajas tri.vargaḥ | 37 |
- KAZ08.3.38/ kāmajas tu mṛgayā dyūtaṁ striyaḥ pānam iti catur.vargaḥ | 38 |
- KAZ08.3.39/ tasya "mṛgayā.dyūtayor mṛgayā garīyasī" iti piśunaḥ | 39 |
- KAZ08.3.40/ "stena.amitra.vyāla.dāva.praskhalana.bhaya.din.mohāḥ kṣut.pipāse ca prāṇa.ābādhā tasyām | 40 |
- KAZ08.3.41/ dyūte tu jitam eva-akṣa.viduṣā yathā jayat.sena.duryodhanābhyām" iti | 41 |
- KAZ08.3.42/ na-ity kauṭilyaḥ | 42 |
- KAZ08.3.43/ tayoḥ apy anyatara.parājayo 'sti-iti nala.yudhiṣṭhirābhyām vyākhyātam | 43 |
- KAZ08.3.44/ tad eva vijita.dravyam āmiśaṁ vaira.anubandhaś ca | 44 |
- KAZ08.3.45/ sato 'rthasya vipratipattir asataś ca-arjanam apratibhukta.nāśo mūtra.purīṣa.dhāraṇa.bubhukṣā.ādibhiś ca vyādhi.lābha iti dyūta.doṣāḥ | 45 |
- KAZ08.3.46/ mṛgayāyām tu vyāyāmaḥ śleṣma.pitta.medāḥ.sveda.nāśaś cale sthite ca kāye lakṣa.paricayaḥ kopa.bhaya.sthāneṣu ca mṛgānām citta.jñānam anitya.yānaṁ ca-iti | 46 |
- KAZ08.3.47/ "dyūta.strī.vyasanayoḥ kaitava.vyasanam" iti kauṇapadantaḥ | 47 |
- KAZ08.3.48/ "sātatyena hi niśi pradīpe mātari ca mṛtāyām dīvyaty eva kitavaḥ | 48 |

- KAZ08.3.49/ kṛcchre ca pratipṛṣṭaḥ kupyati | 49 |
 KAZ08.3.50/ strī.vyasane tu snāna.pratikarma.bhojana.bhūmiṣu bhavaty eva
 dharma.artha.paripraśnaḥ | 50 |
 KAZ08.3.51/ śakyā ca strī rājahite.niyoktum, upāṁśu.daṇḍena vyādhinā vā vyāvartayitum
 avasrāvayitum vā" iti | 51 |
 KAZ08.3.52/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 52 |
 KAZ08.3.53/ sapratyādeyaṁ dyūtaṁ niṣpratyādeyaṁ strī.vyasanam | 53 |
 KAZ08.3.54/ adarśanaṁ kārya.nirvedaḥ kāla.atipātanād anartho dharma.lopaś ca
 tantra.daurbalyaṁ pāna.anubandhaś ca-iti | 54 |
 KAZ08.3.55/ "strī.pāna.vyasanayoḥ strī.vyasanam" iti vātavyādhiḥ | 55 |
 KAZ08.3.56/ "strīṣu hi bālīśyam aneka.vidhaṁ niśānta.praṇidhau vyākhyātam | 56 |
 KAZ08.3.57/ pāne tu śabda.ādīnām indriya.arthānām upabhogaḥ prīti.dānaṁ
 parijana.pūjanaṁ karma.śrama.vadhaś ca" iti | 57 |
 KAZ08.3.58/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 58 |
 KAZ08.3.59/ strī.vyasane bhavaty apatya.utpattir ātma.rakṣaṇam ca-antar.dāreṣu, viparyayo
 vā bāhyeṣu, agameṣu sarva.ucchittiḥ | 59 |
 KAZ08.3.60/ tad ubhayaṁ pāna.vyasane | 60 |
 KAZ08.3.61/ pāna.sampat - sañjñā.nāśo 'nunmattasya-unmattatvam apretasya pretatvam
 kaupīna.darśanaṁ śruta.prajñā.prāṇa.vitta.mitra.hāniḥ sadbhīr viyogo 'narthya.samyogas
 tantrī.gīta.naipuṇyeṣu ca-arthaghneṣu prasaṅga iti | 61 |
 KAZ08.3.62/ dyūta.madyayor dyūtam | 62 |
 KAZ08.3.63/ ekeṣāṁ paṇa.nimitto jayaḥ parājayo vā prāṇiṣu niścetaneṣu vā pakṣa.dvaidhena
 prakṛti.kopaṁ karoti | 63 |
 KAZ08.3.64/ viśeṣataś ca saṅghānām saṅgha.dharminām ca rāja.kulānām dyūta.nimitto
 bhedas tan.nimitto vināśa ity asat.pragrahaḥ pāpiṣṭhatamo vyasanānām tantra.daurbalyād iti
 | 64 |
 KAZ08.3.65ab/ asatām pragrahaḥ kāmāḥ kopaś ca-avagrahaḥ satām |
 KAZ08.3.65cd/ vyasanam doṣa.bāhulyād atyantam ubhayaṁ matam || 65 ||
 KAZ08.3.66ab/ tasmāt kopaṁ ca kāmāṁ ca vyasana.ārambham ātmavān |
 KAZ08.3.66cd/ parityajen mūla.haram vṛddha.sevī jita.indriyaḥ || 66 ||

8.4 Chapter 4 (Sections 130; 131; 132): Afflictions; Hindrances; Stoppages of Payment to the Treasury

208

- KAZ08.4.01/ daiva.pīḍanaṁ - agnir udakaṁ vyādhir durbhikṣaṁ maraka iti | 1 |
 KAZ08.4.02/ "agny.udakayor agni.pīḍanam apratikāryaṁ sarva.dāhi ca, śakya.apagamanaṁ
 tārya.ābādham udaka.pīḍanam" ity ācāryāḥ | 2 |
 KAZ08.4.03/ na-it kauṭilyaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ08.4.04/ agnir grāmam ardha.grāmam vā dahati, udaka.vegā tu grāma.śata.pravāhī-iti |
 4 |
 KAZ08.4.05/ "vyādhi.durbhikṣayor vyādhiḥ
 preta.vyādhita.upasṛṣṭa.paricāraka.vyāyāma.uparodhena karmāṇy upahanti, durbhikṣaṁ
 punar akarma.upaghāti hiraṇya.paśu.kara.dāyī ca" ity ācāryāḥ | 5 |
 KAZ08.4.06/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ08.4.07/ eka.deśa.pīḍano vyādhiḥ śakya.pratikāraś ca, sarva.deśa.pīḍanaṁ durbhikṣaṁ
 prāṇinām ajīvanāya-iti | 7 |
 KAZ08.4.08/ tena marako vyākhyātaḥ | 8 |

²⁰⁸[K tr. 459 :: K2 tr. 397

- KAZ08.4.09/ "kṣudraka.mukhya.kṣayaḥ kṣudraka.kṣayaḥ karmaṇām ayoga.kṣemaṁ karoti, mukhya.kṣayaḥ karma.anuṣṭhāna.uparodha.dharmā" ity ācāryāḥ | 9 |
- KAZ08.4.10/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 10 |
- KAZ08.4.11/ śakyaḥ kṣudraka.kṣayaḥ pratisandhātum bāhulyāt kṣudrakāṇām, na mukhya.kṣayaḥ | 11 |
- KAZ08.4.12/ sahasreṣu hi mukhyo bhavaty eko na vā sattva.prajñā.ādhiḥyāt tad.āśrayatvāt kṣudrakāṇām iti | 12 |
- KAZ08.4.13/ "sva.cakra.para.cakrayoḥ sva.cakram atimātrābhyām daṇḍa.karābhyām pīḍayaty aśakyam ca vārayitum, para.cakram tu śakyam praiyoddhum upasāreṇa sandhinā vā mokṣayitum" ity ācāryāḥ | 13 |
- KAZ08.4.14/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ08.4.15/ sva.cakra.pīḍanam prakṛti.puruṣa.mukhya.upagraha.vighātābhyām śakyate vārayitum eka.deśam vā pīḍayati, sarva.deśa.pīḍanam tu para.cakram vilopa.ghāta.dāha.vidhvamsana.apavāhanaiḥ pīḍayati-iti | 15 |
- KAZ08.4.16/ "prakṛti.rāja.vivādayoḥ prakṛti.vivādaḥ prakṛtīnām bhedakaḥ para.abhiyogān āvahati, rāja.vivādas tu prakṛtīnām dvi.guṇa.bhakta.vetana.parihāra.karo bhavati" ity ācāryāḥ | 16 |
- KAZ08.4.17/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 17 |
- KAZ08.4.18/ śakyaḥ prakṛti.vivādaḥ prakṛti.mukhya.upagraheṇa kalaha.sthāna.apanayanena vā vārayitum | 18 |
- KAZ08.4.19/ vivadamānās tu prakṛtayaḥ paraspara.saṅgharṣeṇa-upakurvanti | 19 |
- KAZ08.4.20/ rāja.vivādas tu pīḍana.ucchedanāya prakṛtīnām dvi.guṇa.vyāyāma.sādhyā iti | 20 |
- KAZ08.4.21/ "deśa.rāja.vihārayor deśa.vihāras traikālyena karma.phala.upaghātam karoti, rāja.vihāras tu kāru.śilpi.kuśīlava.vāg.jīvana.rūpa.ājīvā.vaidehaka.upakāram karoti" ity ācāryāḥ | 21 |
- KAZ08.4.22/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ08.4.23/ deśa.vihāraḥ karma.śramam avadhā.artham alpaṁ bhakṣayati bhakṣayitvā ca bhūyaḥ karmasu yogaṁ gacchati, rāja.vihāras tu svayaṁ vallabhais ca svayaṁ.grāha.praṇaya.paṇya.agāra.kārya.upagrahaiḥ pīḍayati-iti | 23 |
- KAZ08.4.24/ "subhagā.kumārayoḥ kumāraḥ svayaṁ vallabhais ca svayaṁ.grāha.praṇaya.paṇya.agāra.kārya.upagrahaiḥ pīḍayati, subhagā vilāsa.upabhogena" ity ācāryāḥ | 24 |
- KAZ08.4.25/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 25 |
- KAZ08.4.26/ śakyaḥ kumāro mantri.purohitābhyām vārayitum, na subhagā bālīśyād anartha.jana.samyogāc ca-iti | 26 |
- KAZ08.4.27/ "śreṇī.mukhyayoḥ śreṇī bāhulyād anavagrahā steya.sāhasābhyām pīḍayati, mukhyaḥ kārya.anugraha.vighātābhyām" ity ācāryāḥ | 27 |
- KAZ08.4.28/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 28 |
- KAZ08.4.29/ suvyāvartyā śreṇī samāna.śīla.vyasanatvāt, śreṇī.mukhya.eka.deśa.upagraheṇa vā | 29 |
- KAZ08.4.30/ stambha.yukto mukhyaḥ para.praṇa.dravya.upaghātābhyām pīḍayati-iti | 30 |
- KAZ08.4.31/ "samnidhātṛ.samāhartroḥ samnidhātā kṛta.vidūṣaṇa.atyayābhyām pīḍayati, samāhartā karaṇa.adhiṣṭhitaḥ pradiṣṭa.phala.upabhogī bhavati" ity ācāryāḥ | 31 |
- KAZ08.4.32/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ08.4.33/ samnidhātā kṛta.avastham anyaiḥ kośa.praveśyam pratigṛhṇāti, samāhartā tu pūrvam artham ātmanaḥ kṛtvā paścād rāja.artham karoti praṇāśayati vā, para.sva.ādāne ca sva.pratyayaś carati-iti | 33 |

- KAZ08.4.34/ "anta.pāla.vaidehakayor anta.pālaś cora.prasarga.deya.atyādānābhyām
vaṇik.patham pīdayati, vaidehakās tu paṇya..pratipaṇya.anugrahaiḥ prasādhayanti" ity
ācāryāḥ | 34 |
- KAZ08.4.35/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 35 |
- KAZ08.4.36/ anta.pālaḥ paṇya.sampāta.anugraheṇa vartayati, vaidehakās tu sambhūya
paṇyānām utkarṣa.apakarṣam kurvāṇāḥ paṇe paṇa.śataṁ kumbhe kumbha.śataṁ ity ājīvanti
| 36 |
- KAZ08.4.37/ abhijāta.uparuddhā bhūmiḥ paśu.vraja.uparuddhā vā-iti "abhijāta.uparuddhā
bhūmiḥ mahā.phalā-apy āyudhīya.upakāriṇī na kṣamā mokṣayitum vyasana.ābādha.bhayāt,
paśu.vraja.uparuddhā tu kṛṣi.yogyā kṣamā mokṣayitum | 37 |
- KAZ08.4.38/ vivītaṁ hi kṣetreṇa bādhyate" ity ācāryāḥ | 38 |
- KAZ08.4.39/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 39 |
- KAZ08.4.40/ abhijāta.uparuddhā bhūmir atyanta.mahā.upakārā-api kṣamā mokṣayitum
vyasana.ābādha.bhayāt, paśu.vraja.uparuddhā tu kośa.vāhana.upakāriṇī na kṣamā
mokṣayitum, anyatra sasya.vāpa.uparodhād iti | 40 |
- KAZ08.4.41/ "pratirodhaka.āṭavikayoḥ pratirodhakā rātri.sattra.carāḥ śarīra.ākramaṇo
nityāḥ śata.sahasra.ahapāriṇaḥ pradhāna.kopakās ca vyavahitāḥ pratyantara.aranya.carās
ca-āṭavikāḥ prakāśā dṛṣyās caranti, eka.deśa.ghātakās ca" ity ācāryāḥ | 41 |
- KAZ08.4.42/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 42 |
- KAZ08.4.43/ pratirodhakāḥ pramattasya-aparahanti, alpāḥ kuṇṭhāḥ sukhā jñātum grahītum
ca, sva.deśasthāḥ prabhūtā vikrāntās ca-āṭavikāḥ prakāśa.yodino 'pahartāro hantāraś ca
deśānām rāja.sadharmāṇa iti | 43 |
- KAZ08.4.44/ mṛga.hasti.vanayoḥ mṛgāḥ prabhūtāḥ prabhūta.māmsa.carma.upakāriṇo
manda.grāsa.avakleśinaḥ suniyamyās ca | 44 |
- KAZ08.4.45/ viparītā hastino gr̥hyamāṇā duṣṭās ca deśa.vināśāya-iti | 45 |
- KAZ08.4.46/ sva.para.sthānīya.upakārayoḥ sva.sthānīya.upakāro
dhānya.paśu.hiraṇya.kupya.upakāro jānapadānām āpady ātma.dhāraṇaḥ | 46 |
- KAZ08.4.47/ viparītaḥ para.sthānīya.upakāraḥ | 47 |
- KAZ08.4.48/ iti pīḍanāni - ābhyantaro mukhya.stambho bāhyo mitra.āṭavī.stambhaḥ | 48 |
iti stambha.vargah |
- KAZ08.4.49/ tābhyām pīḍanair yathā.uktaiś ca pīḍitaḥ, sakto mukhyeṣu, parihāra.upahataḥ,
prakīrṇo, mithyā.samhṛtaḥ, sāmanta.āṭavī.hṛta iti kośa.saṅga.vargaḥ | 49 |
- KAZ08.4.50ab/ pīḍanānām anutpattāv utpannānām ca vāraṇe |
- KAZ08.4.50cd/ yateta deśa.vṛddhy.arthaṁ nāśe ca stambha.saṅgayoḥ || 50 ||

8.5 Chapter 5 (Sections 133; 134): Calamities of the Army; Calamities of the Ally

209

- KAZ08.5.01/ bala.vyasanāni - amānitam, vimānitam, abhṛtam, vyādhitam, nava.āgatam,
dūra.āyātam, pariśrāntam, parikṣiṇam, pratihatam, hata.agra.vegāṁ, anṛtu.prāptam,
abhūmi.prāptam, āśā.nirvedi, pariśrptam, kalatra.garbhi, antaḥ.śalyam, kupita.mūlam,
bhinna.garbham, apasṛtam, atikṣiptam, upaniviṣṭam, samāptam, uparuddham, parikṣiptam,
chinna.dhānya.puruṣa.vivādham, sva.vikṣiptam, mitra.vikṣiptam, dūṣya.yuktam,
duṣṭa.pārṣṇi.grāham, śūnya.mūlam, asvāmi.samhatam, bhinna.kūṭam, andham iti | 1 |
- KAZ08.5.02/ teṣām amānita.vimānita.aniyatayor amānitaṁ kṛta.artha.mānam yudhyeta, na
vimānitam antaḥ.kopam | 2 |

²⁰⁹[K tr. 464 :: K2 tr. 401

- KAZ08.5.03/ abhṛta.vyādhitayor abhṛtaṁ tadātva.kṛta.vetanaṁ yudhyeta, na vyādhitam akarmaṇyam | 3 |
- KAZ08.5.04/ nava.āgata.dūra.āyātayor nava.āgatam anyata upalabdha.deśam anava.miśraṁ yudhyeta, na dūra.āyatam āyata.gata.parikleśam | 4 |
- KAZ08.5.05/ pariśrānta.parikṣiṇayoḥ pariśrāntaṁ snāna.bhojana.swapna.labdha.viśrāmaṁ yudhyeta, na parikṣiṇam anyatra-āhave kṣiṇayugya.puruṣam | 5 |
- KAZ08.5.06/ pratihata.hata.agra.vegayoḥ pratihatam agra.pāta.bhagnaṁ pravīra.puruṣa.samhataṁ yudhyeta, na hata.agra.vegam agra.pāta.hata.vīram | 6 |
- KAZ08.5.07/ anṛtv.abhūmi.prāptayor anṛtu.prāptaṁ yatha.rtu.yugya.śastra.āvaraṇaṁ yudhyeta, na-abhūmi.prāptam avaruddha.prasāra.vyāyāmam | 7 |
- KAZ08.5.08/ āśā.nirvedi.parisṛptayor āśā.nirvedi labdha.abhiprāyaṁ yudhyeta, na parisṛptam apasṛta.mukhyam | 8 |
- KAZ08.5.09/ kalatra.garbhy.antaḥ.śalyayoḥ kalatra.garbhi unmucya kalatraṁ yudhyeta, na-antaḥ.śalyam antara.mitram | 9 |
- KAZ08.5.10/ kupita.mūla.bhinna.garbhayoḥ kupita.mūlaṁ praśamita.kopaṁ sāma.ādibhir yudhyeta, na bhinna.garbham anyonyasmād bhinnam | 10 |
- KAZ08.5.11/ apasṛta.atikṣiptayor apasṛtam eka.rājya.atikrāntaṁ mantra.vyāyāmābhyāṁ sattra.mitra.apāśrayaṁ yudhyeta, na-atikṣiptam aneka.rājya.atikrāntaṁ bahv.ābādhatvāt | 11 |
- KAZ08.5.12/ upaniviṣṭa.samāptayor upaniviṣṭaṁ pṛthag.yāna.sthānam atisandhāya-arim yudhyeta, na samāptam ariṇā-eka.sthāna.yānam | 12 |
- KAZ08.5.13/ uparuddha.parikṣiptayor uparuddham anyato niṣkramya-uparoddhāraṁ pratiyudhyeta, na parikṣiptaṁ sarvataḥ pratiruddham | 13 |
- KAZ08.5.14/ chinna.dhānya.puruṣa.vivadhayoḥ chinna.dhānyam anyato dhānyam ānīya jaigama.sthāvara.āhāraṁ vā yudhyeta, na chinna.puruṣa.vivadham anabhisāram | 14 |
- KAZ08.5.15/ sva.vikṣipta.mitra.vikṣiptayoḥ sva.vikṣiptaṁ sva.bhūmau vikṣiptaṁ sainyam āpadi śakyam āvāhayitum, na mitra.vikṣiptaṁ viprakṛṣṭa.deśa.kālatvāt | 15 |
- KAZ08.5.16/ dūṣya.yukta.duṣṭa.pārṣṇi.grāhayor dūṣya.yuktam āpta.puruṣa.adhiṣṭhitam asaṁhataṁ yudhyeta, na duṣṭa.pārṣṇi.grāhaṁ pṛṣṭha.abhighāta.trastam | 16 |
- KAZ08.5.17/ śūnya.mūla.asvāmi.samhatayoḥ śūnya.mūlaṁ kṛta.paura.jānapada.āraḥsam sarva.sandohena yudhyeta, na-asvāmi.samhataṁ rāja.senā.pati.hīnam | 17 |
- KAZ08.5.18/ bhinna.kūṭa.andhayor bhinna.kūṭam anya.adhiṣṭhitaṁ yudhyeta, na-andham adeśikaṁ | iti | 18 |
- KAZ08.5.19ab/ doṣa.śuddhir bala.āvāpaḥ sattra.sthāna.atisaṁhitam |
- KAZ08.5.19cd/ sandhiś ca-uttara.paśasya bala.vyasana.sāadhanam || 19 ||
- KAZ08.5.20ab/ rakṣet sva.daṇḍaṁ vyasane śatrubhyo nityam utthitaḥ |
- KAZ08.5.20cd/ prahared daṇḍa.randhreṣu śatrūṇāṁ nityam utthitaḥ || 20 ||
- KAZ08.5.21ab/ yato nimittaṁ vyasanaṁ prakṛtīnām avāpnuyāt |
- KAZ08.5.21cd/ prāḡ eva pratikurvīta tan nimittam atandritaḥ || 21 ||
- KAZ08.5.22ab/ abhiyātaṁ svayaṁ mitraṁ sambhūya-anyavaśena vā |
- KAZ08.5.22cd/ parityaktam aśaktyā vā lobhena praṇayena vā || 22 ||
- KAZ08.5.23ab/ vikṛitam abhiyuñjāne saṅgrāme vā-apavartinā |
- KAZ08.5.23cd/ dvaidhī.bhāvena vā-amitraṁ yāsyatā vā-anyam anyataḥ || 23 ||
- KAZ08.5.24ab/ pṛthag vā saha.yāne vā viśvāsena-atisaṁhitam |
- KAZ08.5.24cd/ bhaya.avamāna.ālasyair vā vyasanān na pramokṣitam || 24 ||
- KAZ08.5.25ab/ avaruddhaṁ sva.bhūmibhyaḥ samīpād vā bhayād gatam |
- KAZ08.5.25cd/ ācchedanād adānād vā dattvā vā-apy avamānitam || 25 ||
- KAZ08.5.26ab/ atyāhāritam arthaṁ vā svayaṁ para.mukhena vā |
- KAZ08.5.26cd/ atibhāre niyuktaṁ vā bhaṅktvā param upasthitam || 26 ||

KAZ08.5.27ab/ upekṣitam aśaktyā vā prārthayitvā virodhitam |
 KAZ08.5.27cd/ kṛcchreṇa sādhyate mitram siddham ca-āsu virajyati || 27 ||
 KAZ08.5.28ab/ kṛta.prayāsaṁ mānyaṁ vā mohān mitram amānitam |
 KAZ08.5.28cd/ mānitam vā na sadṛśaṁ śaktito vā nivāritam || 28 ||
 KAZ08.5.29ab/ mitra.upaghāta.trastaṁ vā śaṅkitam vā-ari.samhitāt |
 KAZ08.5.29cd/ dūṣyair vā bheditum mitram sādhyam siddham ca tiṣṭhati || 29 ||
 KAZ08.5.30ab/ tasmān na-utpādayed enān doṣān mitra.upaghātakān |
 KAZ08.5.30cd/ utpannān vā praśamayed guṇair doṣa.upaghātibhiḥ || 30 ||

9 Book 9: The Activity of the King About to March

210

9.1 Chapter 1 (Sections 135; 136): Relative Strength of Powers, Place and Time; Seasons for Marching on an Expedition

211

KAZ09.1.01/ vijigīṣur ātmanaḥ parasya ca bala.abalaṁ
 śakti.deśa.kāla.yātrā.kāla.bala.samuddāna.kāla.paścāt.kopa.- kṣaya.vyaya.lābha.āpadān
 jñātvā viśiṣṭa.balo yāyāt, anyathā-āsita | 1 |
 KAZ09.1.02/ "utsāha.prabhāvayor utsāhaḥ śreyān | 2 |
 KAZ09.1.03/ svayaṁ hi rājā śūro balavān arogaḥ kṛta.astro daṇḍa.dvitiyo 'pi śaktaḥ
 prabhāvavantaṁ rājānaṁ jetum | 3 |
 KAZ09.1.04/ alpo 'pi ca-asya daṇḍas tejasā kṛtya.karo bhavati | 4 |
 KAZ09.1.05/ nirutsāhas tu prabhāvavān rājā vikrama.abhipanno naśyati" ity ācāryaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ09.1.06/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ09.1.07/ prabhāvavān utsāhavantaṁ rājānaṁ prabhāvena-atisandhatte tad.viśiṣṭam
 anyam rājānam āvāhya bhṛtvā krītvā pravīra.puruṣān | 7 |
 KAZ09.1.08/ prabhūta.prabhāva.haya.hasti.ratha.upakaraṇa.sampannaś ca-asya daṇḍaḥ
 sarvatra-apratihataś carati | 8 |
 KAZ09.1.09/ utsāhavataś ca prabhāvavanto jitvā krītvā ca striyo bālāḥ paṅgavo 'ndhāś ca
 pṛthivīm jigyur iti | 9 |
 KAZ09.1.10/ "prabhāva.mantrayoḥ prabhāvaḥ śreyān | 10 |
 KAZ09.1.11/ mantra.śakti.sampanno hi vandhya.buddhir aprabhāvo bhavati | 11 |
 KAZ09.1.12/ mantra.karma ca-asya niścitam aprabhāvo garbha.dhānyam avṛṣṭir
 iva-upahanti" ity ācāryaḥ | 12 |
 KAZ09.1.13/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 13 |
 KAZ09.1.14/ mantra.śaktiḥ śreyasī | 14 |
 KAZ09.1.15/ prajñā.śāstra.cakṣur hi rājā-alpena-api prayatnena mantram ādhātum śaktaḥ
 parān utsāha.prabhāvavataś ca sāma.ādibhir yoga.upaniṣadbhyaṁ ca-atisandhātum | 15 |
 KAZ09.1.16/ evam utsāha.prabhāva.mantra.śaktinām uttara.uttara.adhiko 'tisandhatte | 16 |
 KAZ09.1.17/ deśaḥ pṛthivī | 17 |
 KAZ09.1.18/ tasyām himavat.samudra.antaram udīcīnaṁ yojana.sahasra.pari māṇaṁ tiryak
 cakra.varti.kṣetram | 18 |
 KAZ09.1.19/ tatra-araṇyo grāmyaḥ parvata audako bhaumaḥ samo viṣama iti viśeṣaḥ | 19 |
 KAZ09.1.20/ teṣu yathā.sva.bala.vṛddhi.karam karma prayujjita | 20 |
 KAZ09.1.21/ yatra.ātmanaḥ sainya.vyāyāmānām bhūmiḥ, abhūmiḥ parasya, sa uttamo
 deśaḥ, viparīto 'dhamāḥ, sādharmaṇo madhyamaḥ | 21 |

²¹⁰[K tr. 470–500 :: K2 tr. 406–432

²¹¹[K tr. 470 :: K2 tr. 406

- KAZ09.1.22/ kālāḥ śīta.uṣṇa.varṣa.ātmā | 22 |
- KAZ09.1.23/ tasya rātrir ahaḥ pakṣo māsa ṛtur ayanam samvatsaro yugam iti viśeṣāḥ | 23 |
- KAZ09.1.24/ teṣu yathā.sva.bala.vṛddhi.karam karma.prayuñjīta | 24 |
- KAZ09.1.25/ yatra.ātmanaḥ sainya.vyāyāmānām ṛtuḥ anṛtuḥ parasya, sa uttamaḥ kālāḥ, viparīto 'dhamāḥ, sādharmaṇo madhyamaḥ | 25 |
- KAZ09.1.26/ "śakti.deśa.kālānām tu śaktiḥ śreyasī" ity ācāryāḥ | 26 |
- KAZ09.1.27/ śaktimān hi nimna.sthalavato deśasya śīta.uṣṇa.varṣavataś ca kālasya śaktaḥ pratikāre bhavati | 27 |
- KAZ09.1.28/ "deśaḥ śreyān" ity eke | 28 |
- KAZ09.1.29/ "sthala.gato hi śvā nakram vikarṣati, nimna.gato nakraḥ śvānam" iti | 29 |
- KAZ09.1.30/ "kālāḥ śreyān" ity eke | 30 |
- KAZ09.1.31/ "divā kākaḥ kauśikam hanti, rātrau kauśikaḥ kākam" iti | 31 |
- KAZ09.1.32/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ09.1.33/ paraspara.sādhakā hi śakti.deśa.kālāḥ | 33 |
- KAZ09.1.34/ tair abhyuccitas tṛtīyam caturtham vā daṇḍasya-amśam mūle pārṣṇyām pratyanta.aṭavīṣu ca rakṣā vidhāya kārya.sādhana.saham kośa.daṇḍam ca-ādāya kṣīṇa.purāṇa.bhaktam agrhīta.nava.bhaktam asaṃskṛta.durgama.mitraṃ vārṣikam ca-asya sasyam haimanam ca muṣṭim upahantum mārṅasīrṣīm yātrām yāyāt | 34 |
- KAZ09.1.35/ haimānam ca-asya sasyam vāsantikam ca muṣṭim upahantum caitrīm yātrām yāyāt | 35 |
- KAZ09.1.36/ kṣīṇa.kṛṇa.kāṣṭha.udakam asaṃskṛta.durgama.mitraṃ vāsantikam ca-asya sasyam vārṣikim ca muṣṭim upahantum jyeṣṭhāmūliyam yātrām yāyāt | 36 |
- KAZ09.1.37/ atyuṣṇam alpa.yavasa.indhana.udakam vā deśam hemante yāyāt | 37 |
- KAZ09.1.38/ tuṣāra.durdinam agādha.nimna.prāyam gahana.tṛṇa.vṛkṣam vā deśam grīṣme yāyāt | 38 |
- KAZ09.1.39/ sva.sainya.vyāyāma.yogyaṃ parasya-ayogyaṃ varṣati yāyāt | 39 |
- KAZ09.1.40/ mārṅasīrṣīm taiṣīm ca-antareṇa dīrgha.kālām yātrām yāyāt, caitrīm vaiśākhīm ca-antareṇa madhyama.kālām, jyeṣṭhāmūliyam āṣāḍhīm ca-antareṇa hrasva.kālām, upoṣṭyan vyasane caturthīm | 40 |
- KAZ09.1.41/ vyasana.abhiyānam viṅṛhya.yāne vyākhyātam | 41 |
- KAZ09.1.42/ prāyaśaś ca-ācāryāḥ "para.vyasane yātavyam" ity upadiśanti | 42 |
- KAZ09.1.43/ śakty.udaye yātavyam anaikāntikatvād vyasanānām iti kauṭilyaḥ | 43 |
- KAZ09.1.44/ yadā vā prayātaḥ karṣayitum ucchetum vā śaknuyād amitram tadā yāyāt | 44 |
- KAZ09.1.45/ atyuṣṇa.upakṣiṇe kāle hasti.bala.prāyo yāyāt | 45 |
- KAZ09.1.46/ hastino hy antaḥ.svedāḥ kuṣṭhino bhavanti | 46 |
- KAZ09.1.47/ anavagāhamānās toyam apibantaś ca-antar.avakṣārāc ca-andhī.bhavanti | 47 |
- KAZ09.1.48/ tasmāt prabhūta.udake deśe varṣati ca hasti.bala.prāyo yāyāt | 48 |
- KAZ09.1.49/ viparyaye khara.uṣṭra.aśva.bala.prāyo deśam alpa.varṣa.paṅkam | 49 |
- KAZ09.1.50/ varṣati maru.prāyam catur.aṅga.balo yāyāt | 50 |
- KAZ09.1.51/ sama.viṣama.nimna.sthala.hrasva.dīrgha.vaśena vā-adhvano yātrām vibhajet | 51 |
- KAZ09.1.52ab/ sarvā vā hrasva.kālāḥ syur yātavyāḥ kārya.lāghavāt |
- KAZ09.1.52cd/ dīrghāḥ kārya.gurutvād vā varṣā.vāsaḥ paratra ca || 52 ||

9.2 Chapter 2 (Sections 137; 138; 139): Employment of Different Troops; Enquipping Troops for War; Employing Suitable Troops against Enemy Troops

212

- KAZ09.2.01/ maula.bhṛta.śreṇī.mitra.amitra.aṭavī.balānām samuddāna.kālāḥ | 1 |
- KAZ09.2.02/ mūla.rakṣaṇād atiriktam maula.balam, atyāvāpa.yuktā vā maulā mūle vikurvīran, bahula.anurakta.maula.balaḥ sāra.balo vā pratiyoddhā, vyāyāmena yoddhavyam, prakṛṣṭe 'dhvani kāle vā kṣaya.vyaya.sahatvān maulānām, bahula.anurakta.sampāte ca yātavyasya-upajāpa.bhayād anya.sainyānām bhṛta.ādīnām aviśvāse, bala.kṣaye vā sarva.sainyānām - iti maula.bala.kālāḥ | 2 |
- KAZ09.2.03/ "prabhūtam me bhṛta.balam alpaṁ ca maula.balamṇ" "parasya-alpaṁ viraktam vā maula.balam, phalgu.prāyam asāram vā bhṛta.sainyamṇ" "mantreṇa yoddhavyam alpa.vyāyāmenaṇ" "hrasvo deśaḥ kālo vā tanu.kṣaya.vyayahṇ" "alpa.āvāpaṁ śānta.upajāpaṁ viśvastaṁ vā me sainyamṇ" "parasya-alpaḥ prasāro hantavyahṇ" - iti bhṛta.bala.kālāḥ | 3 |
- KAZ09.2.04/ "prabhūtam me śreṇī.balam, śakyam mūle yātrāyām ca-ādhātumṇ" hrasvaḥ pravāsaḥ, śreṇī.bala.prāyaḥ pratiyoddhā mantra.vyāyāmābhyām pratiyoddhu.kāmaḥ, daṇḍa.bala.vyavahāraḥ - iti śreṇī.bala.kālāḥ | 4 |
- KAZ09.2.05/ "prabhūtam me mitra.balam śakyam mūle yātrāyām ca-ādhātumṇ" "alpaḥ pravāso mantra.yuddhāc ca bhūyo vyāyāma.yuddhamṇ" "mitra.balena vā pūrvam aṭavīm nagara.sthānam āsāram vā yodhayitvā paścāt sva.balena yoddhayiṣyāmiṇ" "mitra.sādhāraṇam vā me kāryamṇ" "mitra.āyattā vā me kārya.siddhiḥṇ" "āsannam anugrāhyam vā me mitramṇ" "atyāvāpaṁ vā-asya sādaiṣyāmi" - iti mitra.bala.kālāḥ | 5 |
- KAZ09.2.06/ "prabhūtam me śatru.balam, śatru.balena yodhayiṣyāmi nagara.sthānam aṭavīm vā, tatra me śva.varāhayoḥ kalahe caṇḍālasya-iva-anyatara.siddhir bhaviṣyatiṇ" "āsārānām aṭavīnām vā kaṇṭaka.mardanam etat kariṣyāmiṇ" - atyupacitam vā kopa.bhayān nityam āsannam ari.balam vāsayed, anyatra.abhyantara.kopa.śaṅkāyāḥ - śatru.yuddha.avara.yuddha.kālaś ca - ity amitra.bala.kālāḥ | 6 |
- KAZ09.2.07/ tena-aṭavī.bala.kālo vyākhyātaḥ | 7 |
- KAZ09.2.08/ mārga.ādeśikam, para.bhūmi.yogyam, ari.yuddha.pratilomam, aṭavī.bala.prāyaḥ śatrur vā, "bilvam bilvena hanyatāmṇ" alpaḥ prasāro hantavyaḥ - ity aṭavī.bala.kālāḥ | 8 |
- KAZ09.2.09/ sainyam anekam anekastham uktam anuktaṁ vā vilopa.artham yad uttiṣṭhati tad autsāhikam - abhakta.vetanam vilopa.viṣṭi.pratāpa.karam bhedyam pareṣām, abhedyam tulya.deśa.jāti.śilpa.prāyam saṁhataṁ mahat | 9 | iti bala.upādāna.kālāḥ
- KAZ09.2.10/ teṣām kupya.bhṛtam amitra.aṭavī.balam vilopa.bhṛtam vā kuryāt | 10 |
- KAZ09.2.11/ amitrasya vā bala.kāle pratyutpanne śatru.balam avagrṇṇīyāt, anyatra vā preṣayet, aphalam vā kuryāt, vikṣiptam vā vāsayet, kāle vā-atikrānte viṣṭet | 11 |
- KAZ09.2.12/ parasya ca-etad bala.samuddānam vighātayet, ātmanaḥ sampādayet | 12 |
- KAZ09.2.13/ pūrvam pūrvam ca-eṣām śreyaḥ samnāhayitum | 13 |
- KAZ09.2.14/ tad.bhāva.bhāvitvān nitya.satkāra.anugamāc ca maula.balam bhṛta.balāt-śreyaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ09.2.15/ nitya.anantaram kṣipra.utthāyi vāsyam vā bhṛta.balam śreṇī.balāt-śreyaḥ | 15 |
- KAZ09.2.16/ jānapadam eka.artha.upagatam tulya.saṅgharṣa.amarṣa.siddhi.lābham ca śreṇī.balam mitra.balāt-śreyaḥ | 16 |
- KAZ09.2.17/ aparimita.deśa.kālam eka.artha.upagamāc ca mitra.balam amitra.balāt-śreyaḥ | 17 |

²¹²[K tr. 474 :: K2 tr. 409

KAZ09.2.18/ ārya.adhiṣṭhitam amitra.balam aṭavī.balāt-śreyah | 18 |
 KAZ09.2.19/ tad ubhayaṁ vilopa.artham | 19 |
 KAZ09.2.20/ avilope vvasane ca tābhyāṁ ahi.bhayaṁ syāt | 20 |
 KAZ09.2.21/ "brāhmaṇa.kṣatriya.vaiśya.śūdra.sainyānām tejaḥ.prādhānyāt pūrvaṁ pūrvaṁ
 śreyah samnāhayitum" ity ācāryāḥ | 21 |
 KAZ09.2.22/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 22 |
 KAZ09.2.23/ praṇipātena brāhmaṇa.balam paro 'bhihārayet | 23 |
 KAZ09.2.24/ praharaṇa.vidyā.vinītaṁ tu kṣatriya.balam śreyah, bahula.sāraṁ vā
 vaiśya.śūdra.balam iti | 24 |
 KAZ09.2.25/ tasmād evaṁ.balaḥ paraḥ, tasya-etat pratibalam iti bala.samuddānaṁ kuryāt |
 25 |
 KAZ09.2.26/ hasti.yantra.śakaṭa.garbha.kunta.prāsa.hāṭaka.veṇu.sālyavad hasti.balasya
 pratibalam | 26 |
 KAZ09.2.27/ tad eva pāṣāṇa.laguḍa.āvaraṇa.aṅkuśa.kaca.grahaṇī.prāyaṁ ratha.balasya
 pratibalam | 27 |
 KAZ09.2.28/ tad eva-aśvānām pratibalam, varmiṇo vā hastino 'śvā vā varmiṇaḥ | 28 |
 KAZ09.2.29/ kavacino rathā āvaraṇaṇaḥ pattayaś ca catur.aṅga.balasya pratibalam | 29 |
 KAZ09.2.30ab/ evaṁ bala.samuddānaṁ para.sainya.nivāraṇam |
 KAZ09.2.30cd/ vibhavana.sva.sainyānām kuryād aṅga.vikalpaśaḥ || 30 ||

9.3 Chapter 3 (Sections 140; 141): Revolts in the Rear; Measures against Risings by Constituents

213

KAZ09.3.01/ alpaḥ paścāt.kopo mahān purastāl.lābha iti alpaḥ paścāt.kopo garīyān | 1 |
 KAZ09.3.02/ alpaṁ paścāt.kopaṁ prayātassya dūṣya.amitra.āṭavikā hi sarvataḥ
 samedhayanti, prakṛti.kopo vā | 2 |
 KAZ09.3.03/ labdham api ca mahāntaṁ purastāl.lāham evaṁ.bhūte
 bhṛtya.mitra.kṣaya.vyayā grasante | 3 |
 KAZ09.3.04/ tasmāt sahasra.ekīyaḥ purastāl.lābhasya-ayogaḥ śata.ekīyo vā paścāt.kopa iti na
 yāyāt | 4 |
 KAZ09.3.05/ sūcī.mukhā hy anarthā iti loka.pravādaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ09.3.06/ paścāt.kope sāma.dāna.bheda.daṇḍān prayuñjīta | 6 |
 KAZ09.3.07/ purastāl.lābhe senā.patim kumāraṁ vā daṇḍa.cāriṇaṁ kurvīta | 7 |
 KAZ09.3.08/ balavān vā rājā paścāt.kopa.avagraha.samarthaḥ purastāl.lābham ādātum yāyāt
 | 8 |
 KAZ09.3.09/ abhyantara.kopa.śaṅkāyām śaṅkitān ādāya yāyāt, bāhya.kopa.śaṅkāyām vā
 putra.dāram eṣām | 9 |
 KAZ09.3.10/ abhyantara.avagrahaṁ kṛtvā sūnya.pālam aneka.bala.vargam aneka.mukhyaṁ
 ca sthāpayitvā yāyāt, na vā yāyāt | 10 |
 KAZ09.3.11/ abhyantara.kopo bāhya.kopāt pāpīyān ity uktaṁ purastāt | 11 |
 KAZ09.3.12/ mantra.purohita.senā.pati.yuva.rājānām anyatama.kopo 'bhyantara.kopaḥ | 12
 |
 KAZ09.3.13/ tam ātma.doṣa.tyāgena para.śakty.aparādha.vaśena vā sādhayet | 13 |
 KAZ09.3.14/ mahā.aparādhe 'pi purohite samrodhanam avasrāvaṇaṁ vā siddhiḥ, yuva.rāje
 samrodhanam nigraho vā guṇavaty anyasmin sati putre | 14 |
 KAZ09.3.15/ putraṁ bhrātaram anyam vā kulyam rāja.grāhiṇam utsāhena sādhayet,
 utsāha.abbhāve grhīta.anuvartana.sandhi.karmabhyām ari.sandhāna.bhayāt | 15 |

²¹³[K tr. 478 :: K2 tr. 413

- KAZ09.3.16/ anyebhyas tad.vidhebhya vā bhūmi.dānair viśvāsayed enam | 16 |
- KAZ09.3.17/ tad.viśiṣṭaṁ svayaṁ.grāhaṁ daṇḍaṁ vā preṣayet, sāmanta.āṭavikān vā, tair
vigrhītaṁ atisandadhyāt | 17 |
- KAZ09.3.18/ aparuddha.ādānaṁ pāragrāmikaṁ vā yogam ātiṣṭhet | 18 |
- KAZ09.3.19/ etena mantra.senā.patī vyākhyātau | 19 |
- KAZ09.3.20/ mantry.ādi.varjānām antar.amātyānām anyatama.kopo 'ntar.amātya.kopaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ09.3.21/ tatra-api yathā.arham upāyān prayuñjīta | 21 |
- KAZ09.3.22/ rāṣṭra.mukhya.anta.pāla.āṭavika.daṇḍa.upanatānām anyatama.kopo
bāhya.kopaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ09.3.23/ tam anyonyena-avagrāhayet | 23 |
- KAZ09.3.24/ atidurga.pratiṣṭabdhāṁ vā sāmanta.āṭavika.tat.kulīna.aparuddhānām
anyatamena-avagrāhayet | 24 |
- KAZ09.3.25/ mitreṇa-upagrāhayet vā yathā na-amitraṁ gacchet | 25 |
- KAZ09.3.26/ amitrād vā sattrī bhedayed enaṁ - "ayaṁ tvā yoga.puruṣaṁ manyamāno
bhartary eva vikramayīṣyati, avāpta.artho daṇḍa.cāriṇaṁ amitra.āṭavikeṣu kṛcchre vā prayāse
yokṣyati, viputra.dāraṁ ante vā vāsayaṣyati | 26 |
- KAZ09.3.27/ pratihata.vikramaṁ tvāṁ bhartary paṇyaṁ kariṣyati, tvayā vā sandhiṁ kṛtvā
bhartāraṁ eva prasādayīṣyati | 27 |
- KAZ09.3.28/ mitraṁ upakṛṣṭaṁ vā-asya gaccha" iti | 28 |
- KAZ09.3.29/ pratipannam iṣṭa.abhiprāyair pūjayet | 29 |
- KAZ09.3.30/ apratipannasya saṁśrayaṁ bhedayed "asau te yoga.puruṣaḥ praṇihitaḥ" iti | 30 |
- KAZ09.3.31/ sattrī ca-enam abhityakta.śāsanair ghātayet, gūḍha.puruṣair vā | 31 |
- KAZ09.3.32/ saha.prasthāyino vā-asya pravīra.puruṣān yathā.abhiprāya.karaṇena-āvāhayet |
32 |
- KAZ09.3.33/ tena praṇihitān sattrī brūyāt | 33 |
- KAZ09.3.34/ iti siddhiḥ | 34 |
- KAZ09.3.35/ parasya ca-enān kopān utthāpayet, ātmanaś ca śamayet | 35 |
- KAZ09.3.36/ yaḥ kopāṁ kartuṁ śamayituṁ vā śaktas tatra-upajāpaḥ kāryaḥ | 36 |
- KAZ09.3.37/ yaḥ satya.sandhaḥ śaktaḥ karmaṇi phala.avāptau ca-anugrahītuṁ vinipāte ca
trātuṁ tatra pratijāpaḥ kāryaḥ, tarkayitavyaś ca kalyāṇa.buddhir uta-aho śaṭha iti | 37 |
- KAZ09.3.38/ śaṭho hi bāhyo 'bhyantaram evam upajapati - "bhartāraṁ cedd hatvā māṁ
pratipādayīṣyati śatru.vadho bhūmi.lābhaś ca me dvividho lābho bhaviṣyati, atha vā śatrur
enam āhaniṣyati-iti hata.bandhu.pakṣas tulya.doṣa.daṇḍena-udvignaś ca me bhūyān
akṛtya.pakṣo bhaviṣyati, tad.vidhe vā-anyasminn api śaṅkito bhaviṣyati, anyam anyam
ca-asya mukhyam abhityakta.śāsanena ghātayīṣyāmi" iti | 38 |
- KAZ09.3.39/ abhyantaro vā śaṭho bāhyam evam upajapati - "kośam asya hariṣyāmi, daṇḍaṁ
vā-asya haniṣyāmi, duṣṭaṁ vā bhartāraṁ anena ghātayīṣyāmi, pratipannaṁ bāhyam
amitra.āṭavikeṣu vikramayīṣyāmi "cakram asya sajayatām, vairam asya prasajyatām, tataḥ
sva.adhīno me bhaviṣyati, tato bhartāraṁ eva prasādayīṣyāmi, svayaṁ vā rājyaṁ
grahīṣyāmiḥ" baddhvā vā bāhya.bhūmiṁ bhartṛ.bhūmiṁ ca-ubhayam avāpsyāmi, viruddhaṁ
vā-āvāhayitvā bāhyaṁ viśvastaṁ ghātayīṣyāmi, śūnyaṁ vā-asya mūlaṁ hariṣyāmi" iti | 39 |
- KAZ09.3.40/ kalyāṇa.buddhis tu saha.jīvy artham upajapati | 40 |
- KAZ09.3.41/ kalyāṇa.buddhinā sandadhīta, śaṭhaṁ "tathā" iti pratigṛhya-atisandadhyāt | iti
| 41 |
- KAZ09.3.42ab/ evam upalabhya - pare parebhyaḥ sve svebhyaḥ sve parebhyaḥ svataḥ pare |
- KAZ09.3.42cd/ rakṣyāḥ svebhyaḥ parebhyaś ca nityam ātmā vipaścitā || 42 ||

9.4 Chapter 4 (Section 142): Considerations of Losses, Expenses and Gains

214

- KAZ09.4.01/ yugya.puruṣa.apacayaḥ kṣayaḥ | 1 |
 KAZ09.4.02/ hiraṇya.dhānya.apacayo vyayaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ09.4.03/ tābhyām bahu.guṇa.viśiṣṭe lābhe yāyāt | 3 |
 KAZ09.4.04/ ādeyaḥ pratyādeyaḥ prasādakaḥ prakopako hrasva.kālas tanu.kṣayo 'lpa.vyayo mahān vṛddhy.udayaḥ kalyo dharmyaḥ purogaś ca-iti lābha.sampat | 4 |
 KAZ09.4.05/ suprāpya.anupālyāḥ pareṣām apratyādeya ity ādeyaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ09.4.06/ viparyaye pratyādeyaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ09.4.07/ tam ādadānas tatrastho vā vināśam prāpnoti | 7 |
 KAZ09.4.08/ yadi vā paśyet "pratyādeyam ādāya kośa.daṇḍa.nicaya.rakṣā.vidhānāny avasrāvayiṣyāmi, khani.dravya.hasti.vana.setu.bandha.vaṇik.pathān uddhṛta.sārān kariṣyāmi, prakṛtīr asya karṣayiṣyāmi, apavāhayiṣyāmi, āyogena-ārādhayiṣyāmi vā, tāḥ param pratiyogena kopayiṣyati, pratipakṣe vā-asya paṇyam enaṁ kariṣyāmi, mitram aparuddhaṁ vā-asya pratipādayiṣyāmi, mitrasya svasya vā deśasya pīḍam atrasthas taskarebhyaḥ parebhyāś ca pratikariṣyāmi, mitram āśrayaṁ vā-asya vaiguṇyaṁ grāhayiṣyāmi, tad amitra.viraktaṁ tat.kulīnaṁ pratipatsyate, satkṛtya vā-asmai bhūmiṁ dāsyāmi iti saṁhita.samutthitaṁ mitraṁ me cirāya bhaviṣyati" iti pratyādeyam api lābham ādadīta | 8 |
 KAZ09.4.09/ ity ādeya.pratyādeyau vyākhyātau | 9 |
 KAZ09.4.10/ adhārmikād dhārmikasya lābho labhyamānaḥ sveṣām pareṣām ca prasādako bhavati | 10 |
 KAZ09.4.11/ viparītaḥ prakopaka iti | 11 |
 KAZ09.4.12/ mantriṇām upadeśāl lābho 'labhyamānaḥ kopako bhavati "ayam asmābhiḥ kṣaya.vyayau grāhitaḥ" iti | 12 |
 KAZ09.4.13/ dūṣya.mantriṇām anādarāl lābho labhyamānaḥ kopako bhavati "siddha.artho 'yam asmān vināśayiṣyati" iti | 13 |
 KAZ09.4.14/ viparītaḥ prasādakaḥ | 14 |
 KAZ09.4.15/ iti prasādaka.kopakau vyākhyātau | 15 |
 KAZ09.4.16/ gamana.mātra.sādhya tvād hrasva.kālah | 16 |
 KAZ09.4.17/ mantra.sādhya tvāt tanu.kṣayaḥ | 17 |
 KAZ09.4.18/ bhakta.mātra.vyaya tvād alpa.vyayaḥ
 KAZ09.4.19/ tadātva.vaipulyān mahān | 19 |
 KAZ09.4.20/ artha.anubandhakatvād vṛddhy.udayaḥ | 20 |
 KAZ09.4.21/ nirābādhakatvāt kalyaḥ | 21 |
 KAZ09.4.22/ praśasta.upādānād dharmyaḥ | 22 |
 KAZ09.4.23/ sāmavāyikānām anirbandha.gāmitvāt purogaḥ | iti | 23 |
 KAZ09.4.24/ tulye lābhe deśa.kālau śakty.upāyau priya.apriyau java.ajavau sāmīpya.viprakarṣau tadātva.anubandhau sārātva.sātatyē bāhulya.bāhu.guṇye ca vimṛśya bahu.guṇa.yuktaṁ lābham ādadīta | 24 |
 KAZ09.4.25/ lābha.vighnāḥ - kāmāḥ kopāḥ sādhasyaṁ kāruṇyaṁ hrīr anārya.bhāvo mānaḥ sānukrośatā para.loka.apekṣā dhārmikatvam atyāgitvam dainyam asūyā hasta.gata.avamāno daurātmyam aviśvāso bhayam apratīkāraḥ śīta.uṣṇa.varṣāṇām ākṣamyaṁ maṅgala.tithi.nakṣatra.iṣṭitvam iti | 25 |
 KAZ09.4.26ab/ nakṣatram ati pṛcchantam bālam artho 'tivartate |
 KAZ09.4.26cd/ artho hy arthasya nakṣatraṁ kiṁ kariṣyanti tārakāḥ || 26 ||
 KAZ09.4.27ab/ na-adhanāḥ prāpnuvanty arthān narā yatna.śatair api |

²¹⁴[K tr. 483 :: K2 tr. 417

KAZ09.4.27cd/ arthair arthā prabadhyante gajāḥ prajigajair iva || 27 ||

9.5 Chapter 5 (Section 143): Dangers from Officers

215

- KAZ09.5.01/ sandhy.ādīnām ayathā.uddeśa.avasthāpanam apanayaḥ | 1 |
 KAZ09.5.02/ tasmād āpadaḥ sambhavanti | 2 |
 KAZ09.5.03/ bāhya.utpattir abhyantara.pratijāpā, abhyantara.utpattir bāhya.pratijāpā,
 bāhya.utpattir bāhya.pratijāpā, abhyantara.utpattir abhyantara.pratijāpā - ity āpadaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ09.5.04/ yatra bāhyā abhyantara.anupajapanti, abhyantarā vā bāhyān, tatra.ubhaya.yoge
 pratijapataḥ siddhir viśeṣavatī | 4 |
 KAZ09.5.05/ suvyājā hi pratijapitāro bhavanti, na-upajapitāraḥ | 5 |
 KAZ09.5.06/ teṣu praśānteṣu na-anyān-śaknuyur upajapitum upajapitāraḥ | 6 |
 KAZ09.5.07/ kṛcchra.upajāpā hi bāhyānām abhyantarās teṣāṃ itare vā | 7 |
 KAZ09.5.08/ mahataś ca prayatnasya vadhaḥ pareṣām, artha.anubandhaś ca-ātmana iti | 8 |
 KAZ09.5.09/ abhyantareṣu pratijapatsu sāma.dāne prayuñjīta | 9 |
 KAZ09.5.10/ sthāna.māna.karma sāntvam | 10 |
 KAZ09.5.11/ anugraha.parihārau karmasv āyogo vā dānam | 11 |
 KAZ09.5.12/ bāhyeṣu pratijapatsu bheda.daṇḍau prayuñjīta | 12 |
 KAZ09.5.13/ sattriṇo mitra.vyañjanā vā bāhyānām cāram eṣām brūyuh "ayaṃ vo rājā
 dūṣya.vyañjanair atisandhātu.kāmaḥ, budhyadhvam" iti | 13 |
 KAZ09.5.14/ dūṣyeṣu vā dūṣya.vyañjanāḥ prañihitā dūṣyān bāhyair bhedayeyuh, bāhyān vā
 dūṣyaiḥ | 14 |
 KAZ09.5.15/ dūṣyān anupraviṣṭā vā tīkṣṇāḥ śāstra.rasābhyām hanyuh | 15 |
 KAZ09.5.16/ āhūya vā bāhyān ghātayeyuh | 16 |
 KAZ09.5.17/ yatra bāhyā bāhyān upajapanti, abhyantarān abhyantarā vā, tatra-ekānta.yoga
 upajapituh siddhir viśeṣavatī | 17 |
 KAZ09.5.18/ doṣa.śuddhau hi dūṣyā na vidyante | 18 |
 KAZ09.5.19/ dūṣya.śuddhau hi doṣaḥ punar anyān dūṣayati | 19 |
 KAZ09.5.20/ tasmād bāhyeṣu-upajapatsu bheda.daṇḍau prayuñjīta | 20 |
 KAZ09.5.21/ sattriṇo mitra.vyañjanā vā brūyuh "ayaṃ vo rājā svayam ādātu.kāmaḥ,
 vighrītāḥ sthānena rājñā, budhyadhvam" iti | 21 |
 KAZ09.5.22/ pratijapitur vā dūta.daṇḍān anupraviṣṭās tīkṣṇāḥ śāstra.rasa.ādibhir eṣām
 chidreṣu prahareyuh | 22 |
 KAZ09.5.23/ tataḥ sattriṇaḥ pratijapitāram abhiśaṃseyuh | 23 |
 KAZ09.5.24/ abhyantarān abhyantareṣu-upajapatsu yathā.arham upāyam prayuñjīta | 24 |
 KAZ09.5.25/ tuṣṭa.liṅgam atuṣṭam viparītam vā sāma prayuñjīta | 25 |
 KAZ09.5.26/ śauca.sāmarthya.apadeśena vyasana.abhyudaya.avekṣaṇena vā pratipūjanam iti
 dānam | 26 |
 KAZ09.5.27/ mitra.vyañjano vā brūyād etān "citta.jñāna.artham upadhāsyati vo rājā, tad
 asya-ākhyātavyam iti | 27 |
 KAZ09.5.28/ parasparād vā bhedayed enān "asau ca-asau ca vo rājany evam upajapati" | iti
 bhedaḥ | 28 |
 KAZ09.5.29/ dāṇḍakarmikavac ca daṇḍaḥ | 29 |
 KAZ09.5.30/ etāsām catasṛṇām āpadām abhyantarām eva pūrvām sādhayet | 30 |
 KAZ09.5.31/ ahi.bhayād abhyantara.kopo bāhya.kopāt pāpiyān ity uktaṃ purastād | 31 |
 KAZ09.5.32ab/ pūrvām pūrvām vijānīyāl laghvīm āpadam āpadām |
 KAZ09.5.32cd/ utthitām balavadbhyo vā gurvīm laghvīm viparyaye || 32 ||

²¹⁵[K tr. 486 :: K2 tr. 420

9.6 Chapter 6 (Section 144): Dangers from Traitors and Enemies

216

- KAZ09.6.01/ dūṣyebhyaḥ śatrubhyaś ca dvividhā śuddhā | 1 |
- KAZ09.6.02/ dūṣya.śuddhāyām paureṣu jānapadeṣu vā daṇḍa.varjān upāyān prayuñjīta | 2 |
- KAZ09.6.03/ daṇḍo hi mahā.jane kṣeptum aśakyaḥ | 3 |
- KAZ09.6.04/ kṣipto vā taṁ ca-arthaṁ na kuryāt, anyāṁ ca-anartham utpādayet | 4 |
- KAZ09.6.05/ mukhyeṣu tv eṣāṁ dāṇḍa.karmikavac ceṣṭeta | 5 |
- KAZ09.6.06/ śatru.śuddhāyām yataḥ śatruḥ pradhānaḥ kāryo vā tataḥ sāma.ādibhiḥ siddhiṁ lipseta | 6 |
- KAZ09.6.07/ svāmīny āyattā pradhāna.siddhiḥ, mantriṣv āyattā-āyatta.siddhiḥ, ubhaya.āyattā pradhāna.āyatta.siddhiḥ | 7 |
- KAZ09.6.08/ dūṣya.adūṣyāṇām āmiśritatvād āmiśrā | 8 |
- KAZ09.6.09/ āmiśrāyām adūṣyataḥ siddhiḥ | 9 |
- KAZ09.6.10/ ālambana.abhāve hy ālambitā na vidyante | 10 |
- KAZ09.6.11/ mitra.amitrāṇām ekī.bhāvāt para.miśrā | 11 |
- KAZ09.6.12/ para.miśrāyām mitrataḥ siddhiḥ | 12 |
- KAZ09.6.13/ sukaro hi mitreṇa sandhiḥ, na-amitreṇa-iti | 13 |
- KAZ09.6.14/ mitraṁ cen na sandhiṁ icched abhīkṣṇam upajapet | 14 |
- KAZ09.6.15/ tataḥ sattribhir amitrād bhedayitvā mitraṁ labheta | 15 |
- KAZ09.6.16/ mitra.saṅghasya vā yo 'nta.sthāyī taṁ labheta | 16 |
- KAZ09.6.17/ anta.sthāyīni labdhe madhya.sthāyīno bhidyante | 17 |
- KAZ09.6.18/ madhya.sthāyīnaṁ vā labheta | 18 |
- KAZ09.6.19/ madhya.sthāyīni labdhe na-anta.sthāyīnaḥ saṁhanyante | 19 |
- KAZ09.6.20/ yathā ca-eṣāṁ āśraya.bhedas tān upāyān prayuñjīta | 20 |
- KAZ09.6.21/ dhārmikaṁ jāti.kula.śruta.vṛtta.stavena sambandhena pūrveṣāṁ traikālya.upakārān apakārābhyām vā sāntvayet | 21 |
- KAZ09.6.22/ nivṛtta.utsāhaṁ vigraha.śrāntaṁ pratihata.upāyaṁ kṣaya.vyayābhyām pravāseṇa ca-upataptaṁ śaucena-anyāṁ lipsamānam anyasmād vā śaṅkamānaṁ maitrī.pradhānaṁ vā kalyāṇa.buddhiṁ sāmnā sādhayet | 22 |
- KAZ09.6.23/ lubdhaṁ kṣīṇaṁ vā tapasvi.mukhya.avasthāpanā.pūrvaṁ dānena sādhayet | 23 |
- KAZ09.6.24/ tat pañca.vidhaṁ - deya.visargo gr̥hīta.anuvartanam ātta.pratidānaṁ sva.dravya.dānam apūrvaṁ para.sveṣu svayaṁ.grāha.dānaṁ ca | 24 |
- KAZ09.6.25/ iti dāna.karma | 25 |
- KAZ09.6.26/ paraspara.dveṣa.vaira.bhūmi.haraṇa.śaṅkitam ato 'nyatamena bhedayet | 26 |
- KAZ09.6.27/ bhīruṁ vā pratighātena "kṛta.sandhir eṣa tvayi karma.kariṣyati, mitram asya niṣṛṣṭam, sandhau vā na-abhyantaraḥ" iti | 27 |
- KAZ09.6.28/ yasya vā sva.deśād anya.deśād vā paṇyāni paṇya.agāratayā-āgaccheyuḥ tāni asya "yātavyāḥ labdhāni" iti sattriṇaś cārayeyuḥ | 28 |
- KAZ09.6.29/ bahulī.bhūte śāsanam abhityaktena preṣayet "etat te paṇyaṁ paṇya.agāraṁ vā mayā te preṣitam, sāmavāyikeṣu vikramasva, apagaccha vā, tataḥ paṇa.śeṣam avāpsyasi" iti | 29 |
- KAZ09.6.30/ tataḥ sattriṇaḥ pareṣu grāhayeyuḥ "etat ari.pradattam" iti | 30 |
- KAZ09.6.31/ śatru.prakhyātaṁ vā paṇyam avijñātaṁ vijigīṣuṁ gacchet | 31 |
- KAZ09.6.32/ tad asya vaidehaka.vyañjanāḥ śatru.mukhyeṣu vikrīṇīran | 32 |
- KAZ09.6.33/ tataḥ sattriṇaḥ pareṣu grāhayeyuḥ "etat paṇyam ari.pradattam" iti | 33 |

²¹⁶[K tr. 488 :: K2 tr. 422

- KAZ09.6.34/ mahā.aparādhān artha.mānābhyām upagṛhya vā śāstra.rasa.aghibhir amitre praṇidadhyāt | 34 |
- KAZ09.6.35/ atha-ekam amātyam niṣpādayet | 35 |
- KAZ09.6.36/ tasya putra.dāram upagṛhya rātrau hatam iti khyāpayet | 36 |
- KAZ09.6.37/ atha-amātyaḥ śātros tām eka.ekaśaḥ prarūpayet | 37 |
- KAZ09.6.38/ te ced yathā.uktaṁ kuryur na ca-enān grāhayet | 38 |
- KAZ09.6.39/ aśaktimato vā grāhayet | 39 |
- KAZ09.6.40/ āpta.bhāva.upagato mukhyād asya-ātmānam rakṣaṇīyam kathayet | 40 |
- KAZ09.6.41/ atha-amitra.śāsanam mukhya.upaghātāya preṣitam ubhaya.vetano grāhayet | 41 |
- KAZ09.6.42/ utsāha.śaktimato vā preṣayet "amuṣya rājyam grāhāṇa, yathā.asthito naḥ sandhiḥ" iti | 42 |
- KAZ09.6.43/ tataḥ sattriṇaḥ pareṣu grāhayeyuḥ | 43 |
- KAZ09.6.44/ ekasya skandha.āvāram vīvadham āsāram vā ghātayeyuḥ | 44 |
- KAZ09.6.45/ itareṣu maitrīm bruvāṇaḥ "tvam eteṣām ghātayitavyaḥ" ity upajapeyuḥ | 45 |
- KAZ09.6.46/ yasya vā pravīra.puruṣo hastī hayo vā mriyeta gūḍha.puruṣair hanyeta hriyeta vā sattriṇaḥ paraspara.upahataṁ brūyuḥ | 46 |
- KAZ09.6.47/ tataḥ śāsanam abhiśastasya preṣayet "bhūyaḥ kuru tataḥ paṇa.śeeṣam avāpsyasi" iti | 47 |
- KAZ09.6.48/ tad ubhaya.vetanā grāhayeyuḥ | 48 |
- KAZ09.6.49/ bhinneṣv anyatamaṁ labheta | 49 |
- KAZ09.6.50/ tena senā.pati.kumāra.daṇḍa.cāriṇo vyākhyātāḥ | 50 |
- KAZ09.6.51/ sāndhikam ca bhedaṁ prayuñjīta | 51 |
- KAZ09.6.52/ iti bheda.karma | 52 |
- KAZ09.6.53/ tīkṣṇam utsāhinaṁ vyasaninaṁ sthita.śātrum vā gūḍha.puruṣāḥ śāstra.agni.rasa.ādibhiḥ sādhayeyuḥ, saukaryato vā teṣām anyatamaḥ | 53 |
- KAZ09.6.54/ tīkṣṇo hy ekaḥ śāstra.rasa.aghibhiḥ sādhayet | 54 |
- KAZ09.6.55/ ayam sarva.sandoha.karma viśiṣṭam vā karoti | 55 |
- KAZ09.6.56/ ity upāya.catur.vargaḥ | 56 |
- KAZ09.6.57/ pūrvaḥ pūrvaś ca-asya laghiṣṭhaḥ | 57 |
- KAZ09.6.58/ sāntvam eka.guṇam | 58 |
- KAZ09.6.59/ dānam dvi.guṇam sāntva.pūrvam | 59 |
- KAZ09.6.60/ bhedaś tri.guṇaḥ sāntva.dāna.pūrvaḥ | 60 |
- KAZ09.6.61/ daṇḍaś catur.guṇaḥ sāntva.dāna.bheda.pūrvaḥ | 61 |
- KAZ09.6.62/ ity abhiyuñjāneṣu-uktam | 62 |
- KAZ09.6.63/ sva.bhūmiṣṭheṣu tu ta eva-upāyāḥ | 63 |
- KAZ09.6.64/ viśeṣas tu | 64 |
- KAZ09.6.65/ sva.bhūmiṣṭhānām anyatamasya paṇya.agārair abhijñātān dūta.mukhyān abhīkṣṇam preṣayet | 65 |
- KAZ09.6.66/ ta enam sandhau para.himśāyam vā yojayeyuḥ | 66 |
- KAZ09.6.67/ apratipadyamānam "kr̥to naḥ sandhiḥ" ity āvedayeyuḥ | 67 |
- KAZ09.6.68/ tam itareṣām ubhaya.vetanāḥ saṅkrāmayeyuḥ "ayam vo rājā duṣṭaḥ" iti | 68 |
- KAZ09.6.69/ yasya vā yasmād bhayam vairam dveṣo vā tam tasmād bhedayeyuḥ "ayam te śātruṇā sandhatte, purā tvām atisandhatte, kṣiprataram sandhīyasva, nigrahe ca-asya prayatasva" iti | 69 |
- KAZ09.6.70/ āvāha.vivāhābhyām vā kṛtvā samyogam asamyuktān bhedayet | 70 |
- KAZ09.6.71/ sāmanta.ātavika.tat.kulīna.aparuddhaiś ca-eṣām rājyāni ghātayet, sārtha.vraja.ātavīr vā, daṇḍam vā-abhiṣṭam | 71 |

KAZ09.6.72/ paraspara.apāśrayās ca-eṣām jāti.saṅghās chidreṣu prahareyuḥ, gūḍhās ca-agni.rasa.śāstreṇa | 72 |

KAZ09.6.73ab/ vītaṃsa.gilavac ca-arīn yogair ācaritaiḥ śaṭhaḥ |

KAZ09.6.73cd/ ghātayet para.miśrāyām viśvāsena-āmiṣeṇa ca || 73 ||

9.7 Chapter 7 (Sections 145; 146): Dangers with Advantage, Disadvantage and Uncertainty; Overcoming Dangers by Different Means

217

KAZ09.7.01/ kāma.ādir utsekaḥ svāḥ prakṛtiḥ kopayati, apanayo bāhyāḥ | 1 |

KAZ09.7.02/ tad ubhayam āsurī vṛttiḥ | 2 |

KAZ09.7.03/ sva.jana.vikāraḥ kopāḥ | 3 |

KAZ09.7.04/ para.vṛddhi.hetuṣu āpad.artho 'nārthaḥ saṃśaya iti | 4 |

KAZ09.7.05/ yo 'rthaḥ śatru.vṛddhim aprāptaḥ karoti, prāptaḥ pratyādeyaḥ pareṣām bhavati, prāpyamāṇo vā kṣaya.vyaya.udayo bhavati, sa bhavaty āpad.arthaḥ | 5 |

KAZ09.7.06/ yathā sāmāntānām āmiṣa.bhūtaḥ sāmānta.vyasanajo lābhaḥ, śatru.prārthito vā sva.bhāva.adhigamyō lābhaḥ, paścāt kopena pārṣṇi.grāheṇa vā vigṛhītaḥ purastāt.lābhaḥ, mitra.ucchedena sandhi.vyatikrameṇa vā maṇḍala.viruddho lābhaḥ ity āpad.arthaḥ | 6 |

KAZ09.7.07/ svataḥ parato vā bhaya.utpattir ity anārthaḥ | 7 |

KAZ09.7.08/ tayoḥ artho na vā-iti, anārtho na vā-iti, artho 'nārtha iti, anārtho 'rtha iti saṃśayaḥ | 8 |

KAZ09.7.09/ śatru.mitram utsāhayitum artho na vā-iti saṃśayaḥ | 9 |

KAZ09.7.10/ śatru.balam artha.mānābhyām āvāhayitum anārtho na vā-iti saṃśayaḥ | 10 |

KAZ09.7.11/ balavat.sāmāntām bhūmim ādātum artho 'nārtha iti saṃśayaḥ | 11 |

KAZ09.7.12/ jāyasā sambhūyayānam anārtho 'rtha iti saṃśayaḥ | 12 |

KAZ09.7.13/ teṣām artha.saṃśayam upagacchet | 13 |

KAZ09.7.14/ artho 'rtha.anubandhaḥ, artho niranubandhaḥ, artho 'nārtha.anubandhaḥ, anārtho 'rtha.anubandhaḥ, anārtho niranubandhaḥ, anārtho 'nārtha.anubandhaḥ ity anubandha.ṣaḍ.vargaḥ | 14 |

KAZ09.7.15/ śatrum utpātya pārṣṇi.grāha.ādānam artho 'nārtha.anubandhaḥ | 15 |

KAZ09.7.16/ udāsīnasya daṇḍa.anugrahaḥ phalena artho niranubandhaḥ | 16 |

KAZ09.7.17/ parasya-antar.ucchedanam artho 'nārtha.anubandhaḥ | 17 |

KAZ09.7.18/ śatru.pratīveśasya-anugrahaḥ kośa.daṇḍābhyām anārtho 'nārtha.anubandhaḥ | 18 |

KAZ09.7.19/ hīna.śaktim utsāhya nivṛttir anārtho niranubandhaḥ | 19 |

KAZ09.7.20/ jyāyāṃsam utthāpya nivṛttir anārtho 'nārtha.anubandhaḥ | 20 |

KAZ09.7.21/ teṣām pūrvaḥ pūrvaḥ śreyān upasamprāptum | 21 |

KAZ09.7.22/ iti kārya.avasthāpanam | 22 |

KAZ09.7.23/ samantato yugapad.artha.utpattiḥ samantato 'rtha.āpad bhavati | 23 |

KAZ09.7.24/ sā-eva pārṣṇi.grāha.vigṛhītā samantato 'rtha.saṃśaya.āpad bhavati | 24 |

KAZ09.7.25/ taylor mitra.ākṛanda.upagrahāt siddhiḥ | 25 |

KAZ09.7.26/ samantataḥ śatrubhyo bhaya.utpattiḥ samantato 'nārtha.āpad bhavati | 26 |

KAZ09.7.27/ sā-eva mitra.vigṛhītā samantato 'nārtha.saṃśaya.āpad bhavati | 27 |

KAZ09.7.28/ tayoś cala.amitra.ākṛanda.upagrahāt siddhiḥ, para.miśra.apratīkāro vā | 28 |

KAZ09.7.29/ ito lābha itarato lābha ity ubhayato 'rtha.āpad bhavati | 29 |

KAZ09.7.30/ tasyām samantato 'rthāyām ca lābha.guṇa.yuktam artham ādātum yāyāt | 30 |

²¹⁷[K tr. 494 :: K2 tr. 427

- KAZ09.7.31/ tulye lābha.guṇe pradhānam āsannam anatipātinam ūno vā yena bhavet tam ādātum yāyāt | 31 |
- KAZ09.7.32/ ito 'nartha itarato 'nartha ity ubhayato 'nartha.āpat | 32 |
- KAZ09.7.33/ tasyām samantato 'narthāyām ca mitrebhyaḥ siddhiṁ lipseta | 33 |
- KAZ09.7.34/ mitra.abhāve prakṛtīnām laghīyasya-ekato 'narthām sādhayet, ubhayato 'narthām jyāyasyā, samantato 'narthām mūlena pratikuryāt | 34 |
- KAZ09.7.35/ aśakye sarvam utsṛjya-apagacchet | 35 |
- KAZ09.7.36/ dr̥ṣṭā hi jīvataḥ punar.āvṛttir yathā suyātrā.udayanābhyām | 36 |
- KAZ09.7.37/ ito lābha itarato rājya.abhimarśa ity ubhayato 'rtha.anartha.āpad bhavati | 37 |
- KAZ09.7.38/ tasyām anartha.sādhako yo 'rthas tam ādātum yāyāt | 38 |
- KAZ09.7.39/ anyathā hi rājya.abhimarśam vārayet | 39 |
- KAZ09.7.40/ etayā samantato 'rtha.anartha.āpad vyākhyātā | 40 |
- KAZ09.7.41/ ito 'nartha itarato 'rtha.samśaya ity ubhayato 'nartha.artha.samśayā | 41 |
- KAZ09.7.42/ tasyām pūrvam anarthaṁ sādhayet, tat.siddhāv artha.samśayam | 42 |
- KAZ09.7.43/ etayā samantato 'nartha.artha.samśayā vyākhyātā | 43 |
- KAZ09.7.44/ ito 'rtha itarato 'nartha.samśaya ity ubhayato 'rtha.anartha.samśaya.āpad | 44 |
- KAZ09.7.45/ etayā samantato 'rtha.anartha.samśayā vyākhyātā | 45 |
- KAZ09.7.46/ tasyām pūrvām pūrvām prakṛtīnām anartha.samśayān mokṣayitum yateta | 46 |
- KAZ09.7.47/ śreyo hi mitram anartha.samśaye tiṣṭhan na daṇḍaḥ, daṇḍo vā na kośa iti | 47 |
- KAZ09.7.48/ samagra.mokṣaṇa.abhāve prakṛtīnām avayavān mokṣayitum yateta | 48 |
- KAZ09.7.49/ tatra puruṣa.prakṛtīnām bahulam anuraktaṁ vā tīkṣṇa.lubdha.varjam, dravya.prakṛtīnām sārām mahā.upakāraṁ vā | 49 |
- KAZ09.7.50/ sandhinā-āsanena dvaidhī.bhāvena vā laghūni, viparyayair gurūṇi | 50 |
- KAZ09.7.51/ kṣaya.sthāna.vṛddhīnām ca-uttara.uttaram lipseta | 51 |
- KAZ09.7.52/ prātilomyena vā kṣaya.ādīnām āyatyām viśeṣam paśyet | 52 |
- KAZ09.7.53/ iti deśa.avasthāpanam | 53 |
- KAZ09.7.54/ etena yātrā.ādi.madhya.anteṣv artha.anartha.samśayānām upasamprāptir vyākhyātā | 54 |
- KAZ09.7.55/ nirantara.yogitvāc ca-artha.anartha.samśayānām yātrā.ādāv arthaḥ śreyān upasamprāptum pārṣṇi.grāha.āsāra.pratighāte kṣaya.vyaya.pravāsa.pratyādeye mūla.rakṣaṇeṣu ca bhavati | 55 |
- KAZ09.7.56/ tathā-anarthaḥ samśayo vā sva.bhūmiṣṭhasya viśahyo bhavati | 56 |
- KAZ09.7.57/ etena yātrā.madhye 'rtha.anartha.samśayānām upasamprāptir vyākhyātā | 57 |
- KAZ09.7.58/ yātrā.ante tu karśanīyam ucchedanīyaṁ vā karśayitvā-ucchidya vā-arthaḥ śreyān upasamprāptum na-anarthaḥ samśayo vā para.ābādha.bhayāt | 58 |
- KAZ09.7.59/ sāmavāyikānām apurogasya tu yātrā.madhya.antago 'narthaḥ samśayo vā śreyān upasamprāptum anirbandha.gāmitvāt | 59 |
- KAZ09.7.60/ artho dharmah kāmā ity artha.tri.vargaḥ | 60 |
- KAZ09.7.61/ tasya pūrvah pūrvah śreyān upasamprāptum | 61 |
- KAZ09.7.62/ anartha 'dharmah śoka ity anartha.tri.vargaḥ | 62 |
- KAZ09.7.63/ tasya pūrvah pūrvah śreyān pratikartum | 63 |
- KAZ09.7.64/ artho 'nartha iti, dharmo 'dharma iti, kāmah śoka iti samśaya.tri.vargaḥ | 64 |
- KAZ09.7.65/ tasya-uttara.pakṣa.siddhau pūrva.pakṣah śreyān upasamprāptum | 65 |
- KAZ09.7.66/ iti kāla.avasthāpanam | 66 |
- KAZ09.7.67/ ity āpadaḥ - tāsām siddhiḥ | 67 |

- KAZ09.7.68/ putra.bhrātr.bandhuṣu sāma.dānābhyām siddhir anurūpā,
paura.jānapada.daṇḍa.mukhyeṣu dāna.bhedābhyām, sāmanta.āṭavikeṣu bheda.daṇḍābhyām |
68 |
- KAZ09.7.69/ eṣā-anulomā, viparyaye pratilomā | 69 |
- KAZ09.7.70/ mitra.amitreṣu vyāmiśrā siddhiḥ | 70 |
- KAZ09.7.71/ paraspara.sādhakā hy upāyāḥ | 71 |
- KAZ09.7.72/ śatroḥ śāṅkita.amātyeṣu sāntvaṁ prayuktaṁ śeṣa.prayogaṁ nivartayati,
dūṣya.amātyeṣu dānam, saṅghāteṣu bhedaḥ, śāktimatsu daṇḍa iti | 72 |
- KAZ09.7.73/ guru.lāghava.yogāc ca-āpadāṁ niyoga.vikalpa.samuccayā bhavanti | 73 |
- KAZ09.7.74/ "anena-eva-upāyena na-anyena" iti niyogaḥ | 74 |
- KAZ09.7.75/ "anena vā-anyena vā" iti vikalpaḥ | 75 |
- KAZ09.7.76/ "anena-anyena ca" iti samuccayaḥ | 76 |
- KAZ09.7.77/ teṣāṁ eka.yogāś catvāras tri.yogāś ca, dvi.yogāḥ ṣaṭ, ekaś catur.yogaḥ | 77 |
- KAZ09.7.78/ iti pañca.daśa.upāyāḥ | 78 |
- KAZ09.7.79/ tāvantaḥ pratilomāḥ | 79 |
- KAZ09.7.80/ teṣāṁ ekena-upāyena siddhir eka.siddhiḥ, dvābhyām dvi.siddhiḥ, tribhis
tri.siddhiḥ, caturbhiś catuḥ.siddhir iti | 80 |
- KAZ09.7.81/ dharma.mūlatvāt kāma.phalatvāc ca-arthasya dharma.artha.kāma.anubandhā
yā-arthasya siddhiḥ sā sarva.artha.siddhiḥ | 81 | iti siddhayaḥ |
- KAZ09.7.82/ daivād agnir udakaṁ vyādhiḥ pramāro vidravo durbhikṣaṁ āsurī sṛṣṭir ity
āpadaḥ | 82 |
- KAZ09.7.83/ tāsāṁ daivata.brāhmaṇa.rpaṇipātataḥ siddhiḥ | 83 |
- KAZ09.7.84ab/ ativṛṣṭir avṛṣṭir vā sṛṣṭir vā yā-āsurī bhavet |
- KAZ09.7.84cd/ tasyām ātharvaṇaṁ karma siddha.ārambhāś ca siddhayaḥ || 84 ||

10 Book 10: Concerning War

218

10.1 Chapter 1 (Section 147): Setting up of the Camp

219

- KAZ10.1.01/ vāstuka.praśaste vāstuni nāyaka.vardhaki mauhūrtikāḥ skandha.āvāram, vṛttaṁ
dīrghaṁ catur.aśraṁ vā bhūmi.vaśena vā, catur.dvāraṁ ṣaṭ.pathaṁ nava.samsthānaṁ
māpayeyuḥ khāta.vapra.sāla.dvāra.aṭṭālaka.sampannaṁ bhaye sthāne ca | 1 |
- KAZ10.1.02/ madhyamasya-uttare nava.bhāge rāja.vāstukaṁ dhanuḥ.śata.āyāmam
ardha.vistāram, paścima.ardhe tasya-antaḥ.puram | 2 |
- KAZ10.1.03/ antar.vamśika.sainyaṁ ca-ante nivīśeta | 3 |
- KAZ10.1.04/ purastād upasthānam, dakṣiṇataḥ kośa.śāsana.kārya.karaṇāni, vāmato
rāja.aupavāhyānāṁ hasty.aśva.rathānāṁ sthānam | 4 |
- KAZ10.1.05/ ato dhanuḥ.śata.antarāś catvāraḥ śakaṭa.methī.pratati.stambha.sāla.parikṣepāḥ
| 5 |
- KAZ10.1.06/ prathame purastān mantri.purohitau, daṇṣiṇataḥ koṣṭha.agāraṁ mahānasaṁ
ca, vāmataḥ kupya.āyudha.agāram | 6 |
- KAZ10.1.07/ dvitīye maula.bhṛtānāṁ sthānam aśva.rathānāṁ senā.pateś ca | 7 |
- KAZ10.1.08/ tṛtīye hastinaḥ śreṇyaḥ praśāstā ca | 8 |
- KAZ10.1.09/ caturthe viṣṭir nāyako mitra.amitra.aṭavi.balaṁ sva.puruṣa.adhiṣṭhitam | 9 |
- KAZ10.1.10/ vaṇijo rūpa.ājīvāś ca-anu.mahā.patham | 10 |

²¹⁸[K tr. 501–525 :: K2 tr. 433–453

²¹⁹[K tr. 501 :: K2 tr. 433

KAZ10.1.11/ bāhyato lubdhaka.śva.gaṇinaḥ satūrya.agnayāḥ, gūḍhāś ca-āraḥ | 11 |
 KAZ10.1.12/ śatrūṇām āpāte kūpa.kūṭa.avapāta.kaṇṭakinīś ca sthāpayet | 12 |
 KAZ10.1.13/ aṣṭādaśa.vargāṇām āraḥ.viparyāsaṁ kārayet | 13 |
 KAZ10.1.14/ diva.āyāmaṁ ca kārāyēd apasarpa.jñāna.artham | 14 |
 KAZ10.1.15/ vivāda.saurika.samāja.dyūta.vāraṇaṁ ca kārāyēd, mudrā.rakṣaṇaṁ ca | 15 |
 KAZ10.1.16/ senā.nivṛttam āyudhīyam aśāsaṇaṁ śūnya.pālo badhniyāt | 16 |
 KAZ10.1.17ab/ purastād adhvanaḥ samyak.praśāstā rakṣaṇāni ca |
 KAZ10.1.17cd/ yāyād vardhaki.viṣṭibhyām udakāni ca kārāyēd || 17 ||

10.2 Chapter 2 (Sections 148; 149): March from the Camp; Guarding Troops during Calamities and at the Time of Attack

220

KAZ10.2.01/ grāma.aranyānām adhvani niveśān yavasa.indhana.udaka.vaśena parisaṅkhyāya
 sthāna.āsana.gamana.kālaṁ ca yātrām yāyāt | 1 |
 KAZ10.2.02/ tat.pratikāra.dvi.guṇaṁ bhakta.upakaraṇaṁ vāhayet | 2 |
 KAZ10.2.03/ aśakto vā sainyeṣv āyojayet, antareṣu vā nicinuyāt | 3 |
 KAZ10.2.04/ purastān nāyakaḥ, madhye kalatraṁ svāmī ca, pārśvayor aśvā bāhu.utsāraḥ,
 cakra.anteṣu hastinaḥ prasāra.vṛddhir vā, paścāt senā.patir yāyāt nivīṣeta | 4 |
 KAZ10.2.05/ sarvato vana.ājīvaḥ prasāraḥ | 5 |
 KAZ10.2.06/ sva.deśād anvāyatir vīvadhaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ10.2.07/ mitra.balam āsāraḥ | 7 |
 KAZ10.2.08/ kalatra.sthānam apasāraḥ | 8 |
 KAZ10.2.09/ purastād adhyāghāte makareṇa yāyāt, paścāt-śakaṭena, pārśvayor vajreṇa,
 samantataḥ sarvato.bhadreṇa, eka.ayane sūcyā | 9 |
 KAZ10.2.10/ pathi.dvaidhī.bhāve svabhūmito yāyāt | 10 |
 KAZ10.2.11/ abhūmiṣṭhānām hi sva.bhūmiṣṭhā yuddhe pratilomā bhavanti | 11 |
 KAZ10.2.12/ yojanam adhamā, adhyardham madhyamā, dvi.yojanam uttamā, sambhāvya vā
 gatiḥ | 12 |
 KAZ10.2.13/ āśraya.kārī sampanna.ghātī pārṣṇir āsāro madhyama udāsīno vā
 pratikartavyaḥ, saṅkaṭo mārگاḥ śodhayitavyaḥ, kośo daṇḍo mitra.amitra.aṭavī.balam
 viṣṭi.rtur vā pratikṣyāḥ, kṛta.durga.karma.nicaya.rakṣā.kṣayaḥ kṛta.bala.nirvedo
 mitra.bala.nirvedaś ca-āgamiṣyati, upajapitāro vā na-atitvarayanti, śatrur abhiprāyaṁ vā
 pūrayiṣyati, iti śanair yāyāt, viparyaye śīghram | 13 |
 KAZ10.2.14/ hasti.stambha.saṅkrama.setu.bandha.nau.kāṣṭha.veṇu.saṅghātair
 alābu.carma.karaṇḍa.dṛti.plava.gaṇḍikā.veṇikābhiś ca-udakāni tārayet | 14 |
 KAZ10.2.15/ tīrtha.abhigrahe hasty.aśvair anyato rātrāv uttārya sattraṁ gṛhṇīyāt | 15 |
 KAZ10.2.16/ anudake cakri.catuṣpadaṁ ca-adhva.pramāṇena śaktyā-udakaṁ vāhayet | 16 |
 KAZ10.2.17/ dīrgha.kāntāram anudakaṁ yavasa.indhana.udaka.hīnaṁ vā kṛcchra.adhvānam
 abhiyoga.praskannaṁ kṣut.pipāsā.adhva.klāntaṁ paṅka.toya.gambhīraṇām vā
 nadī.darī.śailānām udyāna.apayāne vyāsaktam eka.ayana.mārge śaila.viṣame saṅkaṭe vā
 bahulī.bhūtaṁ niveśe prasthite visamnāhaṁ bhojana.vyāsaktam āyata.gata.parīśrāntam
 avasuptaṁ vyādhi.maraka.durbhikṣa.pīḍitaṁ vyādhita.patty.aśva.dvipam abhūmiṣṭhaṁ vā
 bala.vyasaneṣu vā sva.sainyaṁ rakṣet, para.sainyaṁ ca-abhīhanyāt | 17 |
 KAZ10.2.18/ eka.ayana.mārگا.prayātasya
 senā.niścāra.grāsa.āhāra.śayyā.prastāra.agni.nidhāna.dhvaja.- āyudha.saṅkhyānena
 para.bala.jñānam | 18 |
 KAZ10.2.19/ tadā-ātmāno gūhayet | 19 |

²²⁰[K tr. 503 :: K2 tr. 435

KAZ10.2.20ab/ pārvataṃ vana.durgam vā sāpasāra.pratigrahaṃ |
KAZ10.2.20cd/ sva.bhumau prṣṭhataḥ kṛtvā yudhyeta nivīseta ca || 20 ||

10.3 Chapter 3 (Sections 150; 151; 152): Covert Fighting; Encouraging the Troops; Disposition of Troops

221

KAZ10.3.01/ bala.viśiṣṭaḥ kṛta.upajāpaḥ prativihita.rtuḥ sva.bhūmyāṃ prakāśa.yuddham
upeyāt | 1 |
KAZ10.3.02/ viparyaye kūṭa.yuddham | 2 |
KAZ10.3.03/ bala.vyasana.avaskanda.kāleṣu param abhihanyāt, abhūmiṣṭhaṃ vā
sva.bhūmiṣṭhaḥ, prakṛti.pragraho vā sva.bhūmiṣṭham | 3 |
KAZ10.3.04/ dūṣya.amitra.aṭavī.balair vā bhaṅgaṃ dattvā vibhūmi.prāptaṃ hanyāt | 4 |
KAZ10.3.05/ saṃhata.anikaṃ hastibhir bhedayet | 5 |
KAZ10.3.06/ pūrvaṃ bhaṅga.pradānena-anupralīnaṃ bhinnam abhinnaḥ pratinivṛtya hanyāt
| 6 |
KAZ10.3.07/ purastād abhihatya pracalāṃ vimukhaṃ vā prṣṭhato hasty.aśvena-abhihanyāt |
7 |
KAZ10.3.08/ prṣṭhato 'bhihatyā pracalāṃ vimukhaṃ vā purastāt sāra.balena-abhihanyāt | 8
|
KAZ10.3.09/ tābhyāṃ pārśva.abhigātau vyākhyātau | 9 |
KAZ10.3.10/ yato vā dūṣya.phalgu.balaṃ tato 'bhihanyāt | 10 |
KAZ10.3.11/ purastād viṣamāyāṃ prṣṭhato 'bhihanyāt | 11 |
KAZ10.3.12/ prṣṭhato viṣamāyāṃ purastād abhihanyāt | 12 |
KAZ10.3.13/ pārśvato viṣamāyāṃ itarato 'bhihanyāt | 13 |
KAZ10.3.14/ dūṣya.amitra.aṭavī.balair vā pūrvaṃ yodhayitvā śrāntam aśrāntaḥ param
abhihanyāt | 14 |
KAZ10.3.15/ dūṣya.balena vā svayaṃ bhaṅgaṃ dattvā "jītam" iti viśvastam aviśvastaḥ
sattra.apāśrayo 'bhihanyāt | 15 |
KAZ10.3.16/ sārtha.vraja.skandha.āvāra.saṃvāha.vilopa.pramattam apramatto 'bhihanyāt |
16 |
KAZ10.3.17/ phalgu.bala.avacchanna.sāra.balo vā para.vīrān anupraviśya hanyāt | 17 |
KAZ10.3.18/ go.graṇaṇena śvā.pada.vadhena vā para.vīrān ākrṣya sattra.cchanno 'bhihanyāt
| 18 |
KAZ10.3.19/ rātrāv avaskandena jāgarayitvā nidrā.klāntān avasuptān vā divā hanyāt | 19 |
KAZ10.3.20/ sapāda.carma.kośair vā hastibhiḥ sauptikaṃ dadyāt | 20 |
KAZ10.3.21/ ahaḥ.samnāha.pariśrāntān अपरा.अह्ने 'bhihanyāt | 21 |
KAZ10.3.22/ śuṣka.carma.vṛtta.śarkara.ākośakair go.mahiṣa.uṣṭra.yūthair vā trasnubhir
akṛta.hasty.aśvaṃ bhinnam abhinnaḥ pratinivṛttaṃ hanyāt | 22 |
KAZ10.3.23/ pratisūrya.vātaṃ vā sarvaṃ abhihanyāt | 23 |
KAZ10.3.24/ dhānvana.vana.saṅkaṭa.paṅka.śaila.nimna.viṣama.nāvo gāvaḥ śakaṭavyūho
nīhāro rātrir iti sattrāṇi | 24 |
KAZ10.3.25/ pūrve ca praharaṇa.kālāḥ kūṭa.yuddha.hetavaḥ | 25 |
KAZ10.3.26/ saṅgrāmas tu nirdiṣṭa.deśa.kālo dharmiṣṭhaḥ | 26 |
KAZ10.3.27/ saṃhatya daṇḍaṃ brūyāt "tulya.vetano 'smi, bhavadbhiḥ saha bhogyam idaṃ
rājyam, mayā-abhihitaiḥ paro 'bhiantavyaḥ" iti | 27 |
KAZ10.3.28/ vedeṣv apy anuśrūyate samāpta.dakṣiṇānāṃ yajñānāṃ avabhṛtheṣu "sā te gatir
yā sūrāṇām" iti | 28 |

²²¹[K tr. 506 :: K2 tr. 438

- KAZ10.3.29/ api-iha ślokau bhavataḥ | 29 |
- KAZ10.3.30ab/ "yān yajña.saṅghais tapasā ca viprāḥ svarga.eṣiṇaḥ pātra.cayaiś ca yānti |
KAZ10.3.30cd/ kṣaṇena tān apy atiyānti śūrāḥ prāṇān suyuddheṣu parityajantaḥ || 30 ||
- KAZ10.3.31ab/ "navam śārāvam salilasya pūrṇam susaṃskṛtam darbha.kṛta.uttariyam |
KAZ10.3.31cd/ tat tasya mā bhūn narakam ca gacched yo bhartr.piṇḍasya kṛte na yudhyet
|| 31 ||" iti |
- KAZ10.3.32/ mantri.purohitābhyām utsāhayed yodhān vyūha.sampadā | 32 |
- KAZ10.3.33/ kārtaṅtika.ādiś ca-asya vargaḥ sarvajña.daivata.samyoga.khyāpanābhyām
sva.pakṣam uddharṣayet, para.pakṣam ca-udvejayet | 33 |
- KAZ10.3.34/ "śvo yuddham" iti kṛta.upavāsaḥ śastra.vāhanam ca-anuśayita | 34 |
- KAZ10.3.35/ atharvabhiś ca juhuyāt | 35 |
- KAZ10.3.36/ vijaya.yuktāḥ svargīyāś ca-āśiṣo vācayet | 36 |
- KAZ10.3.37/ brāhmaṇebhyaś ca-ātmānam atisṛjet | 37 |
- KAZ10.3.38/ śaurya.śilpa.abhijana.anurāga.yuktam artha.mānābhyām avisaṃvāditam
anika.garbham kurvita | 38 |
- KAZ10.3.39/ pitṛ.putra.bhrātrkāṇām āyudhīyānām adhvajam muṇḍa.anīkam rāja.sthānam |
39 |
- KAZ10.3.40/ hastī ratho vā rāja.vāhanam aśva.anubandhaḥ | 40 |
- KAZ10.3.41/ yat prāya.sainyo yatra vā vinītaḥ syāt t (tad?) adhirohayet | 41 |
- KAZ10.3.42/ rāja.vyañjano vyūha.adhiṣṭhānam āyojyaḥ | 42 |
- KAZ10.3.43/ sūta.māgadhaḥ śūrāṇām svargam asvargam bhīrūṇām
jāti.saṅgha.kula.karma.vṛtta.stavam ca yodhānām varṇayeyuḥ | 43 |
- KAZ10.3.44/ purohita.puruṣāḥ kṛtya.abhicāram brūyuh, yantrika.vardhaki.mauhūrtikāḥ
sva.karma.siddhim asiddhim pareṣām | 44 |
- KAZ10.3.45/ senā.patir artha.mānābhyām abhisamskṛtam anīkam ābhāṣeta - "śata.sāhasro
rāja.vadhaḥ, pañcāśat.sāhasraḥ senā.pati.kumāra.vadhaḥ, daśa.sāhasraḥ
pravīra.mukhya.vadhaḥ, pañca.sāhasro hasti.ratha.vadhaḥ, sāhasro 'śva.vadhaḥ, śatyāḥ
patti.mukhya.vadhaḥ, śiro vimśatikam bhoga.dvaiguṇyam svayam.grāhaś ca" iti | 45 |
- KAZ10.3.46/ tad eṣām daśa.varga.adhipatayo vidyuḥ | 46 |
- KAZ10.3.47/ cikitsakāḥ śastra.yantra.agada.sneha.vastra.hastāḥ striyaś
ca-anna.pāna.rakṣiṇyaḥ puruṣāṇām uddharṣaṇīyāḥ pṛṣṭhataḥ tiṣṭheyuḥ | 47 |
- KAZ10.3.48/ adakṣiṇā.mukham pṛṣṭhataḥ.sūryam anuloma.vātam anīkam sva.bhūmau
vyūheta | 48 |
- KAZ10.3.49/ para.bhūmi.vyūhe ca-aśvāś cārayeyuḥ | 49 |
- KAZ10.3.50/ yatra sthānam prajāvaś ca-abhūmir vyūhasya tatra sthitaḥ prajavitaś
ca-ubhayathā jīyeta | 50 |
- KAZ10.3.51/ viparyaye jayati, ubhayathā sthāne prajave ca | 51 |
- KAZ10.3.52/ samā viṣamā vyāmiśrā vā bhūmir iti purastāt pārśvābhyām paścāc ca jñeyā | 52
|
- KAZ10.3.53/ samāyām daṇḍa.maṇḍala.vyūhāḥ, viṣamāyām bhoga.asamhata.vyūhāḥ,
vyāmiśrāyām viṣama.vyūhāḥ | 53 |
- KAZ10.3.54/ viśiṣṭa.balam bhaṅktvā sandhim yāceta | 54 |
- KAZ10.3.55/ sama.balena yācitaḥ sandadhita | 55 |
- KAZ10.3.56/ hīnam anuhanyāt, na tv eva sva.bhūmi.prāptam tyakta.ātmānam vā | 56 |
- KAZ10.3.57ab/ punar.āvartamānasya nirāśasya ca jīvite |
- KAZ10.3.57cd/ adhāryo jāyate vegas tasmād bhagnam na pīdayet || 57 ||

10.4 Chapter 4 (Sections 153; 154): Grounds Suitable for Fighting; Functions of Infantry, Cavalry, Chariots and Elephants

222

- KAZ10.4.01/ sva.bhūmiḥ patty.aśva.ratha.dvipānām iṣṭā yuddhe niveśe ca | 1 |
 KAZ10.4.02/ dhānvana.vana.nimna.sthala.yodhinām khanaka.ākāśa.divā.rātri.yodhinām ca puruṣāṇām nādeya.pārvata.ānūpa.sārasānām ca hastinām aśvānām ca yathā.svam iṣṭā yuddha.bhūmayah kālās ca | 2 |
 KAZ10.4.03/ samā sthirā-abhikāśā nirutkhātinya.cakra.khurā-anakṣa.grāhiṇya.vṛkṣa.gulma.vratatī.-stambha.kedāra.śvabhra.valmīka.sikatā.paṅka.bhaṅgurā daraṇa.hīnā ca ratha.bhūmiḥ, hasty.aśvayor manuṣyāṇām ca same viṣame hitā yuddhe niveśe ca | 3 |
 KAZ10.4.04/ aṇv.aśma.vṛkṣā hrasva.laṅghanīya.śvabhra.manda.daraṇa.doṣā ca-aśva.bhūmiḥ | 4 |
 KAZ10.4.05/ sthūla.sthāṇv aśma.vṛkṣa.vratatī.valmīka.gulmā padāti.bhūmiḥ | 5 |
 KAZ10.4.06/ gamya.śaila.nimna.viṣamā mardaniya.vṛkṣā chedanīya.vratatī paṅka.bhaṅgurā daraṇa.hīnā ca hasti.bhūmiḥ | 6 |
 KAZ10.4.07/ akaṇṭakiny abahu.viṣamā pratyāsāravatī-iti padātīnām atīśayaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ10.4.08/ dvi.guṇa.pratyāsārā kardama.udaka.khañjana.hīnā nihśarkarā-iti vājinām atīśayaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ10.4.09/ pāmsu.kardama.udaka.nala.śara.ādhānavatī śva.daṇṣṭra.hīnā mahā.vṛkṣa.śākhā.ghāta.viyuktā-iti hastinām atīśayaḥ | 9 |
 KAZ10.4.10/ toya.āśaya.apāśrayavatī nirutkhātiniḥ kedāra.hīnā vyāvartana.samarthā-iti rathānām atīśayaḥ | 10 |
 KAZ10.4.11/ uktā sarveṣāṃ bhūmiḥ | 11 |
 KAZ10.4.12/ etayā sarva.bala.niveśā yuddhāni ca vyākhyātāni bhavanti | 12 |
 KAZ10.4.13/ bhūmi.vāsa.vana.vicayo 'viṣama.toya.tīrtha.vāta.raśmi.graṇaṇām vīvadha.āsārayor ghāto rakṣā vā viśuddhiḥ sthāpanā ca balasya prasāra.vṛddhir bāhu.utsārah pūrva.prahāro vyāveśaṇām vyāvedhanam āśvāso graṇaṇām mokṣaṇām mārḡa.anusāra.vinimayaḥ kośa.kumāra.abhiharaṇām jaghana.koṭy.abhighāto hīna.anusāraṇam anuyānaṃ samāja.karma-ity aśva.karmāṇi | 13 |
 KAZ10.4.14/ puro.yānam akrta.mārḡa.vāsa.tīrtha.karma bāhu.utsāras toya.taraṇa.avataraṇe sthāna.gamana.avataraṇām viṣama.sambādha.praveśo 'gni.dāna.śamanam eka.aṅga.vijayo bhinna.sandhānam abhinna.bhedanaṃ vyasane trāṇam abhighāto vibhīṣikā trāsaṇām.audāryaṃ graṇaṇām mokṣaṇām sāla.dvāra.aṭṭālaka.bhañjanaṃ kośa.vāhana.apavāhanam iti hasti.karmāṇi | 14 |
 KAZ10.4.15/ sva.bala.rakṣā catur.aṅga.bala.pratiśedhaḥ saṅgrāme graṇaṇām mokṣaṇām bhinna.sandhānam abhinna.bhedanaṃ trāsaṇam audāryaṃ bhīma.ghoṣaś ca-iti ratha.karmāṇi | 15 |
 KAZ10.4.16/ sarva.deśa.kāla.śāstra.vahanaṃ vyāyāmaś ca-iti padāti.karmāṇi | 16 |
 KAZ10.4.17/ śibira.mārḡa.setu.kūpa.tīrtha.śodhana.karma yantra.āyudha.āvaraṇa.upakaraṇa.grāsa.vahanaṃ āyodhanāc ca praharaṇa.āvaraṇa.prativeddha.apanayanam iti viṣṭi.karmāṇi | 17 |
 KAZ10.4.18ab/ kuryād gava.aśva.vyāyogaṃ ratheṣv alpa.hayo nṛpaḥ |
 KAZ10.4.18cd/ khara.uṣṭra.śakaṭānām vā garbham alpa.gajas tathā || 18 ||

²²²[K tr. 512 :: K2 tr. 442

10.5 Chapter 5 (Sections 155; 156; 157): Arrangement of Battle Arrays; Distribution of Strong and Weak Troops; Modes of Fighting of Infantry, Cavalry, Chariots and Elephants

223

- KAZ10.5.01/ pañca.dhanuḥ.śata.apakṣṣtaṁ durgam avasthāpya yuddham upeyāt, bhūmi.vaśena vā | 1 |
- KAZ10.5.02/ vibhakta.mukhyām acakṣur.viṣaye mokṣayitvā senām senā.pati.nāyakau vyūheyātām | 2 |
- KAZ10.5.03/ śama.antaram pattiṁ sthāpayet, tri.śama.antaram aśvam, pañca.śama.antaram ratham hastinām vā | 3 |
- KAZ10.5.04/ dvi.guṇa.antaram tri.guṇa.antaram vā vyūheta | 4 |
- KAZ10.5.05/ evaṁ yathā.sukham asambādham yudhyeta | 5 |
- KAZ10.5.06/ pañca.aratni dhanuḥ | 6 |
- KAZ10.5.07/ tasmin dhanvinām sthāpayet, tri.dhanuṣy aśvam, pañca.dhanuṣi ratham hastinām vā | 7 |
- KAZ10.5.08/ pañca.dhanur anika.sandhiḥ pakṣa.kakṣa.urasyānām | 8 |
- KAZ10.5.09/ aśvasya trayāḥ puruṣāḥ pratiyoddhāraḥ | 9 |
- KAZ10.5.10/ pañca.daśa rathasya hastino vā, pañca ca-aśvāḥ | 10 |
- KAZ10.5.11/ tāvantaḥ pāda.gopā vāji.ratha.dvipānām vidheyāḥ | 11 |
- KAZ10.5.12/ trīṇi trikāṇy anikām rathānām urasyām sthāpayet, tāvat kakṣam pakṣam ca-ubhayataḥ | 12 |
- KAZ10.5.13/ pañca.catvāriṁśad evaṁ rathā ratha.vyūhe bhavanti, dve śate pañca.vimśatiś ca-aśvāḥ, ṣaṭ.śatāni pañca.saptatiś ca puruṣāḥ pratiyoddhāraḥ, tāvantaḥ pāda.gopāḥ | 13 |
- KAZ10.5.14/ eṣa sama.vyūhaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ10.5.15/ tasya dvi.ratha.uttarā vṛddhir ā.eka.vimśati.rathād iti | 15 |
- KAZ10.5.16/ evam oḥ daśa sama.vyūha.prakṛtayo bhavanti | 16 |
- KAZ10.5.17/ pakṣa.kakṣa.urasyānām mitho viṣama.saṅkhyāne viṣama.vyūhaḥ | 17 |
- KAZ10.5.18/ tasya-apī dvi.ratha-uttarā vṛddhir ā.eka.vimśati.rathād iti | 18 |
- KAZ10.5.19/ evam oḥ daśa viṣama.vyūha.prakṛtayo bhavanti | 19 |
- KAZ10.5.20/ ataḥ sainyānām vyūha.śeṣam āvāpaḥ kāryaḥ | 20 |
- KAZ10.5.21/ rathānām dvau tri.bhāgāv aṅgeṣv āvāpayet, śeṣam urasyām sthāpayet | 21 |
- KAZ10.5.22/ evaṁ tri.bhāga.ūno rathānām āvāpaḥ kāryaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ10.5.23/ tena hastinām aśvānām āvāpo vyākhyātaḥ | 23 |
- KAZ10.5.24/ yāvad.aśva.ratha.dvipānām yuddha.sambādhanm na kuryāt tāvad āvāpaḥ kāryaḥ | 24 |
- KAZ10.5.25/ daṇḍa.bāhulyam āvāpaḥ | 25 |
- KAZ10.5.26/ patti.bāhulyam pratyāpāvaḥ | 26 |
- KAZ10.5.27/ eka.aṅga.bāhulyam anvāvāpaḥ | 27 |
- KAZ10.5.28/ dūṣya.bāhulyam atyāvāpaḥ | 28 |
- KAZ10.5.29/ para.āvāpāt pratyāvāpāc ca catur.guṇād ā.aṣṭa.guṇād iti vā vibhavataḥ sainyānām āvāpaḥ | 29 |
- KAZ10.5.30/ ratha.vyūhena hasti.vyūho vyākhyātaḥ | 30 |
- KAZ10.5.31/ vyāmiśro vā hasti.ratha.aśvānām - cakra.anteṣu hastinaḥ pārśvayor aśvā rathā urasye | 31 |
- KAZ10.5.32/ hastinām urasyām rathānām kakṣāv aśvānām pakṣāv iti madhya.bhedī | 32 |
- KAZ10.5.33/ viparīto 'nta.bhedī | 33 |

²²³[K tr. 515 :: K2 tr. 445

- KAZ10.5.34/ hastinām eva tu śuddhaḥ - sāmānāhyānām urasyam aupavāhyānām jaghanam
vyālānām koṭyāv iti | 34 |
- KAZ10.5.35/ aśva.vyūho - varmaṇām urasyam śuddhānām kakṣa.pakṣāv iti | 35 |
- KAZ10.5.36/ patti.vyūhaḥ - purastād āvaraṇinaḥ prṣṭhato dhanvinaḥ | 36 |
- KAZ10.5.37/ iti śuddhāḥ | 37 |
- KAZ10.5.38/ pattayaḥ pakṣayor aśvāḥ pārśvayoḥ hastinaḥ prṣṭhato rathāḥ purastāt,
para.vyūha.vaśena vā viparyāsaḥ | 38 |
- KAZ10.5.39/ iti dvyaṅga.bala.vibhāgaḥ | 39 |
- KAZ10.5.40/ tena tryaṅga.bala.vibhāgo vyākhyātaḥ | 40 |
- KAZ10.5.41/ daṇḍa.sampat sāra.balam puṁsām | 41 |
- KAZ10.5.42/ hasty.aśvayor viśeṣaḥ kulaṁ jātiḥ sattvaṁ vayaḥ.sthatā prāṇo varṣma javaś tejāḥ
śilpaṁ stairyam udagrataḥ vidheyatvaṁ suvyañjana.ācārata-iti | 42 |
- KAZ10.5.43/ patty.aśva.ratha.dvipānām sāra.tri.bhāgam urasyam sthāpayet, dvau tri.bhāgau
kakṣam pakṣam ca-ubhayataḥ, anulomam anusāram, pratilomam tṛtiya.sāram, phalgu
pratilomam | 43 |
- KAZ10.5.44/ evaṁ sarvam upayogaṁ gamayet | 44 |
- KAZ10.5.45/ phalgu.balam anteṣv avadhāya vega.abhihūliko bhavati | 45 |
- KAZ10.5.46/ sāra.balam agrataḥ kṛtvā koṭiṣv anusāram kuryāt, jaghane tṛtiya.sāram,
madhye phalgu.balam | 46 |
- KAZ10.5.47/ evaṁ etat sahiṣṇu bhavati | 47 |
- KAZ10.5.48/ vyūham tu sthāpayitvā pakṣa.kakṣa.urasyānām ekena dvābhyām vā praharet,
śeṣaiḥ pratigṛhṇīyāt | 48 |
- KAZ10.5.49/ yat parasya durbalam vīta.hasty.aśvaṁ dūṣya.amātyaṁ kṛta.upajāpaṁ vā
tat.prabhūta.sāreṇa-abhihanyāt | 49 |
- KAZ10.5.50/ yad vā parasya sārīṣṭham tad.dvi.guṇa.sāreṇa-abhihanyāt | 50 |
- KAZ10.5.51/ yad aṅgam alpa.sāram ātmanas tad bahunā-upacinuyāt | 51 |
- KAZ10.5.52/ yataḥ parasya-apacayas tato 'bhyāse vyūheta, yatot vā bhayaṁ syāt | 52 |
- KAZ10.5.53/ abhisṛtaṁ parisṛtam atisṛtam apasṛtam unmathya.avadhānaṁ valayo
go.mūtrikā maṇḍalaṁ prakīrṇikā vyāvṛtta.prṣṭham anuvamśam agrataḥ pārśvābhyām
prṣṭhato bhagna.rakṣā bhagna.anupāta ity aśva.yuddhāni | 53 |
- KAZ10.5.54/ prakīrṇika.āvarjāny etāny eva caturṇām aṅgānām vyasta.samastānām vā
ghātaḥ, pakṣa.kakṣa.urasyānām ca prabhañjanam avaskandaḥ sauptikaṁ ca-iti hasit.yuddhāni
| 54 |
- KAZ10.5.55/ unmathya.avadhāna.varjāny etāny eva sva.bhūmāv
abhiyāna.apayāna.sthita.yuddhāni-iti ratha.yuddhāni | 55 |
- KAZ10.5.56/ sarva.deśa.kāla.praharaṇam upānīśu.daṇḍas ca-iti patti.yuddhāni | 56 |
- KAZ10.5.57ab/ etena vidhinā vyūhān ojaṁ yugmāś ca kārayet |
- KAZ10.5.57cd/ vibhavo yāvad aṅgānām caturṇām sadṛśo bhavet || 57 ||
- KAZ10.5.58ab/ dve śate dhanuṣāṁ gatvā rājā tiṣṭhet pratigrahe |
- KAZ10.5.58cd/ bhinna.saṅghātanam tasmān na yudhyeta-apratigrahaḥ || 58 ||

10.6 Chapter 6 (Sections 158; 159): Staff, Snake, Circle and Diffuse Arrays; Counter-arrays against Them

224

- KAZ10.6.01/ pakṣāv urasyam pratigraha ity auśanaso vyūha.vibhāgaḥ | 1 |
- KAZ10.6.02/ pakṣau kakṣāv urasym pratigraha iti bārhasptyaḥ | 2 |

²²⁴[K tr. 521 :: K2 tr. 450

- KAZ10.6.03/ prapakṣa.kakṣa.urasyā ubhayoḥ daṇḍa.bhoga.maṇḍala.asaṁhataḥ
prakṛti.vyūhāḥ | 3 |
- KAZ10.6.04/ tatra tiryag.vṛttir daṇḍaḥ | 4 |
- KAZ10.6.05/ samastānām anvāvṛttir bhogaḥ | 5 |
- KAZ10.6.06/ saratām sarvato.vṛttir maṇḍalaḥ | 6 |
- KAZ10.6.07/ sthitānām pṛthag.anīka.vṛttir asaṁhataḥ | 7 |
- KAZ10.6.08/ pakṣa.kakṣa.urasyaiḥ samam vartamāno daṇḍaḥ | 8 |
- KAZ10.6.09/ sa kakṣa.atikrāntaḥ pradaraḥ | 9 |
- KAZ10.6.10/ sa eva pakṣa.kakṣābhyām pratikrānto dṛḍhakaḥ | 10 |
- KAZ10.6.11/ sa eva atikrāntaḥ pakṣābhyām asahyaḥ | 11 |
- KAZ10.6.12/ pakṣāv avasthāpya-urasya.atikrāntaḥ śyenaḥ | 12 |
- KAZ10.6.13/ viparyaye cāpaṁ cāpa.kukuṣiḥ pratiṣṭhaḥ supraṭiṣṭhaś ca | 13 |
- KAZ10.6.14/ cāpa.pakṣaḥ sañjayaḥ | 14 |
- KAZ10.6.15/ sa eva-urasya.atikrānto vijayaḥ | 15 |
- KAZ10.6.16/ sthūla.karṇa.pakṣaḥ sthūṇa.ākaraṇaḥ | 16 |
- KAZ10.6.17/ dvi.guṇa.pakṣa.sthūṇo viśāla.vijayaḥ | 17 |
- KAZ10.6.18/ try.abhikrānta.pakṣaś camū.mukhaḥ | 18 |
- KAZ10.6.19/ viparyaye jhaṣa.āśyaḥ | 19 |
- KAZ10.6.20/ ūrdhva.rājir daṇḍaḥ sūci | 20 |
- KAZ10.6.21/ dvau daṇḍau valayaḥ | 21 |
- KAZ10.6.22/ catvāro durjayaḥ | 22 |
- KAZ10.6.23/ iti daṇḍa.vyūhāḥ | 23 |
- KAZ10.6.24/ pakṣa.kakṣa.urasyair viśamaṁ vartamāno bhogaḥ | 24 |
- KAZ10.6.25/ sa sarpa.sārī go.mūtrikā vā | 25 |
- KAZ10.6.26/ sa yugma.urasyo daṇḍa.pakṣaḥ śakaṭaḥ | 26 |
- KAZ10.6.27/ viparyaye makaraḥ | 27 |
- KAZ10.6.28/ hasty.asva.rathair vyatikīrṇaḥ śakaṭaḥ pāripatantakaḥ | 28 |
- KAZ10.6.29/ iti bhoga.vyūhāḥ | 29 |
- KAZ10.6.30/ pakṣa.kakṣa.urasyānām ekī.bhāve maṇḍalaḥ | 30 |
- KAZ10.6.31/ sa sarvato.mukhaḥ sarvato.bhadraḥ | 31 |
- KAZ10.6.32/ aṣṭa.anīko durjayaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ10.6.33/ iti maṇḍala.vyūhāḥ | 33 |
- KAZ10.6.34/ pakṣa.kakṣa.urasyānām asaṁhatād asaṁhataḥ | 34 |
- KAZ10.6.35/ sa pañca.anīkānām ākṛti.sthāpanād vajro godhā vā | 35 |
- KAZ10.6.36/ caturṇām uddhānakaḥ kākapadī vā | 36 |
- KAZ10.6.37/ trayāṇām ardha.candrakaḥ karkaṭaka.śṛṅgī vā | 37 |
- KAZ10.6.38/ ity asaṁhata.vyūhāḥ | 38 |
- KAZ10.6.39/ ratha.urasyo hasti.kakṣo 'śva.pṛṣṭho 'riṣṭaḥ | 39 |
- KAZ10.6.40/ pattayo 'śvā rathā hastinaś ca-anupṛṣṭham acalaḥ | 40 |
- KAZ10.6.41/ hastino 'śvā rathāḥ pattayaś ca-anupṛṣṭham apratihataḥ | 41 |
- KAZ10.6.42/ teṣāṁ pradaraṁ dṛḍhakena ghātayet, dṛḍhakam asahyena, śyenaṁ cāpena,
pratiṣṭham supraṭiṣṭhena, sañjayaṁ vijayena, sthūṇa.ākaraṇaṁ viśāla.vijayena, pāripatantakaṁ
sarvato.bhadreṇa | 42 |
- KAZ10.6.43/ durjayena sarvān prativyūheta | 43 |
- KAZ10.6.44/ patty.asva.ratha.dvipānām pūrvam pūrvam uttareṇa ghātayet, hīna.aṅgam
adhika.aṅgena ca-iti | 44 |
- KAZ10.6.45/ aṅga.daśakasya-ekaḥ patiḥ patikaḥ, patika.daśakasya-ekaḥ senā.patiḥ,
tad.daśakasya-eko nāyaka iti | 45 |

KAZ10.6.46/ sa tūrya.ghoṣa.dhvaja.patākābhīr vyūha.aṅgānām sañjñāḥ sthāpayed
aṅga.vibhāge saṅghāte sthāne gamane vyāvartane praharaṇe ca | 46 |
KAZ10.6.47/ same vyūhe deśa.kāla.sāra.yogāt siddhiḥ | 47 |
KAZ10.6.48ab/ yantrair upaniṣad.yogais tikṣṇair vyāsakta.ghātibhiḥ |
KAZ10.6.48cd/ māyābhīr deva.samyogaiḥ śakaṭair hasti.bhīṣaṇaiḥ || 48 ||
KAZ10.6.49ab/ dūṣya.prakopair go.yūthaiḥ skandha.āvāra.pradīpanaiḥ |
KAZ10.6.49cd/ koṭi.jaghana.ghātair vā dūta.vyañjana.bhedanaiḥ || 49 ||
KAZ10.6.50ab/ "durgam dagdham hr̥tam vā te kopah kulyaḥ samutthitaḥ |
KAZ10.6.50cd/ śatrur āṭaviko vā" iti parasya-udvegam ācāret || 50 ||
KAZ10.6.51ab/ ekaṁ hanyān na vā hanyād iṣuḥ kṣipto dhanuṣmatā |
KAZ10.6.51cd/ prajñānena tu matiḥ kṣiptā hanyād garbha.gatān api || 51 ||

11 Book 11: Policy towards Oligarchies

225

11.1 Chapter 1 (Sections 160; 161): The Policy of Sowing Dissensions; Forms of Silent Punishment

226

KAZ11.1.01/ saṅgha.lābho daṇḍa.mitra.lābhānām uttamaḥ | 1 |
KAZ11.1.02/ saṅghā hi saṁhatatvād adhr̥ṣyāḥ pareṣām | 2 |
KAZ11.1.03/ tān anuguṇān bhuñjīta sāma.dānābhyām, viguṇān bheda.daṇḍābhyām | 3 |
KAZ11.1.04/ kāmboja.surāṣṭra.kṣatriya.śreṇy.ādayo vārtta.śāstra.upajīvināḥ | 4 |
KAZ11.1.05/ licchivika.vṛjika.mallaka.madraka.kukura.kuru.pāñcāla.ādayo
rāja.śabda.upajīvināḥ | 5 |
KAZ11.1.06/ sarveṣām āsannāḥ sattriṇāḥ saṅghānām
paraspara.nyaṅga.dveṣa.vaira.kalaha.sthānāny upalabhya krama.abhinītam bheda
upacārayeyuḥ "asau tvā vijalpati" iti | 6 |
KAZ11.1.07/ evam ubhayato.baddha.roṣāṇām vidyā.śilpa.dyūta.vaihārikeṣv ācārya.vyañjanā
bāla.kalahān utpādayeyuḥ | 7 |
KAZ11.1.08/ veśa.śauṇḍikeṣu vā pratiloma.praśamsābhiḥ saṅgha.mukhya.manuṣyāṇām
tikṣṇāḥ kalahān utpādayeyuḥ, kṛtya.pakṣa.upagraheṇa vā | 8 |
KAZ11.1.09/ kumārakān viśiṣṭac.chindikayā hīnac.chindikān utsāhayeyuḥ | 9 |
KAZ11.1.10/ viśiṣṭānām ca-eka.pātram vivāham vā hīnebhyo vārayeyuḥ | 10 |
KAZ11.1.11/ hīnān vā viśiṣṭair eka.pātre vivāhe vā yojayeyuḥ | 11 |
KAZ11.1.12/ avahīnān vā tulya.bhāva.upagamane kulataḥ pauraṣataḥ sthāna.viparyāsato vā
| 12 |
KAZ11.1.13/ vyavahāram avasthitam vā pratiloma.sthāpanena niśāmayeyuḥ | 13 |
KAZ11.1.14/ vivāda.padeṣu vā dravya.paśu.manuṣya.abhighātena rātrau tikṣṇāḥ kalahān
utpādayeyuḥ | 14 |
KAZ11.1.15/ sarveṣu ca kalaha.sthāneṣu hīna.pakṣam rājā kośa.daṇḍābhyām upagr̥hya
pratipakṣa.vadhe yojayet | 15 |
KAZ11.1.16/ bhinnān apavāhayed vā | 16 |
KAZ11.1.17/ bhūmau ca-eṣām pañca.kulīm daśa.kulīm vā kṛṣyāyām niveśayet | 17 |
KAZ11.1.18/ ekasthā hi śāstra.grahaṇa.samarthāḥ syuḥ | 18 |
KAZ11.1.19/ samavāye ca-eṣām atyayam sthāpayet | 19 |

²²⁵ [K tr. 526–532:: K2 tr. 454–459

²²⁶ [K tr. 526 :: K2 tr. 454

- KAZ11.1.20/ rāja.śabdibhir avaruddham avakṣiptam vā kulyam abhijātām rāja.putratve sthāpayet | 20 |
- KAZ11.1.21/ kārtaṅtika.ādiś ca-asya vargo rāja.lakṣaṇyatām saṅgheṣu prakāśayet | 21 |
- KAZ11.1.22/ saṅgha.mukhyāṁś ca dharmiṣṭhā-n upajapet "sva.dharmam amuṣya rājñāḥ putre bhrātari vā pratipadyadhvam" iti | 22 |
- KAZ11.1.23/ pratipanneṣu kṛtya.pakṣa.upagraha.artham artham daṇḍam ca preṣayet | 23 |
- KAZ11.1.24/ vikrama.kāle śauṇḍika.vyañjanāḥ putra.dāra.preta.apadeśena "naiṣecanikam" iti madana.rasa.yuktān madya.kumbhān-śataśaḥ prayaccheyuḥ | 24 |
- KAZ11.1.25/ caitya.daivata.dvāra.rakṣā.sthāneṣu ca sattriṇaḥ samaya.karma.nikṣepaṁ sahiranya.abhijñāna.mudrāṇi hiraṇya.bhājanāni ca prarūpayeyuḥ | 25 |
- KAZ11.1.26/ dṛśyamāneṣu ca saṅgheṣu "rājakiyāḥ" ity āvedayeyuḥ | 26 |
- KAZ11.1.27/ atha-avaskandaṁ dadyāt | 27 |
- KAZ11.1.28/ saṅghānām vā vāhana.hiraṇye kālike gr̥hītvā saṅgha.mukhyāya prakhyātām dravyaṁ prayacchet | 28 |
- KAZ11.1.29/ tad eṣāṁ yācite "dattam amuṣmai mukhyāya" iti brūyāt | 29 |
- KAZ11.1.30/ etena skandha.āvāra.aṭavī.bhedo vyākhyātaḥ | 30 |
- KAZ11.1.31/ saṅgha.mukhya.putram ātma.sambhāvitam vā sattri grāhayet "amuṣya rājñāḥ putras tvam, śatru.bhayād iha nyasto 'si" iti | 31 |
- KAZ11.1.32/ pratipannaṁ rājā kośa.daṇḍābhyām upagr̥hya saṅgheṣu vikramayet | 32 |
- KAZ11.1.33/ avāpta.arthas tam api pravāsayet | 33 |
- KAZ11.1.34/ bandhakī.poṣakāḥ plavaka.naṭa.nartaka.saubhikā vā praṇihitāḥ strībhiḥ parama.rūpa.yauvanābhiḥ saṅgha.mukhyān unmādayeyuḥ | 34 |
- KAZ11.1.35/ jāta.kāmānām anyatamasya pratyayaṁ kṛtvā-anyatra gamanena prasabha.haraṇena vā kalahān utpādayeyuḥ | 35 |
- KAZ11.1.36/ kalahe tīkṣṇāḥ karma kuryuḥ "hato 'yam ittham kāmukaḥ" iti | 36 |
- KAZ11.1.37/ viśāmvāditaṁ vā marṣayamāṇam abhiṣṭya strī brūyāt "asau mām mukhyas tvayi jāta.kāmāṁ bād hate, tasmin-jīvati na-iha sthāsyāmi" iti ghātam asya prayojayet | 37 |
- KAZ11.1.38/ prasahya.apahr̥tā vā vana.ante kriḍā.gr̥he vā-apahartāraṁ rātrau tīkṣṇena ghātayet, svayaṁ vā rasena | 38 |
- KAZ11.1.39/ tataḥ prakāśayet "amunā me priyo hataḥ" iti | 39 |
- KAZ11.1.40/ jāta.kāmaṁ vā siddha.vyañjanaḥ sāmavadanikībhir auśadhībhiḥ saṁvāsyā rasena-atisandhāya-apagacchet | 40 |
- KAZ11.1.41/ tasminn apakrānte sattriṇaḥ para.prayogam abhiśamseyuḥ | 41 |
- KAZ11.1.42/ āḍhya.vidhavā gūḍha.ājīvā yoga.striyo vā dāya.nikṣepa.artham vivadamānāḥ saṅgha.mukhyān unmādayeyuḥ, aditi.kauśika.striyo nartakī.gāyanā vā | 42 |
- KAZ11.1.43/ pratipannān gūḍha.veśmasu rātri.samāgama.praviṣṭāṁś tīkṣṇā hanyur baddhvā hareyur vā | 43 |
- KAZ11.1.44/ sattri vā strī.lolupaṁ saṅgha.mukhyaṁ prarūpayet "amuṣmin grāme daridra.kullam apasṛtam, tasya strī rāja.arhā, gr̥hāṇa-enām" iti | 44 |
- KAZ11.1.45/ gr̥hītāyām ardha.māsa.anantaraṁ siddha.vyañjano dūṣya.saṅgha.mukhya.madhye prakrośet "asau me mukhyo bhāryāṁ snuṣāṁ bhaginīm duhitaraṁ vā-adhicarati" iti | 45 |
- KAZ11.1.46/ taṁ cet saṅgho nigr̥hṇīyāt, rājā-enam upagr̥hya viguṇeṣu vikramayet | 46 |
- KAZ11.1.47/ anigr̥hīte siddha.vyañjanaṁ rātrau tīkṣṇāḥ pravāsayeyuḥ | 47 |
- KAZ11.1.48/ tatas tad.vyañjanāḥ prakrośeyuḥ "asau brahmahā brāhmaṇī.jāraś ca" iti | 48 |
- KAZ11.1.49/ kārtaṅtika.vyañjano vā kanyām anyena vṛtām anyasya prarūpayet "amuṣya kanyā rāja.patnī rāja.prasavinī ca bhaviṣyati, sarva.svena prasahya vā-enām labhasva" iti | 49 |
- KAZ11.1.50/ alabhyamānāyām para.pakṣam uddharṣayet | 50 |

KAZ11.1.51/ labdhāyām siddhaḥ kalahaḥ | 51 |
 KAZ11.1.52/ bhikṣukī vā priya.bhāryām mukhyaṁ brūyāt "asau te mukhyo yauvana.utsikto
 bhāryāyām mām prāhiṇot, tasya-aham bhayāl lekhyam ābharaṇaṁ grhītvā-āgatā-asmi,
 nirdoṣā te bhāryā, gūḍham asmin pratikartavyam, aham api tāvat pratipatsyāmi" iti | 52 |
 KAZ11.1.53/ evaṁ.ādiṣu kalaha.sthāneṣu svayam utpanne vā kalahe tīkṣṇair utpādite vā
 hīna.pakṣaṁ rājā kośa.daṇḍābhyām upagrhya viguṇeṣu vikramayed apavāhayed vā | 53 |
 KAZ11.1.54/ saṅgheṣv evam eka.rājo varteta | 54 |
 KAZ11.1.55/ saṅghās ca-apy evam eka.rājād etebhyo 'tisaṅghān ebhyo rakṣayeyuḥ | 55 |
 KAZ11.1.56ab/ saṅgha.mukhyaś ca saṅgheṣu nyāya.vṛttir hitaḥ priyaḥ |
 KAZ11.1.56cd/ dānto yukta.janas tiṣṭhet sarva.citta.anuvartakaḥ || 56 ||

12 Book 12: Concerning the Weaker King

227

12.1 Chapter 1 (Section 162): The Mission of the Envoy

228

KAZ12.1.01/ "balīyasā-abhiyukto durbalaḥ sarvatra-anupraṇato vetasa.dharmā tiṣṭhet | 1 |
 KAZ12.1.02/ indrasya hi sa praṇamati yo balīyaso namati" iti bhāradvājaḥ | 2 |
 KAZ12.1.03/ "sarva.sandohena balānām yudhyeta | 3 |
 KAZ12.1.04/ parākramo hi vyasanam apahanti | 4 |
 KAZ12.1.05/ sva.dharmaś ca-eṣa kṣatriyasya, yuddhe jayaḥ parājayo vā" iti viśāla.akṣaḥ | 5 |
 KAZ12.1.06/ na-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ12.1.07/ sarvatra-anupraṇataḥ kulaidāka iva nirāso jīvite vasati | 7 |
 KAZ12.1.08/ yudhyamānaś ca-alpa.sainyaḥ samudram iva-aplavo 'vagāhamānaḥ sīdati | 8 |
 KAZ12.1.09/ tad.viśiṣṭaṁ tu rājānam āśrito durgam aviśahyaṁ vā ceṣṭeta | 9 |
 KAZ12.1.10/ trayo 'bhiyoktāro dharmā.lobha.asura.vijayina iti | 10 |
 KAZ12.1.11/ teṣāṁ abhyavapattyā dharmā.vijayī tuṣyati | 11 |
 KAZ12.1.12/ tam abhyavapadyeta, pareṣāṁ api bhayāt | 12 |
 KAZ12.1.13/ bhūmi.dravya.haraṇena lobha.vijayī tuṣyati | 13 |
 KAZ12.1.14/ tam arthena-abhyavapadyeta | 14 |
 KAZ12.1.15/ bhūmi.dravya.putra.dāra.prāṇa.haraṇena-asura.vijayī | 15 |
 KAZ12.1.16/ taṁ bhūmi.dravyābhyām upagrhya-agrāhyaḥ pratikurvīta | 16 |
 KAZ12.1.17/ teṣāṁ anyatamam uttiṣṭhamānaṁ sandhinā mantra.yuddhena kūṭa.yuddhena
 vā prativyūheta | 17 |
 KAZ12.1.18/ śatru.pakṣam asya sāma.dānābhyām, sva.pakṣaṁ bheda.daṇḍābhyām | 18 |
 KAZ12.1.19/ durgam rāṣṭraṁ skandha.āvāraṁ vā-asya gūḍhāḥ śastra.rasa.agnibhiḥ
 sādhayeyuḥ | 19 |
 KAZ12.1.20/ sarvataḥ pārṣṇim asya grāhayet | 20 |
 KAZ12.1.21/ aṭavībhir vā rājyaṁ ghātayet, tat.kulīna.aparuddhābhyām vā hārayet | 21 |
 KAZ12.1.22/ apakāra.anteṣu ca-asya dūtaṁ preṣayet | 22 |
 KAZ12.1.23/ anapakṛtya vā sandhānam | 23 |
 KAZ12.1.24/ tathā-apy abhiprayāntaṁ kośa.daṇḍayoḥ pāda.uttaram aho.rātra.uttaraṁ vā
 sandhim yāceta | 24 |
 KAZ12.1.25/ sa ced daṇḍa.sandhim yāceta, kuṇṭham asmai hasty.aśvaṁ dadyād, utsāhitaṁ
 vā gara.yuktam | 25 |

²²⁷[K tr. 533–549 :: K2 tr. 460–473

²²⁸[K tr. 533 :: K2 tr. 460

KAZ12.1.26/ puruṣa.sandhiṃ yāceta, dūṣya.amitra.aṭavī.balam asmai dadyād
yoga.puruṣa.adhiṣṭhitam | 26 |
KAZ12.1.27/ tathā kuryād yathā-ubhaya.vināśaḥ syāt | 27 |
KAZ12.1.28/ tīkṣṇa.balaṃ vā-asmai dadyād yad avamānitaṃ vikurvīta, maulam anuraktaṃ
vā yad asya vyasane 'pakuryāt | 28 |
KAZ12.1.29/ kośa.sandhiṃ yāceta, sāram asmai dadyād yasya kretāraṃ na-adhigacchet,
kupyam ayuddha.yogyaṃ vā | 29 |
KAZ12.1.30/ bhūmi.sandhiṃ yāceta, pratyādeyāṃ nitya.amitrām anapāśrayāṃ
mahā.kṣaya.vyaya.niveśāṃ vā-asmai bhūmiṃ dadyāt | 30 |
KAZ12.1.31/ sarva.svena vā rāja.dhānī.varjena sandhiṃ yāceta balīyasaḥ | 31 |
KAZ12.1.32ab/ yat prasahya hared anyas tat prayacced upāyataḥ |
KAZ12.1.32cd/ rakṣet sva.dehaṃ na dhanam kā hy anitye dhane dayā || 32 ||

12.2 Chapter 2 (Sections 163; 164): Fight with the Weapon of Diplomacy; Assassination of Army Chiefs

229

KAZ12.2.01/ sa cet sandhau na-avatiṣṭheta, brūyād enaṃ - "ime śatru.ṣaḍ.varga.vaśagā rājāno
vinaṣṭāḥ, teṣāṃ anātmavatāṃ na-arhasi mārgam anugantum | 1 |
KAZ12.2.02/ dharmam arthaṃ ca-avekṣasva | 2 |
KAZ12.2.03/ mitra.mukhā hy amitrās te ye tvā sāhasam adharmam artha.atikramaṃ ca
grāhayanti | 3 |
KAZ12.2.04/ śūrais tyakta.ātmabhiḥ saha yoddhuṃ sāhasam, jana.kṣayam ubhayataḥ kartum
adharmāḥ, dṛṣṭam arthaṃ mitram aduṣṭam ca tyaktum artha.atikramaḥ | 4 |
KAZ12.2.05/ mitravāṃś ca sa rājā, bhūyaś ca-etena-arthena mitrāṇy udyojayīṣyati yāni tvā
sarvato 'bhiyāsyanti | 5 |
KAZ12.2.06/ na ca madhyama.udāsīnayor maṇḍalasya vā parityaktaḥ, bhavāṃś tu
parityaktaḥ yattvā samudyuktam upaprekṣante "bhūyaḥ kṣaya.vyayābhyāṃ yujyatām, mitrāc
ca bhidyatām, atha-enaṃ parityakta.mūlaṃ sukhena-ucchetsyāmaḥ" iti | 6 |
KAZ12.2.07/ sa bhavān na-arhati mitra.mukhānām amitrāṇām śrotum, mitrāṇy udvejyitum
amitrāṃś ca śreyasā yoktum, prāṇa.samśayam anarthaṃ ca-upagantum" iti yacchet | 7 |
KAZ12.2.08/ tathā-api pratiṣṭhamānasya prakṛti.kopam asya kārayed yathā saṅgha.vṛtte
vyākhyātāṃ yoga.vāmane ca | 8 |
KAZ12.2.09/ tīkṣṇa.rasada.prayogaṃ ca | 9 |
KAZ12.2.10/ yad uktam ātma.rakṣitake rakṣyaṃ tatra tīkṣṇān rasadāṃś ca prayuñjīta | 10 |
KAZ12.2.11/ bandhakī.poṣakāḥ parama.rūpa.yauvanābhiḥ strībhiḥ senā.mukhyān
unmādayeḥ | 11 |
KAZ12.2.12/ bahūnām ekasyāṃ dvayor vā mukhyayoḥ kāme jāte tīkṣṇāḥ kalahān
utpādayeḥ | 12 |
KAZ12.2.13/ kalahe parājita.pakṣaṃ paratra.apagamane yātrā.sāhāyya.dāne vā bhartur
yojayeḥ | 13 |
KAZ12.2.14/ kāma.vaśān vā siddha.vyañjanāḥ sāmvananikībhīr oṣadhībhīr atisandhānāya
mukhyeṣu rasaṃ dāpayeḥ | 14 |
KAZ12.2.15/ vaidehaka.vyañjane vā rāja.mahiṣyāḥ subhagāyāḥ preṣyāṃ āsannāṃ
kāma.nimittam arthena-abhivṛṣya parityajet | 15 |
KAZ12.2.16/ tasya-eva paricāraka.vyañjana.upadiṣṭaḥ siddha.vyañjanaḥ sāmvananikīm
oṣadhīm dadyāt "vaidehaka.śarīre 'vaghātavyā" iti | 16 |
KAZ12.2.17/ siddhe subhagāyā apy enaṃ yogam upadiṣet "rāja.śarīre 'vadhātavyā" iti | 17 |

²²⁹[K tr. 535 :: K2 tr. 462

KAZ12.2.18/ tato rasena-atisandadhyāt | 18 |
KAZ12.2.19/ kārtāntika.vyañjano vā mahā.mātram "rāja.lakṣaṇa.sampannam"
krama.abhinītaṁ brūyāt | 19 |
KAZ12.2.20/ bhāryām asya bhikṣukī "rāja.patnī rāja.prasavinī vā bhaviṣyasi" iti | 20 |
KAZ12.2.21/ bhāryā.vyañjanā vā mahā.mātram brūyāt "rājā kila mām avarodhayiṣyati,
tava-antikāya pattra.lekhyam ābharaṇam ca-idaṁ parivrājikayā-āhṛtam" iti | 21 |
KAZ12.2.22/ sūda.ārālika.vyañjano vā rasa.prayoga.arthaṁ rāja.vacanam arthaṁ ca-asya
lobhanīyam abhinayet | 22 |
KAZ12.2.23/ tad asya vaidehaka.vyañjanaḥ pratisandadhyāt, kārya.siddhiṁ ca brūyāt | 23 |
KAZ12.2.24/ evam ekena dvābhyām tribhir ity upāyair eka.ekam asya mahā.mātram
vikramāya-apagamanāya vā yojayet | iti | 24 |
KAZ12.2.25/ durgeṣu ca-asya śūnya.pāla.āsannāḥ sattriṇaḥ paura.jānapadeṣu
maitrī.nimittam āvedayeyuḥ - "śūnya.pālena-uktā yodhās ca-adhikaraṇasthās ca "kr̥cchra.gato
rājā jivann āgamiṣyati, na vā, prasahya vittam ārjayadhvam, amitramś ca hata" iti | 25 |
KAZ12.2.26/ bahulī.bhūte tīkṣṇāḥ paurān niśāsv āhārayeyuḥ, mukhyāṁś ca-abhīhanyuḥ
"evam kriyante ye śūnya.pālasya na śuśrūṣante" iti | 26 |
KAZ12.2.27/ śūnya.pāla.sthāneṣu ca saśoṇitāni śāstra.vitta.bandhanāny utsrjeyuḥ | 27 |
KAZ12.2.28/ tataḥ sattriṇaḥ "śūnya.pālo ghātayati vilopayati ca" ity āvedayeyuḥ | 28 |
KAZ12.2.29/ evam jānapadān samāhartur bhedayeyuḥ | 29 |
KAZ12.2.30/ samāhartr̥.puruṣāṁś tu grāma.madhyeṣu rātrau tīkṣṇā hatvā brūyuḥ "evam
kriyante ye jana.padam adharmaṇa bādhanṭe" iti | 30 |
KAZ12.2.31/ samutpanne doṣe śūnya.pālaṁ samāhartāraṁ vā prakṛti.kopena ghātayeyuḥ |
31 |
KAZ12.2.32/ tat.kulīnam aparuddham vā pratipādayeyuḥ | 32 |
KAZ12.2.33ab/ antaḥ.pura.pura.dvāraṁ dravya.dhānya.parigrahān |
KAZ12.2.33cd/ daheyus tāmś ca hanyur vā brūyur asya-ārta.vādinaḥ || 33 ||

12.3 Chapter 3 (Sections 164; 165): Assassination of Army Chiefs (cont.); Stirring up the Circle of Kings

230

KAZ12.3.01/ rājño rāja.vallabhānām ca-āsannāḥ sattriṇaḥ patty.aśva.ratha.dvipa.mukhyānām
"rājā krudhah" iti suhr̥d.viśvāsena mitra.sthānīyeṣu kathayeyuḥ | 1 |
KAZ12.3.02/ bahulī.bhūte tīkṣṇāḥ kṛta.rātri.cāra.pratīkāra gr̥heṣu
"svāmi.vacanena-āgamyatām" iti brūyuḥ | 2 |
KAZ12.3.03/ tānnirgacchata eva-abhīhanyuḥ, "svāmi.sandēṣaḥ" iti ca-āsannān brūyuḥ | 3 |
KAZ12.3.04/ ye ca-apravāsītās tān sattriṇo brūyuḥ "etat tad yad asmābhiḥ kathitam,
jīvitū.kāmena-apakrāntavyam" iti | 4 |
KAZ12.3.05/ yebhyaś ca rājā yācito na dadāti tān sattriṇo brūyuḥ - "uktaḥ śūnya.pālo rājñā
"ayācyam artham asau ca-asau ca mā yācate, mayā pratyākhyātāḥ śatru.samhitāḥ, teṣām
uddharaṇe prayatasva" iti | 5 |
KAZ12.3.06/ tataḥ pūrvavad ācāret | 6 |
KAZ12.3.07/ yebhyaś ca rājā yācito dadāti tān sattriṇo brūyuḥ - "uktaḥ śūnya.pālo rājñā
"ayācyam artham asau ca-asau ca mā yācate, tebhyo mayā so 'rtho viśvāsa.arthaṁ dattaḥ,
śatru.samhitāḥ, teṣām uddharaṇe prayatasva" iti | 7 |
KAZ12.3.08/ tataḥ pūrvavad ācāret | 8 |

²³⁰[K tr. 539 :: K2 tr. 465

KAZ12.3.09/ ye ca-enam̐ yācyam artham̐ na yācante tām sattriṇo brūyuh̐ - "uktaḥ śūnya.pālo rājñā "yācyam artham̐ asau ca-asau ca mā na yācate, kim anyat sva.doṣa.śaṅkitatvāt, teṣām uddharaṇe prayatasva" iti | 9 |

KAZ12.3.10/ tataḥ pūrvavad ācāret | 10 |

KAZ12.3.11/ etena sarvaḥ kṛtya.pakṣo vyākhyātaḥ | 11 |

KAZ12.3.12/ pratyāsanno vā rājānam̐ sattri grāhayet "asau ca-asau ca te mahā.mātraḥ śatru.puruṣaiḥ sambhāṣate" iti | 12 |

KAZ12.3.13/ pratipanne dūṣyān asya śāsana.harān darśayet "etat tat" iti | 13 |

KAZ12.3.14/ senā.mukhya.prakṛti.puruṣān vā bhūmyā hiraṇyena vā lobhayitvā sveṣu vikramayed apavāhayed vā | 14 |

KAZ12.3.15/ yo 'sya putraḥ samīpe durge vā prativasati tam̐ sattriṇā-upajāpayet "ātma.sampannataras tvaṁ putraḥ, tathā-apy antar.hitaḥ, tat.kim upekṣase vikramya gr̥hāṇa, purā tvā yuva.rājo vināśayati" iti | 15 |

KAZ12.3.16/ tat.kulīnam̐ aparuddham̐ vā hiraṇyena pratilobhya brūyāt "antar.balam̐ pratyanta.skandham̐ antam̐ vā-asya pramṛdnīhi" iti | 16 |

KAZ12.3.17/ ātavikān artha.mānābhyām upagr̥hya rājyam̐ asya ghātayet | 17 |

KAZ12.3.18/ pārṣṇi.grāham̐ vā-asya brūyāt "eṣa khalu rājā mām ucchidya tvām ucchetsyati, pārṣṇim̐ asya gr̥hāṇa, tvayī nivṛttasya-aham̐ pārṣṇim̐ grahīṣyāmi" iti | 18 |

KAZ12.3.19/ mitrāṇi vā-asya brūyāt "aham̐ vaḥ setuḥ, mayī vibhinne sarvān eṣa vo rājā plāvayiṣyati, sambhūya vā-asya yātrām̐ vihanāma" iti | 19 |

KAZ12.3.20/ tat.sam̐hatānām̐ asam̐hatānām̐ ca preṣayet "eṣa khalu rājā mām utpātya bhavatsu karma kariṣyati, budhyadhvam, aham̐ vaḥ śreyān abhyupapattum" iti | 20 |

KAZ12.3.21ab/ madhyamasya prahiṇuyād udāsīnasya vā punaḥ |

KAZ12.3.21cd/ yathā-āsannasya mokṣa.artham̐ sarva.svena tad.arpaṇam̐ || 21 ||

12.4 Chapter 4 (Sections 166; 167): Secret Use of Weapons, Fire and Poison; Destruction of Supplies, Reinforcements and Raids

231

KAZ12.4.01/ ye ca-asya durgeṣu vaidehakavyaṇjanāḥ, grāmesu gr̥hapatika.vyaṇjanāḥ, jana.pada.sandhiṣu go.rakṣaka.tāpasa.vyaṇjanāḥ, te sāmanta.ātavika.tat.kulīna.aparuddhānām̐ paṇya.āgāra.pūrvam̐ preṣayeyuh̐ "ayam̐ deśo hāryaḥ" iti | 1 |

KAZ12.4.02/ āgatām̐s ca-eṣām̐ durge gūḍha.puruṣān artha.mānābhyām̐ abhisatkṛtya prakṛtic.chidrāṇi pradarśayeyuh̐ | 2 |

KAZ12.4.03/ teṣu taiḥ saha prahareyuh̐ | 3 |

KAZ12.4.04/ skandha.āvāre vā-asya śauṇḍika.vyaṇjanaḥ putram̐ abhityaktam̐ sthāpayitvā-avaskanda.kāle rasena pravāsayitvā "naiṣecanikam̐" iti madana.rasa.yuktān madyakumbhān-śataśaḥ prayacchet | 4 |

KAZ12.4.05/ śuddham̐ vā madyam̐ pādyam̐ vā madyam̐ dadyād ekam̐ ahaḥ, uttarām̐ ras.siddham̐ prayacchet | 5 |

KAZ12.4.06/ śuddham̐ vā madyam̐ daṇḍa.mukhyebhyaḥ pradāya mada.kāle rasa.siddham̐ prayacchet | 6 |

KAZ12.4.07/ daṇḍa.mukhya.vyaṇjano vā putram̐ abhityaktam̐ iti samānam̐ | 7 |

KAZ12.4.08/ pākva.māmsika.audanika.auṇḍika.āpūpika.vyaṇjanā vā paṇya.viśeṣam̐ avaghoṣayitvā paraspara.saṅgharṣeṇa kālīkam̐ samarghataram̐ iti vā parān āhūya rasena sva.paṇyāny apacārayeyuh̐ | 8 |

²³¹[K tr. 541 :: K2 tr. 467

- KAZ12.4.09/ surā.kṣīra.dadhi.sarpis.tailāni vā tad.vyavaharṭṭ.hasteṣu gr̥hītā striyo bālās ca
rasa.yukteṣu sva.bhājaneṣu parikireyuḥ | 9 |
- KAZ12.4.10/ "anena-argheṇa, viśiṣṭam vā bhūyo dīyatām" iti tatra-eva-avākireyuḥ | 10 |
- KAZ12.4.11/ etāny eva vaidehaka.vyañjanāḥ, paṇya.vireyeṇa-āhartāro vā | 11 |
- KAZ12.4.12/ hasty.aśvānām vidhā.yavaseṣu rasam āsannā dadyuḥ | 12 |
- KAZ12.4.13/ karma.kara.vyañjanā vā rasa.aktaṁ yavasam udakaṁ vā vikrīṇīran | 13 |
- KAZ12.4.14/ cira.saṁsr̥ṣṭā vā go.vāñjikā gavām aja.avīnām vā yūthāny avaskanda.kāleṣu
pareṣām moha.sthāneṣu pramuñceyuḥ, aśva.khara.uṣṭramahiṣa.ādīnām duṣṭāmś ca | 14 |
- KAZ12.4.15/ tad.vyañjanā vā cucchundarī.śoṇita.akta.akṣān | 15 |
- KAZ12.4.16/ lubdhaka.vyañjanā vā vyāla.mṛgān pañjarebhyaḥ pramuñceyuḥ, sarpa.grāhā vā
sarpān ugra.viśān, hasti.jīvino vā hastinaḥ | 16 |
- KAZ12.4.17/ agni.jīvino vā-agnim avastjeyuḥ | 17 |
- KAZ12.4.18/ gūḍha.puruṣā vā vimukhān patty.aśva.ratha.dvipa.mukhyān abhihanyuḥ,
ādīpayeyur vā mukhya.āvāsān | 18 |
- KAZ12.4.19/ dūṣya.amitra.āṭavika.vyañjanāḥ praṇihitāḥ pṛṣṭha.abhighātam
avaskanda.pratigrahaṁ vā kuryuḥ | 19 |
- KAZ12.4.20/ vana.gūḍhā vā pratyanta.skandham upaniṣkr̥ṣya-abhihanyuḥ, eka.ayane
vīvadha.āsāra.prasārān vā | 20 |
- KAZ12.4.21/ sasaṅketaṁ vā rātri.yuddhe bhūri.tūryam āhatya brūyuḥ "anupraviṣṭāḥ smo,
labdhaṁ rājyam" iti | 21 |
- KAZ12.4.22/ rāja.āvāsam anupraviṣṭā vā saṅkuleṣu rājānām hanyuḥ | 22 |
- KAZ12.4.23/ sarvato vā prayātam enaṁ (eva?) mleccha.āṭavika.daṇṭa.cārīṇaḥ
sattra.apāśrayāḥ stambha.vāṭa.apāśrayā vā hanyuḥ | 23 |
- KAZ12.4.24/ lubdhaka.vyañjanā vā-avaskanda.saṅkuleṣu gūḍha.yuddha.hetubhir
abhihanyuḥ | 24 |
- KAZ12.4.25/ eka.ayane vā śaila.stambha.vāṭa.khañjana.antar.udake vā
sva.bhūmi.balena-abhihanyuḥ | 25 |
- KAZ12.4.26/ nadī.saras.taṭāka.setu.bandha.bheda.vegana vā plāvayeyuḥ | 26 |
- KAZ12.4.27/ dhānvana.vana.durga.nimna.durgasthaṁ vā yoga.agni.dhūmābhyām nāśayeyuḥ
| 27 |
- KAZ12.4.28/ saṅkaṭa.gatam agninā, dhānvana.gataṁ dhūmena, nidhāna.gataṁ rasena,
toya.avagāḍhaṁ duṣṭa.grāhair udaka.caraṇair vā tīkṣṇāḥ sādhayeyuḥ, ādīpta.āvāsān
niṣpatantaṁ vā | 28 |
- KAZ12.4.29ab/ yoga.vāmana.yogābhyām yogena-anyatamena vā |
- KAZ12.4.29cd/ amitram atisandadyāt saktam uktāsu bhūmiṣu || 29 ||

12.5 Chapter 5 (Sections 168; 169; 170): Overreaching the Enemy by Trickery; Overreaching by Force; Victory of the Single King

232

- KAZ12.5.01/ daiva.tejyāyām (devatā.ijyāyām?) yātrāyām amitrasya bahūni
pūjā.āgama.sthānāni bhaktiṭaḥ | 1 |
- KAZ12.5.02/ tatra-asya yogam ubjayet | 2 |
- KAZ12.5.03/ devatā.gr̥ha.praviṣṭasya-upari yantra.mokṣaṇena gūḍha.bhittim śilām vā
pātayet | 3 |
- KAZ12.5.04/ śilā.śastra.varṣam uttama.āgārāt, kapāṭam avapātitaṁ vā, bhitti.praṇihitam
eka.deśa.baddhaṁ vā pariḥaṁ mokṣayet | 4 |
- KAZ12.5.05/ devatā.deha.dhvaja.praharaṇāni vā-asya-upariṣṭāt pātayet | 5 |

²³²[K tr. 544 :: K2 tr. 470

- KAZ12.5.06/ sthāna.āsana.gamana.bhūmiṣu vā-asya go.maya.pradehena
gandha.udaka.prasekena vā rasam aticārayet, puṣpa.cūrṇa.upahāreṇa vā | 6 |
- KAZ12.5.07/ gandha.praticchannaṃ vā-asya tīkṣṇaṃ dhūmam atinayet | 7 |
- KAZ12.5.08/ śūlakūpam avapātanaṃ vā śayana.āsana-adyastād yantra.baddha.talam
enaṃ kīla.mokṣaṇena praveśayet | 8 |
- KAZ12.5.09/ pratyāsanne vā-amitre jana.padāj janam avarodha.kṣamam atinayet | 9 |
- KAZ12.5.10/ durgā ca-anavarodha.kṣamam apanayet, pratyādeyam ari.viśayaṃ vā preṣayet
| 10 |
- KAZ12.5.11/ jana.padaṃ ca-ekasthaṃ śaila.vana.nadī.durgeṣv aṭavī.vyavahiteṣu vā
putra.bhrātr.parigrhītaṃ sthāpayet | 11 |
- KAZ12.5.12/ uparodha.hetavo daṇḍa.upanata.vṛtte vyākhyātāḥ | 12 |
- KAZ12.5.13/ tṛṇa.kāṣṭhaṃ ā.yojanād dāhayet | 13 |
- KAZ12.5.14/ udakāni ca dūṣayet, avasrāvayec ca | 14 |
- KAZ12.5.15/ kūpa.kūṭa.avapāta.kaṇṭakiniś ca bahir ubjayet | 15 |
- KAZ12.5.16/ suruṅgāṃ amitra.sthāne bahu.mukhīm kṛtvā nicaya.mukhyān abhihārayet,
amitraṃ vā | 16 |
- KAZ12.5.17/ para.prayuktāyām vā suruṅgāyām parikhāṃ udaka.antikīm khānayet,
kūpa.śālāṃ anusālaṃ vā | 17 |
- KAZ12.5.18/ toya.kumbhān kāmasya.bhāṇḍāni vā śaṅkā.sthāneṣu sthāpayet
khāta.abhijñāna.arthaṃ | 18 |
- KAZ12.5.19/ jñāte suruṅgā.pathe pratisuruṅgāṃ kārayet | 19 |
- KAZ12.5.20/ madhye bhittvā dhūmam udakaṃ vā prayacchet | 20 |
- KAZ12.5.21/ prativihita.durgo vā mūle dāyadāṃ kṛtvā pratilomāṃ asya diśaṃ gacchet, yato
vā mitrair bandhubhir āṭavikair vā saṃsrjyeta parasya-amitrair dūṣyair vā mahadbhiḥ, yato
vā gato 'sya mitrair viyogaṃ kuryāt pārṣṇīm vā grhṇīyāt rājyaṃ vā-asya hārayet
vīvadha.āsāra.prasārān vā vārayet, yato vā śaknuyād ākṣikavad apakṣepeṇa-asya prahartum,
yato vā svaṃ rājyaṃ trāyeta mūlasya-upacayaṃ vā kuryāt | 21 |
- KAZ12.5.22/ yataḥ sandhim abhipretaṃ labheta tato vā gacchet | 22 |
- KAZ12.5.23/ saha.prasthāyino vā-asya preṣayeyuḥ "ayaṃ te śatrur asmākaṃ hasta.gataḥ,
paṇyaṃ viprakāraṃ vā-apadiśya hiraṇyaṃ antaḥ.sāra.balaṃ ca preṣaya yasya-enam arpayema
baddhaṃ pravāsitaṃ vā" iti | 23 |
- KAZ12.5.24/ pratipanne hiraṇyaṃ sāra.balaṃ ca-ādadīta | 24 |
- KAZ12.5.25/ anta.pālo vā durga.sampradāne bala.eka.deśaṃ atinīya viśvastaṃ ghātayet | 25
|
- KAZ12.5.26/ jana.padam ekasthaṃ vā ghātayitum amitra.anīkaṃ āvāhayet | 26 |
- KAZ12.5.27/ tad avaruddha.deśaṃ atinīya viśvastaṃ ghātayet | 27 |
- KAZ12.5.28/ mitra.vyañjano vā bāhyasya preṣayet "kṣīṇaṃ asmin durge dhānyaṃ snehāḥ
kṣāro lavaṇaṃ vā, tad amuṣmin deśe kāle ca pravekṣyati, tad upagṛhāṇa" iti | 28 |
- KAZ12.5.29/ tato rasa.viddhaṃ dhānyaṃ snehaṃ kṣāraṃ lavaṇaṃ vā dūṣya.amitra.āṭavikāḥ
praveśayeyuḥ, anye vā-abhityaktāḥ | 29 |
- KAZ12.5.30/ tena sarva.bhāṇḍa.vīvadha.grahaṇaṃ vyākhyātam | 30 |
- KAZ12.5.31/ sandhim vā kṛtvā hiraṇya.eka.deśaṃ asmai dadyāt, vilambamānaḥ śeṣaṃ | 31 |
- KAZ12.5.32/ tato rakṣā.vidhānāny avasrāvayet | 32 |
- KAZ12.5.33/ agni.rasa.śastrair vā praharet | 33 |
- KAZ12.5.34/ hiraṇya.pratigrāhiṇo vā-asya vallabhān anugṛhṇīyāt | 34 |
- KAZ12.5.35/ parikṣīṇo vā-asmai durgaṃ dattvā nirgacchet | 35 |
- KAZ12.5.36/ suruṅgayā kuṣi.pradareṇa vā prākāra.bhedena nirgacchet | 36 |
- KAZ12.5.37/ rātrāv avaskandaṃ dattvā siddhaḥ tiṣṭhet, asiddhaḥ pārśvena-apagacchet | 37 |
- KAZ12.5.38/ pāṣaṇḍac.chadmanā manda.parivāro nirgacchet | 38 |

- KAZ12.5.39/ preta.vyañjano vā gūḍhair nihriyeta | 39 |
 KAZ12.5.40/ strī.veṣa.dhārī vā pretam anugacchet | 40 |
 KAZ12.5.41/ daivata.upahāra.śrāddha.prahavaṇeṣu vā rasa.viddham anna.pānam avasṛjya | 41 |
 KAZ12.5.42/ kṛta.upajāpo dūṣya.vyañjanair niṣpatya gūḍha.sainyo 'bhihanyāt | 42 |
 KAZ12.5.43/ evaṃ gr̥hīta.durgo vā prāśya.prāśaṃ caityam upasthāpya daivata.pratimāc.chidraṃ praviśya-āsīta, gūḍha.bhittiṃ vā, daivata.pratimā.yuktaṃ vā bhūmi.gr̥ham | 43 |
 KAZ12.5.44/ vismṛte suruṅgayā rātrau rāja.āvāsam anupraviśya suptam amitraṃ hanyāt | 44 |
 KAZ12.5.45/ yantra.viśleṣaṇaṃ vā viśleṣya-adhastād avapādayet | 45 |
 KAZ12.5.46/ rasa.agni.yogena-avaliptaṃ gr̥haṃ jatu.gr̥haṃ vā-adhiśayānam amitram ādīpayet | 46 |
 KAZ12.5.47/ pramada.vana.vihārāṇāṃ anyatame vā vihāra.sthāne pramattaṃ bhūmi.gr̥ha.suruṅgā.gūḍha.bhitti.praviṣṭās tīkṣṇā hanyuḥ, gūḍha.praṇihitā vā rasena | 47 |
 KAZ12.5.48/ svapato vā niruddhe deśe gūḍhāḥ striyaḥ sarpa.rasa.agni.dhūmān upari muñceyuh | 48 |
 KAZ12.5.49/ pratyutpanne vā kāraṇe yad yad upapadyeta tat tad amitre 'ntaḥ.pura.gate gūḍha.sañcāraḥ prayuñjīta | 49 |
 KAZ12.5.50/ tato gūḍham eva-apagacchet, svajana.sañjñāṃ ca prarūpayet | 50 |
 KAZ12.5.51ab/ dvāhsthān varṣadharāṃś ca-anyān nigūḍha.upahitān pare |
 KAZ12.5.51cd/tūrya.sañjñābhīr āhūya dviṣat.śeṣāṇi ghātayet | | 51 |

13 Book 13: Means of Taking a Fort

233

13.1 Chapter 1 (Section 171): Instigation to Sedition

234

- KAZ13.1.01/ vijigīṣuḥ para.grāmam avāptu.kāmaḥ sarvajña.daivata.samyoga.khyāpanābhyāṃ sva.pakṣam uddharṣayet, para.pakṣaṃ ca-udvejayet | 1 |
 KAZ13.1.02/ sarvajña.khyāpanaṃ tu - gr̥ha.guhya.pravṛtti.jñānena pratyādeśo mukhyānām, kaṇṭaka.śodhana.apasarpa.avagamena prakāśanaṃ rāja.dviṣṭa.kāriṇām, vijñāpya.upāyana.khyāpanam adṛṣṭa.samsarga.vidyā.sañjñā.ādibhiḥ, videśa.pravṛtti.jñānaṃ tad ahar eva gr̥ha.kapotena mudrā.samyuktena | 2 |
 KAZ13.1.03/ daivata.samyoga.khyāpanaṃ tu - suruṅgā.mukhena-agni.caitya.daivata.pratimāc.chidrān anupraviṣṭair agni.caitya.daivata.vyañjanaiḥ sambhāṣaṇaṃ pūjanaṃ ca, udakād utthitair vā nāga.varuṇa.vyañjanaiḥ sambhāṣaṇaṃ pūjanaṃ ca, rātrāv antar.udake samudra.vālukā.kośaṃ praṇidhāya-agni.mālā.darśanam, śilā.śikya.avagr̥hite plavake sthānam, udaka.bastinā jarāyuṇā vā śiro 'vagūḍha.nāsaḥ pṛṣṭa.antra.kulīra.nakra.śimśumāra.udravasābhīr vā śata.pākyāṃ tailaṃ nastāḥ prayogaḥ | 3 |
 KAZ13.1.04/ tena rātri.gaṇaś carati | 4 |
 KAZ13.1.05/ ity udaka.caraṇāni | 5 |
 KAZ13.1.06/ tair varuṇa.nāga.kanyā.vākya.kriyā sambhāṣaṇaṃ ca, kopa.sthāneṣu mukhād agni.dhūma.utsargaḥ | 6 |

²³³[K tr. 550–572 :: K2 tr. 474–493

²³⁴[K tr. 550 :: K2 tr. 474

KAZ13.1.07/ tad asya sva.viṣaye
 kārtāntika.naimittika.mauhūrtika.paurāṇika.ikṣaṇika.gūḍha.puruṣāḥ sāvivya.karās
 tad.darśinaś ca prakāśayeyuḥ | 7 |
 KAZ13.1.08/ parasya viṣaye daivata.darśanam divya.kośa.daṇḍa.utpattiṃ ca-asya brūyuh | 8 |
 KAZ13.1.09/ daivata.praśna.nimitta.vāyasa.aṅga.vidyā.swapna.mṛga.pakṣi.vyāhāreṣu ca-asya
 vijayaṃ brūyuh, viparītaṃ amitrasya | 9 |
 KAZ13.1.10/ sadundubhim ulkāṃ ca parasya nakṣatre darśayeyuh | 10 |
 KAZ13.1.11/ parasya mukhyān mitratvena-upadiśanto dūta.vyañjanāḥ svāmi.satkāraṃ
 brūyuh, sva.pakṣa.bala.ādhānaṃ para.pakṣa.pratighātaṃ ca | 11 |
 KAZ13.1.12/ tulya.yoga.kṣemam amātyānām āyudhiyānām ca kathayeyuh | 12 |
 KAZ13.1.13/ teṣu vyasana.abhyudaya.avekṣaṇam apatya.pūjanam ca prayuñjīta | 13 |
 KAZ13.1.14/ tena para.pakṣam utsāhayed yathā.uktaṃ purastāt | 14 |
 KAZ13.1.15/ bhūyaś ca vakṣyāmaḥ | 15 |
 KAZ13.1.16/ sādharmaṇa.gardabhena dakṣaṇ, lakuṭa.śākhā.hananābhyāṃ daṇḍa.cāriṇaḥ,
 kula.eḍakena ca-udvignān, aśani.varṣeṇa vimānitān, vidulena-avakeśinā vāyasa.piṇḍena
 kaitavaja.meghena-iti vihata.āśān durbhaga.alaṅkāreṇa dveṣiṇā-iti pūjā.phalān,
 vyāghra.carmaṇā mṛtyu.kūṭena ca-upahitān, pīlu.vikhādanena karaka.yoṣṭrayā
 gardabhī.kṣīrā.abhimanthanena-iti dhruva.upakāriṇa iti | 16 |
 KAZ13.1.17/ pratipannān artha.mānābhyāṃ yojayet
 KAZ13.1.18/ dravya.bhaktac.chidreṣu ca-enān dravya.bhakta.dānair anugṛhṇīyāt | 18 |
 KAZ13.1.19/ apratigrhṇatāṃ strī.kumāra.alaṅkāraṇ abhihareyuh | 19 |
 KAZ13.1.20/ durbhikṣa.stena.aṭavy.upaghāteṣu ca paura.jānapadān utsāhayantaḥ sattriṇo
 brūyuh "rājānam anugrahaṃ yācāmahe- niranugrahāḥ paratra gacchāmaḥ" iti | 20 |
 KAZ13.1.21ab/ tathā-iti pratipanneṣu dravya.dhānyāny aparigrahaiḥ |
 KAZ13.1.21cd/ sāvivyaṃ kāryam ity etad upajāpād bhūtaṃ mahat || 21 ||

13.2 Chapter 2 (Section 172): Drawing the Enemy out by Means of Stratagems

235

KAZ13.2.01/ muṇḍo jaṭilo vā parvata.guha.āvāsī catur.varṣa.śata.āyur bruvāṇaḥ
 prabhūta.jaṭila.ante.vāsī nagara.abhyāśe tiṣṭhet | 1 |
 KAZ13.2.02/ śiṣyāś ca-asya mūla.phala.upagamanair amātyān rājānaṃ ca
 bhagavad.darśanāya yojayeyuh | 2 |
 KAZ13.2.03/ samāgatāś ca rājñā pūrva.rāja.deśa.abhijñānāni kathayet, "śate śate ca varṣāṇāṃ
 pūrṇe 'ham agniṃ praviśya punar bālo bhavāmi, tad iha bhavat samīpe caturtham agniṃ
 pravekṣyāmi, avaśyaṃ me bhavān mānayitavyaḥ, trīn varān vṛṇīṣva (vṛṣīṣva?)" iti | 3 |
 KAZ13.2.04/ pratipannaṃ brūyāt "sapta.rātram iha saputra.dāreṇa
 prekṣā.prahavaṇa.pūrvam vastavyam" iti | 4 |
 KAZ13.2.05/ vasantam avaskandeta | 5 |
 KAZ13.2.06/ muṇḍo vā jaṭilo vā sthānika.vyañjanaḥ prabhūta.jaṭila.ante.vāsī
 vasta.śoṇita.digdhām veṇu.śālākāṃ suvarṇa.cūrṇena-avalīpya valmīke nidadhyād
 upajihvika.anusaraṇa.artham, svarṇa.nālikāṃ vā | 6 |
 KAZ13.2.07/ tataḥ sattri rājñāḥ kathayet "asau siddhaḥ puṣpitaṃ nidhiṃ jānāti" iti | 7 |
 KAZ13.2.08/ sa rājñā pṛṣṭhaḥ "tathā" iti brūyāt, tac ca-abhijñānaṃ darśayet, bhūyo vā
 hiraṇyam antar.ādhāya | 8 |
 KAZ13.2.09/ brūyāc ca-enam "nāga.rakṣito 'yaṃ nidhiḥ praṇipāta.sādhyah" iti | 9 |

²³⁵[K tr. 553 :: K2 tr. 477

- KAZ13.2.10/ pratipannam brūyāt "sapta.rātram" iti samānam | 10 |
- KAZ13.2.11/ sthānika.vyañjanaṁ vā rātrau tejana.agni.yuktam ekānte tiṣṭhantaṁ sattriṇaḥ krama.abhīnītaṁ rājñaḥ kathayeyuḥ "asau siddhaḥ sāmedhikaḥ" iti | 11 |
- KAZ13.2.12/ taṁ rājā yam arthaṁ yāceta tam asya kariṣyamāṇaḥ "sapta.rātram" iti samānam | 12 |
- KAZ13.2.13/ siddha.vyañjano vā rājānaṁ jambhaka.vidyābhiḥ pralobhayet | 13 |
- KAZ13.2.14/ taṁ rājā-iti samānam | 14 |
- KAZ13.2.15/ siddha.vyañjano vā deśa.devatām abhyarhitām āsṛitya prahavaṇair abhīkṣṇaṁ prakṛti.mukhyān abhisamvāsyā krameṇa rājānam atisandadhyāt | 15 |
- KAZ13.2.16/ jaṭila.vyañjanam antar.udaka.vāsinaṁ vā sarva.śvetam taṭa.suruṅgā.bhūmi.gṛha.apasaraṇaṁ varuṇaṁ nāga.rājaṁ vā sattriṇaḥ krama.abhinītaṁ rājñaḥ kathayeyuḥ | 16 |
- KAZ13.2.17/ taṁ rājā-iti samānam | 17 |
- KAZ13.2.18/ jana.pada.ante.vāsī siddha.vyañjano vā rājānaṁ śatru.darśanāya yojayet | 18 |
- KAZ13.2.19/ pratipannam bimbaṁ kṛtvā śatrum āvāhayitvā niruddhe deśe ghātayet | 19 |
- KAZ13.2.20/ āśva.paṇya.upayātā vaidehaka.vyañjanāḥ paṇya.upāyana.nimittam āhūya rājānaṁ paṇya.parīkṣāyām āsaktam āśva.vyatikīrṇaṁ vā hanyuḥ, āśvaiś ca prahareyuḥ | 20 |
- KAZ13.2.21/ nagara.abhyāśe vā caityam āruhya rātrau tīkṣṇaḥ kumbheṣu nālīn vā vidulāni dhamantaḥ "svāmīno mukhyānām vā māmsāni bhakṣayaṣyāmaḥ, pūjā no vartatām" ity avyaktaṁ brūyuḥ | 21 |
- KAZ13.2.22/ tad eṣāṁ naimittika.mauhūrtika.vyañjanāḥ khyāpayeyuḥ | 22 |
- KAZ13.2.23/ maṅgalye vā hrade taṭaka.madhye vā rātrau tejana.taila.abhyaktā nāga.rūpiṇaḥ śakti.musalāny ayomayāni niṣpeṣayantas tathaiva brūyuḥ | 23 |
- KAZ13.2.24/ ṛkṣa.carma.kañcukino vā-agni.dhūma.utsarga.yuktā rakṣo.rūpaṁ vahantas trir apasavyaṁ nagaraṁ kurvāṇaḥ śva.srgāla.vāśita.antareṣu tathaiva brūyuḥ | 24 |
- KAZ13.2.25/ caitya.daivata.pratimāṁ vā tejana.tailena-abhra.paṭalac.channena-agninā vā rātrau prajvālya tathaiva brūyuḥ | 25 |
- KAZ13.2.26/ tad anye khyāpayeyuḥ | 26 |
- KAZ13.2.27/ daivata.pratimānām abhyarhitānām vā śoṇitena prasrāvam atimātraṁ kuryuḥ | 27 |
- KAZ13.2.28/ tad anye deva.rudhira.samsrāve saṅgrāme parājayaṁ brūyuḥ | 28 |
- KAZ13.2.29/ sandhi.rātriṣu śmaśāna.pramukhe vā caityam ūrdhva.bhakṣitair manuṣyair prarūpayeyuḥ | 29 |
- KAZ13.2.30/ tato rakṣo.rūpī manuṣyakaṁ yāceta | 30 |
- KAZ13.2.31/ yaś ca-atra śūra.vādiko 'nyatamo vā draṣṭum āgacchet tam anye loha.musalair hanyuḥ, yathā rakṣobhir hata iti jñāyeta | 31 |
- KAZ13.2.32/ tad adbhuṭaṁ rājñas tad.darśinaḥ sattriṇaś ca kathayeyuḥ | 32 |
- KAZ13.2.33/ tato naimittika.mauhūrtika.vyañjanāḥ śāntim prāyaś.cittaṁ brūyuḥ "anyathā mahad akuśalaṁ rājño deśasya ca" iti | 33 |
- KAZ13.2.34/ pratipannam "eteṣu sapta.rātram eka.eka.mantra.bali.homaṁ svayaṁ rājñā kartavyam" iti brūyuḥ | 34 |
- KAZ13.2.35/ tataḥ samānam | 35 |
- KAZ13.2.36/ etān vā yogān ātmani darśayitvā pratikurvīta pareṣāṁ upadeśa.artham | 36 |
- KAZ13.2.37/ tataḥ prayojayed yogān | 37 |
- KAZ13.2.38/ yoga.darśana.pratikāreṇa vā kośa.abhisamharaṇaṁ kuryāt | 38 |
- KAZ13.2.39/ hasti.kāmaṁ vā nāga.vana.pālā hastinā lakṣaṇyena pralobhayeyuḥ | 39 |
- KAZ13.2.40/ pratipannam gahanam eka.ayanaṁ vā-atinīya ghātayeyuḥ, baddhvā vā-apahareyuḥ | 40 |
- KAZ13.2.41/ tena mṛgayā.kāmo vyākhyātaḥ | 41 |

KAZ13.2.42/ dravya.strī.lolupam āḍhya.vidhavābhir vā parama.rūpa.yauvanābhiḥ strībhir
dāya.nikṣepa.artham upanītābhiḥ sattriṇaḥ pralobhayeyuḥ | 42 |
KAZ13.2.43/ pratipannaṁ rātrau sattrac.channāḥ samāgame śastra.rasābhyāṁ ghātayeyuḥ |
43 |
KAZ13.2.44/ siddha.pravrajita.caitya.stūpa.daivata.pratimānām abhikṣṇa.abhigamaneṣu vā
bhūmi.gr̥ha.suruṅga.ārūḍha.bhitti.praviṣṭās tīkṣṇāḥ param abhiganyuḥ | 44 |
KAZ13.2.45ab/ yeṣu deṣeṣu yāḥ prekṣāḥ prekṣate pārthivaḥ svayam |
KAK13.2.45cd/ yātrā.vihāre ramate yatra krīḍati vā-ambhasi || 45 ||
KAZ13.2.46ab/ dhig.ukty.ādiṣu sarveṣu yajña.prahavaṇeṣu vā |
KAZ13.2.46cd/ sūtikā.preta.rogeṣu prīti.śoka.bhayeṣu vā || 46 ||
KAZ13.2.47ab/ pramādaṁ yāti yasmin vā viśvāsāt sva.jana.utsave |
KAZ13.2.47cd/ yatra-asya-āraḁṣi.saṁcāro durdine saṁkuleṣu vā || 47 ||
KAZ13.2.48ab/ vipra.sthāne pradīpte vā praviṣṭe nirjane 'pi vā |
KAZ13.2.48cd/ vastra.ābharāṇa.mālyānām phelābhiḥ śayana.āsanaiḥ || 48 ||
KAZ13.2.49ab/ madya.bhojana.phelābhis tūryair vā-abhigatāḥ saha |
KAZ13.2.49cd/ prahareyur arim tīkṣṇāḥ pūrva.praṇihitaiḥ saha || 49 ||
KAZ13.2.50ab/ yathaiva praviṣeyuṣ ca dviṣataḥ sattra.hetubhiḥ |
KAZ13.2.50cd/ tathaiva ca-apagaccheyur ity uktaṁ yoga.vāmanam || 50 ||

13.3 Chapter 3 (Section 173): Employment of Secret Agents

236

KAZ13.3.01/ śreṇī.mukhyam āptaṁ niṣpātayet | 1 |
KAZ13.3.02/ sa param āsr̥tya pakṣa.apadeśena sva.viṣayāt saccivya.kara.sahāya.upādānaṁ
kurvīta | 2 |
KAZ13.3.03/ kṛta.apasarpa.upacayo vā param anumānya svāmīno dūṣya.grāmaṁ
vīta.hasty.aśvaṁ dūṣya.amātyaṁ daṇḍam ākrandaṁ vā hatvā parasya preṣayet | 3 |
KAZ13.3.04/ jana.pada.eka.deśaṁ śreṇīm aṭavīm vā sahāya.upādāna.arthaṁ saṁśrayeta | 4 |
KAZ13.3.05/ viśvāsam upagataḥ svāmīnaḥ preṣayet | 5 |
KAZ13.3.06/ tataḥ svāmī hasti.bandhanam aṭavī.ghātaṁ vā-apadiśya gūḍham eva praharet |
6 |
KAZ13.3.07/ etena-amātya.aṭavikā vyākhyātāḥ | 7 |
KAZ13.3.08/ śatruṇā maitrīm kṛtvā-amātyān avakṣipet | 8 |
KAZ13.3.09/ te tat.śatroḥ preṣayeyuḥ "bhartāraṁ naḥ prasādaya" iti | 9 |
KAZ13.3.10/ sa yaṁ dūtaṁ preṣayet, tam upālabheta "bhartā te mām amātyair bhedayati, na
ca punar iha-āgantavyam" iti | 10 |
KAZ13.3.11/ atha-ekam amātyaṁ niṣpātayet | 11 |
KAZ13.3.12/ sa param āsr̥tya yoga.apasarpa.aparakta.dūṣyān aśaktimataḥ stena-āṭavikān
ubhaya.upaghātakān vā parasya-upaharet | 12 |
KAZ13.3.13/ āpta.bhāva.upagataḥ pravīra.puruṣa.upaghātam asya-upahared anta.pālam
āṭavikāṁ daṇḍa.cāriṇaṁ vā "dr̥ḍham asau ca-asau ca te śatruṇā sandhatte" iti | 13 |
KAZ13.3.14/ atha paścād abhityakta.śāsanair enān ghātayet | 14 |
KAZ13.3.15/ daṇḍa.bala.vyavahāreṇa vā śatrum udyojya ghātayet | 15 |
KAZ13.3.16/ kṛtya.pakṣa.upagraheṇa vā parasya.amitraṁ rājānam ātmany
apakārayitvā-abhiyujjīta | 16 |
KAZ13.3.17/ tataḥ parasya preṣayet "asau te vairī mama-apakaroti, tam ehi sambhūya
haniṣyāvaḥ, bhūmau hiraṇye vā te parigrahaḥ" iti | 17 |

²³⁶[K tr. 558 :: K2 tr. 481

- KAZ13.3.18/ pratipannam abhisatkṛtya-āgatam avaskandena prakāśayuddhena vā śatruṇā ghātayet | 18 |
- KAZ13.3.19/ abhiviśvāsana.arthaṁ bhūmi.dāna.putra.abhiṣeka.rakṣā.apadeśena vā grāhayet | 19 |
- KAZ13.3.20/ aviśahyam upāṁśu.daṇḍena vā ghātayet | 20 |
- KAZ13.3.21/ sa ced daṇḍaṁ dadyān na svayam āgacchet tam asya vairiṇā ghātayet | 21 |
- KAZ13.3.22/ daṇḍena vā prayātum icchen na vijigīṣuṇā tathā-apy enam ubhayataḥ.sampīdanena ghātayet | 22 |
- KAZ13.3.23/ aviśvasto vā pratyekaśo yātum icched rājya.eka.deśaṁ vā yātavyasya-ādātu.kāmaḥ, tathā-apy enam vairiṇā sarva.sandohena vā ghātayet | 23 |
- KAZ13.3.24/ vairiṇā vā saktasya daṇḍa.upanayena mūlam anyato hārayet | 24 |
- KAZ13.3.25/ śatru.bhūmyā vā mitraṁ paṇeta, mitra.bhūmyā vā śatrum | 25 |
- KAZ13.3.26/ tataḥ śatru.bhūmi.lipsāyām mitreṇa-ātmany apakārayitvā-abhiyuñjita - iti samānāḥ pūrveṇa sarva eva yogāḥ | 26 |
- KAZ13.3.27/ śatrum vā mitra.bhūmi.lipsāyām pratipannaṁ daṇḍena-anugṛhṇīyāt | 27 |
- KAZ13.3.28/ tato mitra.gatam atisandadhyāt | 28 |
- KAZ13.3.29/ kṛta.pratividhāno vā vyasanam ātmano darśayitvā mitreṇa-amitram utsāhayitvā-ātmānam abhiyojayet | 29 |
- KAZ13.3.30/ tataḥ sampīdanena ghātayet, jīva.grāheṇa vā rājya.vinimayaṁ kārayet | 30 |
- KAZ13.3.31/ mitreṇa-āśritaś cet-śatrur agrāhye sthātum icchet sāmanta.ādibhir mūlam asya hārayet | 31 |
- KAZ13.3.32/ daṇḍena vā trātum icchet tam asya ghātayet | 32 |
- KAZ13.3.33/ tau cen na bhidyeyātām prakāśam eva-anyonya.bhūmyā paṇeta | 33 |
- KAZ13.3.34/ tataḥ parasparaṁ mitra.vyañjanā vā ubhaya.vetanā vā dūtān preṣayeyuḥ "ayam te rājā bhūmiṁ lipsate śatru.samhitaḥ" iti | 34 |
- KAZ13.3.35/ tayor anyataro jāta.āśaṅka.āroṣaḥ, pūrvavac ceṣteta | 35 |
- KAZ13.3.36/ durga.rāṣṭra.daṇḍa.mukhyān vā kṛtya.pakṣa.hetubhir abhivikhyāpya pravrajayet | 36 |
- KAZ13.3.37/ te yuddha.avaskanda.avarodha.vyasaneṣu śatrum atisandadhyuḥ | 37 |
- KAZ13.3.38/ bhedaṁ vā-asya sva.vargebhyaḥ kuryuḥ | 38 |
- KAZ13.3.39/ abhityakta.śāsanaiḥ pratisamānayeyuḥ | 39 |
- KAZ13.3.40/ lubdhaka.vyañjanā vā māṁsa.vikrayeṇa dvāhsthā dauvārika.apāśrayāś cora.abhyāgamaṁ parasya dvis trir iti nivedya labdha.pratyayā bhartur anikaṁ dvidhā niveśya grāma.vadhe 'vaskande ca dviṣato brūyuḥ "āsannaś cora.gaṇaḥ, mahāṁś ca-ākraṇḍaḥ, prabhūtaṁ sainyaṁ āgacchatu" iti | 40 |
- KAZ13.3.41/ tad arpayitvā grāma.ghāta.daṇḍasya sainyaṁ itarad ādāya rātrau durga.dvāreṣu brūyuḥ "hataś cora.gaṇaḥ, siddha.yātram idaṁ sainyaṁ āgatam, dvāram apāvriyatām" iti | 41 |
- KAZ13.3.42/ pūrva.praṇihitā vā dvārāṇi dadyuḥ | 42 |
- KAZ13.3.43/ taiḥ saha prahareyuḥ | 43 |
- KAZ13.3.44/ kāru.śilpi.pāṣaṇḍa.kuśīlava.vaidehaka.vyañjanān āyudhīyān vā para.durge praṇidadhyāt | 44 |
- KAZ13.3.45/ teṣāṁ gr̥ha.patika.vyañjanāḥ kāṣṭha.tr̥ṇa.dhānya.paṇya.śakaṭaiḥ praharaṇa.āvaraṇāny abhihareyuḥ, deva.dhvaja.pratimābhir vā | 45 |
- KAZ13.3.46/ tatas tad.vyañjanāḥ pramatta.vadham avaskanda.pratigrahaṁ abhiprahaṇaṁ pṛṣṭhataḥ śaṅkha.dundubhi.śabdena vā "praviṣṭam" ity āvedayeyuḥ | 46 |
- KAZ13.3.47/ prākāra.dvāra.aṭṭālaka.dānam anika.bhedaṁ ghātaṁ vā kuryuḥ | 47 |

KAZ13.3.48/ sārtha.gaṇa.vāsibhir ātivāhikāiḥ kanyā.vāhikair aśva.paṇya.vyavahāribhir
upakaraṇa.hāraḥ kair dhānya.kreṭṭ.vikreṭṭbhir vā pravrajita.līṅgibhir dūtaiś ca
daṇḍa.ātinayanam, sandhi.karma.viśvāsana.artham | 48 |
KAZ13.3.49/ iti rāja.apasarpāḥ | 49 |
KAZ13.3.50/ eta eva-aṭavīnām apasarpāḥ kaṇṭaka.śodhana.uktāś ca | 50 |
KAZ13.3.51/ vrajam aṭavy.āsannam apasarpāḥ sārtham vā corair ghātayeyuḥ | 51 |
KAZ13.3.52/ kṛta.saṅketam anna.pānam ca-atra madana.rasa.viddham vā
kṛtvā-apagaccheyuḥ | 52 |
KAZ13.3.53/ go.pālaka.vaidehakāś ca tataś corān grhīta.loptrā.bhārān
madana.rasa.vikāra.kāle 'vaskandayeyuḥ | 53 |
KAZ13.3.54/ saṅkarṣaṇa.daivatiyo vā muṇḍa.jaṭila.vyañjanaḥ prahavaṇa.karmaṇā
madana.rasa.yogena-atisandadhyāt | 54 |
KAZ13.3.55/ atha-avaskandam dadyāt | 55 |
KAZ13.3.56/ śauṇḍika.vyañjano vā daivata.preta.kārya.utsava.samājeṣv āṭavikān
surā.vikraya.upāyana.nimittam madana.rasa.yogena-atisandadhyāt | 56 |
KAZ13.3.57/ atha-avaskandam dadyāt | 57 |
KAZ13.3.58ab/ grāma.ghāta.praviṣṭām vā vikṣipya bahudhā-aṭavīm |
KAZ13.3.58cd/ ghātayed iti corāṇām apasarpāḥ prakīrtitāḥ || 58 ||

13.4 Chapter 4 (Sections 174; 175): Laying Siege to a Fort; Storming a Fort

237

KAZ13.4.01/ karśana.pūrvam paryupāsana.karma | 1 |
KAZ13.4.02/ jana.padam yathā.niviṣṭam abhaye sthāpayet | 2 |
KAZ13.4.03/ utthitam anugraha.parihārābhyām niveṣayet, anyatra-apasarataḥ | 3 |
KAZ13.4.04/ saṅgrāmād anyasyām bhūmau niveṣayet, ekasyām vā vāsayet | 4 |
KAZ13.4.05/ na hy ajano jana.pado rājyam ajana.padam vā bhavati-iti kauṭilyaḥ | 5 |
KAZ13.4.06/ viṣamasthasya muṣṭim sasyam vā hanyād, vīvadha.prasārau ca | 6 |
KAZ13.4.07ab/ prasāra.vīvadhac.chedān muṣṭi.sasya.vadhād api |
KAZ13.4.07cd/ vamanād gūḍha.ghātāc ca jāyate prakṛti.kṣayaḥ || 7 ||
KAZ13.4.08/ "prabhūta.guṇa.vaddha.anya.kupya.yantra.śāstra.āvaraṇa.viṣṭir aśmi.samagram
me sanyam, ṛtuś ca purastāt, apartuḥ parasya, vyādhi.durbhikṣa.nicaya.rakṣā.kṣayaḥ
krīta.bala.nirvedo mitra.bala.nirvedaś ca" iti paryupāsita | 8 |
KAZ13.4.09/ kṛtvā skandha.āvārasya rakṣām vīvadha.āsārayoḥ pathaś ca, parikṣipya durgam
khāta.sālābhyām, dūṣayitvā-udakam, avasrāvya parikhāḥ sampūrayitvā vā,
suruṅgā.bala.kuṭikābhyām vāpra.prākārau hārayet, dāram ca guḍena | 9 |
KAZ13.4.10/ nimnam vā pāmsu.mālayā-ācchādayet | 10 |
KAZ13.4.11/ bahula.ārakṣam yantrair ghātayet | 11 |
KAZ13.4.12/ niṣkirād upaniṣkrṣya-aśvaiś ca prahareyuḥ | 12 |
KAZ13.4.13/ vikrama.antareṣu ca niyoga.vikalpa.samuccayaiś ca-upāyānām siddhim lipseta |
13 |
KAZ13.4.14/ durga.vāsinaḥ śyena.kāka.napṭṛ.bhāsa.śuka.sārika.ulūka.kapotān grāhayitvā
puccheṣv agni.yoga.yuktān para.durge viṣṭjet | 14 |
KAZ13.4.15/ apakṛṣṭa.skandha.āvārād ucchrita.dhvaja.dhanva.ārakṣo vā mānuṣeṇa-agninā
para.durgam ādīpayet | 15 |
KAZ13.4.16/ gūḍha.purṣāś ca-antar.durga.pālakā nakula.vānara.biḍāla.śunām puccheṣv
agni.yogam ādhāya kāṇḍa.nicaya.rakṣā.vidhāna.veśmasu viṣṭjeyuḥ | 16 |

²³⁷[K tr. 564 :: K2 tr. 485

KAZ13.4.17/ śuṣka.matsyānām udareṣv agnim ādhāya vallūre vā vāyasa.upahāreṇa vayobhir hārayeyuḥ | 17 |

KAZ13.4.18/ sarala.deva.dāru.pūti.tṛṇa.guggulu.śrī.veṣṭakasajarasalākṣāgulikāḥ khara.uṣṭra.ajāvīnām leṇḍam ca-agni.dhāraṇam | 18 |

KAZ13.4.19/ priyāla.cūrṇam avalgu.jamaṣī.madhu.ucchiṣṭam aśva.khara.uṣṭra.go.leṇḍam ity eṣa kṣepyo 'gni.yogaḥ | 19 |

KAZ13.4.20/ sarva.loha.cūrṇam agni.varṇam vā kumbhī.sīsa.trapu.cūrṇam vā pāribhadra.palāśa.puṣpa.keśa.maṣī.taila.madhu.ucchiṣṭaka.śrī.- veṣṭaka.yukto 'gni.yogo viśvāsa.ghātī vā | 20 |

KAZ13.4.21/ tena-avaliptaḥ śaṇa.trapusa.valka.veṣṭito bāṇa ity agni.yogaḥ | 21 |

KAZ13.4.22/ na tv eva vidyamāne parākrame 'gnim avasṛjet | 22 |

KAZ13.4.23/ aviśvāsyō hy agnir daiva.pīḍanam ca, apratisaṅkhyāta.prāṇi.dhānya.paśu.hiraṇya.kupya.dravya.kṣaya.karaḥ | 23 |

KAZ13.4.24/ kṣīṇa.nicayaṁ ca-avāptam api rājyaṁ kṣayāya-eva bhavati | 24 | iti paryupāsana.karma |

KAZ13.4.25/ "sarva.ārambha.upakaraṇa.viṣṭi.sampanno 'smi, vyādhitaḥ para upadhā.viruddha.prakṛtir akṛta.durga.karma.nicayo vā, nirāsāraḥ sāsāro vā purā mitraiḥ sandhatte" ity avamarda.kālāḥ | 25 |

KAZ13.4.26/ svayam agnau jāte samutthāpīte vā prahavaṇe prekṣā.anika.darśana.saṅga.saurika.kalaheṣu nitya.yuddha.śrānta.bale bahula.yuddha.pratividdha.preta.puruṣe jāgaraṇa.klānta.supta.jane durdine nadī.vege vā nīhāra.samplave vā-avamṛdnīyāt | 26 |

KAZ13.4.27/ skandha.āvāram utsṛjya vā vana.gūḍhaḥ śatruṁ niṣkrāntaṁ ghātayet | 27 |

KAZ13.4.28/ mitra.āsāra.mukhya.vyañjano vā samruddhena maitrīm kṛtvā dūtam abhityaktaṁ preṣayet - "idaṁ te chidram, ime dūṣyāḥ" "samroddhur vā chidram, ayaṁ te kṛtya.pakṣaḥ" iti | 28 |

KAZ13.4.29/ taṁ pratidūtam ādāya nirgacchantam vijigīṣur gr̥hītvā doṣam abhivikhyāpya pravāsyā apagacchet | 29 |

KAZ13.4.30/ tato mitra.āsāra.vyañjano vā samruddham brūyāt "mām trātum upanirgaccha, mayā vā saha samroddhāraṁ jahi" iti | 30 |

KAZ13.4.31/ pratipannam ubhayataḥ.sampīḍanena ghātayet, jīva.grāheṇa vā rājya.vinimayaṁ kārayet | 31 |

KAZ13.4.32/ nagaraṁ vā-asya pramṛdnīyāt | 32 |

KAZ13.4.33/ sāra.balaṁ vā-asya vamayitvā-abhihanyāt | 33 |

KAZ13.4.34/ tena daṇḍa.upanata.āṭavikā vyākhyātāḥ | 34 |

KAZ13.4.35/ daṇḍa.upanata.āṭavikayor anyataro vā samruddhasya preṣayet - "ayaṁ samroddhā vyādhitaḥ, pārṣṇi.grāheṇa-abhiyuktaḥ, chidram anyad utthitam, anyasyām bhūmāv apayātu.kāmaḥ" iti | 35 |

KAZ13.4.36/ pratipanne samroddhā skandha.āvāram ādīpya-apayāyāt | 36 |

KAZ13.4.37/ tataḥ pūrvavad ācāret | 37 |

KAZ13.4.38/ paṇya.sampātāṁ vā kṛtvā paṇyena-enam rasa.viddhena-atisandadhyāt | 38 |

KAZ13.4.39/ āsāra.vyañjano vā samruddhasya dūtam preṣayet - "mayā bāhyam abhihatam upanirgaccha-abhihantam" iti | 39 |

KAZ13.4.40/ pratipannaṁ pūrvavad ācāret | 40 |

KAZ13.4.41/ mitraṁ bandhuṁ vā-apadīśya yoga.puruṣāḥ śāsana.mudrā.hastāḥ praviśya durgaṁ grāhayeyuḥ | 41 |

KAZ13.4.42/ āsāra.vyañjano vā samruddhasya preṣayet - "amuṣmin deśe kāle ca skandha.āvāram abhihaniṣyāmi, yuṣmābhir api yoddhavyam" iti | 42 |

- KAZ13.4.43/ pratipannam yathā.uktam abhyāghāta.saṅkulam darśayitvā rātrau durgān niṣkrāntam ghātayet | 43 |
- KAZ13.4.44/ yad vā mitram āvāhayed ātavikam vā, tam utsāhayet "vikramya samruddhe bhūmim asya pratipadyasva" iti | 44 |
- KAZ13.4.45/ vikrāntam prakṛtibhir dūṣya.mukhya.upagraheṇa vā ghātayet, svayam vā rasena "mitra.ghātako 'yam" ity avāpta.arthaḥ | 45 |
- KAZ13.4.46/ vikramitu.kāmaṁ vā mitra.vyañjanaḥ parasya-abhiśamset | 46 |
- KAZ13.4.47/ āpta.bhāva.upagataḥ pravīra.puruṣānasya-upaghātayet | 47 |
- KAZ13.4.48/ sandhim vā kṛtvā jana.padam enaṁ niveśayet | 48 |
- KAZ13.4.49/ niṣṭam asya jana.padam avijñāto hanyāt | 49 |
- KAZ13.4.50/ apakārayitvā dūṣya.ātavikeṣu vā bala.eka.deśam atinīya durgam avaskandena hārayet | 50 |
- KAZ13.4.51/ dūṣya.amitra.ātavika.dveṣya.pratyapasṛtāś ca kṛta.artha.māna.sañjñā.cihnāḥ para.durgam avaskandeyuḥ | 51 |
- KAZ13.4.52/ para.durgam avaskandya skandha.āvāraṁ vā patita.parān.mukha.abhipannam ukta.keśa.śāstra.bhaya.virūpebhyaś ca-abhayam ayudhyamānebhyaś ca dadyuḥ | 52 |
- KAZ13.4.53/ para.durgam avāpya viśuddha.śatru.pakṣam kṛta.upāṁśu.daṇḍa.pratikāram antar.bahiś ca praviśet | 53 |
- KAZ13.4.54/ evaṁ vijigīṣur amitra.bhūmim labdhvā madhyamaṁ lipseta, tat.siddhāv udāsīnam | 54 |
- KAZ13.4.55/ eṣa prathamō mārگاḥ pṛthivīm jetum | 55 |
- KAZ13.4.56/ madhyama.udāsīnāyor abhāve guṇa.atiśayena-ari.prakṛtīḥ sādhayet, tata uttarāḥ prakṛtīḥ | 56 |
- KAZ13.4.57/ eṣa dvitīyo mārگاḥ | 57 |
- KAZ13.4.58/ maṇḍalasya-abhāve śatruṇā mitram mitreṇa vā śatrum ubhayataḥ.sampīdanena sādhayet | 58 |
- KAZ13.4.59/ eṣa tṛtīyo mārگاḥ | 59 |
- KAZ13.4.60/ śakyam ekaṁ vā sāmantaṁ sādhayet, tena dvi.guṇo dvitīyam, tri.guṇas tṛtīyam | 60 |
- KAZ13.4.61/ eṣa caturtho mārگاḥ pṛthivīm jetum | 61 |
- KAZ13.4.62/ jitvā ca pṛthivīm vibhakta.varṇa.āśramāṁ sva.dharmeṇa bhuñjīta | 62 |
- KAZ13.4.63ab/ upajāpo 'pasarpaś ca vāmanaṁ paryupāsanaṁ |
- KAZ13.4.63cd/ avamardaś ca pañca-ete durga.lambhasya hetavaḥ || 63 ||

13.5 Chapter 5 (Section 176): Pacification of the Conquered Territory

238

- KAZ13.5.01/ dvividham vijigīṣoḥ samutthānaṁ - aṭavy.ādikam eka.grāma.ādikaṁ ca | 1 |
- KAZ13.5.02/ trividhaś ca-asya lambhaḥ - navo, bhūta.pūrvāḥ, pitrya iti | 2 |
- KAZ13.5.03/ navam avāpya lābham para.doṣān sva.guṇaiś chādayet, guṇān guṇa.dvaiguṇyena | 3 |
- KAZ13.5.04/ sva.dharma.karma.anugraha.parihāra.dāna.māna.karmabhiś ca prakṛti.priya.hitāny anuvarteta | 4 |
- KAZ13.5.05/ yathā.sambhāṣitaṁ ca kṛtya.pakṣam upagrāhayet, bhūyaś ca kṛta.prayāsam | 5 |
- KAZ13.5.06/ aviśvāso hi viśamvādakaḥ sveṣāṁ pareṣāṁ ca bhavati, prakṛti.viruddha.ācāraś ca | 6 |

²³⁸[K tr. 570 :: K2 tr. 491

- KAZ13.5.07/ tasmāt samāna.śīla.veṣa.bhāṣā.ācāratām upagachet | 7 |
- KAZ13.5.08/ deśa.daivata.smāja.utsava.vihāreṣu ca bhaktim anuvarteta | 8 |
- KAZ13.5.09/ deśa.grāma.jāti.saṅgha.mukhyeṣu ca-abhikṣṇam sattriṇaḥ parasya-apacāram darśayeyuḥ, mähābhāgyam bhaktim ca teṣu svāminaḥ, svāmi.satkāram ca vidyamānam | 9 |
- KAZ13.5.10/ ucitaiś ca-enān bhoga.parihāra.rakṣā.avekṣaṇair bhuñjīta | 10 |
- KAZ13.5.11/ sarva.devatā.āśrama.pūjanam ca vidyā.vākya.dharma.sūra.puruṣaṇām ca bhūmi.dravya.dāna.parihārān kārayet, sarva.bandhana.mokṣaṇam anugrahaṁ dīna.anātha.vyādhitanām ca | 11 |
- KAZ13.5.12/ cāturmāsyeṣv ardha.māsikam aghātam, paurṇamāsīṣu ca cātūrātrikam rāja.deśa.nakṣatreṣv aikarātrikam | 12 |
- KAZ13.5.13/ yoni.bāla.vadham puṁstva.upaghātam ca pratiśedhayet | 13 |
- KAZ13.5.14/ yac ca kośa.daṇḍa.upaghātakam adharmiṣṭham vā caritram manyeta tad apanīya dharmya.vyavahāram sthāpayet | 14 |
- KAZ13.5.15/ cora.prakṛtīnām mleccha.jātīnām ca sthāna.viparyāsam anekastham kārayet, durga.rāṣṭra.daṇḍa.mukhyānām ca | 15 |
- KAZ13.5.16/ parā.upagṛhītānām ca mantri.purohitānām parasya pratyanteṣv anekastham vāsam kārayet | 16 |
- KAZ13.5.17/ apakāra.samarthān anukṣiyato vā bhartṛ.vināśam upāṁśu.daṇḍena praśamayet | 17 |
- KAZ13.5.18/ sva.deśīyān vā pareṇa vā-aparuddhān apavāhita.sthāneṣu sthāpayet | 18 |
- KAZ13.5.19/ yaś ca tat.kulīnaḥ pratyādeyam ādātum śaktaḥ, pratyanta.aṭavīstho vā prabādhitum abhijātaḥ, tasmai viguṇām bhūmim prayacchet, guṇavatyāś catur.bhāgam vā kośa.daṇḍa.dānam avasthāpya, yad upakurvāṇaḥ paura.jānapadān kopayet | 19 |
- KAZ13.5.20/ kupitais tair enaṁ ghātayet | 20 |
- KAZ13.5.21/ prakṛtibhir upakruṣṭam apanayet, aupaghātike vā deśe niveśayet | iti | 21 |
- KAZ13.5.22/ bhūta.pūrve yena doṣeṇa-apavṛttas taṁ prakṛti.doṣaṁ chādayet, yena ca guṇena-upāvṛttas taṁ tivrī.kuryāt | iti | 22 |
- KAZ13.5.23/ pitrye pitur doṣāṁś chādayet, guṇāṁś ca prakāśayet | iti | 23 |
- KAZ13.5.24ab/ caritram akṛtaṁ dharmyam kṛtaṁ ca-anyaiḥ pravartayet |
- KAZ13.5.24cd/ pravartayen na ca-adharmyam kṛtaṁ ca-anyair nivartayet || 24 ||

14 Book 14: Concerning Secret Practices

239

14.1 Chapter 1 (Section 177): Secret Practices for the Destruction of Enemy Troops

240

- KAZ14.1.01/ cāturvarṇya.rakṣā.artham aupaniṣadikam adharmiṣṭheṣu prayuñjīta | 1 |
- KAZ14.1.02/ kāla.kūṭa.ādir viṣa.vargaḥ śraddheya.deśa.veṣa.śilpa.bhāṣā.abhijana.apadeśaiḥ kubja.vāmana.kirāta.mūka.badhira.jaḍa.andhac.chadmabhir mleccha.jātīyair abhipretaiḥ strībhiḥ pumbhiś ca para.śarīra.upabhogeṣv avadhātavyaḥ | 2 |
- KAZ14.1.03/ rāja.krīḍā.bhāṇḍa.nidhāna.dravya.upabbhogeṣu gūdhāḥ śastra.nidhānam kuryuḥ, sattra.ājīvinaś ca rātri.cāriṇo 'gni.jīvinaś ca-agni.nidhānam | 3 |
- KAZ14.1.04/ citra.bheka.kaunḍinyaka.kṛkaṇa.pañca.kuṣṭha.śata.padī.cūrṇam ucci.ḍiṅga.kambalī.śata.kanda(kardama?).idhma.kṛkalāsa.cūrṇam

²³⁹[K tr. 573–592 :: K2 tr. 494–511

²⁴⁰[K tr. 573 :: K2 tr. 494

- gṛha.golika.andha.ahi.kakra.kaṇṭaka.pūti.kīṭa.gomārikā.cūrṇam
 bhallātaka.avalgu.jara.samyuktaṁ sadyaḥ.prāṇa.haram, eteṣāṁ vā dhūmaḥ | 4 |
 KAZ14.1.05ab/ kīṭo vā-anyatamas taptaḥ kṛṣṇa.sarpa.priyaṅgubhiḥ |
 KAZ14.1.05cd/ śoṣayed eṣa samyogaḥ sadyaḥ.prāṇa.haro mataḥ || 5 ||
 KAZ14.1.06/ dhāma.argava.yātu.dhāna.mūlaṁ bhallātaka.puṣpa.cūrṇa.yuktam
 ārdhamāsikaḥ | 6 |
 KAZ14.1.07/ vyāghātaka.mūlaṁ bhallātaka.puṣpa.cūrṇa.yuktaṁ kīṭa.yogo māsikaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ14.1.08/ kalā.mātraṁ puruṣāṇām, dvi.guṇaṁ khara.aśvānām, catur.guṇaṁ
 hasty.uṣṭrāṇām | 8 |
 KAZ14.1.09/ śata.kardama.uccidiṅga.kara.vīra.kaṭu.tumbī.matsya.dhūmo
 madana.kodrava.palālana hasti.karṇa.palāśa.palālana vā pravāta.anuvāte praṇīto yāvac carati
 tāvan mārāyati | 9 |
 KAZ14.1.10/ pūki.kīṭa.mastya.kaṭu.tumbī.śata.kardama.idhma.indra.gopa.cūrṇam
 pūti.kīṭa.kṣudra.ārālā.hema.vidārī.cūrṇam vā basta.śṛṅga.khura.cūrṇa.yuktam andhī.karo
 dhūmaḥ | 10 |
 KAZ14.1.11/ pūti.karaṇja.pattra.hari.tāla.manaḥ.śilā.guñja.ārakta.kārpāsa.-
 palāla.anyā.āsphoṭa.kāca.go.śakṛd.rasa.piṣṭam andhī.karo dhūmaḥ | 11 |
 KAZ14.1.12/ sarpa.nirmokaṁ go.aśva.purīṣam andha.ahika.śiraś ca-andhī.karo dhūmaḥ | 12 |
 KAZ14.1.13/ pārāvata.plavaka.kravya.adānām hasti.nara.varāhāṇām ca mūtra.purīṣam
 kāsisa.hiṅgu.yava.tuṣa.kaṇa.taṇḍulāḥ kārpāsa.kuṭaja.kośa.atakīnām ca bījāni
 go.mūtrikā.bhāṇḍī.mūlaṁ nimba.śigru.phañirja.kākṣīva.pīluka.bhaṅgaḥ sarpa.śapharī.carma
 hasti.nakha.śṛṅga.cūrṇam ity eṣa dhūmo madana.kodrava.palālana
 hasti.karṇa.palāśa.palālana vā praṇītaḥ pratyekaśo yāvac carati tāvan mārāyati | 13 |
 KAZ14.1.14/ kālī.kuṣṭha.naḍa.sātāvalī.mūlaṁ sarpa.pracalāka.kṛkaṇa.pañca.kuṣṭha.cūrṇam
 vā dhūmaḥ pūrva.kalpena-ārdrā.suṣka.palālana vā praṇītaḥ
 saṅgrāma.avataraṇa.avaskandana.saṅkuleṣu kṛta.nejana.udaka.akṣi.pratikāraiḥ praṇītaḥ
 sarva.praṇinām netraghnaḥ | 14 |
 KAZ14.1.15/ śārikā.kapota.baka.balākā.leṇḍam arka.akṣi.pīluka.snuhi.kṣīra.piṣṭam
 andhī.karaṇam añjanam udaka.dūṣaṇam ca | 15 |
 KAZ14.1.16/ yavaka.śāli.mūla.madana.phala.jātī.pattra.nara.mūtra.yogaḥ
 plakṣa.vidārī.mūla.yukto mūka.udumbara.madana.kodrava.kvātha.yukto
 hasti.karṇa.palāśa.kvātha.yukto vā madana.yogaḥ | 16 |
 KAZ14.1.17/ śṛṅgi.gautama.vṛka.kaṇṭaka.ara.mayūra.padī.yogo
 guñjā.lāṅgalī.viṣa.mūlika.iṅgudī.yogaḥ kara.vīra.akṣi.pīluka.arka.mṛga.māraṇī.yogo
 madna.kodrava.kvātha.yukto hasti.karṇa.palāśa.kvātha.yukto vā madana.yogaḥ | 17 |
 KAZ14.1.18/ samastā vā yavasa.indhana.udaka.dūṣaṇāḥ | 18 |
 KAZ14.1.19/ kṛta.kaṇḍala.kṛkalāsa.gṛha.golika.andha.ahika.dhūmo netra.vadham unmādaṁ
 ca karoti | 19 |
 KAZ14.1.20/ kṛkalāsa.gṛha.golikā.yogaḥ kuṣṭha.karaḥ | 20 |
 KAZ14.1.21/ sa eva citram eka.antra.madhu.yuktaḥ prameham āpādayati,
 manuṣya.lohita.yuktaḥ śoṣam | 21 |
 KAZ14.1.22/ dūṣi.viṣam madana.kodrava.cūrṇam apajihvikā.yogaḥ | 22 |
 KAZ14.1.23/ mātṛ.vāhaka.añjali.kāra.pracalāka.bheka.akṣi.pīluka.yogo viṣūcikā.karaḥ | 23 |
 KAZ14.1.24/ pañca.kuṣṭhaka.kaunḍinya.karāja.vṛkṣa.puṣpa.madhu.yogo jvara.karaḥ | 24 |
 KAZ14.1.25/ bhāsana.kula.jihvā.granthikā.yogaḥ khari.kṣīra.piṣṭo mūka.badhira..karo
 māsa.ardha.māsikaḥ | 25 |
 KAZ14.1.26/ kalā.mātraṁ puruṣāṇām it samānam pūrveṇa | 26 |

KAZ14.1.27/ bhaṅga.kvātha.upanayanam auśadhānām, cūrṇam prāṇa.bhṛtām, sarveṣām vā kvātha.upanayanam, evaṁ vīryavattaram bhavati | 27 |

KAZ14.1.28/ iti yoga.sampat | 28 |

KAZ14.1.29/ śālmālī vidārī.dhānya.siddho mūla.vatsa.nābha.samyuktaś cucchundarī.śoṇita.pralepena digdho bāṇo yaṁ vidhyati sa viddho 'nyān daśa.puruṣān daśati, te daṣṭā daśa-anyān daśanti puruṣān | 29 |

KAZ14.1.30/ ballātaka.yātu.dhānāva.anudhā.mārgava.bāṇānām puṣpair elaka.akṣi.guggulu.hālāhalānām ca kaṣāyaṁ basta.nara.śoṇita.yuktaṁ damśa.yogaḥ | 30 |

KAZ14.1.31/ tato 'rdha.dharaṇiko yogaḥ saktu.piṇyākābhyām udake praṇīto dhanuḥ.śata.āyāmam udaka.āśayaṁ dūṣayati | 31 |

KAZ14.1.32/ matsya.paramparā hy etena daṣṭā-abhimṛṣṭā vā viṣī.bhavati, yaś ca-etaḥ udakaṁ pibati spṛśati vā | 32 |

KAZ14.1.33/ rakta.śveta.sarṣapair godhā tri.pakṣam uṣṭrikāyām bhūmau nikhātāyām nihitā vadhyena-uddhṛtā yāvat paśyati tāvan mārayati, kṛṣṇa.sarpo vā | 33 |

KAZ14.1.34/ vidyut.pradagdho 'ngāro jvālo vā vidyut.pradagdhaiḥ kāṣṭhair gṛhītaś ca-anuvāsitaḥ kṛttikāsu bharaṇīṣu vā raudreṇa karmanā-abhihuto 'gniḥ praṇītaś ca nispratīkāro dahati | 34 |

KAZ14.1.35ab/ karmārād agniṁ āhṛtya kṣaudreṇa juhuyāt pṛthak |

KAZ14.1.35cd/ surayā śauṇḍikād agniṁ mārgato 'gniṁ gṛhṇena ca || 35 ||

KAZ14.1.36ab/ mālyena ca-eka.patny.agniṁ puṁścaly.agniṁ ca sarṣapaiḥ |

KAZ14.1.36cd/ dadhnā ca sūtikāsv agniṁ āhita.agniṁ ca taṇḍulaiḥ || 36 ||

KAZ14.1.37ab/ caṇḍāla.agniṁ ca māṁsena cita.agniṁ mānuṣeṇa ca |

KAZ14.1.37cd/ samastān basta.vasayā mānuṣeṇa dhruveṇa ca || 37 ||

KAZ14.1.38ab/ juhuyād agni.mantreṇa rāja.vṛkṣasya dārubhiḥ |

KAZ14.1.38cd/ eṣa niṣpratīkāro 'gnir dviṣatām netra.mohanaḥ || 38 ||

KAZ14.1.39/ adite namaste, anumate namaste, sarasvati namaste, deva savitar namāste | 39 |

KAZ14.1.40/ agnaye svāhā, somāya svāhā, bhūḥ svāhā bhuvaḥ svāhā | 40 |

14.2 Chapter 2 (Section 178): Deceiving through Occult Practices

241

KAZ14.2.01/ śirīṣa.udumbara.śamī.cūrṇam sarpiṣā saṁhṛtya-ardha.māsikaḥ kṣud.yogaḥ | 1 |

KAZ14.2.02/ kaṣeruka.utpala.kandekṣu.mūla.bisa.dūrvā.kṣīra.ghṛta.maṇḍa.siddho māsikaḥ | 2 |

KAZ14.2.03/ māṣa.yava.kulattha.darbha.mūla.cūrṇam vā kṣīra.ghṛtābhyām, vallī.kṣīra.ghṛtaṁ vā sama.siddham, sāla.pṛśnī.parṇī.mūla.kalkaṁ payasā pītvā, payo vā tat.siddham madhu.ghṛtābhyām aśītvā māsam upavasati | 3 |

KAZ14.2.04/ śveta.basta.mūtre sapta.rātra.uṣitaiḥ siddha.arthakaiḥ siddham tailaṁ kaṭuka.ālābau māsa.ardha.māsa.sthitaṁ catuṣ.pada.dvi.padānām virūpa.karaṇam | 4 |

KAZ14.2.05/ takra.yava.bhakṣasya sapta.rātrād ūrdhvaṁ śveta.gardabhasya leṇḍa.yavaiḥ siddham gaura.sarṣapa.tailaṁ virūpa.karaṇam | 5 |

KAZ14.2.06/ etayor anyatarasya mūtra.leṇḍa.rasa.siddham siddha.arthaka.tailam arka.tūla.pataṅga.cūrṇa.pratīvāpaṁ śvetī.karaṇam | 6 |

KAZ14.2.07/ śveta.kukkuṭa.ajagara.leṇḍa.yogaḥ śvetī.karaṇam | 7 |

KAZ14.2.08/ śveta.basta.mūtre śveta.sarṣapāḥ sapta.rātra.uṣita.astakra(?).marka.kṣīra.lavaṇam dhānyaṁ ca pakṣa.sthito yogaḥ śvetī.karaṇam | 8 |

²⁴¹[K tr. 578 :: K2 tr. 499

- KAZ14.2.09/ kaṭuka.alābau valī.gate gataṁ.ardha.māsa.sthitaṁ gaura.sarṣapa.piṣṭaṁ
romṇāṁ śvetī.karaṇam | 9 |
- KAZ14.2.10ab/ alojuneti yaḥ kīṭaḥ śvetā ca gr̥ha.golikā |
- KAZ14.2.10cd/ etena piṣṭena-abhyaktāḥ keśāḥ syuḥ śāṅkha.pāṇḍarāḥ || 10 ||
- KAZ14.2.11/ gomayena tinduka.arīṣṭa.kalkena vā mardita.aṅgasya
bhallātaka.rasa.anuliptasya māsikaḥ kuṣṭha.yogaḥ | 11 |
- KAZ14.2.12/ kṛṣṇa.sarpa.mukhe gr̥ha.golikā.mukhe vā sapta.rātra.uṣitā gujjāḥ kuṣṭha.yogaḥ
| 12 |
- KAZ14.2.13/ śuka.pitta.aṇḍa.rasa.abhyaṅgaḥ kuṣṭha.yogaḥ | 13 |
- KAZ14.2.14/ kuṣṭhasya.priyāla.kalka.kaṣāyaḥ pratīkāraḥ | 14 |
- KAZ14.2.15/ kukkuṭa.kośa.atakī(?).śatāvarī.mūla.yuktam āhārayamāṇo māsenā gauro
bhavati | 15 |
- KAZ14.2.16/ vaṭa.kaṣāya.snātaḥ saha.cara.kalka.digdhaḥ kṛṣṇo bhavati | 16 |
- KAZ14.2.17/ śakuna.kaṅgu.taila.yuktā hari.tāla.manāḥ.śilāḥ śyāmī.karaṇam | 17 |
- KAZ14.2.18/ kha.dyota.cūrṇam sarṣapa.taila.yuktaṁ rātrau jvalati | 18 |
- KAZ14.2.19/ kha.dyota.gaṇḍū.pada.cūrṇam samudra.jantūnām bhṛṅga.kapālānām
khadira.karṇikārāṇām puṣpa.cūrṇam vā śakuna.kaṅgu.taila.yuktaṁ tejana.cūrṇam | 19 |
- KAZ14.2.20/ pāribhadraka.tvan.maṣī maṇḍūka.vasayā yuktā gātra.prajvālanam agninā | 20 |
- KAZ14.2.21/ paribhadraka.tvak.tila.kalka.pradigdham śarīram agninā jvalati | 21 |
- KAZ14.2.22/ pīlu.tvan.maṣīmayāḥ piṇḍo haste jvalati | 22 |
- KAZ14.2.23/ maṇḍūka.vasā.digdho 'gninā jvalati | 23 |
- KAZ14.2.24/ tena pradigdham aṅgam kuśa.āmra.phala.taila.siktaṁ
samudra.maṇḍūkī.phenaka.sarja.rasa.cūrṇa.yuktaṁ vā jvalati | 24 |
- KAZ14.2.25/ maṇḍūka.kulīra.ādīnām vasayā sama.bhāgam tailam siddham abhyaṅgam
gātrāṇām agni.prajvālanam | 25 |
- KAZ14.2.26/ veṇu.mūla.śaivala.liptam aṅgam maṇḍūka.vasā.digdham agninā jvalati | 26 |
- KAZ14.2.27/ pāribhadraka.ppatibalā.vañjula.vajra.kadalī.mūla.kalkena
maṇḍūka.vasā.siddhena tailena-abhyakta.pādo 'ṅgāreṣu gacchati | 27 |
- KAZ14.2.28ab/ upa.udakā pratibalā vañjulaḥ pāribhadrakaḥ |
- KAZ14.2.28cd/ eteṣāṁ mūla.kalkena maṇḍūka.vasayā saha || 28 ||
- KAZ14.2.29ab/ sādhayet tailam etena pādāv abhyajya nirmalau |
- KAZ14.2.29cd/ aṅgāra.rāśau vicared yathā kusuma.sañcaye || 29 ||
- KAZ14.2.30/ haṁsa.krauñca.mayūrāṇām anyeṣāṁ vā mahā.śakunīnām udaka.plavānām
puccheṣu baddhā nala.dīpikā rātrāv ulkā.darśanam | 30 |
- KAZ14.2.31/ vaidyutaṁ bhasma.aṅgi.śamanam | 31 |
- KAZ14.2.32/ strī.puṣpa.pāyitā māṣā vrajakulī.mūlam maṇḍūka.vasā.mīśram culluyām
dīptāyām apācanam | 32 |
- KAZ14.2.33/ cullī.śodhanam pratīkāraḥ | 33 |
- KAZ14.2.34/ pīlumayo maṇir agni.garbhaḥ suvarcalā.mūla.granthiḥ sūtra.granthir vā
picu.pariveṣṭito mukhyād agni.dhūma.utsargaḥ | 34 |
- KAZ14.2.35/ kuśa.āmra.phala.taila.sikto 'gnir varṣa.pravāteṣu jvalati | 35 |
- KAZ14.2.36/ samudra.phenakas taila.yukto 'mbhasi plavamāno jvalati | 36 |
- KAZ14.2.37/ plavamānānām asthiṣu kalmāṣa.veṇunā nirmathito 'gnir na-udakena śāmyati,
udakena jvalati | 37 |
- KAZ14.2.38/ śāstra.hatasya śūla.protasya vā puruṣasya vāma.pārśva.parśuka.asthiṣu
kalmāṣa.veṇunā nirmathito 'gniḥ striyāḥ puruṣasya vā-asthiṣu manuṣya.parśukayā nirmathito
'gnir yatra trir apasavyam gacchati na ca-atra-anyo 'gnir jvalati | 38 |
- KAZ14.2.39ab/ cuccundarī khañjarīṭaḥ khāra.kīṭaś ca piṣyate |
- KAZ14.2.39cd/ aśva.mūtreṇa saṁsrṣṭā nigalānām tu bhañjanam || 39 ||

KAZ14.2.40/ ayas.kānto vā pāṣāṇaḥ kulīra.dardura.khāra.kīṭa.vasā.pradehena dvi.guṇaḥ | 40 |

KAZ14.2.41/ nāraka.garbhaḥ kaṅka.bhāsa.pārśva.utpala.udaka.piṣṭaś catuṣ.pada.dvi.padānām pāda.lepaḥ | 41 |

KAZ14.2.42/ ulūka.gṛdhra.vasābhyām uṣṭra.carma.upānahāv abhyajya vaṭapattraiḥ praticchādy pañcāśad.yojanāny aśrānto gacchati | 42 |

KAZ14.2.43/ śyena.kaṅka.kāka.gṛdhra.haṁsa.krauñca.vīcī.rallānām majjāno retāmsi vā yojana.śatāya, simha.vyāghra.dvīpa.kāka.ulūkānām majjāno retāmsi vā | 43 |

KAZ14.2.44/ sārvarṇikāni garbha.patanāny uṣṭrikāyām abhiṣūya śmaśāne preta.śīśūn vā tat.samutthitaṁ medo yojana.śatāya | 44 |

KAZ14.2.45ab/ aniṣṭair adbhuta.utpātaiḥ parasya-udvegam ācaret |

KAZ14.2.45cd/ ārājyāya-iti nirvādaḥ samānaḥ kopa ucyate || 45 ||

14.3 Chapter 3 (Section 178): Deceiving through Occult Practices (cont.)

242

KAZ14.3.01/ mārjāra.uṣṭra.vṛka.varāha.śva.avi.dvāgulī.napṭṛ.kāka.ulūkānām anyeṣām vā niśā.carāṇām sattvānām ekasya dvayor bahūnām vā dakṣiṇāni vāmāni ca-akṣiṇi gṛhītvā dvidhā cūrṇaṁ kārayet | 1 |

KAZ14.3.02/ tato dakṣiṇaṁ vāmena vāmaṁ dakṣiṇena samabhyajya rātrau tamasi ca paśyati | 2 |

KAZ14.3.03ab/ eka.āmlakaṁ varāha.akṣi kha.dyotaḥ kāla.śārivā |

KAZ14.3.03cd/ etena-abhyakta.nayano rātrau rūpāni paśyati || 3 ||

KAZ14.3.04/ tri.rātra.upoṣitaḥ puṣyeṇa śastra.hatasya śūla.protasya vā pumsaḥ śiraḥ.kapāle mṛttikāyām yavān āvāsyā-avikṣīreṇa secayet | 4 |

KAZ14.3.05/ tato yava.virūḍha.mālām ābadhya naṣṭac.chāyā.rūpaś carati | 5 |

KAZ14.3.06/ tri.rātra.upoṣitaḥ puṣyeṇa śva.mārjāra.ulūka.vāgulīnām dakṣiṇāni vāmāni ca-akṣiṇi dvidhā cūrṇaṁ kārayet | 6 |

KAZ14.3.07/ tato yathā.svam abhyakta.akṣo naṣṭac.chāyā.rūpaś carati | 7 |

KAZ14.3.08/ tri.rātra.upoṣitaḥ puṣyeṇa puruṣa.ghātināḥ kāṇḍakasya śālākām añjanīm ca kārayet | 8 |

KAZ14.3.09/ tato anyatamena-akṣi.cūrṇena-abhyakta.akṣo naṣṭac.chāyā.rūpaś carati | 9 |

KAZ14.3.10/ tri.rātra.upoṣitaḥ puṣyeṇa kālāyasīm añjanīm śālākām ca kārayet | 10 |

KAZ14.3.11/ tato niśā.carāṇām sattvānām anyatamasya śiraḥ.kapālam añjanena pūrayitvā mṛtāyāḥ striyā yonau praveśya dāhayet | 11 |

KAZ14.3.12/ tad añjanaṁ puṣyeṇa-uddhṛtya tasyām añjanyaṁ nidadhyāt | 12 |

KAZ14.3.13/ tena-abhyakta.akṣo naṣṭa.chāyā.rūpaś carati | 13 |

KAZ14.3.14/ yatra brāhmaṇam āhita.agniṁ dagdhaṁ dahyamānaṁ vā paśyet tatra tri.rātra.upoṣitaḥ puṣyeṇa svayaṁ.mṛtasya vāsasā prasevaṁ kṛtvā citā.bhasmanā pūrayitvā tam ābadhya naṣṭac.chāyā.rūpaś carati | 14 |

KAZ14.3.15/ brāhmaṇasya preta.kārye yo gaur māryate

tasya-asthi.majja.cūrṇa.pūrṇā-ahi.bhastrā paśūnām antar.dhānam | 15 |

KAZ14.3.16/ sarpa.daṣṭasya bhasmanā pūrṇā pracalāka.bhastrā mṛgāṇām antar.dhānam | 16 |

KAZ14.3.17/ ulūka.vāgulī.puccha.puriṣa.jānv.asthi.cūrṇa.pūrṇā-ahi.bhastrā pakṣiṇām antar.dhānam | 17 |

KAZ14.3.18/ ity aṣṭāv antar.dhāna.yogaḥ | 18 |

²⁴²[K tr. 583 :: K2 tr. 503

- KAZ14.3.19ab/ "baliṁ vairocanaṁ vande śata.māyaṁ ca śambaram |
 KAZ14.3.19cd/ bhaṇḍīra.pākaṁ narakāṁ nikumbhaṁ kumbham eva ca || 19 ||
 KAZ14.3.20ab/ devalaṁ nāradaṁ vande vande sāvarṇi.gālavam |
 KAZ14.3.20cd/ eteṣāṁ anuyogena kṛtaṁ te svāpanaṁ mahat || 20 ||
 KAZ14.3.21ab/ yathā svapanty ajagarāḥ svapanty api camū.khalāḥ |
 KAZ14.3.21cd/ tathā svapantu puruṣā ye ca grāme kutūhalāḥ || 21 ||
 KAZ14.3.22ab/ bhaṇḍakānāṁ sahasreṇa ratha.nemi.śatena ca |
 KAZ14.3.22cd/ imaṁ grhaṁ pravekṣyāmi tūṣṇīm āsantu bhāṇḍakāḥ || 22 ||
 KAZ14.3.23ab/ namas.kṛtvā ca manave baddhvā śunaka.phelakāḥ |
 KAZ14.3.23cd/ ye devā deva.lokeṣu mānuṣeṣu ca brāhmaṇāḥ || 23 ||
 KAZ14.3.24ab/ adhyayana.pāragāḥ siddhā ye ca kaulāsa tāpasāḥ |
 KAZ14.3.24cd/ etebhyaḥ sarva.siddhebhyaḥ kṛtaṁ te svāpanaṁ mahat || 24 ||
 KAZ14.3.25/ atigacchanti ca mayy apagacchantu saṁhatāḥ | 25 |
 KAZ14.3.26/ alite, valite, manave svāhā | 26 |
 KAZ14.3.27/ etasya prayogaḥ | 27 |
 KAZ14.3.28/ tri.rātra.upoṣitaḥ kṛṣṇa.catur.daśyām puṣya.yoginyām śva.pākī.hastād
 vilakha.avalekhanāṁ krīṇīyāt | 28 |
 KAZ14.3.29/ tan.māṣaiḥ saha kaṇḍolikāyām kṛtvā-asaṅkīrṇa ādahane nikhānayet | 29 |
 KAZ14.3.30/ dvitīyasyām caturdaśyām uddhṛtya kumāryā peṣayitvā gulikāḥ kārayet | 30 |
 KAZ14.3.31/ tata ekām gulikām abhimantrayitvā yatra-etana mantreṇa kṣipati tat sarvaṁ
 prasvāpayati | 31 |
 KAZ14.3.32/ etena-eva kalpena śvā.vidhaḥ śalyakāṁ tri.kālaṁ triśvetam asaṅkīrṇa ādahane
 nikhānayet | 32 |
 KAZ14.3.33/ dvitīyasyām caturdaśyām uddhṛtya-ādahana.bhasmanā saha yatra.etena
 mantreṇa kṣipati tat sarvaṁ prasvāpayati | 33 |
 KAZ14.3.34ab/ "suvarṇa.puṣpīm brahmāṇīm brahmāṇam ca kuśa.dhvajam |
 KAZ14.3.34cd/ sarvāś ca devatā vande vande sarvāṁś ca tāpasān || 34 ||
 KAZ14.3.35ab/ vaśaṁ me brāhmaṇā yāntu bhūmi.pālāś ca kṣatriyāḥ |
 KAZ14.3.35cd/ vaśaṁ vaiśyāś ca śūdrāś ca vaśatām yāntu me sadā || 35 ||
 KAZ14.3.36/ svāhā - amile kimile vayu.cāre prayoge phakke vayuhve vihāle danta.kaṭake
 svāhā | 36 |
 KAZ14.3.37ab/ sukhaṁ svapantu śunakā ye ca grāme kutūhalāḥ |
 KAZ14.3.37cd/ śvā.vidhaḥ śalyakāṁ ca-etat tri.śvetam brahma.nirmitam || 37 ||
 KAZ14.3.38ab/ prasuptāḥ sarva.siddhā hi etat te svāpanaṁ kṛtam |
 KAZ14.3.38cd/ yāvad grāmasya sīmāntaḥ sūryasya-udgamanād iti || 38 ||
 KAZ14.3.39/ svāhā" | 39 |
 KAZ14.3.40/ etasya prayogaḥ | 40 |
 KAZ14.3.41/ śvā.vidhaḥ śalyakāni tri.śvetāni, sapta.rātra.upoṣitaḥ kṛṣṇa.caturdaśyām
 khādirābhiḥ samidhābhir agnim etena mantreṇa-aṣṭa.śata.sampātāṁ kṛtvā
 madhu.ghṛtābhyām abhijuhuyāt | 41 |
 KAZ14.3.42/ tata ekam etena mantreṇa grāma.dvāri grha.dvāri vā yatra nikhanyate tat
 sarvaṁ prasvāpayati | 42 |
 KAZ14.3.43ab/ "baliṁ vairocanaṁ vande śatamāyaṁ ca śambaram |
 KAZ14.3.43cd/ nikumbhaṁ narakāṁ kumbhaṁ tantu.kacchaṁ mahā.asuram || 43 ||
 KAZ14.3.44ab/ armālavaṁ pramīlaṁ ca maṇḍa.ulūkaṁ ghaṭa.ubalam |
 KAZ14.3.44cd/ kṛṣṇa.kāmsa.upacāraṁ ca paulomīm ca yaśasvinīm || 44 ||
 KAZ14.3.45ab/ abhimantrayitvā grhṇāmi siddhy.arthaṁ śava.śārikām |
 KAZ14.3.45cd/ jayatu jayati ca namaḥ śalaka.bhūtebhyaḥ svāhā || 45 ||
 KAZ14.3.46ab/ sukhaṁ svapantu śunakā ye ca grāme kutūhalāḥ |

- KAZ14.3.46cd/ sukhaṁ svapantu siddha.arthā yam arthaṁ mārgayāmahe |
 KAZ14.3.46ef/ yāvad astam ayād udayo yāvad arthaṁ phalaṁ mama || 46 ||
 KAZ14.3.47/ iti svāhā | 47 |
 KAZ14.3.48/ etasya prayogaḥ | 48 |
 KAZ14.3.49/ catur.bhakta.upavāsī kṛṣṇa.caturdaśyām asaṅkīrṇa ādahane balim kṛtvā-etena
 mantreṇa śava.śārikām gr̥hītvā pautrī.poṭṭalikam badhniyāt | 49 |
 KAZ14.3.50/ tan.madhye śvā.vidhaḥ śalyakena viddhvā yatra-etena mantreṇa nikhanyate tat
 sarvaṁ prasnāpayati | 50 |
 KAZ14.3.51ab/ "upaimi śaraṇam ca-agniṁ daivatāni diśo daśa |
 KAZ14.3.51cd/ apayāntu ca sarvāṇi vāsātām yāntu me sadā || 51 ||
 KAZ14.3.52/ svāhā" | 52 |
 KAZ14.3.53/ etasya prayogaḥ | 53 |
 KAZ14.3.54/ tri.rātra.upoṣitaḥ puṣyeṇa śarkarā eka.vimśati.sampātām kṛtvā
 madhu.ghṛtābhyām abhijuhuyāt | 54 |
 KAZ14.3.55/ tato gandha.mālyena pūjayitvā nikhānayet | 55 |
 KAZ14.3.56/ dvitīyena puṣyeṇa-uddhṛtya-ekām śarkarām abhimantrayitvā kapāṭam āhanyāt
 | 56 |
 KAZ14.3.57/ abhyantarm catasṛṇām śarkarāṇām dvāram apāvriyate | 57 |
 KAZ14.3.58/ catur.bhakta.upavāsī kṛṣṇa.caturdaśyām bhagnasya puruṣasya-asthnā ṛṣabhaṁ
 kārayet, abhimantrayec ca-etena | 58 |
 KAZ14.3.59/ dvi.go.yuktaṁ go.yānam āhṛtaṁ bhavati | 59 |
 KAZ14.3.60/ tataḥ parama.ākāśe virāmati | 60 |
 KAZ14.3.61/ ravi.sagandhaḥ parighamati sarvaṁ prṇāti | 61 |
 KAZ14.3.62/ "caṇḍālī.kumbhī.tumba.kaṭuka.sāra.oghaḥ sanārī.bhago 'si - svāhā | 62 |
 KAZ14.3.63/ tāla.udghāṭanaṁ prasnāpanam ca | 63 |
 KAZ14.3.64/ tri.rātra.upoṣitaḥ puṣyeṇa śastra.hatasya śūla.protasya vā puṁsaḥ śiraḥ.kapāle
 mṛttikāyām tuvarī.rāvāsya-udakena secayet | 64 | (?)
 KAZ14.3.65/ jātānām puṣyeṇa-eva gr̥hītvā rajjukām vartayet | 65 |
 KAZ14.3.66/ tataḥ sajjānām dhanuṣām yantrāṇām ca purastāc chedanam jyāc.chedanam
 karoti | 66 |
 KAZ14.3.67/ udaka.ahi.bhastrām ucchvāsa.mṛttikayā striyāḥ puruṣasya vā pūrayet,
 nāsikā.bandhanaṁ mukha.grahaś ca | 67 |
 KAZ14.3.68/ varāha.bhastrām ucchvāsamṛttikayā pūrayitvā markāṭa.snāyunā-avabadhniyāt,
 ānāha.kāraṇam | 68 |
 KAZ14.3.69/ kṛṣṇa.caturdaśyām śastra.hatāyā goḥ kapilāyāḥ pittena rāja.vṛkṣamayīm
 amitra.pratimām añjyāt, andhī.kāraṇam | 69 |
 KAZ14.3.70/ catur.bhakta.upavāsī kṛṣṇa.caturdaśyām balim kṛtvā śūla.protasya
 puruṣasya-asthnā kīlakān kārayet | 70 |
 KAZ14.3.71/ eteṣām ekaḥ puriṣe mūtre vā nikhāta ānāham karoti, pade 'sya-āsane vā
 nikhātaḥ śoṣeṇa mārayati, āpaṇe kṣetre gr̥he vā vṛttic.chedaṁ karoti | 71 |
 KAZ14.3.72/ etena-eva kalpena vidyud.dagdhasya vṛkṣasya kīlakā vyākhyātāḥ | 72 |
 KAZ14.3.73ab/ punar navam avācīnam nimbaḥ kāma.madhuś ca yaḥ |
 KAZ14.3.73cd/ kapi.roma manuṣya.asthi baddhvā mṛtaka.vāsasā || 73 ||
 KAZ14.3.74ab/ nikhanyate gr̥he yasya dṛṣṭvā vā yat padaṁ nayet |
 KAZ14.3.74cd/ saputra.dāraḥ sadhana.strīn pakṣān na-ativartate || 74 ||
 KAZ14.3.75ab/ punar navam avācīnam nimbaḥ kāma.madhuś ca yaḥ |
 KAZ14.3.75cd/ svayam.guptā manuṣya.asthi pade yasya nikhanyate || 75 ||
 KAZ14.3.76ab/ dvāre gr̥hasya senāyā grāmasya nagarasya vā |
 KAZ14.3.76cd/saputra.dāraḥ sadhana.strīn pakṣān na-ativartate || 76 ||

KAZ14.3.77ab/ aja.markaṭa.romāṇi mārjāra.nakulasya ca |
 KAZ14.3.77cd/ brāhmaṇānām śva.pākānām kāka.ulūkasya ca-āharet |
 KAZ14.3.77ef/ etena viṣṭhā-avakṣuṇṇā sadya utsāda.kārikā || 77 ||
 KAZ14.3.78ab/ preta.nirmālikā kiṇvaṁ romāṇi nakulasya ca |
 KAZ14.3.78cd/ vṛścika.āly(?) .ahi.kṛttiś ca pade yasya nikhanyate |
 KAZ14.3.78ef/ bhavaty apuruṣaḥ sadyo yāvat tan na-apanīyate || 78 ||
 KAZ14.3.79/ tri.rātra.upoṣitaḥ puṣyeṇa śastra.hatasya śūla.protasya vā puṁsaḥ śiraḥ.kapāle
 mṛttikāyām guñjā āvāsyā-udakena secayet | 79 |
 KAZ14.3.80/ jātānām amāvāsyāyām paurṇamāsyām vā puṣya.yoginyām guñja.vallīr
 grāhayitvā maṇḍalikāni kārayet | 80 |
 KAZ14.3.81/ teṣv anna.pāna.bhājanāni nyastāni na kṣīyante | 81 |
 KAZ14.3.82/ rātri.prekṣāyām pravṛttāyām pradīpa.agniṣu mṛta.dhenoh stanān utkr̥tya
 dāhayet | 82 |
 KAZ14.3.83/ dagdhān vṛṣa.mūtreṇa peṣayitvā nava.kumbham antar.lepayet | 83 |
 KAZ14.3.84/ taṁ grāmam apasavyaṁ pariṇīya yat tatra nyastaṁ nava.nītam eṣāṁ tat sarvam
 āgacchati | 84 |
 KAZ14.3.85/ kṛṣṇa.caturdaśyām puṣya.yoginyām śuno lagnakasya yonau kālāyasīm
 mudrikām preṣayet | 85 |
 KAZ14.3.85/ tāṁ svayaṁ patitāṁ gr̥hṇīyāt | 85 |
 KAZ14.3.87/ tayā vṛkṣa.phalāny ākāritāny āgacchanti | 87 |
 KAZ14.3.88ab/ mantra.bhaiṣajya.samyuktā yogā māyā.kṛtāś ca ye |
 KAZ14.3.88cd/ upahanyād amitṛāms taiḥ sva.janaṁ ca-abhipālayet || 88 ||

14.4 Chapter 4 (Section 179): Counter-measures against Injuries to One's Own Troops

243

KAZ14.4.01/ sva.pakṣe para.prayuktānām dūṣi.viṣa.garāṇām pratikāraḥ | 1 |
 KAZ14.4.02/ śleṣmātaka.kapittha.danti.danta.śaṭha.goji.śirīṣa.pāṭalī.balāsyonāga.-
 punar.navā.śveta.vāraṇa.kvātha.yuktaṁ (?) candana.sālā.vṛkī.lohita.yuktaṁ nejana.udakaṁ
 rāja.upabhogyānām guhya.prakṣālanam strīṇām, senāyās ca viṣa.pratikāraḥ | 2 |
 KAZ14.4.03/ pṛṣata.nakula.ñila.kañṭha.godhā.pitta.yuktaṁ mahī.rājī.cūrṇam
 sindu.vārita.varaṇa.vāruṇī.taṇḍulīyaka.śata.parva.agra.piṇḍitaka.yogo madana.doṣa.haraḥ |
 3 |
 KAZ14.4.04/ sṛgāla.vinnā.madana.sindu.vārita.varaṇa.vāraṇa.valī.mūla.kaṣāyāṇām
 anyatamasya samastānām vā kṣīra.yuktaṁ pānaṁ madana.doṣa.haram | 4 |
 KAZ14.4.05/ kaiḍarya.pūti.tila.tailam unṁmāda.haraṁ nastāḥ.karma | 5 |
 KAZ14.4.06/ priyaṅgu.nakta.māla.yogaḥ kuṣṭha.haraḥ | 6 |
 KAZ14.4.07/ kuṣṭha.lodhra.yogaḥ pāka.śoṣaghnaḥ | 7 |
 KAZ14.4.08/ kaṭa.phala.dravantī.vilaṅga.cūrṇam nastāḥ.karma śiro.roga.haram | 8 |
 KAZ14.4.09/ priyaṅgu.mañjiṣṭhāta.garalā.kṣāra.samadhuka.haridrā.kṣaudra.yogo
 rajju.udaka.viṣa.prahāra.patana.nihsañjñānām punaḥ.pratyānayanāya | 9 |
 KAZ14.4.10/ manuṣyāṇām akṣa.mātram, gava.aśvānām dvi.guṇam, catur.guṇam
 hasty.uṣṭrāṇām | 10 |
 KAZ14.4.11/ rukma.garbhaś ca-eṣāṁ maṇiḥ sarva.viṣa.haraḥ | 11 |
 KAZ14.4.12/ jīvanti.śvetā.muṣkaka.puṣpa.vandākānām akṣīve jātasya-aśvatthasya maṇiḥ
 sarva.viṣa.haraḥ | 12 |
 KAZ14.4.13ab/ tūryāṇām taiḥ praliptānām śabdo viṣa.vināśanaḥ |

²⁴³[K tr. 590 :: K2 tr. 510

KAZ14.4.13cd/ lipta.dhvajaṃ patākām vā dr̥ṣṭvā bhavati nirviṣaḥ || 13 ||
 KAZ14.4.14ab/ etaiḥ kṛtvā pratikāraṃ sva.sainyānām atha-ātmanaḥ |
 KAZ14.4.14cd/ amitreṣu prayuñjīta viṣa.dhūma.ambu.dūṣaṇān || 14 ||

15 Book 15: The Method of the Science

244

15.1 Chapter 1 (Section 180): Devices Used in the Science

245

KAZ15.1.01/ manuṣyāṇām vṛttir arthaḥ, manuṣyavatī bhūmir ity arthaḥ | 1 |
 KAZ15.1.02/ tasyāḥ pṛthivyā lābha.pālana.upāyaḥ śāstram artha.śāstram iti | 2 |
 KAZ15.1.03/ tad.dvātrimśad yukti.yuktaṃ - adhikaraṇam, vidhānam, yogaḥ, pada.arthaḥ, hetv.arthaḥ, uddeśaḥ, nirdeśaḥ, upadeśaḥ, apadeśaḥ, atideśaḥ, pradeśaḥ, upamānam, artha.āpattiḥ, saṃśayaḥ, prasaṅgaḥ, viparyayaḥ, vākya.śeṣaḥ, anumataṃ, vyākhyānam, nirvacanam, nidarśanam, apavargaḥ, sva.sañjñā, pūrva.pakṣaḥ, uttara.pakṣaḥ, eka.antah, anāgata.avekṣaṇam, atikrānta.avekṣaṇam, niyogaḥ, vikalpaḥ, samuccayaḥ ūhyam iti | 3 |
 KAZ15.1.04/ yam artham adhikṛtya-ucyate tad adhikaraṇam | 4 |
 KAZ15.1.05/ "pṛthivyā lābhe pālana ca yāvanty artha.śāstrāṇi pūrva.ācāryaiḥ prasthāpitāni prāyaśas tāni saṃhṛtya-ekam idam artha.śāstram kṛtam" iti | 5 |
 KAZ15.1.06/ śāstrasya prakaraṇa.anupūrvī vidhānam | 6 |
 KAZ15.1.07/ "vidyā.samuddeśaḥ, vṛddha.samyogaḥ, indriya.jayaḥ, amātya.utpattiḥ" ity evaṃ.ādikam iti | 7 |
 KAZ15.1.08/ vākya.yojanā yogaḥ | 8 |
 KAZ15.1.09/ "catur.varṇa.āśramo lokaḥ" iti | 9 |
 KAZ15.1.10/ pada.avadhikaḥ pada.arthaḥ | 10 |
 KAZ15.1.11/ mūla.hara iti padam | 11 |
 KAZ15.1.12/ "yaḥ pitṛ.paitāmaham artham anyāyena bhakṣayati sa mūla.haraḥ" ity arthaḥ | 12 |
 KAZ15.1.13/ hetur artha.sādhako hetv.arthaḥ | 13 |
 KAZ15.1.14/ "artha.mūlau hi dharma.kāmau" iti | 14 |
 KAZ15.1.15/ samāsa.vākyaṃ uddeśaḥ | 15 |
 KAZ15.1.16/ "vidyā.vinaya.hetur indriya.jayaḥ" iti | 16 |
 KAZ15.1.17/ vyāsa.vākyaṃ nirdeśaḥ | 17 |
 KAZ15.1.18/ "karṇa.tvag.akṣi.jihvā.ghrāṇa.indriyāṇām śabda.sparśa.rūpa.rasa.gandheṣv avipratipattir indriya.jayaḥ" iti | 18 |
 KAZ15.1.19/ evaṃ vartitavyam ity upadeśaḥ | 19 |
 KAZ15.1.20/ "dharma.artha.virodhena kāmaṃ seveta, na nihsukhaḥ syāt" iti | 20 |
 KAZ15.1.21/ evaṃ asāv āha-ity apadeśaḥ | 21 |
 KAZ15.1.22/ "mantri.pariṣadaṃ dvādaśa.amātyān kurvīta-iti mānavāḥ - ṣoḍaśa-iti bārhaspatyāḥ - viṃśatim ity auśanasāḥ - yathā.sāmarthyam iti kauṭilyaḥ" iti | 22 |
 KAZ15.1.23/ uktena sādhanam atideśaḥ | 23 |
 KAZ15.1.24/ "dattasya-apradānam ṛṇa.ādānena vyākhyātam" iti | 24 |
 KAZ15.1.25/ vaktavyena sādhanam pradeśaḥ | 25 |
 KAZ15.1.26/ "sāma.dāna.bheda.daṇḍair vā, yathā-āpatsu vyākhyāsyāmaḥ" iti | 26 |
 KAZ15.1.27/ dr̥ṣṭena-adṛṣṭasya sādhanam upamānam | 27 |
 KAZ15.1.28/ "nivṛtta.parihārān pitā-iva-anugṛhṇīyāt" iti | 28 |

²⁴⁴[K tr. 593–597:: K2 tr. 512–516

²⁴⁵[K tr. 593:: K2 tr. 512

- KAZ15.1.29/ yad anuktaṁ arthāḥ āpadyate sā-artha.āpattiḥ | 29 |
- KAZ15.1.30/ "loka.yātrāvid rājānam ātma.dravya.prakṛti.sampannaṁ priya.hita.dvāreṇa-āśrayeta" | 30 |
- KAZ15.1.31/ "na-apriya.hita.dvāreṇa-āśrayeta" ity arthāḥ āpannaṁ bhavati-iti | 31 |
- KAZ15.1.32/ ubhayato.hetumān arthaḥ saṁśayaḥ | 32 |
- KAZ15.1.33/ "kṣīṇa.lubdha.prakṛtiṁ apacarita.prakṛtiṁ vā" iti | 33 |
- KAZ15.1.34/ prakaraṇa.antareṇa samāno 'rthaḥ prasaṅgaḥ | 34 |
- KAZ15.1.35/ "kṛṣi.karma.pradiṣṭāyām bhūmau - iti samānaṁ pūrveṇa" iti | 35 |
- KAZ15.1.36/ pratilomena sādhanam viparyayaḥ | 36 |
- KAZ15.1.37/ "viparītaṁ atuṣṭasya" iti | 37 |
- KAZ15.1.38/ yena vākyaṁ samāpyate sa vākya.śeṣaḥ | 38 |
- KAZ15.1.39/ "chinna.pakṣasya-iva rājñāś ceṣṭā.nāśāś ca" iti | 39 |
- KAZ15.1.40/ tatra "śakuneḥ" iti vākya.śeṣaḥ | 40 |
- KAZ15.1.41/ para.vākyaṁ apratiṣiddham anumataṁ | 41 |
- KAZ15.1.42/ "pakṣāv urasyaṁ pratigraha ity auśanaso vyūha.vibhāgaḥ" iti | 42 |
- KAZ15.1.43/ atisāya.varṇanā vyākhyānam | 43 |
- KAZ15.1.44/ "viśeṣataś ca saṅghānām saṅgha.dharminām ca rāja.kulānām dyūta.nimitto bhedas tan.nimitto vināśa ity asat.pragrahaḥ pāpiṣṭhatamo vyasanānām tantra.daurbalyāt" iti | 44 |
- KAZ15.1.45/ guṇataḥ śabda.niṣpattir nirvacanam | 45 |
- KAZ15.1.46/ "vyasyaty enaṁ śreyasa ity vyasanam" iti | 46 |
- KAZ15.1.47/ drṣṭa.anto drṣṭa.anta.yukto nidarśanam | 47 |
- KAZ15.1.48/ "vigṛhīto hi jyāyasa hastinā pāda.yuddham iva.abhyupaiti" iti | 48 |
- KAZ15.1.49/ abhipluta.vyapakarṣaṇam apavargaḥ | 49 |
- KAZ15.1.50/ "nityam āsannam ari.balaṁ vāsayed anyatra-abhyantara.kopa.śaṅkāyāḥ" iti | 50 |
- KAZ15.1.51/ parair asamitaḥ śabdaḥ sva.saṅjñā | 51 |
- KAZ15.1.52/ "prathamā prakṛtiḥ, tasya bhūmy.anantarā dvitīyā, bhūmy.eka.antarā tṛtīyā" iti | 52 |
- KAZ15.1.53/ pratiṣeddhavyaṁ vākyaṁ pūrva.pakṣaḥ | 53 |
- KAZ15.1.54/ "svāmy.amātya.vyasanayor amātya.vyasanam garīyaḥ" iti | 54 |
- KAZ15.1.55/ tasya nirṇayana.vākyaṁ uttara.pakṣaḥ | 55 |
- KAZ15.1.56/ "tad.āyattatvāt, tat.kūṭa.sthānīyo hi svāmī" iti | 56 |
- KAZ15.1.57/ sarvatra.āyattam eka.antaḥ | 57 |
- KAZ15.1.58/ "tasmād utthānam ātmanaḥ kurvīta" iti | 58 |
- KAZ15.1.59/ paścād evaṁ vihitam ity anāgata.avekṣaṇam | 59 |
- KAZ15.1.60/ "tulā.pratimānam pautava.adhyakṣe vakṣyāmaḥ" iti | 60 |
- KAZ15.1.61/ purastād evaṁ vihitam ity atikrānta.avekṣaṇam | 61 |
- KAZ15.1.62/ "amātya.sampad uktā purastāt" iti | 62 |
- KAZ15.1.63/ evaṁ na-anyathā-iti niyogaḥ | 63 |
- KAZ15.1.64/ "tasmād dharmyam arthyaṁ ca-asya-upadiśet, na-adharmyam anarthayam ca" iti | 64 |
- KAZ15.1.65/ anena vā-anena vā-iti vikalpaḥ | 65 |
- KAZ15.1.66/ "duhitaro vā dharmiṣṭheṣu vivāheṣu jātāḥ" iti | 66 |
- KAZ15.1.67/ anena ca-anena ca-iti samuccayaḥ | 67 |
- KAZ15.1.68/ "svayañjātaḥ pitur bandhūnām ca dāyādaḥ" iti | 68 |
- KAZ15.1.69/ anukta.karaṇam ūhyam | 69 |
- KAZ15.1.70/ "yathā ca dātā pratigrahītā ca na-upahatau syātām tathā-anuśayaṁ kuśalāḥ kalpayeyuḥ" iti | 70 |

KAZ15.1.71ab/ evaṁ śāstram idaṁ yuktam etābhis tantra.yuktibhiḥ |
KAZ15.1.71cd/ avāptau pālāne ca-uktaṁ lokasya-asya parasya ca || 71 ||
KAZ15.1.72ab/ dharmam arthaṁ ca kāmāṁ ca pravartayati pāti ca |
KAZ15.1.72cd/ adharma.anartha.vidveṣān idaṁ śāstram nihanti ca || 72 ||
KAZ15.1.73ab/ yena śāstram ca śāstram ca nanda.rāja.gatā ca bhūḥ |
KAZ15.1.73cd/ amarṣeṇa-uddhṛtāny āśu tena śāstram idaṁ kṛtam || 73 ||

Appendix A: Bibliographic Notes

Author:	Kauṭalya
Editor:	Muneo Tokunaga et al. ; Richard Mahoney
Title:	The Kauṭīliya Arthaśāstra - SARIT transcript
Place:	London
Publisher:	SARIT: Search and Retrieval of Indic Texts
Year:	2009
Version:	0.1_005
Subject:	Political science – India – History – Early works to 1800; State, The – Early works to 1800; India – Politics and government – To 997; India – Social conditions
Language:	Sanskrit ; English
Citation:	The Kauṭīliya Arthaśāstra - SARIT transcript, Tokunaga, M. et al., compilation, data entry, proof correction, Mahoney, Richard, editing and conversion to TEI markup, (London: SARIT: Search and Retrieval of Indic Texts, 2009), Id. No. 0001-00000001.
Description:	UTF-8 encoded XML file ; approx. 887000 bytes
Identifier:	0001-00000001
Remarks:	<p>The base e-text was: Tokunaga, M. et al., editors, The Kauṭīliya Arthaśāstra - Kyoto Digital Version, (Kyoto: Joint Seminar on “Law (dharma) and Society in Classical India”, Institute for Research in Humanities, Kyoto University, 1993), ASCII text file; approx. 550000 bytes.</p> <p>The source edition for the base e-text was: Kangle, R.P., editor, Kauṭalya: a critical edition with a glossary, (Bombay: University of Bombay, 1969), University of Bombay Studies: Sanskrit, Prakrit and Pali, No. 1, The Kauṭīliya Arthaśāstra, Part I.</p> <p>The SARIT transcript of the base e-text was correlated with: 1.) Kangle, R.P., editor, Kauṭalya: a critical edition with a glossary, (Bombay: University of Bombay, 1960), University of Bombay Studies: Sanskrit, Prakrit and Pali, No. 1, The Kauṭīliya Arthaśāstra, Part I; and 2.) Kangle, R.P., editor, Kauṭalya: an English translation with critical and explanatory notes, (Bombay: University of Bombay, 1963), University of Bombay Studies: Sanskrit, Prakrit and Pali, No. 2, The Kauṭīliya Arthaśāstra, Part II.</p>
Funder:	The British Association for South Asian Studies ; The British Academy
Rights:	Copyright (C) 1991-1996 members of the Joint Seminar on “Law (dharma) and Society in Classical India”, coordinated by Y. Ikari at the Institute for Research in Humanities, Kyoto University. All rights reserved. ; Copyright (C) 2009 Dominik Wujastyk. All rights reserved. For more complete details please refer to the Availability Section of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Header.

Appendix B: Text Input System

(1) Sanskrit diacritics are entered using the Unicode Standard Encoding (utf-8):

vowels and diphthongs: a, ā, i, ī, u, ū, ṛ, ṝ, ḷ, e, ai, o, au

gutturals: k, kh, g, gh, ṅ

palatals: c, ch, j, jh, ñ

cerebrals: ṭ, ṭh, ḍ, ḍh, ṇ

dentals: t, th, d, dh, n

labials: p, ph, b, bh, m

semivowels: y, r, l, v

sibilants: ś, ṣ, s

aspirate: h

anusvāra: ṁ

visarga: ḥ

avagraha: '

(2) Anusvāra is transliterated by:

ṁ before gutturals

ñ before palatals

ṇ before cerebrals

n before dentals

m before labials

(3) Members of a compound are separated by periods.

(4) External sandhi is decomposed with -.

(5) Prose sections are subdivided by a,b,c, etc..

(6) The text was originally input by Muneo Tokunaga in June 1992; Proof read by the following members of the Joint Seminar on “Law (dharma) and Society in Classical India” (coordinated by Y. Ikari at the Institute for Research in Humanities, Kyoto University) in March 1993: Akihiko Akamatsu, Yasuke Ikari, Fumio Enomoto, Katsuhiko Kamimura, Toshifumi Goto, Jun Takashima, Hideaki Nakatani, Takao Hayashi, Masato Fujii, Toru Funayama, Michio Yano, and Nobuyuki Watase.

Appendix C: References Declaration

(1) References to each portion of the Sanskrit text have been placed at the start of each line: e.g., KAZ01.3.02/ refers to The Kauṭīliya Arthaśāstra, Book 1, Chapter 3, line 2.

(2) Book, chapter and section headings are from: Kangle, R.P., trans., op.cit..

(3) Page references to the first edition of the Sanskrit text (1960) have been placed in the body of the text: e.g., – 6 – refers to Kangle’s 1960 edition, page 6 - Kangle, R.P., op. cit..

(4) Page references to the first and second editions of the companion English translation (1963 and 1972) have been placed below and to the right of the section headings: e.g., [K tr. 45 :: K2 tr. 54 refers to the 1963 translation, page 45, and 1972 translation, page 54 - Kangle, R.P., trans., op.cit..